

T H E -  
R U D I M E N T S  
O F  
*L A T I N A N D E N G L I S H*  
G R A M M A R;

D E S I G N E D  
T O F A C I L I T A T E T H E S T U D Y O F B O T H L A N G U A G E S,  
B Y C O N N E C T I N G T H E M T O G E T H E R.

---

B Y  
A L E X A N D E R A D A M, LL. D.  
*R E C T O R O F T H E H I G H S C H O O L O F E D I N B U R G H.*

---

Grammaticæ est ars, necessaria pueris, jucunda senibus, dulcis secreto-  
rum comes, et quæ vel sola omni studiorum genere plus habet ope-  
ris quam ostentationis. Ne quis igitur tanquam parva fastidiat  
Grammatices elementa; quia interiora velut sacri hujus adeun-  
tibus, apparebit multa rerum subtilitas, quæ non inodo acuire  
ingenia puerilia, sed exercere altissimam quoque eruditionem ac  
scientiam possit.

QUINCTILIAN. l. 4. 5.

F I F T H E D I T I O N, W I T H I M P R O V E M E N T S.

---

*E D I N B U R G H:*

Printed for BELL & BRADFUTE, JAMES DICKSON,  
and WILLIAM CREECH;

And T. CADELL, jun. & W. DAVIES, *L O N D O N.*

---

M D C C X C V I I I.



✓  
Edue T 20917.98



Tufts College

## PREFACE to the FIRST EDITION.

**M**AN enjoys the singular advantage of being able to communicate his thoughts by articulate sounds. Different nations employ very different verbal signs for the expression of thought ; but with respect to the nature and use of the several parts of speech in general, they uniformly agree. Hence the Principles of Grammar in all languages are much the same.

The study of Grammar has been considered as an object of great importance by the wisest men in all ages. But, like other sciences, it has often been involved in mystery, and perplexed with needless difficulties. Instead of facilitating the acquisition of languages, which was its original design, it has frequently served to render that more laborious.

As language is regular in its general structure, rules must no doubt be useful to assist us in understanding it. We first learn to speak from imitation. We use the expressions which we hear from others. But when we have once gained a certain stock of words, we employ them according to general rules. When a child, for instance, has occasion to speak of two persons, he will say, "two mans," instead of "two men ;" because he learns the general method of forming the plural, before he attends to particular exceptions. The same may be observed of a person who endeavours to acquire any foreign language. Memory furnishes us with proper terms to express our thoughts, but judgement must be exerted in adapting these to particular circumstances.

Every science may be reduced to principles. The principles of Grammar may be traced from the progress of the mind in the acquisition of language. Chil-

dren first express their feelings by motions and gestures of the body, by cries and tears. This is the language of nature, and therefore universal. It fitly represents the quickness of sentiment and thought, which are as instantaneous as the impression of light on the eye. Hence we always express our stronger feelings by these natural signs. But when we want to make known to others the particular conceptions of the mind, we must represent them by parts, we must divide and analyze them. We express each part by certain signs, and join these together according to the order of their relations. Thus words are both the instrument and signs of the division of thought. But as words are only artificial signs of thought, and their connection with what they represent, merely arbitrary; the same thought may be expressed by different signs, and these signs variously arranged: Hence the diversity of languages and idioms. All languages, however, must consist of the same essential parts. There must be some words to mark the subject of discourse, and others to express what we affirm concerning it. The former excite our curiosity, and by the latter it is gratified. In this manner must language have been originally invented, if it be a human invention: and in this manner do children always acquire the use of speech. We are first taught the names of objects; and then we learn the words, which express their qualities and actions. As we grow up, we become acquainted with the use of Prepositions, Adverbs, and Conjunctions, together with the different variations of Verbs, employed to mark time, number, and person. By joining these together, we form sentences, which we compound and arrange variously, according to the sentiments we want to express. Thus we come to analyze our thoughts, and represent them by parts, so as to convey them properly to others, with all their circumstances and relations.

Grammar

Grammar is founded on common sense. Every sentiment expressed by words exemplifies its rules, and the ignorant observe them, as well as the learned. The Principles of Grammar are the first abstract truths which a young mind can comprehend. Children discover their capacity for understanding the rules of Grammar, by putting them in practice. It is indeed difficult to make young people attend to what passes in their own minds. But perhaps this is partly owing to the abstruse manner in which it is laid before them. The Principles of Grammar will be most successfully taught by arranging and explaining them according to the order of nature. Every art is more or less involved in obscurity by the hard terms peculiar to it. In no art is this more remarkably the case than in Grammar. The terms it employs are so abstract, that, unless they be properly explained, even persons of advanced years cannot understand them. Could this inconvenience be thoroughly removed, the Principles of Grammar might be adapted to the meanest capacity: For were the nature of the different parts of speech, and their use in sentences properly explained, the mind would recognise its own operations, and perceive that Grammar is nothing else than a delineation of those rules which we observe in every expression of thought by words. Thus the study of Grammar would not only improve the memory, but serve in a high degree to strengthen and enlarge all the faculties of the mind.

Whatever we learn first, is the most familiar to us. For this reason children will most easily apprehend the Principles of Grammar, when explained and exemplified in that language which is natural to them. Hence it seems proper to begin in Grammar, as in reading, with the language of our own country. But as most of the modern languages in Europe are in a great measure founded on the Latin, and as a

very considerable part of our knowledge, with regard both to science and taste, is derived from Latin authors, the study of Latin Grammar has generally been preferred to that of the Grammar of the mother tongue. This has particularly been the practice in this country. Till of late very little attention has been paid to the study of English Grammar; in consequence of which many irregularities have crept into the language, which might otherwise have been prevented. Were the importance of the two languages to come into competition, that would no doubt deserve the preference which we have the most frequent occasion to use. But to such as aim at polite literature, the study of both seems necessary: and the knowledge of the one will be found highly conducive to that of the other. The English language has received its greatest improvements from those who were masters of classical learning; and perhaps it cannot be thoroughly understood, without some acquaintance with the Latin. It is certain, no one can properly translate from the one language into the other, without understanding the idioms of both. In order therefore to teach Latin Grammar with success, we should always join with it a particular attention to the rudiments of English. This is the design of the following attempt. And as in writing upon Grammar, materials entirely new cannot be expected, the compiler has with freedom borrowed from all hands whatever he judged fit for his purpose. He acknowledges himself particularly indebted to Mr Harris's *Hermes* with regard to the principles of universal Grammar; to Wallis and Dr Lowth, for most of his observations concerning the English; and to Gerard Vossius, and Ruddiman, with respect to the Latin.

The merit of any performance on this subject must in a great measure depend upon the method of illustration and arrangement. In the present essay that  
arrangement

arrangement has been observed, which appeared most natural. The several parts of Grammar are reduced to general principles; and after these are subjoined particular observations and exceptions. The most essential rules and remarks are printed in larger characters; and the committing of these to memory, together with the examples, will to a learner at first, it is thought, be found sufficient. A careful perusal of the particular observations, afterwards, joined with the reading of the classics, and the practice of writing and speaking Latin, will supersede the use of any other Grammar rules. If a further exercise for the memory be wanted, beautiful passages selected from the Classics seem much more proper for this purpose, than Latin verses about words and phrases, however accurately composed.

Whatever other Grammar may have formerly been taught, the perusal of the following, it is hoped, will be attended with advantage. The compiler has done every thing in his power to prepare it for the public. He has examined with care the method of education, and the several Grammars made use of both at home and abroad. He has communicated his own plan to many persons of the first character for letters in this kingdom; and the attention which they have been pleased to pay to it, and the many useful observations which he has received from them, he will always remember with gratitude. He is still afraid, that notwithstanding all his care, some defects may be found in the execution; but hopes that his design at least will meet with approbation, and earnestly entreats the assistance of the encouragers of learning, to enable him to bring his scheme to greater perfection.

EDINBURGH, }  
May 1774. }



## PREFACE to the FOURTH EDITION.

THE compiler was first led, at an early period of life, to think of composing this Book, by observing the hurtful effects of teaching boys Grammar Rules in Latin verse, which they did not understand; while they were ignorant, not only of the principles of that language, but also of those of their mother tongue. Experience has since afforded him the most convincing proofs of the impropriety of this practice; and his opinion has been still further confirmed by perusing the writings of the old Grammarians, and of the most eminent among the moderns. The old Grammarians, *Charisius, Diomēdes, Priscianus, Probus, Donatus, Servius, Victorinus, Augustinus, Cassiodorus, Macrobius, Beda, Alcuinus,\* &c.* have no verse rules; and so in later times *Perotte, Manutius, Erasmus, Valerius, Buchanan, Milton, &c.* Nicolaus Perotte was one of the chief restorers of learning in the fifteenth century. He died Archbishop of Siponto in 1480. The compiler has a copy of the first edition of his Grammar, printed at Brescia anno 1474. It is composed by way of question and answer; but without any verse rules.—Soon after the invention of printing, and perhaps before, for the compiler has not been able to ascertain the precise period, the custom was introduced of expressing the principles of almost every art and science in Latin and Greek verse. The rules of Logic, and even the aphorisms of Hippocrates, were taught

\* TERENTIANUS MAURUS, a learned Grammarian, by birth an African, who is supposed to have lived under Trajan, and wrote in verse, treats only of poetry.



in this manner. Among the versifiers of Latin Grammar *Despauter* and *Lily* were the most conspicuous. The first complete edition of *Despauter's* Grammar was printed at Cologne, anno 1522; his *Syntax* had been published anno 1509. *Lily* was made first Master of St Paul's school in London, by Dr Colet, its founder, anno 1510; so that he was contemporary with *Despauter*. His Grammar was appointed, by an act which is still in force, to be taught in the established schools of England. Various attempts were afterwards made by different authors; as, *Sanctius*, *Alvarus*, *Scioppius*, *Kirkwood*, *Watt*, *Ruddiman*, &c. to improve on the plan of *Despauter* and *Lily*; but with little success. The truth is, it seems impracticable to express with sufficient perspicuity the Principles of Grammar in Latin Verse; and it appears strange, that when scholastic jargon is exploded from elementary books on other sciences, it should be retained by public authority, where it ought never to have been admitted, in Latin Grammars for children. But such is the force of habit and attachment to established modes, that we go on in the use of them, without thinking whether they be founded in reason or not. When there are a great many exceptions from a general rule, whatever can assist the memory is no doubt useful. On this account the principal rules for the genders of nouns, &c. are here subjoined, for local reasons, from *Ruddiman's* Grammar; although many of them are by no means adapted to the capacity of boys: and more of them are inserted, in compliance with the opinion of others, than the compiler judges necessary. They are printed at the end of the book; and such as chuse it, may have *Lily's* rules, *Watt's* rules, or any other, substituted in their place.

The authors of the *Nouvelle Methode*, or *Port Royal Grammar* in France, judging it as absurd to teach Latin by rules in Latin verse, as to teach Greek

Greek, by rules in Greek verse, or Hebrew by rules in Hebrew, composed the rules of Latin Grammar, in French verse. Some authors in England, as, *Clarke, Philipps, &c.* have imitated their example. But this plan has not in either country been much followed. Nothing can be more uncouth than such versification. So that Latin rules, on the whole, seem preferable.—However this may be, the following remarks concerning the method of teaching Latin, it is hoped, will not be deemed improper.

When the learner is once master of the inflexion of nouns and verbs, he should be exercised in getting by heart words and phrases, while at the same time he is employed in reading some easy author, and in turning plain sentences from English into Latin. The sooner he can be brought to write part of his exercises, the better; but he should never be obliged to get Grammar rules in Latin verse, till he is capable of understanding them by himself; because although the teacher may explain them, the scholar will soon forget the interpretation, and repeat the words merely by rote, without attending to their meaning: Nor should he be forced to get rules in Latin verse, which may be remembered equally well in English prose. Rules in verse are only useful when they assist the memory; as when there is a number of exceptions from a general rule, where alone they are indeed of advantage: and even here, perhaps, any chime of words might answer the purpose as well as Latin hexameters. It is of importance, when the rule is long, that the learner be accustomed to repeat no more of it than is strictly applicable to the word or phrase in question. The repetition of the whole is an useless waste of time. The great object ought to be, to bring the learner, in as short time as possible, to join without hesitation an adjective with a substantive in any case, number, or degree of comparison; and in like manner to touch  
upon

upon any part of a verb, and tell readily by what case any adjective, verb, or preposition is followed. This facility practice alone can teach, and the method of acquiring it must in all languages be much the same.

The niceties of construction, the figures of Syntax, and the other parts of Grammar, should be occasionally taught, as the learner proceeds in reading the more difficult authors.

As the antient Romans joined the Grammar of their own language with that of the Greek; so we ought to connect the study of English Grammar with that of the Latin; and when the learner properly understands Latin Grammar, he ought to join with it the study of the Greek; the knowledge of both these languages being requisite for the thorough understanding of the English. This is the practice in England, and other countries, where the best Greek and Latin scholars are formed. It is particularly necessary in Scotland to pay attention to the English in conjunction with the Latin, as by neglecting it boys at school learn many improprieties in point of Grammar, as well as of pronunciation, which it is difficult in after life to correct. This attention is less requisite in England; though even there, in the opinion of Dr Lowth, to use his own words, "the connection of the English with the Latin Grammar, if it could be introduced into schools, might be of good service\*."

EDINBURGH, }  
OCT. 25. 1793. }

---

In the present edition the Appendix to Etymology has been omitted, because a larger work on that subject is intended, and will probably soon be sent to the press.

EDINBURGH, }  
Jan. 23. 1798. }

\* In a letter concerning this book, after having read the manuscript, dated, Cuddeston, Sept. 27. 1771.

## C O N T E N T S.

|                                                                           | Pag.       |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------|
| <b>Part I. ORTHOGRAPHY, which treats of LETTERS,</b>                      | <b>I</b>   |
| Diphthongs                                                                | 2          |
| Syllables                                                                 | 3          |
| <b>Part II. ETYMOLOGY, which treats of WORDS,</b>                         | <b>4</b>   |
| Division of WORDS or PARTS of SPEECH                                      | ib.        |
| The ARTICLE;—wanting in Latin                                             | 5          |
| <b>I. NOUN or SUBSTANTIVE,</b>                                            | <b>6</b>   |
| English Nouns                                                             | 7          |
| Latin Nouns                                                               | 8          |
| <b>DECLENSION of NOUNS</b>                                                | <b>ib.</b> |
| GENDER of NOUNS                                                           | 10         |
| First Declension                                                          | 13         |
| Second Declension                                                         | 19         |
| Third Declension                                                          | 28         |
| Fourth Declension                                                         | 47         |
| Fifth Declension                                                          | 49         |
| <b>IRREGULAR Nouns</b>                                                    | <b>ib.</b> |
| <b>DIVISION of Nouns, according to their signification and derivation</b> | <b>56</b>  |
| <b>ADJECTIVE</b>                                                          | <b>58</b>  |
| Numeral Adjectives                                                        | 66         |
| <b>COMPARISON of Adjectives</b>                                           | <b>69</b>  |
| <b>II. PRONOUN</b>                                                        | <b>72</b>  |
| English Pronouns                                                          | ib.        |
| Latin Pronouns                                                            | 73         |
| 1. Simple Latin Pronouns                                                  | ib.        |
| 2. Compound Latin Pronouns                                                | 74         |
| <b>III. VERB</b>                                                          | <b>78</b>  |
| English Verbs                                                             | 81         |
| <b>CONJUGATION of LATIN VERBS</b>                                         | <b>86</b>  |
| First Conjugation                                                         | 90         |
| Second Conjugation                                                        | 95         |
| Third Conjugation                                                         | 97         |
| Fourth Conjugation                                                        | 98         |
| FORMATION of the different parts of Latin Verbs                           | 99         |
| SIGNIFICATION of the different TENSES                                     | 101        |
| <b>VERBS</b>                                                              |            |

# C O N T E N T S.

|                                     | Pag. |
|-------------------------------------|------|
| VERBS of the FIRST CONJUGATION      | 104  |
| SECOND CONJUGATION                  | 108  |
| THIRD CONJUGATION                   | 112  |
| FOURTH CONJUGATION                  | 122  |
| DEPONENT and COMMON VERBS           | 124  |
| IRREGULAR VERBS                     | 128  |
| DEFECTIVE VERBS                     | 133  |
| IMPERSONAL VERBS                    | 135  |
| REDUNDANT VERBS                     | 136  |
| <i>Obsolete Conjugation</i>         | 138  |
| DERIVATION and COMPOSITION of Verbs | ib.  |
| IV. PARTICIPLE                      | 140  |
| V. ADVERB                           | 142  |
| VI. PREPOSITION                     | 146  |
| VII. INTERJECTION                   | 148  |
| VIII. CONJUNCTION                   | 149  |

## PART III. SYNTAX or CONSTRUCTION, which treats of SENTENCES, 151

|                                                   |     |
|---------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Division of Sentences into Simple and Compound    | 152 |
| I. SIMPLE SENTENCES                               | ib. |
| CONCORD or Agreement of Words in Simple Sentences | ib. |
| GOVERNMENT of Words in Simple Sentences           | 157 |
| I. Government of SUBSTANTIVES                     | ib. |
| II. Government of ADJECTIVES                      | 160 |
| III. Government of VERBS                          | 166 |
| 1. VERBS governing one case                       | ib. |
| 2. VERBS governing two cases                      | 172 |
| Government of PASSIVE VERBS                       | 177 |
| of IMPERSONAL VERBS                               | 179 |
| Construction of the INFINITIVE                    | 181 |
| of PARTICIPLES, &c.                               | 182 |
| of GERUNDS                                        | 183 |
| of SUPINES                                        | 185 |
| of ADVERBS                                        | 186 |
| Government of Adverbs                             | 189 |
| of PREPOSITIONS                                   | 190 |
| Construction of CIRCUMSTANCES                     | 196 |
| 1. Price                                          | ib. |
| 2. Manner and Cause                               | ib. |
| 3. Place                                          | 177 |
| 4. Measure and Distance                           | 200 |
| 5. Time                                           | 201 |

## II. COMPOUND

# C O N T E N T S.

|                                                        |          |
|--------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| <b>II. COMPOUND SENTENCES</b>                          | Pag. 201 |
| Sentences are compounded by Relatives and Conjunctions | ib.      |
| Construction of RELATIVES                              | 210      |
| of CONJUNCTIONS                                        | 205      |
| of COMPARATIVES                                        | 210      |
| The ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE                                  | 211      |

## APPENDIX to SYNTAX; containing

|                                                    |     |
|----------------------------------------------------|-----|
| I. Various SIGNIFICATION and CONSTRUCTION of VERBS | 214 |
| II. FIGURATIVE CONSTRUCTION, or FIGURES of SYNTAX  | 235 |
| III. ANALYSIS and TRANSLATION                      | 237 |
| IV. Different kinds of STYLE                       | 241 |
| V. FIGURES of RHETORIC                             | 243 |
| 1. Figures of Words or TROPES                      | ib. |
| 2. Repetition of Words                             | 248 |
| 3. Figures of Thought                              | 249 |

## Part IV. PROSODY, which treats of the Quantity of Syllables, of Accent and Verse, 252

|                                                 |     |
|-------------------------------------------------|-----|
| I. QUANTITY of SYLLABLES                        | ib. |
| 1. Quantity of first and middle Syllables       | 253 |
| 2. Quantity of final Syllables                  | 261 |
| Quantity of Derivatives and Compounds           | 264 |
| II. ACCENT                                      | 266 |
| III. VERSE                                      | 267 |
| The measuring of Verses by Feet, or SCANNING    | ib. |
| Different kinds of Verses                       | 268 |
| FIGURES in SCANNING                             | 275 |
| Different kinds of POEMS                        | 277 |
| Combination of Verses in Poems                  | 278 |
| Different kinds of Verse in Horace and Buchanan | 279 |
| ENGLISH VERSE                                   | 281 |
| APPENDIX I. Punctuation, Capitals, &c.          | 286 |
| II. Rules from Ruddiman's Grammar               | 291 |

THE



T H E  
R U D I M E N T S  
O F  
L A T I N   A N D   E N G L I S H  
G R A M M A R.

**G**RAMMAR is the art of speaking and writing correctly.

Latin or English Grammar is the art of speaking and writing the Latin or the English language correctly.

The *Rudiments* of Grammar are plain and easy instructions, teaching beginners the first principles and rules of it.

Grammar treats of sentences, and the several parts of which they are compounded.

Sentences consist of words; Words consist of one or more syllables; Syllables of one or more letters. So that Letters, Syllables, Words, and Sentences, make up the whole subject of grammar.

L E T T E R S.

A Letter is the mark of a sound, or of an articulation of sound.

That part of Grammar which treats of letters, is called *Orthography*.

The letters in Latin are twenty-five: A, a; B, b; C, c; D, d; E, e; F, f; G, g; H, h; I, i; J, j; K, k; L, l; M, m; N, n; O, o; P, p; Q, q; R, r; S, s; T, t; U, u; V, v; X, x; Y, y; Z, z;

In English there is one letter more, namely, *W, w.*

A

Letters

Letters are divided into *Vowels* and *Consonants*.

Six are vowels; *a, e, i, o, u, y*. All the rest are consonants.

A vowel makes a full sound by itself; as, *a, e*.

A consonant cannot make a perfect sound without a vowel; as, *b, d*.

A vowel is properly called a *simple sound*; and the sounds formed by the concurrence of vowels and consonants, *articulate sounds*.

Consonants are divided into *Mutes*, *Semi-vowels*, and *Double Consonants*.

A mute is so-called, because it entirely stops the passage of the voice; as, *p* in *ap*.

The mutes are, *p, b; t, d; c, k, q*, and *g*: but *b, d*, and *g*, perhaps may more properly be termed *Semi-mutes*.

A semi-vowel, or half vowel, does not entirely stop the passage of the voice; thus, *al*.

The semi-vowels are, *l, m, n, r, s, f*. The first four of these are also called *Liquids*, particularly *l* and *r*; because they flow softly and easily after a mute in the same syllable; as, *bla, fra*.

The mutes and semi-vowels may be thus distinguished. In naming the mutes, the vowel is put after them; as, *pe, be, &c*: but in naming the semi-vowels, the vowel is put before them; as, *el, em, &c*.

The double consonants are, *x, z*, and *j*. *X* is made up of *cs, ks, or gs*. *Z* seems not to be a double consonant in English. It has the same relation to *s*, as *v* has to *f*, being sounded somewhat more softly.

In Latin *z*, and likewise *k* and *y*, are found only in words derived from the Greek.

*Y* in English is sometimes a consonant, as in *youth*.

*H* by some is not accounted a letter, but only a breathing.

## D I P H T H O N G S .

A diphthong is two vowels joined in one sound.

If

If the sound of both vowels be distinctly heard, it is called a *Proper Diphthong*; if not, an *Improper Diphthong*.

The proper diphthongs in Latin are commonly reckoned three; *au*, *eu*, *ei*; as in *aurum*, *Eurus*, *omneis*. To these, some, not improperly, add other three, namely, *ai*; as, in *Maia*; *oi*, as in *Troia*: and *ui*, as in *Harpuia*, or in *cui* and *huic*, when pronounced as monosyllables.

The improper diphthongs in Latin are two, *ae*, or when the vowels are written together, *e*; as *aetas*, or *etas*; *oe*, or *e*; as *poena* or *pana*; in both of which the sound of the *e* only is heard. The ancients commonly wrote the vowels separately, thus, *aetas*, *poena*.

The English language abounds with improper diphthongs, the just pronunciation of which practice alone can teach. In some words derived from the French, there are three vowels in the same syllable, but two of them only are sounded; as in *beauty*, *lieutenant*.

## SYLLABLES.

A syllable is the sound of one letter, or of several letters pronounced by one impulse of the voice; as *a*, *to*, *strength*.

In every word there are as many syllables as there are distinct sounds; as, *in-fa-li-bi-li-ty*.

In Latin there are as many syllables in a word as there are vowels or diphthongs in it; unless when *u* with any other vowel comes after *g*, *q*, or *s*, as in *lingua*, *qui*, *sua-deo*; where the two vowels are not reckoned a diphthong, because the sound of the *u* vanishes, or is little heard.

Words consisting of one syllable, are called *Monosyllables*; of two, *Disyllables*; and of more than two, *Poly-syllables*. But all words of more than one syllable are commonly called *Poly-syllables*.

In dividing words into syllables, we are chiefly to be directed by the ear. Compound words should be divided into the parts of which they are made up; as, *up-on*, *with-out*, &c. and so in Latin words, *ab-ūtor*, *in-ops*, *propt̄r-ca*, *et-ēnim*, *vel-ut*, &c. In like manner, when a syllable is added in the formation of the English verb, as, *lov-ed*, *lov-ing*, *lov-eth*, *will-ing*, &c.

*Observe*, A long syllable is thus marked [-]; as, *amāre*;

or with a circumflex accent thus, [˘]; as, *amáris*. A short syllable is marked thus [˘]; as, *omnibus*.

What pertains to the quantity of syllables, to accent, and verse, will be treated of afterwards.

## WORDS.

Words are articulate sounds significant of thought.

That part of Grammar which treats of words, is called *Etymology*, or *Analogy*.

All words may be divided into three kinds; namely, 1. such as mark the names of things; 2. such as denote what is affirmed concerning things; and 3. such as are significant only in conjunction with other words; or what are called *Substantives*, *Attributives*, and *Connectives*. Thus, in the following sentence, "*The diligent boy reads the lesson carefully in the school, and at home*," the words *boy*, *lesson*, *school*, *home*, are the names we give to the things spoken of; *diligent*, *reads*, *carefully*, express what is affirmed concerning the boy; *the*, *in*, *and*, *at*, are only significant when joined with the other words of the sentence.

All words whatever are either *simple* or *compound*, *primitive* or *derivative*.

The division of words into simple and compound, is called their *Figure*; into primitive and derivative, their *Species* or kind.

A simple word is that which is not made up of more than one; as, *pius*, pious; *ego*, I; *diceo*, I teach.

A compound word is that which is made up of two or more words; or of one word, and some syllable added; as, *impius*, impious; *ediceo*, I unteach; *egomet*, I myself.

A primitive word is that which comes from no other; as, *pius*, pious; *disco*, I learn; *diceo*, I teach.

A derivative word is that which comes from another word; as, *pietas*, piety, *doctrina*, learning.

The different classes into which we divide words, are called *Parts of Speech*.

## PARTS OF SPEECH.

The parts of speech in Latin are eight;

1. *Noun*, *Pronoun*, *Verb*, *Participle*; declined:
2. *Adverb*, *Preposition*, *Interjection*, and *Conjunction*; undeclined.

In English the adjective and participle are not declined.

Those words or parts of speech are said to be *declined* which receive different changes, particularly on the end, which is called the *Termination* of words.

The changes made upon words are by grammarians called *Accidents*.

Of old, all words which admit of different terminations were said to be declined. But *Declension* is now applied only to nouns. The changes made upon the verb are called *Conjugation*.

The English language has one part of speech more than the Latin, namely, the ARTICLE.

The *article* is a word put before substantive nouns, to point them out, and to shew how far their signification extends.

There are two articles, *a* and *the*: *a* becomes *an* before a vowel, or a silent *b*.

*A* is called the *Indefinite*, *The* the *Definite Article*.

*A* is used to point out one single thing of a kind, without fixing precisely what that thing is: *The* determines what particular thing is meant.

*A man* means simply some one or other of that kind: *the man* signifies that particular man who is spoken of.

The want of the article is a defect in the Latin tongue, and often renders the meaning of nouns undetermined: thus, *filius regis*, may signify, either, *a son of a king*, or *a king's son*; or *the son of the king*, or *the king's son*.

*The* placed before certain common names, marks either a whole kind, or some individual of that kind, with which we are acquainted; as, *the lion*, *the ox*, &c.

*A* can only be joined to substantive nouns in the singular number: *the* may also be joined to plurals. *A* is likewise used before adjectives which express number, when many are considered as one whole; as, *a thousand men*, *a few*, *a great many men*.

*The* is likewise applied to adjectives and adverbs in the comparative or superlative degree, to mark their sense more strongly; as, "*the wiser*," "*the better*;" "*the more* I think of it, *the better* I like it."

## N O U N.

A noun is either substantive or adjective.

The adjective seems to be improperly called *noun* : it is only a word added to a substantive or noun, expressive of its quality ; and therefore should be considered as a different part of speech. But as the substantive and adjective together express but one object, and in Latin are declined after the same manner, they have both been comprehended under the same general name.

## S U B S T A N T I V E.

A Substantive, or Noun, is the name of any person, place, or thing ; as, *boy, school, book.*

Substantives are of two sorts ; *proper* and *common* names.

*Proper names* are the names appropriated to individuals ; as the names of persons and places ; such are, *Cæsar, Rome.*

*Common names* stand for whole kinds, containing several sorts ; or for sorts, containing many individuals under them ; as, *animal, man, beast, fish, fowl, &c.*

Every particular being should have its own proper name ; but this is impossible, on account of their innumerable multitude : men have therefore been obliged to give the same common name to such things as agree together in certain respects. These form what is called a *genus*, or kind ; a *species*, or sort.

A proper name may be used for a common, and then in English it has the article joined to it ; as, when we say of some great conqueror, “ He is *an* Alexander ;” or, “ *The* Alexander of his age.”

To proper and common names may be added a third class of nouns, which mark the names of qualities, and are called *abstract nouns* ; as, *hardness, goodness, whiteness, virtue, justice, piety, &c.*

When we speak things, we consider them as one or more. This is what we call *Number*. When one thing is spoken of, a noun is said to be of the *singular number* ; when two or more, of the *plural*.

Things considered according to their kinds, are either male or female, or neither of the two. Males are said to be of the *masculine gender* ; females of the *feminine* ; and all other things, of the *neuter gender*.

Such



Such nouns as are applied to signify either the male or the female, are said to be of the *common gender*, that is, either masculine or feminine.

Various methods are used, in different languages, to express the different connections or relations of one thing to another. In the English, and in most modern languages, this is done by prepositions, or particles placed before the substantive: in Latin, by declension, or by different cases; that is, by changing the termination of the noun; as, *rex*, a king, *or* the king; *rēgis*, of a king, *or* of the king.

## ENGLISH NOUNS.

In English, nouns have only one case, namely, the genitive or possessive case, which is formed from the noun, by adding an *s*, with an apostrophe, or mark to separate it; as, *John's book*, the same with, *the book of John*. It was formerly written *Johnis book*.

Some have thought the *'s* a contraction for *his*; but improperly; because, instead of *the woman's book*, we cannot say, *the woman his book*. Others have imagined, and with more justice, that by the addition of the *'s* the substantive is changed into a possessive adjective.

When the noun ends in *s*, the sign of the possessive case is sometimes not added; as, *for righteousness sake*; and never to the plural number ending in *s*; as, *on eagles wings*. Perhaps it would be better in the plural, when it ends in *s*, always to use the particle, and not the possessive form; as, *on the wings of eagles*. Both the sign and the preposition seem sometimes to be used; as, *a soldier of the king's*; but here there are two possessives; for it means, *one of the soldiers of the king*.

A singular noun, in English, is made plural by adding to it *s*, or, for the sake of sound, *es*; as, *king, kings*; *church, churches*; *brush, brushes*; *witness, witnesses*; *fox, foxes*; *leaf, leaves*; in which last, and in many others, *f* is also turned into *v*, to make the pronunciation easier.

Several plurals are formed by adding *en*; as *ox, oxen*. Of these some are contracted, or interpose a letter on account of sound; as, *brethren, children, swine, kine, women, men*, &c. for *brotheren, sowen*, &c. Instead of *kine* we now commonly say *cows*; and we seldom use *brethren* but in solemn discourse.

Nouns in *y* change *y* into *ie*; as, *cherry, cherries*; *city, cities*. *Cherry's, city's*, &c. are in the possessive case.

Some

Some nouns form the plural more irregularly ; as, *mouse, mice ; louse, lice ; tooth, teeth ; foot, feet ; goose, geese ;* &c.

The words *sheep, deer*, are the same in both numbers. Some nouns, from the nature of the things which they express, are used only in the singular, or in the plural form ; as, *wheat, pitch, gold, sloth, pride, &c.* and *bellows, scissars, lungs, bowels, &c.*

Several nouns in English are changed in their termination, to express gender ; as *prince, princess ; actor, actress ; lion, lioness ; hero, heroine ; duke, duchess, &c.*

The English language has a peculiar advantage over most other languages, in making all words whatever, except the names of males and females, to be of the neuter gender : unless when inanimate beings are personified, or considered as persons ; as, when we say of the sun, *he shines ;* or of the moon, *she shines.*

## LATIN NOUNS.

A Latin noun is declined by *Genders, Cases, and Numbers.*

There are three genders, *Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.*

The cases are six, *Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, and Ablative.*

There are two numbers, *Singular and Plural.*

There are five different ways of varying or declining nouns, called, the *first, second, third, fourth, and fifth declensions.*

Cases are certain changes made upon the termination of nouns, to express the relation of one thing to another.

They are so called, from *cado*, to fall ; because they fall, as it were, from the nominative ; which is therefore named *cāsus rectus*, the straight case ; and the other cases, *cāsus obliqui*, the oblique cases.

The different declensions may be distinguished from one another by the termination of the genitive singular. The first declension has a diphthong ; the second has *i* ; the third

third has *is* ; the fourth has *us* ; and the fifth has *ii* in the genitive.

Although Latin nouns be said to have six cases, yet none of them have that number of different terminations, both in the singular and plural.

### GENERAL RULES of Declension.

1. Nouns of the neuter gender have the Accusative and Vocative like the Nominative, in both numbers ; and these cases in the plural end always in *a*.

2. The Dative and Ablative plural end always alike.

3. The Vocative for the most part in the singular, and always in the plural, is the same with the Nominative.

Greek nouns in *s* generally lose *s* in the Vocative ; as, *Thomas*, *Thoma* ; *Anchises*, *Anchise* ; *Paris*, *Pari* ; *Panthis*, *Panihu* ; *Pallas*, *-antis* ; *Palla*, names of men. But nouns in *es* of the third declension oftener retain the *s* ; as, *ô Achilles*, rarely *-e* ; *O Socrâtes*, seldom *-e* ; and sometimes nouns in *is* and *as* ; as, *O Thais*, *Myss*, *Pallas*, *-adis*, the goddesses Minerva, &c.

4. Proper names for the most part want the plural :

Unless several of the same name be spoken of ; as, *duodecim Cæsares*, the twelve Cæsars.

The cases of Latin nouns are thus expressed in English ;

1. With the indefinite article, *a king*.

| Singular. |                            |                 | Plural. |                            |               |
|-----------|----------------------------|-----------------|---------|----------------------------|---------------|
| Nom.      |                            | <i>a king,</i>  | Nom.    |                            | <i>kings,</i> |
| Gen.      | <i>of</i>                  | <i>a king,</i>  | Gen.    | <i>of</i>                  | <i>kings,</i> |
| Dat.      | <i>to or for</i>           | <i>a king,</i>  | Dat.    | <i>to or for</i>           | <i>kings,</i> |
| Acc.      |                            | <i>a king,</i>  | Acc.    |                            | <i>kings,</i> |
| Voc.      | <i>O</i>                   | <i>king,</i>    | Voc.    | <i>O</i>                   | <i>kings,</i> |
| Abl.      | <i>with, from, in, by,</i> | <i>a king :</i> | Abl.    | <i>with, from, in, by,</i> | <i>kings.</i> |

2. With

2. With the definite article, *the king*.

|                                          | Singular.        |                                           | Plural.           |
|------------------------------------------|------------------|-------------------------------------------|-------------------|
| Nom.                                     | <i>the king,</i> | Nom.                                      | <i>the kings,</i> |
| Gen. <i>of</i>                           | <i>the king,</i> | Gen. <i>of</i>                            | <i>the kings,</i> |
| Dat. <i>to or for</i>                    | <i>the king,</i> | Dat. <i>to or for</i>                     | <i>the kings,</i> |
| Acc.                                     | <i>the king,</i> | Acc.                                      | <i>the kings,</i> |
| Voc. <i>O</i>                            | <i>king,</i>     | Voc. <i>O</i>                             | <i>kings,</i>     |
| Ab. <i>with, from, in, by, the king:</i> |                  | Ab. <i>with, from, in, by, the kings.</i> |                   |

## G E N D E R.

Nouns in Latin are said to be of different genders, not merely from the distinction of sex, but chiefly from their being joined with an adjective of one termination, and not of another. Thus, *penna*, a pen, is said to be feminine, because it is always joined with an adjective in that termination which is applied to females; as, *bena penna*, a good pen, and not *bonus penna*.

The gender of nouns which signify things without life, depends on their termination, and different declension.

To distinguish the different genders, grammarians make use of the pronoun *hic*, to mark the masculine; *hec*, the feminine; and *hoc*, the neuter.

## GENERAL RULES concerning Gender.

1. Names of males are masculine; as, *Himērus*, Homer; *pāter*, a father; *poēta*, a poet.
2. Names of females are feminine; as, *Hēlēna*, Helen; *mulier*, a woman; *uxor*, a wife; *māter*, a mother; *sōror*, a sister; *Tellus*, the goddess of the earth.
3. Nouns which signify either the male or female, are of the common gender; that is, either masculine or feminine; as,  
*Hic bos*, an ox; *hec bos*, a cow; *hic pārens*, a father; *hec pārens*, a mother.

The following list comprehends most nouns of the common gender.

*adōlescens*,

|                                     |                                 |                                                 |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| Adölescens, { a young<br>man, or    | Conjux, a husband or<br>wife.   | Nemo, no body                                   |
| Juvenis, { woman.                   | Conviva, a guest.               | Obes, an hostage.                               |
| Affinis, a relation by<br>marriage. | Custos, a keeper.               | Patruelis, a cousin ger-<br>man by the father's |
| Antistes, a prelate.                | Dux, a leader.                  | Præs, a surety. [ <i>sic</i> ].                 |
| Auctor, an author.                  | Hæres, an heir.                 | Princeps, a prince or<br>princeps.              |
| Augur, a soothsayer.                | Hostis, an enemy.               | Sacerdos, a priest or<br>priestess.             |
| Canis, a dog or bitch.              | Infans, an infant.              | Sus, a swine.                                   |
| Civis, a citizen.                   | Interpres, an interpre-<br>ter. | Testis, a witness.                              |
| Clens, a client.                    | Judex, a judge. [ <i>ter</i> ]. | Vates, a prophet.                               |
| Cömes, a companion.                 | Martyr, a martyr.               | Vindex, an avenger*.                            |
|                                     | Miles, a soldier.               |                                                 |
|                                     | Müniceps, a burghess.           |                                                 |

But *antistes*, *clens*, and *hospes*, also change their termination to express the feminine, thus, *antistita*, *clenta*, *hospita*: in the same manner with *leo*, a lion; *leona*, a lioness; *æquus*, *æqua*; *malus*, *mala*; and many others.

There are several nouns, which, though applicable to both sexes, admit only of a masculine adjective; as, *advena*, a stranger; *agricola*, a husbandman; *assecta*, an attendant; *accila*, a neighbour; *exul*, an exile; *latro*, a robber; *fur* a thief; *opifex*, a mechanic; &c. There are others, which, though applied to persons, are, on account of their termination, always neuter; as, *scortum*, a courtesan; *mancipium*, *servitium*, a slave, &c.

In like manner *opæra*, slaves or day-labourers; *vigilie*, *excubie*, watches; *noxæ*, guilty persons; though applied to men, are always feminine.

## OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. I. The names of brute animals commonly follow the gender of their termination.

Such are the names of wild beasts, birds, fishes, and insects, in which the distinction of sex is either not easily discerned, or seldom attended to. Thus, *passer*, a sparrow, is masculine, because nouns in *er* are masculine; so *aquila*,

- \* *Conjux*, atque *parens*, *infans*, *patruelis*, et *hæres*.  
*Affinis*, *vindex*, *judex*, *dux*, *miles*, et *hostis*,  
*Augur*, et *antistes*, *juvenis*, *conviva*, *sacerdos*,  
*Municeps*, *vates*, *adolefcens*, *civis*, et *auctor*,  
*Custos*, *nemo*, *com*, *testis*, *fur*, *bosque*, *canisque*,  
*Interpresque*, *clens*, *prinsep*, *præs*, *martyr*, et *obes*.



*āquila*, an eagle, is feminine, because nouns in *a* of the first declension are feminine. These are called *Epicene* or promiscuous nouns. When any particular sex is marked, we usually add the word *mas* or *fēmina*; as, *mas passer*, a male sparrow; *fēmina passer*, a female sparrow.

Obs. 2. A proper name, for the most part, follows the gender of the general name under which it is comprehended.

Thus, the names of months, winds, rivers, and mountains, are masculine; because *mensis*, *ventus*, *mons*, and *fluvius*, are masculine; as, hic *Aprilis*, April; hic *Āquilo*, the north wind; hic *Africus*, the south-west wind; hic *Tiberis*, the river Tiber; hic *Othrys*, a hill in Thessaly. But many of these follow the gender of their termination; as, hęc *Matrona*, the river Marne in France; hęc *Ætna*, a mountain in Sicily; hoc *Sōraete*, a hill in Italy.

In like manner, the names of countries, towns, trees, and ships, are feminine, because *terra* or *rēgio*, *urbs*, *arbor*, and *nāvis*, are feminine; as, hęc *Ægyptus*, Egypt; *Sāmos*, an island of that name; *Cōrinthus*, the city Corinth; *pōmus*, an apple-tree; *Centaurus*, the name of a ship: Thus also the names of poems, hęc *īlias*, *-ados*, and *Odyssēa*, the two poems of Homer; hęc *Ænēis*, *-idos*, a poem of Virgil's; hęc *Eunūchus*, one of Terence's comedies.

The gender, however, of many of these depends on the termination; thus, hic *Pontus*, a country of that name; hic *Sulmo*, *-ōnis*; *Pessinus*, *-untis*; *Hydrus*, *-untis*, names of towns; hęc *Persis*, *-idis*, the kingdom of Persia; *Carthāgo*, *-inis*, the city Carthage: hoc *Albion*, Britain: hoc *Cære*, *Reāte*, *Præneste*, *Tibur*, *īlium*; names of towns. But some of these are also found in the feminine; as, *Ge-lida Præneste*, Juvenal. iii. 190.; *Alta Ilion*, Ovid. Met. xiv. 466.

The following names of trees are masculine, *oleaster*, *-tri*, a wild olive tree; *ramnus*, the white bramble.

The following are masculine or feminine; *cytisus*, a kind of shrub; *rūbus*, the bramble-bush; *lārix*, the larch-tree; *lōtus*, the lot-tree; *cupressus*, the cypress-tree. The first two however are oftener masculine; the rest oftener feminine.

Those in *um* are neuter; as, *buxum* the bush, or box-tree; *ligustrum*, a privet; so likewise are *sūber*, *-ēris* the cork.



cork-tree; *sīler*, -*ēris*, the osier; *rōbur*, -*ōris*, oak of the hardest kind; *ācer*, -*ēris*, the mapple-tree.

The place where trees or shrubs grow is commonly neuter; as, *Arbustum*, *quercetum*, *esculetum*, *salicetum*, *fruticetum*, &c. a place where trees, oaks, beeches, willows, shrubs, &c. grow: Also the names of fruits and timber, as, *pomum*, or *mālum*, an apple; *pīrum*, a pear; *ebēnum*, ebony, &c. But from this rule there are various exceptions.

Obs. 3. Several nouns are said to be of the doubtful gender; that is, are sometimes found in one gender, and sometimes in another; as, *dies*, a day, masculine or feminine; *vulgus*, the rabble, masculine or neuter.

## FIRST DECLENSION.

Nouns of the first declension end in *a*, *e*, *as*, *es*, Latin nouns end only in *a*, and are of the feminine gender.

The terminations of the different cases are; Nom. and Voc. Sing. *a*; Gen. and Dat. *æ* diphthong; Acc. *am*; Abl. *ā*: Nom. and Voc. Plur. *æ*; Gen. *arum*; Dat. and Abl. *is*; Acc. *ās*: Thus,

| Penna, <i>a pen</i> , fem.    |                               | Terminations.   |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------|
| <i>Singular.</i>              | <i>Plural.</i>                |                 |
| N. penna, <i>a pen</i> ;      | N. pennæ, <i>pens</i> ;       | <i>a, æ,</i>    |
| G. pennæ, <i>of a pen</i> ;   | G. pennarum, <i>of pens</i> ; | <i>æ, arum,</i> |
| D. pennæ, <i>to a pen</i> ;   | D. pennis, <i>to pens</i> ;   | <i>æ, is,</i>   |
| A. pennam, <i>a pen</i> ;     | A. pennas, <i>pens</i> ;      | <i>am, as,</i>  |
| V. penna, <i>O pen</i> ;      | V. pennæ, <i>O pens</i> ;     | <i>a, æ,</i>    |
| A. pennâ, <i>with a pen</i> : | A. pennis, <i>with pens.</i>  | <i>â, is.</i>   |

In like manner decline,

|                                         |                                                      |                                       |
|-----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>Acerra</i> , <i>a censer</i> .       | <i>Alūta</i> , <i>tanned leather</i> .               | <i>Ancilla</i> , <i>an landmaid</i> . |
| <i>Acta</i> , <i>the shore</i> .        | <i>Ambrōsia</i> , <i>the food of the gods</i> .      | <i>Anchōra</i> , <i>an anchor</i> .   |
| <i>Æra</i> , <i>a period of time</i> .  | <i>Amīta</i> , <i>an aunt, the father's sister</i> . | <i>Anguilla</i> , <i>an eel</i> .     |
| <i>Ærumna</i> , <i>toil</i> .           | <i>Amphōra</i> , <i>a cask</i> .                     | <i>Ansa</i> , <i>a handle</i> .       |
| <i>Agricola</i> , <i>a husbandman</i> . | <i>Ampulla</i> , <i>a jug. plur. bombast</i> .       | <i>Antenna</i> , <i>a sail-yard</i> . |
| <i>Ala</i> , <i>a wing</i> .            | <i>Amūrca</i> , <i>the lees of oil</i> .             | <i>Antlia</i> , <i>a pump</i> .       |
| <i>Alāpa</i> , <i>a blow</i> .          |                                                      | <i>Aqua</i> , <i>water</i> .          |
| <i>Alauda</i> , <i>a lark</i> .         |                                                      | <i>Aquila</i> , <i>an eagle</i> .     |
| <i>Alga</i> , <i>sea-weed</i> .         |                                                      | <i>Arā</i> , <i>an altar</i> .        |

B

*Aranea*,

|                                        |                                     |                                      |
|----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Ărănea, a spider.                      | Căţăpulta, an engine to cast darts. | Crăşida, a shipper.                  |
| Arca, a chest.                         | Căţena, a chain.                    | Crêta, chalk.                        |
| Ardea, & eöla, a heron.                | Căterva, a body of men.             | Crita, a cress.                      |
| Ărea, an open place.                   | Căthedra, a chair, a pulpit         | Crâmăna, a purse.                    |
| Ărăna, sand.                           | Cauda, the tail.                    | Cruşta, & -um, a morsel.             |
| Argilla, potter's earth.               | Caula, a sheep cote.                | Cul-ita, a cushion.                  |
| Ărila, an ear of corn.                 | Causa, a cause.                     | Căşina, a kitchen.                   |
| Ărha, an earnest penny.                | Căverna, a cavern.                  | Culpa, a fault.                      |
| Ărvina, fat.                           | Căvilla, a banter.                  | Cămăra, a corn basket.               |
| Afcia, an ax.                          | Cella, a cell.                      | Căpa, a tun.                         |
| Athlăa, m. a wrestler.                 | Cera, wax.                          | Căra, care.                          |
| Aula, a hall.                          | Ceremonia, a ceremony.              | Căria, a senate-house.               |
| Aura, a breeze.                        | Cervisia, ale, beer.                | Curruca, a badge-sparrow.            |
| Auriga, m. a charioteer.               | Cerussa, white lead, paint.         | Cymba, a boat.                       |
| Ăvia, a grandmother.                   | Cetra, a square target.             | Dăcompăda, a pole of ten feet.       |
| Ăxilla, the arm-pit.                   | Charta, paper,                      | Dixeta, diet, food.                  |
| Băţana, a robe.                        | Chorda, a string.                   | Dolăbra, an ax.                      |
| Barba, a beard.                        | Cicada, a kind of insect.           | Drachma, a drachm, a weight or coin. |
| Bellua, any large beast.               | Ciconia a stork.                    | Ăpistolă, a letter.                  |
| Bestia, a beast.                       | Cicuta, hemlock.                    | Esca, a bait.                        |
| Păta, beet, an herb.                   | Cinara, an artichoke.               | Făba, a bean.                        |
| Bibliopola, a bookseller.              | Cista, a chest.                     | Făbula, a fable.                     |
| Bibliohăca, a library.                 | Cisterna, a cistern.                | Făma, fame.                          |
| Blarra, a moth.                        | Cythara, a harp.                    | Făcina, meal.                        |
| Bractea, a thin leaf of gold.          | Clăva, a club.                      | Fascia a bandage.                    |
| Brasica, collyflower.                  | Clepsydra, an hour-glass.           | Făvilla, embers.                     |
| Bruma, winter.                         | Clăca, a sink.                      | Fănestra, a window.                  |
| Bulla, a bubble, a ball or boss.       | Cochlea, a snail.                   | Făra, a wild beast.                  |
| Byrsa, an ox-hide.                     | Cœna, a supper.                     | Făruia, a rod.                       |
| Caliga, a kind of shoe set with nails. | Columba, a pigeon.                  | Făstăca, the foot of a tree.         |
| Caltha, marygold.                      | Cœma, the hair.                     | Fibra, a fibre.                      |
| Calva & calvaria, a skull.             | Cœmedia, a comedy.                  | Fibula, a clasp. [fel.               |
| Calumnia, slander.                     | Concha, a shell.                    | Fidălia, an earthen vessel.          |
| Cămcăna, a muse, a song.               | Cœpia, plenty.                      | Fimbria, a fringe.                   |
| Cămcăra, a vault.                      | Cœpula, a bond.                     | Fiscina, a bag, or basket.           |
| Cămpăna, a bell.                       | Corrigia, a shoe latchet.           | Fistăca, a rammer.                   |
| Canna, a cane or reed.                 | Côrôna, a crown, a circle.          | Fistula, a pipe.                     |
| Candela, a candle.                     | Cortina, a cauldron.                | Flamma, a flame.                     |
| Capra, a she-goat.                     | Costa, a rib.                       | Fămina, a woman.                     |
| Capfa, a coffer.                       | Coxa the haunch,                    | Forma, a form.                       |
| Cărina, the keel of a ship.            | Crăpula, a surfeit.                 | Formica, an ant.                     |
| Căsa, a cottage.                       | Crătăra, a cup                      | Fossa, a ditch.                      |
| Castanea, a chestnut.                  | Crătăuila, a gridiron.              | Fovea, a pit.                        |
|                                        | Crăna, a notch.                     | Frămea, a short spear.               |
|                                        |                                     | Făşca, a sea-fowl.                   |

Funda,

|                                                         |                                                 |                                                            |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| Funda, <i>a sling.</i>                                  | Lăcerna, <i>a riding coat.</i>                  | Măceria, <i>matter, stuff,</i><br><i>timber.</i>           |
| Furca, <i>a fork.</i>                                   | Lăcerta, <i>a lizard.</i>                       | Măterteră, <i>the mother's</i><br><i>sister.</i> [trēs.]   |
| Fuscina, <i>a trident.</i>                              | Lăcinia, <i>a fringe.</i>                       | Matta, <i>a mat or mat-</i>                                |
| Gălea, <i>an helmet.</i>                                | Lacrăma, <i>a tear.</i>                         | Măula, <i>a chamber pot.</i>                               |
| Gallina, <i>a hen.</i> [ulcer.]                         | Lăclăua, <i>lettuce.</i>                        | Măduia, <i>marrow.</i>                                     |
| Gangrăna, <i>an eating</i>                              | Lăcuna, <i>a ditch.</i>                         | Membrăna, <i>a thin skin,</i><br><i>a film; parchment.</i> |
| Gaza, <i>a treasure.</i>                                | Lăgăna, <i>a spon.</i>                          | Mămăria, <i>memory.</i>                                    |
| Gemma, <i>a gem.</i>                                    | Lăma, <i>a ditch.</i>                           | Mensa, <i>a table.</i>                                     |
| Găna, <i>the cheek.</i>                                 | Lămia, <i>a forcerefs.</i>                      | Menăra, <i>a measure.</i>                                  |
| Gănistă, <i>broom.</i>                                  | Lămăna, <i>a plate.</i>                         | Mărda, <i>dung.</i>                                        |
| Gingiva, <i>the gum.</i>                                | Lănt wood.                                      | Merga, <i>a ditch-fork.</i>                                |
| Glărea, <i>gravel.</i>                                  | Lancea, <i>a lance or spear.</i>                | Mărula, <i>a black-bird.</i>                               |
| Glăba, <i>a clod.</i>                                   | Lănistă, <i>m. a fencing-</i><br><i>master.</i> | Măta, <i>a goat.</i>                                       |
| Gula, <i>the gullet.</i>                                | Larva, <i>a mass.</i>                           | Mățăphăra, <i>a trope.</i>                                 |
| Gutta, <i>a drop.</i>                                   | Lăterna, <i>a lantern.</i>                      | Mica, <i>a crumb.</i>                                      |
| Hăbăna, <i>a rein.</i>                                  | Lătrina, <i>a house of of-</i><br><i>fice.</i>  | Mitra, <i>a mitra.</i>                                     |
| Hăra, <i>a bog-fly.</i>                                 | Leclăca, <i>a sedan or</i><br><i>chair.</i>     | Măla, <i>a mill.</i>                                       |
| Hăruă, <i>a sacrifice.</i>                              | Lăna, <i>a barud.</i>                           | Mănădăla, <i>a jack-daw.</i>                               |
| Hăsta, <i>a spear.</i>                                  | Lepa, <i>the leprosy.</i>                       | Mănăta, <i>money.</i>                                      |
| Hădăra, <i>ivy.</i>                                     | Libra, <i>a pound.</i>                          | Măra, <i>a delay.</i>                                      |
| Herba, <i>an herb.</i>                                  | Lăgăla, <i>a latsbet.</i>                       | Multa, <i>a fine.</i>                                      |
| Herma, <i>v. -es, m. a</i><br><i>statue of Mercury.</i> | Lăma, <i>a file.</i>                            | Măra, <i>a lamprey.</i>                                    |
| Hernia, <i>a rupture.</i>                               | Lănea, <i>a line.</i>                           | Măria, <i>pickle, brine.</i>                               |
| Hilla, <i>a sausage.</i>                                | Lăngua, <i>the tongue.</i>                      | Măsa, <i>a muse.</i>                                       |
| Hăra, <i>an hour.</i>                                   | Lăra, <i>a ridge or furrow.</i>                 | Măsa, <i>a fly.</i>                                        |
| Hăstia, <i>a vict m.</i>                                | Lătăra, <i>a letter.</i>                        | Măstăla, <i>a wasel.</i>                                   |
| Hydria, <i>a water pot.</i>                             | Lăcușta, <i>a le-ust.</i>                       | Myrrha, <i>myrrb.</i>                                      |
| Jăctura, <i>loss.</i>                                   | Lăcerna, <i>a light.</i>                        | Myrica, <i>a tamarisk.</i>                                 |
| Jănuă, <i>a gate.</i>                                   | Lăna, <i>the moon.</i>                          | Myșta, <i>v. -es, m. a</i><br><i>priest.</i>               |
| Idea, <i>a form, an idea.</i>                           | Lăscănia, <i>a nightingale.</i>                 | Năsa, <i>a net.</i>                                        |
| Idiôta, <i>m. an illiterate</i><br><i>person.</i>       | Lympha, <i>water.</i>                           | Năusea, <i>sea-sickness.</i>                               |
| Ignomănia, <i>an affront.</i>                           | Lyra, <i>a lyre.</i>                            | Nauta, <i>m. a mariner.</i>                                |
| Ilăcebra, <i>an allure-</i><br><i>ment.</i>             | Măchăna, <i>a machine.</i>                      | Nătădăla, <i>a field-mouse.</i>                            |
| Impenă, <i>expence.</i>                                 | Măcra, <i>a kneading-</i><br><i>trough.</i>     | Nănia, <i>a funeral song.</i>                              |
| Indăgăna, <i>m. a native.</i>                           | Măcăla, <i>a slain.</i>                         | Norma, <i>a rule.</i>                                      |
| İnădia, <i>hunger.</i>                                  | Măla, <i>the cheek-bone.</i>                    | Năvăcăla, <i>a razor.</i>                                  |
| İnfăla, <i>a mitre.</i>                                 | Mălăcia, <i>a calm.</i>                         | Năverca, <i>a stepmother.</i>                              |
| İnjăria, <i>a wrong.</i>                                | Malva, <i>a mallow.</i>                         | Nympha, <i>a nymph.</i>                                    |
| İuôpia, <i>want.</i>                                    | Mamma, <i>a p.p.</i>                            | Occa, <i>an burrow.</i>                                    |
| İnfăta, <i>a fringe.</i>                                | Mănăca, <i>a sleeve.</i>                        | Oăra, <i>a boat.</i>                                       |
| İnăla, <i>an island.</i>                                | Măntăca, <i>a wallet.</i>                       | ôda <i>v. -e, an ode or</i><br><i>song.</i>                |
| İnăa, <i>elicampant, an</i><br><i>herb.</i>             | Măppa, <i>a napkin.</i>                         | Offă, <i>a morsel.</i>                                     |
| İnvădia, <i>envy.</i>                                   | Mărgărita, <i>a pearl.</i>                      | ôlea, <i>an olive.</i>                                     |
| İra, <i>anger.</i>                                      | Mărra, <i>a mattock.</i>                        | Olla, <i>a pot.</i>                                        |
| Juba, <i>the mane.</i>                                  | Măssa, <i>a lump.</i>                           |                                                            |

|                                                                                  |                                                                          |                                                          |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| Öra, <i>a coast.</i>                                                             | Pica, <i>a magpy.</i>                                                    | Rāna, <i>a frog.</i>                                     |
| Orbita, <i>a path.</i>                                                           | Pila, <i>a ball.</i>                                                     | Rēpulla, <i>a refusal.</i>                               |
| Örca, <i>a jar.</i>                                                              | Pila, <i>a pillar.</i>                                                   | Rēsina, <i>resin.</i>                                    |
| Orchestra, <i>the stage, or<br/>the place next it,<br/>where the nobles sat.</i> | Pincerna, <i>m. a butler.</i>                                            | Rhēda, <i>a chariot.</i>                                 |
| Östra, <i>an oyster.</i>                                                         | Pinna, <i>a fin, a wing.</i>                                             | Rīma, <i>a chink.</i>                                    |
| Pagula, <i>a riding coat.</i>                                                    | Pirata, <i>m. a pirate.</i>                                              | Rīpa, <i>a bank.</i>                                     |
| Pagina, <i>a page.</i>                                                           | Piscina, <i>a fish-pond.</i>                                             | Rixa, <i>a scold.</i>                                    |
| Pala, <i>a scowl.</i>                                                            | Piruita, <i>a cake.</i>                                                  | Rōsa, <i>a rose.</i>                                     |
| Palæstra, <i>a wrestling,<br/>or place for it.</i>                               | Placenta, <i>a climate.</i>                                              | Rōta, <i>a wheel.</i>                                    |
| Palæa, <i>chuff.</i>                                                             | Plaça, <i>a blow.</i>                                                    | Rūga, <i>a wrinkle.</i>                                  |
| Palinodia, <i>a recanta-<br/>tion.</i>                                           | Planta, <i>a plant.</i>                                                  | Raina, <i>a downfall.</i>                                |
| Palla, <i>a large gown.</i>                                                      | Platēa, or Platēa, <i>a<br/>broad street.</i>                            | Runcina, <i>a saw or<br/>Rūta, ruz. [plans.</i>          |
| Palma, <i>the palm.</i>                                                          | Plūma, <i>a feather.</i>                                                 | Sāburra, <i>ballast.</i>                                 |
| Palpebra, <i>the eye-lid.</i>                                                    | Pluvia, <i>rain.</i>                                                     | Sāga, <i>a sorceress.</i>                                |
| Papilla, <i>the nipple.</i>                                                      | Pōlagra, <i>the gout.</i>                                                | Sāpina, <i>cramming.</i>                                 |
| Papula, <i>a pimple.</i>                                                         | Pœna, <i>a punishment.</i>                                               | Sāgitta, <i>an arrow.</i>                                |
| Pārāhōla, <i>comparing<br/>things together.</i>                                  | Pœta, <i>m. a poet.</i>                                                  | Sālebra, <i>a rugged way.</i>                            |
| Parma, <i>a shield.</i>                                                          | Pœtria, <i>a poetess.</i>                                                | Sāliunca, <i>lavender.</i>                               |
| Parra, <i>a jay.</i>                                                             | Pōlenta, <i>malt.</i>                                                    | Sāliva, <i>spittle.</i>                                  |
| Pātēra, <i>a goblet.</i>                                                         | Pōlīna, <i>policy.</i>                                                   | Salpa, <i>stock fish.</i>                                |
| Pausa, <i>a stop or pause.</i>                                                   | Pompa, <i>a procession.</i>                                              | Sambūca, <i>an harp, or<br/>engine of war.</i>           |
| Pēdica, <i>a fetter.</i>                                                         | Pōpa, <i>m. a priest, who<br/>slew the sacrifice.</i>                    | Sancimōnia, <i>devotion.</i>                             |
| Pēcula, <i>a mantle.</i>                                                         | Pōpina, <i>a tavern.</i>                                                 | Sindāpila, <i>a bier.</i>                                |
| Pēuria, <i>want.</i>                                                             | Porta, <i>a gate.</i>                                                    | Sanna, <i>a sciff.</i>                                   |
| Pera, <i>a purse.</i>                                                            | Prada, <i>plunder.</i>                                                   | Sarcina, <i>a burden.</i>                                |
| Perca, <i>a perch.</i>                                                           | Piarōgātiva, <i>sc. tri-<br/>bus, v. centuria,<br/>that voted first.</i> | Sāpilla, <i>a long spear.</i>                            |
| Peripha, <i>m. a deserter.</i>                                                   | Prōcella, <i>a storm.</i>                                                | Satrāpa, <i>v. -es, m. a<br/>Persian governor.</i>       |
| Periphanēna, <i>sc. char-<br/>ta, parchment.</i>                                 | Prōra, <i>the prow.</i>                                                  | Sāyra, <i>a scy.</i>                                     |
| Perna, <i>a gammen of<br/>bacen.</i>                                             | Prōsa, <i>prose.</i>                                                     | Scāla, <i>a ladder.</i>                                  |
| Personā, <i>a mask.</i>                                                          | Prōsapia, <i>a race.</i>                                                 | Scandūla, <i>a latch to co-<br/>ver houses.</i>          |
| Pertica, <i>a pole.</i>                                                          | Pruina, <i>bear-frost.</i>                                               | Scāpha, <i>a boat.</i>                                   |
| Petra, <i>a rock.</i>                                                            | Pruina, <i>a burning coal.</i>                                           | Scāpula, <i>the shoulder.</i>                            |
| Phalārica, <i>a long spear.</i>                                                  | Psaltria, <i>a music girl.</i>                                           | Scēna, <i>a stage.</i>                                   |
| Phlāretta, <i>a quiver.</i>                                                      | Puella, <i>a girl.</i>                                                   | Schēda, <i>a sheet or scroll.</i>                        |
| Phlāsiāna, <i>sc. -avis, a<br/>pheasant.</i>                                     | Pugna, <i>a battle.</i>                                                  | Schōla, <i>a school.</i>                                 |
| Phiala, <i>a vial.</i>                                                           | Pulpa, <i>the pulp.</i>                                                  | Scintilla, <i>a spark.</i>                               |
| Phlōnēla, <i>a nightin-<br/>gale.</i>                                            | Pūpūla, <i>the apple of<br/>the eye.</i>                                 | Scriolūna, <i>a tart or<br/>wafer.</i>                   |
| Philyra, <i>the linden tree,<br/>a leaf of paper.</i>                            | Purpura, <i>purple.</i>                                                  | Serolūla, <i>the king's evil.</i>                        |
| Plōce, <i>a sea-calf.</i>                                                        | Pūllula, <i>a blifer.</i>                                                | Scurra, <i>m. a buffoon.</i>                             |
|                                                                                  | Pyra, <i>a funeral pile.</i>                                             | Scūtica, <i>a scourge.</i>                               |
|                                                                                  | Quadra, <i>sc. -um, a<br/>square.</i>                                    | Scytāla, <i>a kind of ser-<br/>pent, or round staff.</i> |
|                                                                                  | Rābūla, <i>m. a wrangler.</i>                                            | Sēlibra, <i>half a pound.</i>                            |
|                                                                                  |                                                                          | Sēmihōra, <i>half an hour.</i>                           |

Sēmīta;

|                                                          |                                                   |                                                                           |
|----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Sēmīta, <i>a path</i> .                                  | Sublīca, <i>a pile</i> .                          | Tūba, <i>a trumpet</i> .                                                  |
| Sententi, <i>in opinion</i> .                            | Sūbūcūla, <i>a shirt</i> .                        | Tūnica, <i>a waistcoat</i> .                                              |
| Sentīna, <i>a sink</i> .                                 | Sūbūla, <i>an owl</i> . [con.]                    | Turba, <i>a crowd</i> .                                                   |
| Sēra, <i>a lock</i> .                                    | Succīdia, <i>a fitch of hair</i> .                | Turma, <i>a troop</i> .                                                   |
| Serra, <i>a saw</i> .                                    | Summa, <i>a sum, the whole</i> .                  | Ulna, <i>an ell</i> .                                                     |
| Setquihōra, <i>an hour and a half</i> .                  | Sūperbia, <i>pride</i> .                          | Ūdūla, <i>an owl</i> .                                                    |
| Sēta, <i>a bristle</i> .                                 | Sūra, <i>the calf of the leg</i> .                | Uiva, <i>selge</i> .                                                      |
| Sēbylla, <i>a prophets</i> .                             | Sutrina, <i>sc. taberna, a shoemaker's shop</i> . | Umbra, <i>a shade</i> .                                                   |
| Sīca, <i>a dagger</i> .                                  | Sūtūra, <i>a seam</i> .                           | Unda, <i>a wave</i> .                                                     |
| Sīliqua, <i>an husk</i> .                                | Sycōphanta, <i>m. a sharper</i> .                 | Ungūla, <i>a nail, the hoof</i> .                                         |
| Silva, <i>a wood</i> .                                   | Syllāba, <i>a syllable</i> .                      | Ūpūpa, <i>the poupo, a bird</i> .                                         |
| Sīnia, <i>an ape</i> .                                   | Symbōli, <i>a club, a scare of a reckoning</i> .  | Ūrina, <i>urine</i> .                                                     |
| Sīmīla, <i>flour</i> .                                   | Symphōnia, <i>harmony</i> .                       | Urna, <i>an urn</i> .                                                     |
| Sīcūla, <i>a bucket</i> .                                | Syngtrāpha, <i>a bill or bond</i> .               | Urtica, <i>a nettle</i> .                                                 |
| Sōcordia, <i>flute</i> .                                 | Tāberna, <i>a shop</i> .                          | Ūva, <i>a grape</i> .                                                     |
| Sōlea, <i>a shoe</i> .                                   | Tābūla, <i>a table</i> .                          | Vacca, <i>a cow</i> .                                                     |
| Sōphista, & -es, <i>m. a sophist</i> .                   | Tāda, <i>a torch</i> .                            | Vāgīna, <i>a scabbard</i> .                                               |
| Spēcūla, <i>a watch tower</i> .                          | Tānia, <i>a ribbon</i> .                          | Vappa, <i>palmed wine, a spendthrift</i> .                                |
| Spēlunca, <i>a cave</i> .                                | Techna, <i>a trick or wile</i> .                  | Vena, <i>a vein</i> .                                                     |
| Sphēra, <i>a sphere</i> .                                | Tēgūla, <i>a tile</i> .                           | Vēnia, <i>leave</i> .                                                     |
| Spīca, <i>an ear of corn</i> .                           | Tēla, <i>a web</i> .                              | Verna, <i>m: an home-born slave</i> .                                     |
| Spīna, <i>the back bone</i> .                            | Tērebra, <i>a wimble</i> .                        | Verrūca, <i>a wart</i> .                                                  |
| Spīra, <i>a wreath</i> .                                 | Terra, <i>the earth</i> .                         | Vesica, <i>the bladder</i> .                                              |
| Sponda, <i>a bedstead</i> .                              | Tessera, <i>a dye</i> .                           | Vespa, <i>a wasp</i> .                                                    |
| Spongia, <i>a sponge</i> .                               | Testa, <i>an earthen pot</i> .                    | Via, <i>a way</i> .                                                       |
| Sponsa, <i>a bride</i> .                                 | Textrina, <i>a weaver's shop</i> .                | Vicia, <i>a catch or tare</i> .                                           |
| Sporta, <i>a basket</i> .                                | Thēca, <i>a case</i> .                            | Victīma, <i>a victim</i> .                                                |
| Spūma, <i>foam</i> .                                     | Tibia, <i>a pipe, the leg</i> .                   | Victōria, <i>a conquest</i> .                                             |
| Squāma, <i>a scale</i> .                                 | Tilla, <i>the linden tree</i> .                   | Villa, <i>a country seat</i> .                                            |
| Squilla, <i>a prawn or scrimp</i> .                      | Tinea, <i>a moth</i> .                            | Vindēmia, <i>vintage</i> .                                                |
| Stātera, <i>a balance</i> .                              | Toustrina, <i>a barber's shop</i> .               | Vindicta, <i>vengeance: a rod laid on the head of slaves when freed</i> . |
| Stātua, <i>a statue</i> .                                | Trāgēdia, <i>a tragedy</i> .                      | Violā, <i>a violet</i> .                                                  |
| Stella, <i>a star</i> .                                  | Trāgūla, <i>a javelin with a barbed head</i> .    | Vipera, <i>a viper</i> .                                                  |
| Stipūla, <i>flubble</i> .                                | Trāhea, <i>a sledge or drag</i> .                 | Virga, <i>a rod</i> .                                                     |
| Sīvia, <i>an icicle</i> .                                | Trāma, <i>the woof</i> .                          | Vita, <i>life</i> .                                                       |
| Sīva, <i>the plow-tail</i> .                             | Trochlea, <i>a pulley</i> .                       | Vinta, <i>a fillet</i> .                                                  |
| Stōla, <i>a gown</i> .                                   | Trulla, <i>a trowel</i> .                         | Vivra, <i>a ferret</i> .                                                  |
| Strangūria, <i>the making of water with great pain</i> . | Trūtina, <i>a balance</i> .                       | Vōla, <i>the palm of the hand</i> .                                       |
| Strēna, <i>a new year's gift</i> .                       |                                                   | Zōna, <i>a girdle, a zone</i> .                                           |
| Strūma, <i>a botch</i> .                                 |                                                   |                                                                           |
| Sūpa, <i>tow</i> .                                       |                                                   |                                                                           |



## EXCEPTIONS.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine: *Hadria*, the Hadriatic sea; *cōmēta*, a comet; *planēta*, a planet; and sometimes *talpa*, a mole; and *dāma*, a fallow-deer. *Pascha*, the passover, is neuter.

Exc. 2. The ancient Latins sometimes formed the genitive singular in *āi*; thus, *aula*, a hall, gen. *aulāi*; and sometimes likewise in *as*; which form the compounds of *fāmilia* usually retain; as, *māter-fāmiliās*, the mistress of a family; genit. *matris-fāmiliās*; nom. plur. *matres-fāmiliās*, or *matres-familiarum*.

Exc. 3. The following nouns have more frequently *abus* in the dative and ablative plural, to distinguish them in these cases from masculines in *us* of the second declension:

*Anīa*, the joint, the life.

*Filia*, & *Nāta*, a daughter.

*Dea*, a goddess.

*Liberta*, a freed woman.

*ſqua*, a mare.

*Mūia*, a she-mule.

*Fāmūla*, a female servant.

Thus *deabus*, *filiabus*, rather than *filiis*, &c.

## GREEK NOUNS.

Nouns in *as*, *es*, and *e*, of the first declension, are Greek. Nouns in *as* and *es* are masculine; nouns in *e* are feminine.

Nouns in *as* are declined like *penna*; only they have *am* or *an* in the accusative; as, *Ænēas*, *Æneas*, the name of a man; gen. *Ænēas*; dat. *-e*; acc. *-am* or *-an*; voc. *-a*; abl. *ā*. So *Bōreas*, *-ea*, the north wind; *Tiāras*, *-ē*, a turban. In prose they have commonly *am*, but in poetry oftener *an*, in the accusative. Greek nouns in *a* have sometimes also *an* in the acc. in poetry; as *Oſſa*, *-am*, or *-an*, the name of a mountain.

Nouns in *es* and *e* are thus declined,

*Anchīſes*, *Anchiſes*, the name of a man.

*Singular.*

|                               |                               |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> <i>Anchīſes</i> , | <i>Acc.</i> <i>Anchiſen</i> , |
| <i>Gen.</i> <i>Anchiſæ</i> ,  | <i>Voc.</i> <i>Anchiſe</i> ,  |
| <i>Dat.</i> <i>Anchiſæ</i> ,  | <i>Abl.</i> <i>Anchiſe</i> .  |

*Pēnēlōpe*, *Penelope*, the name of a woman.

*Singular.*

|                                |                                |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> <i>Pēnēlōpe</i> ,  | <i>Acc.</i> <i>Penelopen</i> , |
| <i>Gen.</i> <i>Penelopes</i> , | <i>Voc.</i> <i>Penelope</i> ,  |
| <i>Dat.</i> <i>Pēnēlope</i> ,  | <i>Abl.</i> <i>Penelope</i> .  |

These

These nouns, being proper names, want the plural, unless when several of the same name are spoken of, and then they are declined like the plural of *penna*.

The Latins frequently turn Greek nouns in *es* and *e* into *a*; as, *Atrida*, for *Atrides*; *Perfa*, for *Perfes*, a Persian; *Geometra*, for *-tres*, a Geometrician; *Circa*, for *Circe*; *Epitōma*, for *-me*, an abridgement; *Grammatica*, for *-ce*, grammar; *Rhetōrica*, for *-ce*, oratory. So *Clinia*, for *Clinias*, &c. The accusative of nouns in *es* and *e* is found sometimes in *em*.

*Note.* We sometimes find the genit. plur. contracted; as, *Calicūlūm* for *Calicolarum*; *Ænūlūm*, for *-arum*.

## SECOND DECLENSION.

Nouns of the second declension end in *er*, *ir*, *ur*, *us*, *um*; *os*, *on*.

Nouns in *um* and *on* are neuter; the rest are masculine.

Nouns of the second declension have the gen. sing. in *i*; the dat. and abl. in *o*; the acc. in *um*; the voc. like the nom. (But nouns in *us* make the vocative in *e*;) The nom. and voc. plur. in *i*, or *a*; the gen. in *orum*; the dat. and abl. in *is*; and the acc. in *os*, or *a*; as,

*Gēner*, a son-in-law, masc.

| Sing.                | Plur.                  | Terminations.                                  |
|----------------------|------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> gēner,   | <i>Nom.</i> gēnēri,    | <i>er</i> , <i>ir</i> , <i>us</i> , <i>i</i> , |
| <i>Gen.</i> gēnēri,  | <i>Gen.</i> generōrum, | <i>i</i> , <i>orum</i> ,                       |
| <i>Dat.</i> genero,  | <i>Dat.</i> generis,   | <i>o</i> , <i>is</i> ,                         |
| <i>Acc.</i> generum, | <i>Acc.</i> generos,   | <i>um</i> , <i>os</i> ,                        |
| <i>Voc.</i> gener,   | <i>Voc.</i> generi,    | <i>er</i> , <i>ir</i> , <i>e</i> , <i>i</i> ,  |
| <i>Abl.</i> genero.  | <i>Abl.</i> generis.   | <i>o</i> , <i>is</i> .                         |

After the same manner decline *sicer*, *-ēri*, a father-in-law; *puer*, *-ēri*, a boy: So *Furcifer*, a villain; *Lucifer*, the morning star; *adulter*, an adulterer; *armiger*, an armour bearer; *presbiter*, an elder; *Mulciber*, a name of the god vulcan; *vesper*, the evening; and *iber*, *-ēri*, a Spaniard, the only noun in *er* which has the genit. long, and its compound *Celtiber*, *-ēri*: Also, *vir*, *viri*, a man, the only noun in *ir*; and its compounds, *Lēvir*, a brother-in-law; *Semivir*, *duumvir*, *triumvir*, &c. And likewise *satur*, *-ūri*, full, (of old *saturus*,) an adjective.

But

But most nouns in *er* lose the *e* in the genitive; as,  
*Ager, a field, masc.*

| Sing.              | Plur.                |
|--------------------|----------------------|
| Nom. <i>äger,</i>  | Nom. <i>agri,</i>    |
| Gen. <i>agri,</i>  | Gen. <i>agrōrum,</i> |
| Dat. <i>agro,</i>  | Dat. <i>agris,</i>   |
| Acc. <i>agrum,</i> | Acc. <i>agros,</i>   |
| Voc. <i>ager,</i>  | Voc. <i>agri,</i>    |
| Abl. <i>agro.</i>  | Abl. <i>agris.</i>   |

In like manner decline,

|                                   |                                                 |                             |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>Xper, a wild boar.</i>         | <i>Cāper, an he goat.</i>                       | <i>Fāher, a workman.</i>    |
| <i>Arbiter, (ἄ-τρα,) a judge.</i> | <i>Cōüber, (ἄ-βρα, a serpent.</i>               | <i>Māgister, a master.</i>  |
| <i>Auster, the south-wind.</i>    | <i>Cūter, the coulter of a plough, a knife.</i> | <i>Mīnister, a servant.</i> |
| <i>Cāncr, a crab fish.</i>        |                                                 | <i>Ōnāger, a wild ass.</i>  |
|                                   |                                                 | <i>Scalper, a lancet.</i>   |

Also *liber*, the bark of a tree, or a book, which has *libri*; but *liber*, free, an adjective, and *Liber*, a name of Bacchus, the God of wine, have *libēri*. So likewise proper names, *Alexander*, *Evander*, *Periander*, *Mēnander*, *Teucer*, *Mēlēger*, &c. gen. *Alexandri*, *Evandri*, &c.

*Dōmīnus, a lord, masc.*

| Sing.                | Plur.                  |
|----------------------|------------------------|
| Nom. <i>dōmīnus,</i> | Nom. <i>dōmini,</i>    |
| Gen. <i>domini,</i>  | Gen. <i>dominōrum,</i> |
| Dat. <i>domino,</i>  | Dat. <i>dominis,</i>   |
| Acc. <i>dominum,</i> | Acc. <i>dominos,</i>   |
| Voc. <i>domine,</i>  | Voc. <i>domini,</i>    |
| Abl. <i>domino.</i>  | Abl. <i>dominis.</i>   |

In like manner decline,

|                                         |                                                      |                                  |
|-----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>Abācus, a table or desk.</i>         | <i>Argentārius, a banker.</i>                        | <i>Cāchinnus, a loud laugh.</i>  |
| <i>Acervus, a heap.</i>                 | <i>Artus, the shoulder of a host; also of a man.</i> | <i>Cādūceus, a wand.</i>         |
| <i>Aculeus, a sting.</i>                |                                                      | <i>Cādus, a cask.</i>            |
| <i>Agnus, a lamb.</i>                   | <i>Avnus, ἄ-να, an ass.</i>                          | <i>Cālānus, a reed.</i>          |
| <i>Alnus, an alder tree.</i>            | <i>Autumnus, the autumn.</i>                         | <i>Cālāthus, a basket.</i>       |
| <i>Alveus, the channel of a river.</i>  | <i>Avus, a grandfather.</i>                          | <i>Callus, ἄ-υμ, hard flesh.</i> |
| <i>Avunculus, the mother's brother.</i> |                                                      | <i>Cānīnus, a chimney.</i>       |
| <i>Angulus, a corner.</i>               | <i>Bajulus, a porter.</i>                            | <i>Canopus, a plain.</i>         |
| <i>Anīmus, the mind.</i>                | <i>Barus, an elephant.</i>                           | <i>Canthārus, a cup or jug.</i>  |
| <i>Annus, a year.</i>                   | <i>Eolus, a mo'el.</i>                               | <i>Carduus, a thistle.</i>       |
| <i>Annulus, a ring.</i>                 | <i>Bombus, a buzz.</i>                               | <i>Carpus, the wrist.</i>        |
| <i>Anus, a circle.</i>                  | <i>Cāballus, a pack-horse.</i>                       | <i>Carrus, ἄ-υμ, a cart.</i>     |
| <i>Architectus, a master-builder.</i>   | <i>Cācābus, a kettle.</i>                            |                                  |

*Caleus,*

|                                                           |                                                   |                                                      |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| Cāseus, <i>cheese.</i>                                    | Cūbitus, <i>a cubit.</i>                          | Furnus, <i>an oven.</i>                              |
| Cātālōgus, <i>a roll.</i>                                 | Cūcullus, <i>a hood.</i>                          | Fūsus, <i>a spindle.</i>                             |
| Cārīnus, <i>a platter.</i>                                | Cūcūlus vel cūcūlus, <i>a cuckoo.</i>             | Gallus, <i>a cock.</i>                               |
| Caurus, <i>a west wind.</i>                               | Cūleus, <i>a leather bag.</i>                     | Gērūlus, <i>a porter.</i>                            |
| Cedrus, <i>f. a cedar-tree.</i>                           | Culmus, <i>a stalk.</i>                           | Gibbus, <i>a swelling.</i>                           |
| Cervus, <i>a stag.</i>                                    | Cūllus, <i>a pot or jug.</i>                      | Glādius, <i>a sword.</i>                             |
| Cētus, <i>a whale, pl. cetæ, n. indecl.</i>               | Cūmūlus, <i>an heap.</i>                          | Glōbus, <i>a globe.</i>                              |
| Chīrurgus, <i>a surgeon.</i>                              | Cūneus, <i>a wedge.</i>                           | Grābātus, <i>a couch.</i>                            |
| Chōrus, <i>a choir.</i>                                   | Cūnicūlus, <i>a rabbit.</i>                       | Grācūlus, <i>a jackdaw.</i>                          |
| Cībus, <i>meat.</i>                                       | Cyāthus, <i>a cup or glass.</i>                   | Grāmūs, <i>a billock.</i>                            |
| Cincinnus, <i>a curl.</i>                                 | Cygnus, <i>a swan.</i>                            | Guttus, <i>a cruet or vial.</i>                      |
| Cinnus, <i>a medley.</i>                                  | Cylindrus, <i>a roller.</i>                       | Gyrus, <i>a circle.</i>                              |
| Cippus, <i>a grave-stone.</i>                             | Diālōgus, <i>a discourse between two or more.</i> | Hādus, <i>a kid.</i>                                 |
| Circīnus, <i>a pair of compasses. (circle.)</i>           | Dīgītus, <i>a finger.</i>                         | Hāmus, <i>a hook.</i>                                |
| Circus & circūlus, <i>a</i>                               | Discus, <i>a quoit.</i>                           | Hārīolus, <i>a diviner.</i>                          |
| Cīrius, <i>a twist, or curl.</i>                          | Divus, <i>a god.</i>                              | Hērūs, <i>a master.</i>                              |
| Citrus, <i>f. a citron tree.</i>                          | Dōlus, <i>deceit.</i>                             | Hespērus, <i>the evening.</i>                        |
| Clathrus, <i>a grate.</i>                                 | Dūmus, <i>a bush.</i>                             | Hinnūleus, <i>a young hind or fawn.</i>              |
| Clāvus, <i>a nail.</i>                                    | Ēchīnus, <i>an urchin.</i>                        | Hinnūs, <i>a mule.</i>                               |
| Clībānus, <i>a portable oven.</i>                         | Ēlēgus, <i>a elegy.</i>                           | Hircus, <i>a goat.</i>                               |
| Clīvus, <i>a bill.</i>                                    | Ēphebus, <i>a youth.</i>                          | Horiū, <i>a garden.</i>                              |
| Clypeus, <i>a round shield.</i>                           | Ēpilōgus, <i>a conclusion.</i>                    | Hūnērūs, <i>a shoulder.</i>                          |
| Coccus, <i>v. -um scarlet.</i>                            | Ēpiscōpus, <i>an overseer, a bishop.</i>          | Hydius, <i>a water-serpent.</i>                      |
| Gōlāphus, <i>a box on the ear.</i>                        | Ēquāleus, <i>an instrument of torture.</i>        | Internunciū, <i>a go between.</i>                    |
| Condus, <i>a butler.</i>                                  | Ēquus, <i>an horse.</i>                           | Isthmū, <i>a neck of land between two seas.</i>      |
| Condyliū, <i>the knuckle.</i>                             | Ērēbus, <i>hell.</i>                              | Juncus, <i>a bulrush.</i>                            |
| Congius, <i>a gallon.</i>                                 | Eurus, <i>the east wind.</i>                      | Jūvenū, <i>a bullock.</i>                            |
| Consōbrīnus, <i>a cousin-german by the mother's side.</i> | Fāgus, <i>f. a beech-tree.</i>                    | Lābyrinthus, <i>a maze.</i>                          |
| Contus, <i>a long pole.</i>                               | Fānūlus, <i>a man servant.</i>                    | Lācertus, <i>the arm.</i>                            |
| Conus, <i>a cone.</i>                                     | Fāvōniū, <i>the west wind.</i>                    | Lāmius, <i>a butcher.</i>                            |
| Cōphīnus, <i>a hostess.</i>                               | Fāvus, <i>an honeycomb.</i>                       | Lāqueus, <i>a noose.</i>                             |
| Cōquus, <i>a cock.</i>                                    | Figūlus, <i>a potter.</i>                         | Leclūs, <i>a couch.</i>                              |
| Cornus, <i>f. the cornel tree.</i>                        | Fiscus, <i>the exchequer.</i>                     | Lēgātus, <i>an ambassador.</i>                       |
| Corvus, <i>a raven.</i>                                   | Floccus, <i>a lock of wool.</i>                   | Legūleius, <i>an ignorant lawyer, a pettifogger.</i> |
| Cōrylus, <i>f. a huffle-tree.</i>                         | Flūvius, <i>a river.</i>                          | Lēthargus, <i>the letargy.</i>                       |
| Cōrymbus, <i>a bunch of ivy berries.</i>                  | Fōcus, <i>a hearth.</i>                           | Limbus, <i>a selvedge.</i>                           |
| Cōryphæus, <i>a ring-leader.</i>                          | Fraxīnus, <i>f. an ash tree.</i>                  | Limus, <i>slime.</i>                                 |
| Cōrytus, or -os, <i>a box-case.</i>                       | Frīctiliū, <i>a dice-box.</i>                     | Lītus, <i>a crook &amp; staff.</i>                   |
| Cōthurnus, <i>a buskin.</i>                               | Fācus, <i>a drone bee, faint.</i>                 | Lūcus, <i>a sacred grove.</i>                        |
|                                                           | Fūmus, <i>smoke. [danser.]</i>                    | Lumbicus, <i>an earth worm.</i>                      |
|                                                           | Fūnambūlus, <i>a rope-dancer.</i>                 | Lumbus, <i>the loin.</i>                             |
|                                                           | Fundus, <i>a farm.</i>                            | Lūpus, <i>a wolf.</i>                                |
|                                                           | Fungus, <i>a mushroom.</i>                        | Lychnus, <i>a lamp.</i>                              |

Māgus,

|                                   |                                  |                                  |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Māgus, <i>a magician.</i>         | Pāgus, <i>a canton or vil-</i>   | Pulvīnus, <i>a pillow.</i>       |
| Malleus, <i>a mallet.</i>         | lage.                            | Pūpillus, <i>an orphan.</i>      |
| Mālus, <i>the mast of a ship.</i> | Pālus, <i>a stake.</i>           | Pūpus, <i>a young child,</i>     |
| Mālus, <i>f. an apple-tree.</i>   | Pannus, <i>cloth.</i>            | <i>a babe.</i>                   |
| Maunus, <i>a little horse.</i>    | Pārā-itus, <i>a flatterer.</i>   | Pūtenus, <i>a well.</i>          |
| Māthēmāticus, <i>a ma-</i>        | Pardus, <i>a panther.</i>        | Quālus & quāfillus, <i>a</i>     |
| <i>thematician.</i>               | Pā ò hus, <i>an enter-</i>       | <i>basket.</i> [grapes]          |
| Mēdiastinus, <i>a slave, a</i>    | tainer.                          | Rā-ēnus, <i>a cluster of</i>     |
| <i>drudge.</i>                    | Patruus, <i>the father's</i>     | Rā hus, <i>a ray.</i>            |
| Mēdicus, <i>a physician.</i>      | <i>brother.</i>                  | Rāmus, <i>a branch.</i>          |
| Mendicus, <i>a beggar.</i>        | Patrōnus, <i>a patron.</i>       | Rēnus, <i>an oar.</i>            |
| Mergus, <i>a cormorant.</i>       | Pēdī ūlus, <i>a louse.</i>       | Rhombus, <i>a turbot.</i>        |
| Milvus, <i>a kite.</i>            | Pē-ŭus, <i>a bolt.</i>           | Rhynchus, <i>a snorting.</i>     |
| Mimus, <i>a mimic.</i>            | Pētāsus, <i>a broad brim-</i>    | Riscus, <i>a trunk.</i>          |
| Mōdius, <i>a bushel.</i>          | <i>med hat.</i>                  | Rivus, <i>a rivulet.</i>         |
| Mōdus, <i>a manner.</i>           | Phārus, <i>or -os, a watch-</i>  | Rōgus, <i>a funeral pile.</i>    |
| Mœchus, <i>an adulterer.</i>      | <i>tower.</i>                    | Rythmus metre, <i>hymn.</i>      |
| Mōrus, <i>f. a mulberry-</i>      | Philō-ōphus, <i>a lover</i>      | Saccus, <i>a sack.</i>           |
| <i>tree.</i>                      | <i>of wisdom.</i>                | Sarcōphāgus, <i>a stone,</i>     |
| Mūcus, <i>the filth of the</i>    | Phœbus, <i>poet. the sun.</i>    | <i>in which dead bodies</i>      |
| <i>nose, snot.</i>                | Physicus, <i>an enquirer</i>     | <i>were inclosed.</i>            |
| Mullus, <i>a mullet fish.</i>     | <i>into nature.</i>              | Sātyrus, <i>a satyr, a kind</i>  |
| Mūus, & -a, <i>a mule.</i>        | Picus, <i>a wood-pecker.</i>     | <i>of demigod.</i>               |
| Mūrus, <i>a wall.</i>             | Pileus, <i>a hat.</i>            | Scalmus, <i>a boat; a piece</i>  |
| Muscus, <i>mosi.</i>              | Pilus, <i>a hair.</i>            | <i>of wood where the</i>         |
| Myrtus, <i>f. a myrtle tree.</i>  | Pirus, <i>f. a pear-tree.</i>    | <i>oars hung.</i>                |
| Nævus, <i>a spot.</i>             | Plāgiarius, <i>a plagiarist,</i> | Scāpus, <i>a stalk, a shaft</i>  |
| Nānus, <i>a dwarf.</i>            | <i>a man stealer; or one</i>     | <i>or shank.</i>                 |
| Nāsus, <i>the nose.</i>           | <i>who steals from others</i>    | Scārus, <i>the fear, a fish.</i> |
| Nervus, <i>a string.</i>          | <i>books.</i>                    | Scirpus, <i>a rush.</i>          |
| Nidus, <i>a nest.</i>             | Plānus, <i>a vagrant, a</i>      | Scūrus, <i>a squirrel.</i>       |
| Nimbus, <i>a cloud.</i>           | <i>beggar.</i>                   | Scōpūlus, <i>a rock.</i>         |
| Nōdus, <i>a knot.</i>             | Plūteus, <i>a pent-house,</i>    | Scōpus, <i>a mark.</i>           |
| Nōthus, <i>a bastard.</i>         | <i>a press for books.</i>        | Scrūpūlus, <i>a doubt or</i>     |
| Nōtus, <i>the south wind.</i>     | Pōlus the pole, <i>heaven.</i>   | <i>scruple.</i>                  |
| Nucleus, <i>a kernel.</i>         | Pontus, <i>the sea.</i>          | Scrūpus, <i>a little stone.</i>  |
| Nūmērus, <i>a number.</i>         | Pō ūlus, <i>a people.</i>        | Scyphus, <i>a bowl.</i>          |
| Nummus, <i>a piece of</i>         | Pōpūlus, <i>f. a poplar-</i>     | Servus, <i>a slave.</i>          |
| <i>money.</i>                     | <i>tree.</i>                     | Sestertius, <i>two pounds</i>    |
| Nutius, <i>a messenger.</i>       | Porcus, <i>a hog.</i> (tree)     | <i>and a half; a ses-</i>        |
| Obdus, <i>a farting.</i>          | Portus, <i>a lock.</i>           | <i>terce, a Roman coin.</i>      |
| Occānus, <i>the ocean.</i>        | Primipilus, <i>the chief</i>     | Sicarius, <i>an assassin.</i>    |
| Ōcūlus, <i>the eye.</i>           | <i>centurion.</i>                | Simius, & -a, <i>an ass.</i>     |
| Orcus, <i>hell.</i>               | Privignus, <i>a stepson.</i>     | Sirius, <i>the dog star.</i>     |
| Ornus, <i>f. a wild ass.</i>      | Procus, <i>a sutor.</i>          | Soccus, <i>a kind of shoe.</i>   |
| Ostracismus, <i>a voting</i>      | Pronus, <i>a steward.</i>        | Somnus, <i>sleep.</i>            |
| <i>with shells.</i>               | Prūnus, <i>f. a plum-tree.</i>   | Sōnus, <i>a fund.</i>            |
| Pædāgōgus, <i>a servant</i>       | Pluttacus, <i>a parrot.</i>      | Spārus, <i>a spear.</i>          |
| <i>who attended boys.</i>         | Pugnus, <i>the fist.</i>         | Sponsus, <i>a bridegroom.</i>    |
|                                   | Pullus, <i>a chicken.</i>        | Stimulus,                        |



|                                                                     |                                                 |                                            |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <i>Stimulus</i> , a sting, a spur.                                  | <i>Thronus</i> , a royal seat.                  | <i>Tyrus</i> , a figure or type.           |
| <i>Stomachus</i> , the stomach.                                     | <i>Tryphus</i> , a chorus in honour of Bacchus. | <i>Ulmus</i> , f. an elm tree.             |
| <i>Sirius</i> , a thong, a strap.                                   | <i>Thyrsus</i> , a spear wrapt with ivy.        | <i>Umbilicus</i> , the navel.              |
| <i>Stylus</i> , a style, or iron pen to write with on waxen tables. | <i>Tytilus</i> , a title.                       | <i>Uncus</i> , a book.                     |
| <i>Sulculus</i> , a swine herd.                                     | <i>Tonus</i> , a tone.                          | <i>Unceus</i> , a pitcher.                 |
| <i>Succus</i> , juice.                                              | <i>Tonus</i> , a note in music.                 | <i>Ursus</i> , a bear.                     |
| <i>Suleus</i> , a furrow.                                           | <i>Tophus</i> , a gravel stone.                 | <i>Urus</i> , a buffalo.                   |
| <i>Surculus</i> , a young twig.                                     | <i>Tornus</i> , a turner's wheel.               | <i>Uterus</i> , the womb.                  |
| <i>Sufurrus</i> , a reaper.                                         | <i>Torus</i> , a couch.                         | <i>Valtus</i> , a stake.                   |
| <i>Talus</i> , the ankle, a die.                                    | <i>Tribus</i> , a tribe.                        | <i>Veneficus</i> , a sorcerer.             |
| <i>Taurus</i> , a bull.                                             | <i>Triumphus</i> , a triumph.                   | <i>Ventus</i> , the wind.                  |
| <i>Taxus</i> , f. the yew tree.                                     | <i>Trachus</i> , a top.                         | <i>Vicus</i> , a village, a street.        |
| <i>Terninus</i> , a bound.                                          | <i>Truncus</i> , the trunk.                     | <i>Vilius</i> , f. a poor owner of a farm. |
| <i>Thalamus</i> , a marriage bed-chamber.                           | <i>Tubus</i> , a tube or pipe.                  | <i>Villus</i> , shaggy hair.               |
| <i>Theologus</i> , a divine.                                        | <i>Tunulus</i> , a block.                       | <i>Vitelus</i> , the yolk of an egg.       |
| <i>Thesaurus</i> , a treasure.                                      | <i>Turdus</i> , a thrush.                       | <i>Vitricus</i> , a stepfather.            |
| <i>Tholus</i> , the roof of a temple.                               | <i>Tyrannus</i> , a tyrant.                     | <i>Vitulus</i> , a calf, a bull.           |
|                                                                     |                                                 | <i>Zephyrus</i> , the west-wind.           |

*Regnum*, a kingdom, neut.

Sing.

Plur.

*Nom.* regnum,

*Nom.* regna,

*Gen.* regni,

*Gen.* regnorum,

*Dat.* regno,

*Dat.* regnis,

*Acc.* regnum,

*Acc.* regna,

*Voc.* regnum,

*Voc.* regna,

*Abl.* regno :

*All.* regnis.

In like manner decline,

|                                                   |                                  |                                           |
|---------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <i>Acetum</i> , vinegar.                          | <i>Armentum</i> , an herd.       | <i>Butyrum</i> , butter.                  |
| <i>Acônitum</i> , wolfsbane, a poisonous plant.   | <i>Arvum</i> , f. us, a field.   | <i>Cælum</i> , a graving tool.            |
| <i>Adagium</i> , a proverb.                       | <i>Astrum</i> , a star.          | <i>Cementum</i> , materials for building. |
| <i>Admirationem</i> , a prop.                     | <i>Asylum</i> , a sanctuary.     | <i>Canistrum</i> , a basket.              |
| <i>Adytum</i> , the most secret part of a temple. | <i>Atrium</i> , a court or hall. | <i>Capistrum</i> , a halter or muzzle.    |
| <i>Album</i> , a register.                        | <i>Aulæum</i> , tapestry.        | <i>Castrum</i> , a castle.                |
| <i>Alium</i> , garlic.                            | <i>Aurum</i> , gold.             | <i>Centrum</i> , the centre.              |
| <i>Amentum</i> , a thong.                         | <i>Auxilium</i> , assistance.    | <i>Cerebrum</i> , the brain.              |
| <i>Amuletum</i> , a charm.                        | <i>Aviærium</i> , a cage.        | <i>Clilographum</i> , a band-writing.     |
| <i>Anæthum</i> , anise.                           | <i>Palastrum</i> , a bath.       | <i>Cilium</i> , the eye-lashes.           |
| <i>Anticum</i> , a fore door.                     | <i>Bacanthrum</i> , an abyss.    | <i>Citrum</i> , citron wood.              |
| <i>Antrum</i> , a cave.                           | <i>Basium</i> , a kiss.          | <i>Clasicum</i> , a trumpet.              |
| <i>Apium</i> , parsley.                           | <i>Bellum</i> , war.             | <i>Cælum</i> , f. a. heaven.              |
| <i>Argentum</i> , silver.                         | <i>Biduum</i> , two days.        | <i>Cepum</i> ,                            |
|                                                   | <i>Biennium</i> , two years.     |                                           |
|                                                   | <i>Brachium</i> , an arm.        |                                           |

|                                                         |                                             |                                                  |
|---------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| Cœnum, mire, dirt.                                      | Ervum, vetches.                             | Initium, a beginning.                            |
| Collōquium, a conference.                               | Elſœdum, a chariot,                         | Intervallum, diſtance between.                   |
| Collum, the neck.                                       | Everriculum, a drag-net.                    | Jūdicium, judgment.                              |
| Commōdum, advantage.                                    | Exemplum, an example.                       | Jāgūlum, the throat.                             |
| Confinium, a bound or limit.                            | Exitium, destruction.                       | Jūgum, a yoke, the ridge of a bill.              |
| Conglārium, a largeſs.                                  | Exordium, a beginning.                      | Jurgium, a quarrel.                              |
| Conviciū, a reproach.                                   | Fānum, a temple.                            | Juſſum, an order.                                |
| Cōrium, a hide.                                         | Falcinū, witchcraft.                        | Juſtitium, a vacation.                           |
| Coſtum, ſpikenard.                                      | Faſtigium, the top.                         | Lābium, the lip.                                 |
| Crēmum, a dry ſtick.                                    | Fercūlum, a diſh of meat.                   | Lardum, bacon.                                   |
| Crēpuſculū, the twilight.                               | Ferrum, iron.                               | Lā-ānum, a chamber-pot.                          |
| Cribrum, a ſieve.                                       | Filum, a thread.                            | Lībū, a ſweet-cake.                              |
| Cūbicūlum, a bed-chamber.                               | Flābellum, a fan.                           | Līcium, the woof.                                |
| Cominum, cumin, an herb.                                | Flagrum & flāgellum, a whip.                | Lignum, wood.                                    |
| Cymbālū, a cymbal.                                      | Flamneum, a veil.                           | Līlium, a lily.                                  |
| Damnum, loſs.                                           | Fœnum, hay.                                 | Linæum, a ſheet.                                 |
| Dēūbrum, a temple.                                      | Fōhum, a leaf.                              | Līnum, lint.                                     |
| Dēmēſum, an allowance of meat.                          | Fōrum, a market-place.                      | Lōcum, a thong.                                  |
| Detritum, damage.                                       | Frāgum, a ſtrawberry.                       | Lucrum, gain.                                    |
| Diārium, a day's wages.                                 | Frētum, a narrow ſea.                       | Lūdibrium, a laughing-ſtock.                     |
| Dilūcūlum, the dawn-ing of day.                         | Frūmentum, corn.                            | Luſtrum, a ſurvey.                               |
| Dium, poet. the open air.                               | Fruſtum, a bit or piece.                    | Lūteum, the yolk of an egg.                      |
| Dōlium, a caſk.                                         | Fulcrum, a prop.                            | Lūrū, clay.                                      |
| Dōmicilium, an abode.                                   | Furtum, theſt.                              | Macellum, the ſhambles.                          |
| Dōnum, a gift.                                          | Grānārium, a granary.                       | Mānubrium, a hilt or handle.                     |
| Dorſum, the back.                                       | Grānum, a grain.                            | Matrimonium, marriage.                           |
| Eſſūgium, an eſcape.                                    | Grāphium, a pencil.                         | Mauſolæum, any ſumptuous monument.               |
| Electrum, amber.                                        | Grēmum, the boſom.                          | Membrum, a member.                               |
| Ēlémentum, an element, a letter.                        | Gymnāſium, a place of exerciſe.             | Mendācium, a lie.                                |
| Ēlōgium, a brief ſaying, a teſtimonial in one's praiſe. | Gynæcēum, the women's apartment.            | Meotum, the ſkin.                                |
| Ēmōlūmentum, profit.                                    | Gypſum, plaſter.                            | Métallum, metal, a mine.                         |
| Emplaſtrum, a plaſter.                                  | Hauſtrum, a bucket.                         | Mīlium, millet, a kind of grain.                 |
| Empōrium, a mart or market town.                        | Hellēbōrum, ſc-us, bellebore, a plant.      | Minium, vermilion.                               |
| Ēphippium, a ſaddle.                                    | Hörölōgium, a machine that tells the hours. | Mōmentum, weight, importance.                    |
| Ēpitāphium, an inſcription on a tomb.                   | Īdolum, an image.                           | Mōnōpōlium, the ſole right of ſelling any thing. |
| Ērgutūlum, a work-buſe.                                 | Idyllium, a paſtoral poem.                  | Monſtrum, a monſter, any                         |
|                                                         | Impērium, command.                          |                                                  |
|                                                         | Inceptum, an enterpriſe.                    |                                                  |
|                                                         | Indōcium, a diſcovery.                      |                                                  |
|                                                         | Indūſium, a ſhirt.                          |                                                  |
|                                                         | Ingēnium, wit, genius.                      |                                                  |

|                                                               |                                                                       |                                                             |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>any thing against the common course of nature.</i>         | Perpendiculū, <i>a straight line upwards or downwards.</i>            | Rastrum, <i>a rake.</i>                                     |
| Mortarium, <i>a mortar.</i>                                   | Petritum, <i>a waggon.</i>                                            | Refugium, <i>a shelter.</i>                                 |
| Museum, <i>a study or library.</i>                            | Pilentum, <i>a chariot.</i>                                           | Remedium, <i>a cure.</i>                                    |
| Mustum, <i>new wine.</i>                                      | Pilam, <i>a javelin.</i>                                              | Remulcum, <i>a tow-barge.</i>                               |
| Mysterium, <i>a mystery, a thing not easily comprehended.</i> | Pistillum, <i>the pestle of a mortar.</i>                             | Rēpāgulum, <i>a bar.</i>                                    |
| Nasturtium, <i>creffes.</i>                                   | Pisum, <i>pease.</i>                                                  | Rēpūdiū, <i>a divorce.</i>                                  |
| Naulum, <i>freight.</i>                                       | Plaustrum, <i>a waggon.</i>                                           | Responsū, <i>an answer.</i>                                 |
| Naufragium, <i>ship-wreck.</i>                                | Plectrum, <i>a quill or bow to play with on a musical instrument.</i> | Rētinaculum, <i>a cable.</i>                                |
| Negocium, <i>a thing, business.</i>                           | Plumbum, <i>lead.</i>                                                 | Rostrum, <i>the bill of a bird, the beak of a ship.</i>     |
| Nitrum, <i>nitre.</i>                                         | Pomarium, <i>an orchard.</i>                                          | Rūdimentum, <i>pl. -a, the first principles of any art.</i> |
| Obsequium, <i>compliance.</i>                                 | Pomcerium, <i>a void space on each side of a town-wall.</i>           | Rutrum, <i>a pick-axe.</i>                                  |
| Odium, <i>hatred.</i>                                         | Pomum, <i>an apple.</i>                                               | Sabbatum, <i>the sabbath.</i>                               |
| Omāsum, <i>the paunch.</i>                                    | Posticum, <i>a back-door.</i>                                         | Sābulum, <i>gravel.</i>                                     |
| Omentum, <i>the caul, or skin which covers the bowels.</i>    | Postliminium, <i>a return to one's country.</i>                       | Saccharum, <i>sugar.</i>                                    |
| Oppidum, <i>a town.</i>                                       | Prædium, <i>a farm.</i>                                               | Sācellum, <i>a chapel.</i>                                  |
| Opprobrium, <i>a reproach.</i>                                | Præjudiciū, <i>a fore-judging.</i>                                    | Sacerdotium, <i>the priesthood.</i>                         |
| Opsodium, <i>fish, or any thing eaten with bread.</i>         | Prælium, <i>a battle.</i>                                             | Sacramentum, <i>a military oath.</i>                        |
| Organum, <i>any instrument. [the lips.]</i>                   | Præmium, <i>a reward.</i>                                             | Sacrificium, <i>a sacrifice.</i>                            |
| Osculum, <i>a kiss; pl.</i>                                   | Præsidium, <i>a defence, a garrison.</i>                              | Sacrilegium, <i>stealing sacred things.</i>                 |
| Ostrum, <i>purple.</i>                                        | Prandium, <i>a dinner.</i>                                            | Sāgum, <i>a soldier's cloak.</i>                            |
| ōrium, <i>repose.</i>                                         | Pratum, <i>a meadow.</i>                                              | Sālarium, <i>a salary.</i>                                  |
| Ostium, <i>the door.</i>                                      | Prælum, <i>a press.</i>                                               | Sālīnum, <i>a salt-cellar.</i>                              |
| ōvum, <i>an egg.</i>                                          | Præcium, <i>a price.</i>                                              | Salsamentum, <i>salt-meat.</i>                              |
| Pabulum, <i>fodder.</i>                                       | Primordium, <i>a beginning.</i>                                       | Sālum, <i>the sea.</i>                                      |
| Pactum, <i>an agreement.</i>                                  | Principium, <i>a beginning.</i>                                       | Sandālium, <i>a slipper.</i>                                |
| Palātium, <i>a palace.</i>                                    | Privilegium, <i>a private law or special right.</i>                   | Sarcūlum, <i>a weeding-hook, a spade.</i>                   |
| Pālātum, <i>the palate.</i>                                   | Probrum, <i>a disgrace.</i>                                           | Sarmentum, <i>a twig.</i>                                   |
| Pallium, <i>a cloak.</i>                                      | Prōdigiū, <i>a prodigy, any thing preternatural.</i>                  | Sātisfactum, <i>a bond of security.</i>                     |
| Pāludamentum, <i>a general's robe.</i>                        | Prōmissum, <i>a promise.</i>                                          | Saxum, <i>a large stone.</i>                                |
| Pānarium, <i>a bread basket.</i>                              | Prōpositum, <i>a purpose.</i>                                         | Scalprum, <i>dim. Scalpellum, a knife.</i>                  |
| Pātibulum, <i>a gibbet.</i>                                   | Prōpugnaculum, <i>a bulwark. [saying.]</i>                            | Scaronum, <i>dim. Scabellum, a bench or form.</i>           |
| Pensum, <i>a task. [robe.]</i>                                | Prōverbium, <i>an old saying.</i>                                     | Sceptrum, <i>a sceptre, a mace.</i>                         |
| Peplum, <i>a woman's dress.</i>                               | Pulpitum, <i>a pulpit.</i>                                            | Scitum, <i>a decree.</i>                                    |
| Perjūrium, <i>perjury, taking a false oath.</i>               | Ramentum, <i>a chip or shaving.</i>                                   | Scortum, <i>an harlot.</i>                                  |
|                                                               |                                                                       | Scrinium, <i>a coffer.</i>                                  |
|                                                               |                                                                       | Scriptum,                                                   |

|                                                   |                                                                      |                                                                    |
|---------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Scriptum, <i>a writing.</i>                       | Sterquilinium, <i>a dung-bill.</i>                                   | Tintinnābŭlum, <i>a little bell.</i>                               |
| Scrŭpŭlum, <i>a scruple, a certain weight.</i>    | Stĭpendium, <i>pay.</i>                                              | Tirŏcĭnium, <i>an apprenticeſhip.</i>                              |
| Scŭtum, <i>a ſhield.</i>                          | Strāgŭlum, <i>a blanket.</i>                                         | Tormentum, <i>an engine, a torment</i>                             |
| Sĕcŭlum, <i>an age.</i>                           | Strātum, <i>a couch.</i>                                             | Toxicum, <i>poison.</i>                                            |
| Sĕminārium, <i>a nursery.</i>                     | Strigmentum, <i>a scraping.</i>                                      | Tribŭtum, <i>tax or cuſtom.</i>                                    |
| Sĕnācŭlum, <i>a ſenate-houſe.</i>                 | Stŭdium, <i>deſire, ſtudy.</i>                                       | Triclinium, <i>a dining-room.</i>                                  |
| Sĕnātŭs conſultum, <i>a decree of the ſenate.</i> | Stuprum, <i>debauchery.</i>                                          | Triduum, <i>three days.</i>                                        |
| Sĕricum, <i>ſilk.</i>                             | Suāvium, <i>a kiſſ.</i>                                              | Triennium, <i>three years.</i>                                     |
| Servitium, <i>ſlavery.</i>                        | Subſellium, <i>a bench.</i>                                          | Tripŭdium, <i>a dancing.</i>                                       |
| Serpyllum, <i>wild thyme.</i>                     | Subſidium, <i>help.</i>                                              | Trivium, <i>a place where three ways meet.</i>                     |
| Sertum, <i>a garland.</i>                         | Sŭburbanum, <i>a houſe near the town.</i>                            | Tropæum, <i>a trophy, a token of victory.</i>                      |
| Sĕrum, <i>robey.</i>                              | Sŭurbium, <i>the ſub-urbs, the part of a town without the walls.</i> | Tŭgŭrium, <i>a cottage.</i>                                        |
| Seſterium, <i>a thouſand ſeſtertii.</i>           | Sŭdarium, <i>a handkerchief.</i>                                     | Tympānum, <i>a drum.</i>                                           |
| Sĕvum, <i>tallow.</i>                             | Suffrāgium, <i>a vote.</i>                                           | Vaccinium, <i>a berry.</i>                                         |
| Signum, <i>a ſign, a ſtandard.</i>                | Suggeſtum, & -us, ūs, <i>a place raiſed above others.</i>            | Vādĭmŏnium, <i>bail; a promiſe to appear in court.</i>             |
| Sigillum, <i>a ſeal.</i>                          | Summārium, <i>an a-bridgement.</i>                                   | Vādum, <i>a ford, the ſea.</i>                                     |
| Silicernium, <i>a funeral ſupper, an old man.</i> | Supercilium, <i>the brow, pride.</i>                                 | Vallum, <i>a rampart.</i>                                          |
| Sinum, <i>a milk pail.</i>                        | Suſpĭrium, <i>a ſigh.</i>                                            | Velum, <i>a veil, a ſail.</i>                                      |
| Siſtrum, <i>a timbrel.</i>                        | Symbŏlum, <i>a ſign or token.</i>                                    | Venābŭlum, <i>a hunting pole.</i>                                  |
| Sŏdālĭtium, <i>a company, a corporation.</i>      | Sympŏſium, & -on, <i>a banquet.</i>                                  | Vĕnĕnum, <i>poison.</i>                                            |
| Sŏlārium, <i>a ſun-dial.</i>                      | Tabernācŭlum, <i>a tent.</i>                                         | Ventilābrum, <i>a fan.</i>                                         |
| Sŏlātium, <i>comfort.</i>                         | Tābŭlātum, <i>a ſtory.</i>                                           | Verbum, <i>a word.</i>                                             |
| Sŏlium, <i>a throne.</i>                          | Tābum, <i>black gaze.</i>                                            | Vestĭbŭlum, <i>a porch.</i>                                        |
| Sŏlum, <i>the ground.</i>                         | Tādium, <i>wearineſs.</i>                                            | Vestigium, <i>the print of the foot.</i>                           |
| Somnium, <i>a dream.</i>                          | Tālentum, <i>a talent.</i>                                           | Vexillum, <i>a banner.</i>                                         |
| Spātium, <i>a ſpace.</i>                          | Teſtŭm, <i>the roof, a houſe.</i>                                    | Viaticum, <i>money, or proviſions for a journey.</i>               |
| Speſtācŭlum, <i>a ſpecter.</i>                    | Telum, <i>a weapon.</i>                                              | Vincŭlum, <i>a chain.</i>                                          |
| Speſtrum, <i>a phantom, or apparition.</i>        | Templum, <i>a church.</i>                                            | Vinum, <i>wine.</i>                                                |
| Spĕcŭlum, <i>a looking glaſs.</i>                 | Tergum, <i>the back.</i>                                             | Vitium, <i>vice, a fault.</i>                                      |
| Spelæum, <i>a den.</i>                            | Teſtimŏnium, <i>an evidence.</i>                                     | Vitrum, <i>glaſs.</i>                                              |
| Spĭcĭlēgium, <i>a cleaning.</i>                   | Theatrum, <i>a theatre.</i>                                          | Vivārium, <i>a place to keep beaſts in, a warren or fiſh-pond.</i> |
| Spĭculum, <i>a dart.</i>                          | Thŭrĭbŭlum, <i>a cenſer, a veſſel to burn incenſe in.</i>            | Vŏcābŭlum, <i>a name or word.</i>                                  |
| Spirācŭlum, <i>a breathing hole.</i>              |                                                                      | Vŏtum, <i>a vow.</i>                                               |
| Spŏlium, <i>ſpoil.</i>                            |                                                                      |                                                                    |
| Spŭtum, <i>ſpittle.</i>                           |                                                                      |                                                                    |
| Stābŭlum, <i>a ſtable.</i>                        |                                                                      |                                                                    |
| Stādium, <i>a furlong.</i>                        |                                                                      |                                                                    |
| Stagnum, <i>a pond.</i>                           |                                                                      |                                                                    |
| Stannum, <i>tin.</i>                              |                                                                      |                                                                    |

## EXCEPTIONS in Gender.

Exc. 1. The following nouns in *us* are feminine, *hūmus*, the ground; *alvus*, the belly; *vannus*, a sieve.

And the following, derived from Greek nouns in *os* :

|                                                        |                                            |                                |
|--------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Åbyssus, a bottomless pit.                             | Carbāsus, a sail.                          | Ēremus, a desert.              |
| Antidōtus, a preservative against poison.              | Diālectus, a dialect, or manner of speech. | Mēthodus, a method.            |
| Arctos, the Bear, a constellation near the north pole. | Diāmetros, the diameter of a circle.       | Pēriōdus, a period.            |
|                                                        | Diphthongus, a diphthong.                  | Pērīmetros, the circumference. |
|                                                        |                                            | Phārus, a watch tower.         |
|                                                        |                                            | Synōdus, an assembly.          |

To these add some names of jewels and plants, because *gemma* and *planta* are feminine; as,

|                                   |                               |                             |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Amēthystus, an amethyst. [solite. | Sappīrus, a sapphire.         | Byssus, fine flax or linen. |
| Chrysolīthus, a chrysolite.       | Topazius, a topaz.            |                             |
| Chrysōphrāsus, a kind of topaz.   | Biblus, { an Egyptian reed of | Costus, costmary.           |
| Chrystallus, crystal.             | Pāpȳrus, { which pa-          | Crōcus, saffron.            |
| Leucochrysus, a jacinth.          |                               | Hyssōpus, hyssop.           |
|                                   |                               | Nardus, spikenard.          |

Other names of jewels are generally masculine; as, *Bēryllus*, the beryl; *carbunculus*, a carbuncle; *Pȳrōpus*, a ruby; *Smāragdus*, an emerald: And also names of plants; as, *Aspārāgus*, asparagus, or sparrowgrass; *ellebōrus*, ellobore; *raphānus*, radish or colewort; *intȳbus*, endive or succory, &c.

Exc. 2. The nouns which follow, are either masculine or feminine :

|                                                |                   |                          |
|------------------------------------------------|-------------------|--------------------------|
| Åtōmus, an atom.                               | Barbītus, a barp. | Grossus, a green fig.    |
| Balānus, the fruit of the palm-tree, ointment. | Cāmēlus, a camel. | Pēnus, a store-house.    |
|                                                | Cōlus, a distaff. | Phāsēlus, a little ship. |

Exc. 3. *Vīrus*, poison; *pēlāgus*, the sea, are neuter.

Exc. 4. *Vulgus*, the common people, is either masculine or neuter, but oftener neuter.

## EXCEPTIONS in Declension.

Proper names in *ius* lose *us* in the vocative; as,

*Hōrātius*, *Hōrāti*; *Virgilius*, *Virgili*: *Georgius*, *Georgi*, names of men; *Lārius*, *Lāri*; *Mincius*, *Minci*, names of lakes. *Filius*, a son, also hath *fili*: *gēnius*, one's guardian angel, *geni*; and *deus*, a god, hath *deus*, in the voc.



in the plural more frequently *dii* and *diis*, than *dēi* and *dēis*. *Meus*, my, an adjective pronoun, hath *mi*, and sometimes *meus* in the vocative.

Other nouns in *ius* have *e*; as, *tabellarius*, *tabellarie*, a letter-carrier; *pius*, *pie*, &c. So these epithets, *Dēlius*, *Dēlie*; *Tiryntbius*, *Tiryntbie*; and these possessives, *Laertius*, *Laertie*; *Saturnius*, *Saturnie*, &c. which are not considered as proper names.

The poets sometimes make the voc. of nouns in *us* like the nom. as, *fluvi*us, *Latin*us, for *fluvi*e, *Latine*, Virg. This also occurs in prose, but more rarely. Thus, *Audi tu pōpūlus*, for *pōpūle*. Liv i. 24.

The poets also change nouns in *er* unto *us*; as *Evander*, or *Evandrus*, voc. *Evander*, or *Evandre*: So *Meander*, *Leander*, *Tymber*, *Teucer*, &c. and so anciently *puer* in the voc. had *puere* from *puerus*.

Note, When the gen. sing. ends in *ii*, the latter *i* is sometimes taken away by the poets, for the sake of quantity; as, *tugūrī*, for *tugurii*; *ingēnī*, for *ingenii*, &c. And in the gen. plur. we find *dēum*, *libērūm*, *fabrūm*, *duūmvīrūm*, &c. for *dēorum*, *liberorum*, &c. and in poetry, *Teucrūm*, *Graiūm*, *Argivūm*, *Dānāūm*, *Pēlāsgūm*, &c. for *Teucrorum*, &c.

### GREEK NOUNS.

*Os* and *on* are Greek terminations; as, *Alphēos*, a river in Greece; *īlion*, the city Troy; and are often changed into *us* and *um*, by the Latins; *Alphēus*, *īlium*, which are declined like *dominus* and *regnum*.

Nouns in *eos* or *ēus* are sometimes contracted in the genitive; as *Orphēus*, gen. *Orphēi*, *Orphēi* or *Orphi*. So *Thesēus*, *Promethēus*, &c. But nouns in *eus*, when the *eu* is a diphthong, are of the third declension.

Some nouns in *os* have the gen. sing. in *o*; as, *Androgeos*, gen. *Androgeo*, or *-ēi*, the name of a man; *Athos*, *Atho*, or *-i*, a hill in Macedonia: both which are also found in the third decl. thus, nom. *Androgeo*, gen. *Androgeōnis*: So *Atho* or *Athon*, *-onis*, &c. Anciently nouns in *os*, in imitation of the Greeks, had the gen. in *u*; as, *Mēnandru*, *Apollodōru*, for *Mēnandri*, *Apollodori*, Ter.

Nouns in *os* have the acc. in *um* or *on*; as, *Delos* or *Delos*, acc. *Delum* or *Delon*, the name of an island.

Some neuters have the gen. plur. in *ōn*; as, *Georgica*, gen. pl. *Georgicōn*, books which treat of husbandry, as, Virgil's *Georgicks*.

### THIRD DECLENSION.

There are more nouns of the third declension than of all the other declensions together. The number of its final syllables is not ascertained. Its final letters, are thirteen, *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *y*, *c*, *d*, *l*, *n*, *r*, *s*, *t*, *x*. Of these, eight are peculiar to this declension, namely, *i*, *o*, *y*, *c*, *d*, *l*, *t*, *x*; *a* and *e* are common to it with the first declension; *n* and *r*, with

with the second ; and *s*, with all the other declensions. *A*, *i*, and *y*, are peculiar to Geek nouns.

The terminations of the different cases are these : nom. sing. *a*, *e*, &c. ; gen. *is* ; dat. *i* ; acc. *em* ; voc. *the same with the nominative* ; abl. *e*, or *i* : nom. acc. and voc. plur. *es*, *a*, or *ia* ; gen. *um*, or *ium* ; dat. and abl. *ibus* ; thus,

| Sermo, speech, masc. |                | Căput, the head, neut. |               |
|----------------------|----------------|------------------------|---------------|
| Sing.                | Plur.          | Sing.                  | Plur.         |
| N. sermo,            | N. sermōnes,   | N. căput,              | N. capīta,    |
| G. sermōnis,         | G. sermōnum,   | G. capītis,            | G. capitum,   |
| D. sermoni,          | D. sermonibus, | D. capiti,             | D. capitibus, |
| A. sermonem,         | A. sermones,   | A. caput,              | A. capita,    |
| V. sermo,            | V. sermōnes,   | V. caput,              | V. capita,    |
| A. sermone.          | A. sermonibus. | A. capite.             | A. capitibus. |

  

| Rupes, a rock, fem. |             | Sedile, a seat, neut. |               |
|---------------------|-------------|-----------------------|---------------|
| Sing.               | Plur.       | Sing.                 | Plur.         |
| N. rūpes,           | N. rupes,   | N. sedile,            | N. sedilia,   |
| G. rupis,           | G. rupium,  | G. sedilis,           | G. sedilium,  |
| D. rupi,            | D. rupibus, | D. sedili,            | D. sedilibus, |
| A. rupem,           | A. rupes,   | A. sedile,            | A. sedilia,   |
| V. rupes,           | V. rupes,   | V. sedile,            | V. sedilia,   |
| A. rupe.            | A. rupibus. | A. sedili.            | A. sedilibus. |

  

| Lapis, a stone, masc. |               | Iter, a journey, neut. |                |
|-----------------------|---------------|------------------------|----------------|
| Sing.                 | Plur.         | Sing.                  | Plur.          |
| N. lāpis,             | N. lāpīdes,   | N. iter,               | N. itinēra.    |
| G. lapīdis,           | G. lapidum,   | G. itinērīs,           | G. itinerum,   |
| D. lapidi,            | D. lapīdibus, | D. itineri,            | D. itinērībus, |
| A. lapidem,           | A. lapides,   | A. iter,               | A. itinera,    |
| V. lapis,             | V. lapides,   | V. iter,               | V. itinera,    |
| A. lapide.            | A. lapidibus. | A. itinere.            | A. itineribus. |

Of the GENDER and GENITIVE of Nouns of the Third Declension.

*A*, *E*, *I*, and *Y*.

1. Nouns in *a*, *e*, *i*, and *y*, are neuter.

Nouns in *a* form the genitive in *ātis* ; as, *diadēma*, *diademātis*, a crown ; *dogma*, *-ātis*, an opinion. So, *Enigma*, a riddle. *Diplōma*, a charter. *Poēma*, a poem. *Apōthegma*, a short saying. *Ēpigramma*, an inscription. *Schēma*, a scheme or figure. *Āroma*, sweet spices. *Nūmisma*, a coin. *Sōphisma*, a deceitful argument. *Axiōma*, a plain truth. *Phasma*, an apparition.

Stemma, a pedigree.  
Stigma, a mark or  
brand, a disgrace.

Strätägēma, an artful  
contrivance.

subject to write or  
speak on.

Thēma, a theme, a

Tōreuma a carved  
vessel.

Nouns in *e* change *e* into *is*; as, *rēte*, *retis*, a net. So,  
Ancile, a shield. Crināle, a pin for the Nāvāle, a dock or place  
Aplūstre, the flag of a hair. for shipping.  
Cūbile, a couch. ōvile, a sheep-fold.  
Campestre, a pair of Equile, a stable for Præsēpe, a stall; a  
drawers. horse. bee-hive.  
Cochleāre, a spoon. Lāqueāre, a coiled roof. Sēcāle, rye.  
Conclāve, a room. Mantile, a towel. Suile, a sow-cote.  
Mōnile, a necklace. Tibiale, a stocking.

Nouns in *i* are generally indeclinable; as, *gummi*, gum;  
*zingibēri*, ginger: but some Greek nouns add *itis*; as,  
*hydrōmēli*, *hydromelitis*, water and honey sodden together,  
mead.

Nouns in *y* add *os*; as, *moly*, *molyos*, an herb; *misy*, *-yos*,  
vitriol.

## O.

2. Nouns in *o* are masculine, and form the  
genitive in *ōnis*; as,

*Sermo*, *sermōnis*, speech; *draco*, *dracōnis*, a dragon.—So,

Āgāso, a horse-keeper.

Cūrio, the chief of a  
ward or curia.

Pēro, a kind of shoe.

Āquīso, the north wind.

Præco, a common crier.

Arthābo, an earnest-  
penny, a pledge.

Ēquīso, a groom or  
ostler.

Prædo, a robber.

Bālatro, a pitiful fel-  
low.

Erro, a wanderer.

Pulmo, the lungs.

Bambālio, a flatterer.

Fullo, a fuller of cloth.

Pūgio, a little child.

Bāro, a blockhead.

Helluo, a glutton.

Salmio, a salmon.

Būbo, an owl.

Histrīo, a player.

Sannio, a buffoon.

Būso, a toad.

Latro, a robber.

Sīpho, a pipe or tube.

Cālo, a soldier's slave.

Lēno, a pimp.

Spādo, an eunuch.

Cāpo, a capon.

Lūdīo, *-ius*, a player.

Stōlo, a shoot or scion.

Carbo, a coal.

Lurco, a glutton.

Strābo, a goggle-eyed  
person.

Caupo, an innkeeper.

Mango, a slave-mer-  
chant.

Tēmo, the pole for  
draught-tree.

Cerdo, a cobbler, or one  
who follows a mean  
trade.

Mirmillo, a fencer.

Tiro, a raw soldier.

Cinīso, a frizler of  
hair.

Mūcro, the point of a  
weapon.

Umbo, the boss of a  
shield.

Crabro, a wass, or  
baronet.

Mulio, a muleteer.

Ūpīlio, a sheepbird.

Nēnīlo, a knave.

Vōlo, a volunteer.

Exc. 1. Nouns in *io* are feminine, when they signify any thing without a body; as, *rătio, rationis, reason*.—So,

|                          |                          |                          |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| Captio, a quirk.         | Perduellio, treason.     | Sectio, the confiscation |
| Cautio, caution, care.   | Portio, a part.          | or forfeiture of one's   |
| Concio, an assembly,     | Potio, drink.            | goods.                   |
| a speech.                | Proditio, treasury.      | Seditio, a mutiny.       |
| Cessio, a yielding.      | Proscriptio, a proscrip- | Sessio, a sitting.       |
| Dictio, a word.          | tion, ordering citizens  | Statio, a station.       |
| Destitio, a surrender.   | to be slain, and con-    | Suspicio, mistrust.      |
| Lectio, a lesson.        | spicating their effects. | Titillatio, a tickling.  |
| Legio, a legion, a body  | Quæstio, an enquiry.     | Translatio, a transfer-  |
| of men.                  | Rebellio, rebellion.     | ring.                    |
| Mentio, mention.         | Régio, a country.        | Usucapio, the enjoyment  |
| Notio, a notion or idea. | Relatio, a telling.      | of a thing by prescrip-  |
| Opinio, an opinion.      | Religio, religion.       | tion.                    |
| Optio, a choice.         | Remissio, a slacken-     | Vacatio, freedom from    |
| Oratio, a speech.        | ing.                     | labour, &c.              |
| Pensio, a payment.       | Sanctio, a confirmation. | Visio, an apparition.    |

But when they mark any thing which has a body, or signify numbers, they are masculine; as,

|                        |                        |                           |
|------------------------|------------------------|---------------------------|
| Curculio, the throat-  | Scipio, a staff.       | Unio, a pearl.            |
| pipe, the rascal.      | Scorpio, a scorpion.   | Vespertilio, a bat.       |
| Papilio, a butterfly.  | Septentrio, the north. | Ternio, the number three. |
| Pugio, a dagger.       | Stellio, a lizard.     | Quaternio, — four.        |
| Puſio, a little child. | Titio, a firebrand.    | Senio, — six.             |

Exc. 2. Nouns in *do* and *go* are feminine, and have the genitive in *inis*; as, *arundo, arundinis, a reed*; *imago, imaginis, an image*.—So,

|                           |                       |                         |
|---------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| Ærugo, rust, (of brass.)  | Hirundo, a swallow.   | Sartago, a frying-pan.  |
| Cāligo, darkness.         | Intercapdo, a space   | Scaturigo, a spring.    |
| Cartilāgo, a gristle.     | between.              | Testudo, a tortoise.    |
| Crēpido, a creek, a       | Ianugo, down.         | Torpēdo, a numbness.    |
| bank.                     | Lentigo, a pimple.    | Uligo, the natural moi- |
| Farrāgo, a mixture.       | Origo, an origin.     | sture of the earth.     |
| Ferrūgo, rust, (of iron.) | Porrigo, scurf, or    | Vāletudo, health.       |
| Formido, fear.            | scales in the head;   | Vertigo, a dizziness.   |
| Fūligo, soot.             | dandruff.             | Virgo, a virgin.        |
| Grando, hail.             | Prōpago, a lineage.   | Vōrāgo, a gulf.         |
| Hirūdo, a horse-leech.    | Rūbigo, rust, mildew. |                         |

But the following are masculine:

|                             |                                     |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Cardo, -inis, a hinge.      | Margo, -inis, the brink of a river; |
| Cūdo, -ōnis, a leather cap. | also fem.                           |
| Harpāgo, -ōnis, a drag.     | Ordo, -inis, order.                 |
| Ligo, -ōnis, a spade.       | Tendo, -inis, a tendon.             |
|                             | Ūdo, -ōnis, a linc or woollen sock. |

*Cūpido*, desire, is often masc. with the poets; but in prose always fem.

Exc. 3.

Exc. 3. The following nouns have *inis*,

Āpollo, -inis, *the god Apollo.*

Nēmo, -inis, m. or f. *no body.*

Hōmo, -inis, *a man or woman.*

Turbo, -inis, m. *a whirlwind.*

Cāro, flesh, fem. has *carnis*: Ānio, masc. the name of a river, *Aniēnis*: Nerio, *Neiriēnis*, the wife of the god Mars; from the obsolete nominatives *Anien*, *Nerien*. Turbo, the name of a man, has *ōnis*.

Exc. 4. Greek nouns in *o* are feminine, and have *us* in the genitive, and *o* in the other cases singular; as, *Dido*, the name of a woman; genit. *Didūs*; dat. *Didō*, &c. Sometimes they are declined regularly; thus, *Dido*, *Didōnis*: so *ēcho*, -ūs, f. the resounding of the voice from a rock or wood; *Argo*, -ūs, the name of a ship; *hālo*, -onis, f. a circle about the sun or moon.

C, D, L.

3. Nouns in *c* and *l* are neuter, and form the genitive by adding *is*; as,

Ānimal, *animālis*, a living creature; *tōral*, -ālis, a bed-cover; *hālec*, *halēcis*, a kind of pickle.—So,

Cervical, *a bolster.*

Mīnerval, *entry-money.*

Pūteal, *a well cover.*

Cūbital, *a cushion.*

Mīnūtal, *minced meat.*

Vectīgal, *a tax.*

Except. Consul, -ūlis, m. *a consul.*

Mūgil, -īlis, m. *a mullet-fish.*

Fel, *fellis*, n. *gall.*

Sal, *sālis*, m. or n. *salt.*

Lac, *lactis*, n. *milk.*

Sāles, -ium, pl. m. *twisty sayings.*

Mel, *mellis*, n. *honey.*

Sol, *sōlis*, m. *the sun.*

*D* is the termination only of a few proper names, which form the genitive by adding *is*; as, *Dāvid*, *Davidis*.

N.

4. Nouns in *n* are masculine, and add *is* in the genitive; as,

Cānon, -ōnis, *a rule.*

Phŷsiognōmon, -ōnis, *one who guesses at the dispositions of men from the face.*

Dæmon, -ōnis, *a spirit.*

Delphin, -inis, *a dolphin.*

Gnōmon, -ōnis, *the cork of a dial.*

Ren, *rēnis*, *the reins.*

Hŷmen, -ēnis, *the god of marriage.*

Splen, *splēnis*, *the spleen.*

Lien, -ēnis, *the milt.*

Sŷren, -ēnis, *f. a Syren.*

Pæan, -ānis, *a song.*

Tītan, -ānis, *the sun.*

Exc. N. Nouns in *men* are neuter, and make their genitive in *inis*; as *flūmen*, *fluminis*, a river.—So,

Abdōmen, *the paunch.*

Agmen, *an army on march.*

Alūmen, *alum.*

Ācūmen, *sharpness.*

Bitūmen, *a kind of clay.*

Ēcūmen,



|                                 |                                    |                                  |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| Cācūmen, <i>the top.</i>        | Germen, <i>a sprout.</i>           | Sagmen, <i>vervain, an herb.</i> |
| Carmen, <i>a song, a poem.</i>  | Grāmen, <i>grass.</i>              |                                  |
| Coguōmen, <i>a surname.</i>     | Lēgūmen, <i>all kind of pulse.</i> | Sēmen, <i>a seed.</i>            |
| Cōlūmen, <i>a support.</i>      | Iūmen, <i>light.</i>               | Spēcimen, <i>a proof.</i>        |
| Crīmen, <i>a crime.</i>         | Nōmen, <i>a name.</i>              | Stāmen, <i>the warp.</i>         |
| Discrīmen, <i>a difference.</i> | Nūmen, <i>the deity.</i>           | Subtēmen, <i>the roof.</i>       |
| Exāmen, <i>a swarm of bees.</i> | ōmen, <i>a presage.</i>            | Tegmen, <i>a covering.</i>       |
|                                 | Pūtāmen, <i>a nut-shell.</i>       | Vīmen, <i>a twig.</i>            |
| Fōrāmen, <i>a hole.</i>         |                                    | Vōlūmen, <i>a folding.</i>       |

The following nouns are likewise neuter :

|                                 |                                   |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Glūten, -inis, <i>glue.</i>     | Inguen, -inis, <i>the groin.</i>  |
| Unguen, -inis, <i>ointment.</i> | Pollen, -inis, <i>fine flour.</i> |

Exc. 2. The following masculines have *inis* ; *peſcen*, a comb ; *tūbīcen*, a trumpeter ; *tībīcen*, a piper ; and *oſcen*, v. *oſcīnis*, ſc. *āvis*, f. a bird, which foreboded by ſinging.

Exc. 3. The following nouns are feminine : *Sindon*, -ōnis, fine linen ; *āēdon*, -ōnis, a nightingale ; *Halcyon*, -ōnis, a bird called the King's fiſher ; *icon*, -ōnis, an image.

Exc. 4. Some Greek nouns have *ontis* ; as, *Laōmēdon*, -ontis, a king of Troy. So *Achēron*, *Chumaleon*, *Phaēthon*, *Chāron*, &c.

#### AR and UR.

5. Nouns in *ar* and *ur* are neuter, and add *is* to form the genitive ; as,

|                                            |                                                  |
|--------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Calcar</i> , <i>calcāris</i> , a ſpur ; | <i>murmur</i> , <i>murmūris</i> , a noiſe.—So,   |
| <i>Guttur</i> , -ūris, <i>the throat.</i>  | <i>Nectar</i> , -āris, <i>drink of the gods.</i> |
| <i>Jūbar</i> , -āris, <i>a ſun-beam.</i>   | <i>Pulvīnar</i> , -āris, <i>a pillow.</i>        |
| <i>Lācūnar</i> , -āris, <i>a ceiling.</i>  | <i>Sulphur</i> , -ūris, <i>ſulphur.</i>          |

|                                                      |                                                                  |
|------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Except. <i>Ēbur</i> , -ōris, n. <i>ivory.</i>        | <i>Jēcūr</i> , -ōris, or <i>jecīnōris</i> , n. <i>the liver.</i> |
| <i>Far</i> , <i>farris</i> , n. <i>corn.</i>         | <i>Rōbur</i> , -ōris, n. <i>ſtrength.</i>                        |
| <i>Fēmūr</i> , -ōris, n. <i>the thigh.</i>           | <i>Sālar</i> , -aris, m. <i>a trout.</i>                         |
| <i>Furfur</i> , -ūris, m. <i>bran.</i>               | <i>Turtūr</i> , -ūris, m. <i>a turtle-dove.</i>                  |
| <i>Fur</i> , <i>fūris</i> , m. <i>a thief.</i>       | <i>Vultur</i> , -ūris, m. <i>a vulture.</i>                      |
| <i>Hēpar</i> , -ātis, or -ātos, n. <i>the liver.</i> |                                                                  |

#### ER and OR.

6. Nouns in *er* and *or* are masculine, and from the genitive by adding *is* ; as,

*Anſer*, *anſēris*, a gooſe or gander ; *agger*, -ēris, a ram-part ; *āer*, -ēris, the air ; *carcer*, -ēris, a priſon ; *aſſer*, -ēris, & *aſſis*, -is, a plank ; *dōlor*, -ōris, pain ; *cōlor*, -ōris, a colour.—So,

*Aſtor*,

|                                                                          |                                     |                                                                    |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Actor, a doer, a pleader.</i>                                         | <i>Ōdor, &amp; -os, a smell.</i>    | <i>Sōpor, sleep.</i>                                               |
| <i>Crēditor, he that trusts or lends.</i>                                | <i>Ōlor, a swan.</i>                | <i>Splendor, brightness.</i>                                       |
| <i>Cruor, gore.</i>                                                      | <i>Pādor, filth.</i>                | <i>Sponsor, a surety.</i>                                          |
| <i>Dēbitor, a debtor.</i>                                                | <i>Pastor, a shepherd.</i>          | <i>Squālor, filthiness.</i>                                        |
| <i>Fātor, an ill smell.</i>                                              | <i>Prātor, a commander.</i>         | <i>Stūpor, dulness.</i>                                            |
| <i>Hōnor, honour.</i>                                                    | <i>Pūdor, shame.</i>                | <i>Sūtor, a sewer.</i>                                             |
| <i>Lēctor, a reader.</i>                                                 | <i>Rūhor, blushing.</i>             | <i>Tēpor, warmth.</i>                                              |
| <i>Lictor, an officer among the Romans who attended the magistrates.</i> | <i>Rūmor, a report.</i>             | <i>Terror, dread.</i>                                              |
| <i>Livor, paleness, malice.</i>                                          | <i>Sāpor, a taste.</i>              | <i>Tīmor, fear.</i>                                                |
| <i>Nidor, a strong smell.</i>                                            | <i>Sartor, a cobbler or tailor.</i> | <i>Tonfor, a barber.</i>                                           |
| <i>Rbitor, a rhetorician, has rbtōris.</i>                               | <i>Sātor, a sower, a father.</i>    | <i>Tūtor, a guardian.</i>                                          |
|                                                                          |                                     | <i>Vāpor, a vapour.</i>                                            |
|                                                                          |                                     | <i>Vēnātor, a hunter.</i>                                          |
|                                                                          |                                     | <i>Rbitor, a rhetorician, has rbtōris; castor, a beaver, ōris.</i> |

Exc. 1. The following nouns are neuter :

|                                        |                                                                                            |
|----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Ācer, -ēris, a maple tree.</i>      | <i>Marmor, -ōris, marble.</i>                                                              |
| <i>Ādor, -ōris, fine wheat.</i>        | <i>Pāpāver, -ēris, poppy.</i>                                                              |
| <i>Āquor, -ōris, a plain, the sea.</i> | <i>Pīper, -ēris, pepper.</i>                                                               |
| <i>Cādāver, -ēris, a dead carcase.</i> | <i>Spinther, -ēris, a class.</i>                                                           |
| <i>Cīcer, -ēris, vetices.</i>          | <i>Tūber, -ēris, a swelling.</i>                                                           |
| <i>Cor, cordis, the heart.</i>         | <i>Ūber, -ēris, a pap, or fatness.</i>                                                     |
| <i>Iter, itinēris, a journey.</i>      | <i>Ver, vēris, the spring.</i>                                                             |
| <i>Arbor, -ōris, a tree, is fem.</i>   | <i>Tuber, -ēris, the fruit of the tuber tree, is masc. but when put for the tree, fem.</i> |

Exc. 2. Nouns in *ber* have *bris* in the genitive ; as, *hic imber, imbris*, a shower. So *Insūber, Oŏber*, &c.

Nouns in *ter* have *tris* ; as *venter, ventris*, the belly ; *pāter, patris*, a father ; *frāter, -tris*, a brother ; *accīpiter, -tris*, a hawk ; but *crāter*, a cup, has *crātēris* ; *sōter, -ēris*, a faviour ; *lāter, latēris* ; *Jūpiter*, the chief of the Heathen gods, has *Jōvis* ; *linter, -tris*, a little boat, is masc. or fem.

A S.

7. Nouns in *as* are feminine, and have the genitive in *ātis* ; as, *etas, etātis*, an age.—So,

|                                     |                            |                            |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>Æstas, the summer.</i>           | <i>Simultas, a feud, a</i> | <i>Vērītas, truth.</i>     |
| <i>Piētas, piety.</i>               | <i>grudge.</i>             | <i>Vōluntas, will.</i>     |
| <i>Pōtestas, power.</i>             | <i>Tempūtas, a time, a</i> | <i>Vōluptas, pleasure.</i> |
| <i>Prōbitas, probity.</i>           | <i>tempest.</i>            | <i>Ānas, a duck, has</i>   |
| <i>Sātietas, a glut or disgust.</i> | <i>Ūbertas, fertility.</i> | <i>ānātis.</i>             |

Except. 1. *As, assis, m. a piece of money, or any thing which may be divided into twelve parts.*

*Mas, māsris, m. a male.*

*Vas, vādis, m. a surety.*

*Vas, vāsīs, n. a vessel.*

Not.

*Note.* All the parts of *as* are likewise masculine, except *uncia*, an ounce, fem.; *as sextans*, 2 ounces; *quadrans*, 3; *triens*, 4; *quincunx*, 5; *femis*, 6; *septunx*, 7; *bes*, 8; *dodrans*, 9; *dextans*, or *décunx*, 10; *deunx*, 11 ounces.

**Exc. 2.** Of Greek nouns in *as*, some are masculine; some feminine; some neuter. Those that are masculine have *antis* in the genit. *as*, *gigas*, *gigantis*, a giant; *adamas*, *-antis*, an adamant; *elephas*, *-antis*, an elephant. Those that are feminine have *adis* or *ados*; *as*, *lampas*, *lampadis*, or *lampados*, a lamp; *dromas*, *-adis*, f. a dromedary; likewise *Arcas*, an Arcadian, though masculine, has *Arcadis*, or *-ados*. Those that are neuter have *atis*; *as*, *buceras*, *-atis*, an herb; *artocreas*, *-atis*, a pie.

## E S.

8. Nouns in *es* are feminine, and in the genitive change *es* into *is*; *as*,

|                                          |                                            |                                |
|------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>rupes</i> , <i>rupis</i> , a rock;    | <i>nubes</i> , <i>nubis</i> , a cloud.—So, |                                |
| <i>Aedes</i> , or <i>-is</i> , a temple; | <i>lues</i> , a plague.                    | <i>Sepes</i> , a hedge.        |
| plur. a <i>boufe</i> .                   | <i>Moles</i> , a heap.                     | <i>Soboles</i> , an offspring. |
| <i>Cautes</i> , a rugged rock.           | <i>Nates</i> , the buttock.                | <i>Strages</i> , a slaughter.  |
| <i>Clades</i> , an overthrow,            | <i>Palumbes</i> , m. or f. a               | <i>Strues</i> , a heap.        |
| destruction.                             | pigeon.                                    | <i>Sudes</i> , a stake.        |
| <i>Crates</i> , a burdle.                | <i>Proles</i> , an offspring.              | <i>Tabes</i> , a consumption.  |
| <i>Fames</i> , hunger.                   | <i>Pubes</i> , youth.                      | <i>Vulpes</i> , a fox.         |
| <i>Fides</i> , a fiddle.                 |                                            |                                |

**Exc. 1.** The following nouns are masculine, and most of them likewise excepted in the formation of the genitive.

|                                                     |                                                      |
|-----------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Ales</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a bird.                | <i>Palmes</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a vine-branch.        |
| <i>Ames</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a fowler's staff.      | <i>Paries</i> , <i>-etis</i> , a wall.               |
| <i>Aries</i> , <i>-etis</i> , a ram.                | <i>Pes</i> , <i>pedis</i> , the foot.                |
| <i>Bes</i> , <i>bellis</i> , two thirds of a pound. | <i>Pedes</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a footman.             |
| <i>Cespes</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a turf.              | <i>Poples</i> , <i>-itis</i> , the bam of the leg.   |
| <i>Eques</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a horseman.           | <i>Præses</i> , <i>-idis</i> , a president.          |
| <i>Fomes</i> , <i>-itis</i> , fuel.                 | <i>Satelles</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a life-guard.       |
| <i>Gurges</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a whirlpool.         | <i>Stipes</i> , <i>-itis</i> , the flock of a tree.  |
| <i>Heres</i> , <i>-edis</i> , an heir.              | <i>Termes</i> , <i>-itis</i> , an olive bough.       |
| <i>Indiges</i> , <i>-etis</i> , a man deified.      | <i>Trames</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a path.               |
| <i>Interpres</i> , <i>-etis</i> , an interpreter.   | <i>Veles</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a light-armed soldier. |
| <i>Limēs</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a limit or bound.     | <i>Vates</i> , <i>vatis</i> , a prophet.             |
| <i>Miles</i> , <i>-itis</i> , a soldier.            | <i>Verres</i> , <i>verris</i> , a boar-pig.          |
| <i>Obes</i> , <i>-idis</i> , a hostage.             |                                                      |

But *ales*, *miles*, *heres*, *interpres*, *obes*, and *vates*, are also used in the feminine.

Exc.

Exc. 2. The following feminines are excepted in the formation of the genitive :

Abies, -ētis, a fir-tree.

Cēres, -ētis, the goddess of corn.

Merces, -ēdis, a reward, hire.

Merges, -ītis, a handful of corn.

Quies, -ētis, rest.

Rēquies, -ētis; or requiei, (of the fifth declension), rest.

Sēges, -ētis, growing corn.

Tēges, -ētis, a mat or coverlet.

Tūdes, -is, or -ītis, a hammer.

To these add the following adjectives.

Alēs, -ītis, swift.

Bīpes, -ēdis, two-footed.

Quadrūpes, -ēdis, four-footed.

Dolēs, -īdis, foolish.

Dīves, -ītis, rich.

Hēbes, -ētis, dull.

Perpes, -ētis, perpetual.

Præpes, -ētis, swift-winged.

Rēles, -īdis, idle.

Solpes, -ītis, safe.

Sūperstes, -ītis, surviving.

Tēres, -ētis, round and long, smooth.

Lōcuples, -ētis, rich.

Manfues, -ētis, gentle.

Exc. 3. Greek nouns in *es* are commonly masculine; as *hic acināces, -is*, a Persian sword, a scimitar; but some are neuter; as, *hoc cācoēthes*, an evil custom, *hippēmānes*, a kind of poison which grows in the forehead of a foal; *pānāces*, the herb all-heal; *nēpenthes*, the herb kill-grief. Diffyllables, and the monosyllable *Cres*, a Cretan, have *ētis* in the genitive, as; *hic magnes, magnētis*, a load-stone; *tāpes -ētis*, tapestry; *lēbes -ētis*, a cauldron. The rest follow the general rule. Some proper nouns have either *ētis* or *is*; as, *Dāres, Darētis*, or *Daris*; which is also sometimes of the first declension; *Achilles*, has *Achillis*; or *Achilli*, contracted for *Achillēi* or *Achillei*, of the second decl. from *Achillēus*: So *Ūlysses, Pēricles, Verres, Aristōtēles, &c.*

### IS.

9. Nouns in *is* are feminine, and have their genitive the same with the nominative; as, *auris, auris*, the ear; *avis, avis*, a bird.—So,

Apis, a bee.

Bilis, the gall, anger.

Classis, a fleet.

Felis, a cat.

Fōris, a door; *ostiner*

plur. fores, -ium.

Messis, a harvest or crop.

Nāris, the nostril.

Neptis, a niece.

Ōvis, a sheep.

Pellis, a skin.

Pestis, a plague.

Rātis, a raft.

Rūdis, a rod.

Vallis, a valley.

Vestis, a garment.

Vitis, a vine.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine, and form the genitive according to the general rule :

Axis

|                                |                               |                             |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Axis, axis, an axle-tree.      | Ensis, a sword.               | Patruclis, a cousin-german. |
| Æqualis, a water-pot, an ewer. | Fascis, a bundle.             | Piscis, a fish.             |
| Callis, a beaten road.         | Fœcialis, a herald.           | Postis, a post.             |
| Caulis, the stalk of an herb.  | Follis, a pair of bellows.    | Sôdalis, a companion.       |
| Collis, a hill.                | Fustis, a staff.              | Torris, a fire-brand.       |
| Cenchris, a kind of serpent.   | Mensis, a month.              | Unguis, the nail.           |
|                                | Mûgilis, or il a mullet fish. | Vcctis, a lever.            |
|                                | Orbis, a circle, the world.   | Vermis, a worm.             |

To these add Latin nouns in *nis*; as, *pānis*, bread; *crinis*, the hair; *ignis*, fire; *fūnis*, a rope, &c. But Greek nouns in *nis* are feminine, and have the genitive in *idis*; as, *týrannis*, *týrannidis*, tyranny.

Exc. 2. The following nouns are also masculine, but form their genitive differently:

|                                                         |                                                      |
|---------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| Cinis, <i>ëris</i> , ashes.                             | Pūbis or pūbes, -is, or oftener -ëris, marriageable. |
| Cûcûmis, -is, or -ëris, a cucumber.                     | Pulvis, <i>ëris</i> , dust.                          |
| Dis, <i>dûris</i> , the god of riches, or rich, an adj. | Quiris, -itis, a Roman.                              |
| Glis, <i>glûris</i> , a dormouse, a rat.                | Samnis, -itis, a Samnite.                            |
| Impūbis, or impūbes, -is or -ëris, not marriageable.    | Sanguis, -inis, blood.                               |
| Lāpis, -idis, a stone.                                  | Semis, -illis, the half of any thing.                |
|                                                         | Vōmis, or -er, -ëris, a ploughshare.                 |

*Pūbis* and *cinis* are sometimes feminine. *Semis* is also sometimes neuter, and then it is indeclinable. *Pubis* and *impubis* are properly adjectives, thus, *Puberibus caulem foliis*, a stalk with downy leaves, *Virg. Æn. xii. 413.* *Impube corpus*, the body of a boy not having yet got the down (*pubes*, -is, f.) of youth, *Horat. epod. 5. 13.* *Exsanguis*, bloodless, an adj. has *exsanguis* in the gen.

Exc. 3. The following are either masc. or feminine, and form the genitive according to the general rule.

|                          |                                                                                  |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Amnis, a river.          | Finis, the end: fines the boundaries of a field, or territories, is always masc. |
| Anguis, a snake.         | Scrōbis, or scrobs a ditch.                                                      |
| Cānālis, a conduit pipe. | Torquis, a chain.                                                                |
| Clūnis, the buttock.     |                                                                                  |
| Corbis, a basket.        |                                                                                  |

Exc. 4. These feminines have *idis*: *Cassis*, -idis, a helmet; *cuspis*, -idis, the point of a spear; *capis*, -idis, a kind of cup *prōmulsis*, -idis, a kind of drink, metheglin. *Lis*, strife, f. has *litis*.

Exc. 5. Greek nouns in *is* are generally feminine, and form the genitive variously: Some have *eos* or *ios*; as, *hæresis*, -eos, or -ios, or -is, a heresy; so, *bāsis*, f. the foot of a pillar; *phrāsis*, a phrase; *phthīsis*, a consumption: *poësis*, poetry: *metrōpolis*, a chief city, &c. Some have *idis*, or



*īdos* ; as, *Pāris*, *-īdis*, or *-īdos*, the name of a man ; *aspis*, *-īdis*, f. an asp ; *ēphēmēris*, *-īdis*, f. a day-book ; *iris*, *-īdis*, f. the rainbow ; *pyxis*, *-īdis*, f. a box. So, *Ægis*, the shield of Pallas ; *canthāris*, a sort of fly ; *pērisceōlis*, a garter ; *proboscis*, an elephant's trunk ; *pŷramis*, a pyramid ; and *zigris*, a tiger, *-īdis*, seldom *tigris* : all fem. Part have *-īdis* ; as, *Pŷophis*, *-īdis*, the name of a city ; others have *-inis* ; as, *Ēleusis*, *-inis*, the name of a city ; and some have *entis* ; as, *Simois*, *Simoentis*, the name of a river. *Chāris*, one of the graces, has, *Chāritis*.

## O S.

10. Nouns in *os* are masculine, and have the genitive in *ōtis* ; as,

*nēpos*, *-ōtis*, a grandchild ; *sacerdos*, *-ōtis*, a priest, also fem.

Exc. 1. The following are feminine :

*Arbos*, or *-or*, *-ōris* a tree.

*Eos*, *eōis*, the morning.

*Cos*, *cōtis*, a whetstone.

*Glos*, *glōris*, the husband's sister, or brother's wife.

*Dos*, *dōtis*, a dowry.

Exc. 2. The following masculines are excepted in the genitive :

*Flos*, *flōris*, a flower.

*Custos*, *-ōdis*, a keeper ; also fem.

*Hōnos*, or *-or*, *ōris*, honour.

*Hēros*, *herōis*, a hero.

*Lābos*, or *-or*, *-ōris*, labour.

*Mīnos*, *-ōis*, a king of Crete.

*Lēpos*, or *-or*, *ōris*, wit.

*Tros*, *Trōis*, a Trojan.

*Mos*, *mōris*, a custom.

*Bos*, *bōvis*, m. or f. an ox or cow.

*Ros*, *rōris*, dew.

Exc. 3. *Os*, *offis*, a bone ; and *ōs*, *oris*, the mouth, are neuter.

Exc. 4. Some Greek nouns have *-ōis* ; as *hēros*, *-ōis*, a hero, or great man : So *Mīnos*, a king of Crete ; *Tros*, a Trojan ; *thos*, a kind of wolf.

## U S.

11. Nouns in *us* are neuter, and have their genitive in *ōris* ; as,

*peŷtus*, *peŷtōris*, the breast ; *tempus*, *temporis*, time. So,

*Corpus*, a body.

*Frigus*, cold.

*Pēnus*, provisions.

*Dēcus*, honour.

*Littus*, a shore.

*Pignus*, a pledge.

*Dēdēcus*, disgrace.

*Nēmus*, a grove.

*Stercus*, dung.

*Fācīnus*, a great action.

*Pēcus*, cattle.

*Tergus*, a hide.

*Fēnus*, usury.

Exc. 1.

Exc. 1. The following neuters have *ëris*.

|                                            |                                           |                                           |
|--------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <i>Æcus</i> , <i>claff</i> .               | <i>Mûnus</i> , <i>a gift, or office</i> . | <i>Scëlus</i> , <i>a crime</i> .          |
| <i>Fûnus</i> , <i>a funeral</i> .          | <i>ôlus</i> , <i>pot-berbs</i> .          | <i>Sîdus</i> , <i>a star</i> .            |
| <i>Fœdus</i> , <i>a covenant</i> .         | <i>ônus</i> , <i>a burden</i> .           | <i>Vellus</i> , <i>a fleece of wool</i> . |
| <i>Gênus</i> , <i>a kind, or kindred</i> . | <i>ôpus</i> , <i>a work</i> .             | <i>Viscus</i> , <i>an entrail</i> .       |
| <i>Glômus</i> , <i>a clew</i> .            | <i>Pondus</i> , <i>a weight</i> .         | <i>Ulcus</i> , <i>a bile</i> .            |
| <i>Lâtus</i> , <i>the side</i> .           | <i>Rûdus</i> , <i>rubbish</i> .           | <i>Vulnus</i> , <i>a wound</i> .          |

Thus, *acëris*, *funëris*, &c. *Glômus*, a clew, is sometimes masculine, and has *glomi*, of the second declension. *Vënus*, the goddess of love, and *vëtus*, old, an adjective, likewise have *ëris*.

Exc. 2. The following nouns are feminine, and form the genitive variously :

|                                                                   |                                               |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| <i>Incus</i> , -ûdis, <i>an anvil</i> .                           | <i>Jûventus</i> , -ûtis, <i>youth</i> .       |
| <i>Pâlus</i> , -ûdis, <i>a pool or morass</i> .                   | <i>Sâlus</i> , -ûtis, <i>safety</i> .         |
| <i>Pëus</i> (not used), -ûdis, <i>a sheep</i> .                   | <i>Sënëctus</i> , -ûtis, <i>old age</i> .     |
| <i>Subfcus</i> , -ûdis, <i>a dove-tail</i> .                      | <i>Servîtus</i> , -ûtis, <i>slavery</i> .     |
| <i>Tellus</i> , ûris, <i>the earth, or goddess of the earth</i> . | <i>Virtus</i> , -ûtis, <i>virtue</i> .        |
|                                                                   | <i>Intercus</i> , -ûtis, <i>an hydropsy</i> . |

*Intercus* is properly an adjective, having *aqua* understood.

Exc. 3. Monosyllables of the neuter gender have *ûris* in the genitive ; as,

|                                                           |                                               |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| <i>Crus</i> , crûris, <i>the leg</i> .                    | <i>Rus</i> , rûris, <i>the country</i> .      |
| <i>Jus</i> , jûris, <i>law or right; also broth</i> .     | Thus, thûris, <i>frankincense</i> .           |
| <i>Pus</i> pûris, <i>the corrupt matter of any fore</i> . | So <i>Mus</i> , mûris, <i>masc. a mouse</i> . |

*Ligus*, or -ur, a Ligurian, has *Ligûris* ; *lëpus*, masc. a hare, *lëpôrîs* ; *sus*, masc. or fem. a swine, *suis* ; *grus*, masc. or fem. a crane, *gruis*. *OEdipus*, the name of a man, has *OEdipôdis* : sometimes it is of the second declension, and has *OEdîpi*. The compounds of *pus* have *ôdis* ; as, *tripûs*, masc. a tripod, *tripôdis* ; but *lëgôpus*, -ôdis, a kind of bird, or the herb hares-foot, is fem. Names of cities have *untis* ; as, *Trâpezus*, *Trapezuntis* ; *ôpus*, *Opuntis*.

### TS.

12. Nouns in *ys* are all borrowed from the Greek, and are for the most part feminine. In the genitive, they have sometimes *ÿis* or *ÿos* ; as *hæc cbelÿs*, *chelyis*, or -ÿos, a harp ; *Câÿys*, *Capyis*, or -ÿos, the name of a man : sometimes they have *ÿdis*, or *ÿdos* ; as, *hæc cblâmÿs*, *cblamÿdis* or *cblamÿdos*, a soldier's cloak ; and sometimes *ÿnis*, or *ÿnos* ; as, *Trâchÿs*, *Trachÿnis*, or *Trachÿnos*, the name of a town.

### ÆS, AUS, EUS.

13. The nouns ending in *as* and *aus* are,

|                                               |                                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Æs</i> , æris, n. <i>brass, or money</i> . | <i>Laus</i> , laudis, f. <i>praise</i> .         |
| <i>Fraus</i> , fraudis, f. <i>fraud</i> .     | <i>Præs</i> , prædis, m. or f. <i>a surety</i> . |

Substantives ending in the syllable *eus* are all proper names, and have

have the genitive in *eos*; as, *Orpheus*, *Orpheos*; *Tereus*, *Tereos*. But these nouns are also found in the second declension, where *eus* is divided into two syllables: thus, *Orphēus*, genit. *Orphēi*, or sometimes contracted *Orphei*, and that into *Orphī*.

*S with a consonant before it.*

14. Nouns ending in *s* with a consonant before it, are feminine; and form the genitive by changing the *s* into *is* or *tis*; as,

*trabs*, *trābis*, a beam; *scobs*, *scōbis*, saw-dust; *hiems*, *hiēm̄is*, winter; *gens*, *gentis*, a nation; *stips*, *stip̄is*, alms; *pars*, *partis*, a part; *sors*, *sortis*, a lot; *mors*, *-tis*, death.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine:

*Chálybs*, *ýbis*, *steel*.

*Dens*, *-tis*, *a tooth*.

*Fons*, *-tis*, *a well*.

*Gryps*, *grýphis*, *a griffin*.

*Hydrops*, *-ōpis*, *the dropsy*.

*Mērops*, *-ōpis*, *a wood-pecker*.

*Mons*, *-tis*, *a mountain*.

*Pons*, *-tis*, *a bridge*.

*Seps*, *sēpis*, *a kind of serpent*; but,

*Seps*, *sēpis*, *a hedge*, is fem.

Exc. 2. The following are either masc. or feminine:

*Ādeps*, *ad̄pis*, *fatness*.

*Rūd̄ens*, *-tis*, *a cable*.

*Scrobs*, *scrōbis*, *a ditch*.

*Serpens*, *-tis*, *a serpent*.

*Stirps*, *stirpis*, *the root of a tree*.

*Stirps*, *an offspring*, always fem.

*Animans*, a living creature, is found in all the genders, but most frequently in the feminine or neuter.

Exc. 3. Polysyllables in *eps* change *e* into *i*; as, *hæc forceps*, *forc̄pis*, a pair of tongs; *princeps*, *-īpis*, a prince or princess; *particeps*, *-c̄pis*, a partaker; so likewise *calēbs*, *calib̄is*, an unmarried man or woman. The compounds of *cāput* have *cip̄tis*; as, *præcep̄s*, *præcip̄tis*, headlong; *anceps*, *ancip̄tis*, doubtful; *biceps*, *-cip̄tis*, two-headed. *Auceps*, a fowler, has *aucēpis*.

Exc. 4. The following feminines have *dis*:

*Frons*, *frondis*, *the leaf of a tree*.

*Glans*, *glandis*, *an acorn*.

*Juglans*, *dis*, *a walnut*.

*Lens*, *lendis*, *a nit*.

So, *libripens*, *libripendis*, m. a weigher; *nefrens*, *-dis*, m. or f. a grice, or pig; and the compounds of *cor*: as, *concor̄s*, *concordis*, agreeing; *dis̄cor̄s*, disagreeing; *v̄cor̄s*, mad, &c. But *frons*, the forehead, has *frontis*, fem. and *lens*, a kind of pulle, *lentis*, also fem.

Exc. 5. *Iens*, going; and *quiens*, being able, participles from the verbs *eo* and *queo*, with their compounds, have *euntis*: thus, *iens*, *euntis*; *quiens*, *queuntis*; *red̄iens*, *redeuntis*; *nēquiens*, *nequeuntis*: but *ambiens*, going round, has *ambientis*.

Exc. 6.

Exc. 6. *Tīryns*, a city in Greece, the birth-place of *Hércules*, has *Tīrynthīs*.

## T.

15. There is only one noun in *t*, namely, *cāput*, *capītis*, the head, neuter. In like manner, its compounds, *ſincīput*, *ſincīpītis*, the forehead; and *occīput*, *-ītis*, the hind-head.

## X.

16. Nouns in *x* are feminine, and in the genitive change *x* into *cis*; as,

*vox*, *vōcis*, the voice : *lux*, *lūcis*, light.—So,

|                                            |                               |                                            |
|--------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| Appendix, -icis, an addition; dim. -icūla. | Crux, crūcis, a cross.        | Merx, -cis, merchandises.                  |
| Arx, arcis, a castle.                      | Fax, -cis, dregs.             | Nutrix, -icis, a nurse.                    |
| Cēlox, -ōcis, a pinnacle.                  | Falx, -cis, a scythe.         | Nux, nūcis, a nut.                         |
| Cervix, -icis, the neck.                   | Fax, -ācis, a torch.          | Pax, -ācis, peace.                         |
| Cicātrix, -icis, a scar.                   | Filix, -icis, a fern.         | Pix, pīcis, pitch.                         |
| Cornix, -icis, a crow.                     | Lanx, -cis, a plate.          | Rādix, -icis, a root.                      |
| Cōturnix, -icis, a quail.                  | Lōdix, -icis, a poet.         | Sālix, -icis, a willow.                    |
| Coxendix, -icis, the hip.                  | Mēretrix, -icis, a courtesan. | Vībix, or -ex, -icis, the mark of a wound. |

Exc. 1. Polysyllables in *ax* and *ex* are masculine; as, *thōrax* -ācis, a breast-plate; *Cōrax* -ācis, a raven. *Ex* in the genitive is changed into *icis*; as, *pollex*, -icis, m. the thumb.—So the following nouns, also masculine,

|                                                                        |                              |                                |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Apex, the tuft or tassel.                                              | Cīmex, a bug.                | Pōdex, the breech.             |
| on the top of a priest's cap, the cap itself, or the top of any thing. | Cōdex, a book.               | Pontīfex, a chief priest.      |
| Artīfex, an artist.                                                    | Cūlex, a gnat, a midge.      | Pūlex, a flea.                 |
| Index, an informer.                                                    | Frūtex, a scrub.             | Rāmex, a rupture.              |
| Carnīfex, an executioner.                                              | Sōrex, a rat.                | Vertex, the crown of the head. |
| Lātex, any liquor.                                                     | Mūrex, a scell-fish, purple. | Vortex, a whirlpool.           |

*Verrux*, a wedder sheep, has *verūcīs*; *ſaniſex*, a mower of hay, *ſaniſcīs*; *Rāſex*, m. -icis, a vine-branch cut off.

To these masculines add,

|                                     |                                                         |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| Cālix, -icis, a cup.                | Oryx, -ycis, a wild goat.                               |
| Cālyx, -ycis, the end of a flower.  | Phœnix, -icis, a bird so called.                        |
| Coccyx, -ycis, vel -ycis, a cuckoo. | Trādux, -ūcis, a grass, or off-set of a vine; also fem. |
| Fornix, -icis, a vault.             |                                                         |

But the following polysyllables in *ax* and *ex* are feminine.

|                                            |                                                       |
|--------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>F</b> ornax, -ācis, a furnace.          | <b>S</b> mīlax, -ācis, the herb rope-weed.            |
| <b>P</b> anax, -ācis, the herb all-heal.   | <b>C</b> ērex, -īcis, a sedge.                        |
| <b>C</b> līmax, -ācis, a ladder.           | <b>S</b> ūpellex, supellectilis, household-furniture. |
| <b>F</b> orſex, -īcis, a pair of scissors. |                                                       |
| <b>H</b> ālex, -ēcis, a bearing.           |                                                       |

**Exc. 2.** A great many nouns in *x* are either masculine or feminine ; as,

|                                                                                                 |                                         |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <b>C</b> alx, -cis, the heel, or the end of any thing, the goal; but calx, lime, is always fem. | <b>L</b> īmax, -ācis, a snail.          |
| <b>C</b> ortex, -īcis, the bark of a tree.                                                      | <b>Ō</b> bex, -īcis, a bolt or bar.     |
| <b>H</b> ylſtrix, -īcis, a porcupine.                                                           | <b>P</b> erdix, -īcis, a partridge.     |
| <b>I</b> mbrex, -īcis, a gutter or roof-tile.                                                   | <b>P</b> ūmex, -īcis, a pumice-stone.   |
| <b>L</b> ynx, -cis, an ounce, a beaſt of a very quick ſight.                                    | <b>R</b> ūmex, -īcis, ſorrel, an herb.  |
|                                                                                                 | <b>S</b> andix, -īcis, a purple colour. |
|                                                                                                 | <b>S</b> ilex, -īcis, a flint.          |
|                                                                                                 | <b>V</b> ārix, -īcis, a ſwollen vein.   |

**Exc. 3.** The following nouns depart from the general rule in forming the genitive :

|                                                    |                                        |
|----------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| <b>A</b> quīlex, -ēgis, a well-maker.              | <b>P</b> hālānx, -angis, f. a pbalānx. |
| <b>C</b> onjūnx, or -ux, -ūgis, a huſband or wife. | <b>R</b> ēmex, -īgis, a rower.         |
| <b>F</b> ruſ, (not uſed), frūgis, f. corn.         | <b>R</b> ex, rēgis, a king.            |
| <b>G</b> rex, grēgis, m. or f. a flock.            | <b>N</b> ix, nīvis, f. ſnow.           |
| <b>L</b> ex, legis, f. a law.                      | <b>N</b> ox, noctis, f. night.         |
|                                                    | <b>S</b> ēnex, sēuis, (an. adj.), old. |

**Exc. 4.** Greek nouns in *x*, both with reſpect to gender and declenſion, are as various as Latin nouns : thus, *bombyx*, *bombȳcis*, a ſilk-worm, maſc. but when it ſignifies ſilk, or the yarn ſpun by the worm, it is feminine ; *ōnyx*, maſc. or fem. *onȳchis*, a precious ſtone ; and ſo *sardōnyx* ; *lārynx*, *laryngis*, fem. the top of the wind-pipe ; *Phryx*, *Phrygis*, a Phrygian ; *sphinx*, -ngis, a fabulous hag ; *ſtrix*, -īgis, f. a ſcreechowl ; *Styx*, -ȳgis, f. a river in hell ; *Hylax*, -āis, the name of a dog ; *Bibrax*, *Bibrādis*, the name of a town, &c.

#### DATIVE SINGULAR.

The Dative ſingular anciently ended alſo in *e* ; as, *Eſuriēte leoni ex ore exculpere pradam*, To pull the prey out of the mouth of a hungry lion, Lucil. *Hæret pede pes*, Foot ſticks to foot. *Æn.* x. 361. for *efurienti* and *pedi*.

**Ex.**



## EXCEPTIONS in the ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR.

Exc. 1. The following nouns have the accusative in *im* :

|                                             |                                |
|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Amullis, f. <i>a mason's rule.</i>          | Canābis, f. <i>bemp.</i>       |
| Būris, f. <i>the beam of a plough.</i>      | Cūcūmis, m. <i>a cucumber.</i> |
| Gunmis, f. <i>gum.</i>                      | Sitis, f. <i>thisst.</i>       |
| Mēphitis, f. <i>a damp or strong smell.</i> | Tussis, f. <i>the cough.</i>   |
| Rāvis, f. <i>boarsenest.</i>                | Vis, f. <i>strength.</i>       |
| Sināpis, f. <i>mustard.</i>                 |                                |

To these add proper names, 1. of cities, and other places; as, *Hispalis*, Seville, a city in Spain; *Syrtis*, a dangerous quicksand on the coast of Libya;—2. of rivers; as, *Tibēris*, the Tiber, which runs past Rome; *Batis*, the Guadalquivir in Spain: So *Atbēsis*, *Arāris*, *Albis*, *Liris* &c.—3. Of gods; as, *Anūbis*, *Apis*, *Osiris*, *Serāpis*, deities of the Egyptians. But these sometimes make the accusative also in *in*; thus, *Syrtim* or *Syrtin*, *Tiberim* or *in*, &c.

Exc. 2. Several nouns in *is* have either *em* or *im*; as,

|                            |                                        |                                    |
|----------------------------|----------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| Clāvis, f. <i>a key.</i>   | Pelvis, f. <i>a basin.</i>             | Sēcūris, f. <i>an ax.</i>          |
| Cūris, f. <i>the skin.</i> | Puppis, f. <i>the stern of a ship.</i> | Sēmentis, f. <i>a sowing.</i>      |
| Febris, f. <i>a fever.</i> | Restis, f. <i>a rope.</i>              | Strīgilis, f. <i>a horse-comb.</i> |
| Nāvis, f. <i>a ship.</i>   |                                        | Turris, f. <i>a tower.</i>         |

Thus *navem*, or *navim*; *puppem*, or *puppim*, &c. The ancients said *avim*, *aurim*, *ovim*, *pestim*, *vallim*, *vitim*, &c. which are not to be imitated.

Exc. 3. GREEK NOUNS form their accusative variously :

1. Greek nouns, whose genitive increases in *is* or *as* impure, that is, with a consonant going before, have the accusative in *em* or *a*, as, *lampas*, *lampadis*, or *lampados*, *lampadem*, or *lampādo*. In like manner, these three, which have *is* pure in the genitive, or *is* with a vowel before it : *Trois*, *Trōis*, *Troem*, and *Troa*, a Trojan; *bēros*, a hero; *Minos*, a king of Crete. The three following have almost always *a* : *Pan*, the god of shepherds; *aiher*, the sky; *dolphin*, a dolphin; thus, *Pāna*, *aihēra*, *dolphina*.

2. Masculine Greek nouns in *is*, which have their genitive in *is* or *as* impure, form the accusative in *im* or *in*; sometimes in *idem*, never *ida*, as *Pāris*, *Paridis*; or *Paridos*; *Parim*, or *Parin*, sometimes *Paridem*, never *Parīda*.—So *Daphnis*.

3. Feminines in *is*, increasing impurely in the genitive, have commonly *idem* or *ida*, but rarely *im* or *in*; as, *Elis*, *Elidis* or *Elidos*, *Elidem* or *Elida*; seldom *Elim* or *Elin*; a city in Greece. In like manner, feminines in *ys*, *ydos*, have *ydem*, or *yda*, not *ym* or *yn* in the accusative; as, *eblamys*, *ydem*, or *yda*, not *eblamyn*, a soldier's cloak.

4. But all Greek nouns in *is* or *ys*, whether masculine or feminine, having *is* or *as* pure in the genitive, form the accusative by changing *s* of the nominative into *m* or *n*; as, *metamorphōsis*, *-eos*, or *ios*, *metamorphōsim* or *-in*, a change: *Tētyis*, *-yos*, or *-yis*; *Tētyim*, or *-yn*; the name of a goddess.

5. Nouns ending in the diphthong *eus*, have the accusative in *ea* : as, *Thēseus*, *Thēsea*; *Tydeus*, *Tydea*.

## EXCEPTIONS IN THE ABLATIVE SINGULAR.

Exc. 1. Neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*, have *i* in the ablative ; as, *ſedile*, *ſedili* ; *ānimal*, *animāli* ; *calcar*, *calcāri*. Except proper names ; as, *Præneste*, abl. *Præneste*, the name of a town ; and the following neuters in *ar* :

Far, *ſarre*, corn

Nectar, *āve*, drink of the gods.

Hepar, *āte*, the liver.

Par, *pāre*, a match, a pair.

Jūbar, *āre*, a sun-beam.

Sal, *sāle*, salt.

Exc. 2. Nouns which have *im* or *in* in the accusative, have *i* in the ablative ; as, *vis*, *vim*, *vi* : but *canābis*, *Batis*, and *tigris*, have *e* or *i*.

Nouns which have *im* or *in* in the accusative, make their ablative in *e* or *i* ; as, *turris*, *turre*, or *turri* ; but *reſtis*, a rope ; and *cūtis*, the skin, have *e* only.

Several nouns which have only *em* in the accusative, have *e* or *i* in the ablative ; as, *ſinis*, *ſupellex*, *veſtis*, *pūgil*, a champion ; *mūgil* or *mugilis* ; ſo, *rus*, *ocēput* : Alſo names of towns, when the queſtion is made by *ubi* ; as *habitat Carthagine* or *Carthagini*, he lives at Carthage. So, *civis*, *claffis*, *ſors*, *imber*, *anguis*, *avis*, *poſtis*, *fuſtis*, *amnis*, and *ignis* ; but theſe have oftener *e*. *Canalis* has only *i*. The moſt ancient writers made the ablative of many other nouns in *i* ; as, *aſtati*, *cani*, *lapidi*, *ovi*, &c.

Exc. 3. Adjectives uſed as ſubſtantives have commonly the ſame ablative with the adjectives ; as, *bipennis*, *-i*, an halbert ; *mōlāris*, *-i*, a millſtone ; *quadrirēmis*, *-i*, a ſhip with four banks of oars. So names of months, *Aprīlis*, *-i* ; *Dēcember*, *-bri*. &c. But *rūdis*, *f.* a rod given to gladiators when diſcharged ; *jūvēnis*, a young man, have only *e* ; and likewise nouns ending in *il*, *x*, *ceps*, or *ns* ; as,

Adoleſcens, a young man. Princeps, a prince.

Torrents, a brook.

Infans, an infant.

Sēnex, an old man.

Vigil, a watchman.

Thus, *adoleſcente*, *infante*, *ſene*, &c.

Exc. 4. Nouns in *ys*, which have *ym* in the accusative, make their ablative in *ye* or *y* ; as, *Atys*, *Atye*, or *Aty*, the name of a man.

## NOMINATIVE PLURAL.

1. The nominative plural ends in *es*, when the noun is either maſculine or feminine ; as, *ſermones*, *rupes*.

Nouns in *is* and *es* have ſometimes in the nominative plural alſo *eis* or *is*, as, *puppēs*, *puppeis*, or *puppis*.

2. Neuters

2. Neuters which have *e* in the ablative singular, have *a* in the nominative plural; as, *capita*, *itinera*: but those which have *i* in the ablative, make *ia*; as, *sedilia*, *calcarea*.

## GENITIVE PLURAL.

Nouns which in the ablative singular have *i* only, or *e* and *i* together, make the genitive plural in *ium*; but if the ablative be in *e*, the genitive plural has *um*; as, *sedile*, *sedili*, *sedilium*; *turris*, *turre* or *turri*, *turrium*; *caput*, *capite*, *capitum*.

Exc. 1. Monosyllables in *as* have *ium*, though their ablative end in *e*; as, *mas*, a male, *māre*, *mārium*; *vas*, a surety, *vadium*; but polysyllables have rather *um*; as, *civitas*, a state or city, *civitatum*, and sometimes *civitatum*.

Exc. 2. Nouns in *es* and *is*, which do not increase in the genitive singular, have also *ium*; as *hostis*, an enemy, *hostium*. So likewise nouns ending in two consonants; as, *gens*, a nation, *gensium*; *urbs*, a city, *urbium*.

But the following have *um*: *parens*, *vātes*, *pānis*, *jūvenis*, and *cānis*.

Exc. 3. The following nouns form the ablative plural in *ium*, though they have *e* only in the ablative singular:

*Caro*, *carnis*, f. *a* flesh.

*Cohors*, -tis, f. *a* company.

*Cor*, *cordis*, n. the heart.

*Cos*, *cotis*, f. *a* bone or ribstone.

*Dos*, *dōtis*, f. *a* dowry.

*Faux*, *faucis*, f. the jaws.

*Glis*, *gliris*, m. *a* rat.

*Lar*, *laris*, m. *a* household-god.

*Linter*, -tris, m. or f. *a* little boat.

*Lis*, *litis*, f. *a* strife.

*Mus*, *mūris*, m. *a* mouse.

*Nix*, *nivis*, f. *a* snow.

*Nox*, *noctis*, f. the night.

*Os*, *ossis*, n. *a* bone.

*Quiris*, -itis, *a* Roman.

*Samnis*, -itis, m. or f. *a* Samnite.

*Uter*, *utris*, m. *a* bottle.

Thus *Samnitium*, *linterium*, *litium*, &c. Also the compounds of *uncia* and *as*; as, *septunx*, seven ounces, *septuncium*; *bes*, eight ounces, *bestium*. *Bos*, an ox or cow, has *bovm*, and in the dative, *bōbus* or *būbus*.

Greek nouns have generally *um*; as, *Macedo*, a Macedonian; *Arab*, an Arabian; *Aethiops*, an Ethiopian; *Monoceros*, an unicorn; *Lynx*, a beast so called: *Thrax*, a Thracian: *Macedunum*, *Arabum*, *Aethiopum*, *Monocerum*, *Lyncum*, *Thracum*. But those which have *a* or *sis* in the nominative singular, sometimes form the genitive plural in *on*; as *Epigramma*, *epigrammatum*, or *epigrammaton*, an epigram; *metamorphosis*, -ium, or -on.

Obs. 1. Nouns which want the singular, form the genitive plural as if they were complete; thus *mānes*, m. souls departed, *manium*; *calites*,

m.

m. inhabitants of heaven, *calitum*; because they would have had in the sing. *manis* or *manes*, and *cales*. But names of feasts often vary their declension; as, *Saturnālia*, the feasts of Saturn, *Saturnalium* and *Saturnaliorum*. So, *Bacchanalia*, *Compitalia*, *Terminalia*, &c.

Obf. 2. Nouns which have *ium* in the genitive plural, are, by the poets, often contracted into *um*; as *nōcentūm* for *nocentium*; and sometimes, to encrease the number of syllables, a letter is inserted; as, *calituum* for *calitum*. The former of these is said to be done by the figure *Syncōpe*; and the latter by *Epenthēsis*.

#### EXCEPTIONS in the DATIVE PLURAL.

Exc. 1. Greek nouns in *a* have commonly *tis* instead of *tibus*; as, *poēma*, a poem, *poematis*, rather than *poemati-bus*, from the old nominative *poemātum* of the second decl.

Exc. 2. The poets sometimes form the dative plural of Greek nouns in *si*, or when the next word begins with a vowel, in *sin*; as, *Troāsi* or *Troāsin*, for *Troādibus*, from *Troas*, *Troadis*, a Trojan woman.

#### EXCEPTIONS in the ACCUSATIVE PLURAL.

Exc. 1. Nouns which have *ium* in the genitive plural, make their accusative plural in *es*, *eis*, or *is*; as, *partes*, *partium*, acc. *partes*, *partis*, or *partis*.

Exc. 2. If the accusative singular end in *a*, the accusative plural also ends in *as*; as, *lampas*, *lampādem*, or *lampāda*, *lampādes* or *lampādas*. So *Tros*, *Troas*; *beros*, *beroas*; *Æthiops*, *Æthiopas*, &c.

#### GREEK NOUNS through all the Cases.

*Lampas*, a lamp, f. *lampādis*, or *-ādos*; *-ādi*, *-ādem*, or *-āda*; *-as*; *-āde*: Plur. *-ādes*; *-ādum*; *-ādibus*; *-ādes*, or *-ādas*; *-ādes*; *-adibus*.

*Troas*, f. *Troādis*, or *-ādos*; *-i*; *em* or *a*; *as*; *e*:

Pl. *Troades*; *-um*; *ibus*, *si* or *sin*; *es* or *as*; *es*; *ibus*.

*Tros*, m. *Trois*; *Troi*; *Troem* or *-a*; *Tros*; *Troe*, &c.

*Phillis* f. *Phillidis* or *-dos*, *di*, *dem*, or *da*; *i* or *is*; *de*.

*Paris*, m. *Paridis* or *-dos*; *di*; *dem*, *Parim* or *in*; *i*; *de*.

*Chlāmys*, f. *Chlām̄ydis* or *-ydos*, *ydi*, *ydem* or *yda*, *ys*, *yde*, &c.

*Cāpys*, m. *Cāpyis*, or *-yos*; *yi*; *ym* or *yn*; *y*; *ye* or *y*.

*Mētāmorphōsis*, f. *-is* or *-eos*, *i*, *em* or *in*, *i*, *i*, &c.

*Orpheus*, m. *-eos*, *ei* or *ei*, *ea*, *eu*, abl. *eo* of the second decl.

*Dido*, f. *Didis* or *Didōnis*, *Dido* or *Didoni*, &c.

#### FOURTH

## FOURTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of the fourth declension end in *us* and *u*.

Nouns in *us* are masculine; nouns in *u* are neuter, and indeclinable in the singular number.

The terminations of the cases are; nom. sing. *us*; gen. *us*; dat. *ui*; acc. *um*; voc. *like the nom.*; nom. acc. voc. plur. *us* or *ua*; gen. *uum*; dat. and abl. *ibus*; as,

| Fructus, fruit, masc. |               | Cornu, a horn, neut. |              |
|-----------------------|---------------|----------------------|--------------|
| Sing.                 | Plur.         | Sing.                | Plur.        |
| N. fructus,           | N. fructus,   | N. cornu,            | N. cornua,   |
| G. fructus,           | G. fructuum,  | G. cornu,            | G. cornuuum, |
| D. fructui,           | D. fructibus, | D. cornu,            | D. cornibus, |
| A. fructum,           | A. fructus,   | A. cornu,            | A. cornua,   |
| V. fructus,           | V. fructus,   | V. cornu,            | V. cornua,   |
| A. fructu.            | A. fructibus. | A. cornu.            | A. cornibus. |

In like manner decline,

|                                              |                                           |                                                            |
|----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| Aditus, an access.                           | Haustrus, a draught.                      | Risus, a grinning.                                         |
| Anfractus, a winding.                        | Ictus, a stroke.                          | Ritus, a rite, a ceremony.                                 |
| Auditus, the sense of bearing. [song.        | Impetus, an attack.                       | Risus, laughter. [ny.                                      |
| Cantus, a singing or                         | Incessus, a stately gate.                 | Ructus, a belching.                                        |
| Casus, a fall, an accident or chance.        | Luctus, grief.                            | Saltus, a leap, a forest.                                  |
| Cæstus, a gauntlet.                          | Luxus, luxury, riot.                      | Sénatus, the senate, the supreme council among the Romans. |
| Cestus, a marriage-girdle.                   | Metus, fear.                              | Sensus, a sense, feeling, meaning.                         |
| Cætus, an assembly.                          | Missus, a throw; a turn or beat in races. | Sexus, a sex.                                              |
| Cultus, worship, dress.                      | Motus, a motion.                          | Sinus, a bosom.                                            |
| Currus, a chariot.                           | Nexus, servitude for debt.                | Singultus, a sob, the hiccup.                              |
| Cursus, a race.                              | Nurus, a daughter-in-law.                 | Situs, a situation.                                        |
| Decessus, a departure.                       | Nutus, a nod. [law.                       | Status, a posture.                                         |
| Eventus, an event.                           | Obtus, a look.                            | Socrus, a mother-in-law.                                   |
| Exercitus, an army.                          | Odoratus, the sense of smelling.          | Spiritus, a breathing, spirit.                             |
| Exitus, an issue.                            | Passus, a pace.                           | Successus, success.                                        |
| Fastus, pride.                               | Principatus, pre-eminence.                | Sumptus, expence.                                          |
| Flatus, a blast.                             | Processus, a progress.                    | Tactus, the touch.                                         |
| Fletus, weeping.                             | Progressus, an advancement.               | Tönitru, thunder.                                          |
| Fluctus, a wave.                             | Prospectus, a view.                       | Transitus, a passage.                                      |
| Fætus, an offspring.                         | Proventus, an increase, revenue.          | Tumultus, an uproar.                                       |
| Gelu, ice.                                   | Quæstus, gain.                            | Vénatus, hunting.                                          |
| Gemitus, a groan.                            | Questus, a complaint.                     | Viu-, the sight.                                           |
| Grædus, a step, a degree.                    | Redtus, a return, an income.              | Victus, food.                                              |
| Gustus, the taste.                           |                                           | Vultus, the countenance.                                   |
| Habitus, a habit, the state of mind or body. |                                           |                                                            |
| Hælitus, breath.                             |                                           |                                                            |

Etc.



Exc. 1. The following nouns are feminine :

|                     |                      |                      |
|---------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| Ācus, a needle.     | Ficus, a fig.        | Porticus, a gallery. |
| Ānus, an old woman. | Mānus, the hand.     | Spēcus, a den.       |
| Dōmus, a house.     | Pēnus, a storehouse. | Tribus, a tribe.     |

*Penus* and *specus* are sometimes masc. *Ficus*, *penus*, and *domus*, with several others, are also of the second declension. *Capricornus*, m. the sign Capricorn, although from *cornu*, is always of the second decl. and so are the compounds of *manus*; *unimānus*, having one hand; *centimānus*, &c. adj. *Domus* is but partly of the second declension; thus,

*Dōmus*, a house, fem.

| Sing.               | Plur.                  |
|---------------------|------------------------|
| Nom. domus,         | Nom. domus,            |
| Gen. domūs, or -mi, | Gen. domorum, or -uum, |
| Dat. domui, or -mo, | Dat. domibus,          |
| Acc. domum,         | Acc. domos, or -us,    |
| Voc. domus,         | Voc. domus,            |
| Abl. domo.          | Abl. domibus,          |

Note. *Domūs*, in the genit. signifies, of a house; and *domi*, at home, or of home; as, *memineris domi*. Terent. iv. 7. 45.

Exc. 2. The following nouns have ūbus, in the dative and ablative plural.

|                 |                    |                  |
|-----------------|--------------------|------------------|
| Ācus, a needle. | Lācus, a lake.     | Spēcus, a den.   |
| Arcus, a bow.   | Partus, a birth.   | Tribus, a tribe. |
| Artus, a joint. | Portus, a harbour. | Vēru, a spit.    |
| Gēnu, the knee. |                    |                  |

*Portus*, *genu*, and *veru*, have likewise ūbus; as, *portibus* or *portūbus*.

Exc. 3. *Iesus*, the venerable name of our Saviour, has *um* in the accusative, and *u* in the all other cases.

Nouns of this declension anciently belonged to the third, and were declined like *grus*, *gruis*; a crane; thus *fructus*, *fructus*, *fructui*, *fructuem*, *fructue*; *fructus*, *fructuum*, *fructibus*, *fructus*, *fructus*, *fructibus*. So that all the cases are contracted, except the dative singular, and genitive plural. In some writers, we still find the genitive singular, in *uis*; as, *Ejus anis causā*, for *anūs*. Terent. Heaut. ii. 3. 46. and in others, the dative in *u*; as, *Resistere impetu*, for *impetui*, Cic. Fam. x. 24. *Esse usu sibi*, for *usui*, lb. xiii. 71. The gen. plur. is sometimes contracted; as, *currūm* for *curruum*.

## FIFTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of the fifth declension end in *es*, and are of the feminine gender : as,

| Res, a thing, fem. |                     |               |               |
|--------------------|---------------------|---------------|---------------|
| Sing.              | Plur.               | Terminations. |               |
| Nom. <i>res</i> ,  | Nom. <i>res</i> ,   | <i>es</i> ,   | <i>es</i> ,   |
| Gen. <i>rei</i> ,  | Gen. <i>rerum</i> , | <i>ei</i> ,   | <i>erum</i> , |
| Dat. <i>rei</i> ,  | Dat. <i>rēbus</i> , | <i>ei</i> ,   | <i>ebus</i> , |
| Acc. <i>rem</i> ,  | Acc. <i>res</i> ,   | <i>em</i> ,   | <i>es</i> ,   |
| Voc. <i>res</i> ,  | Voc. <i>res</i> ,   | <i>es</i> ,   | <i>es</i> ,   |
| Abl. <i>re</i> .   | Abl. <i>rēbus</i> . | <i>e</i> .    | <i>ebus</i> . |

In like manner decline,

|                                                                    |                                 |                                     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>Acies</i> , the edge of a thing, or an army in order of battle. | <i>Inglūvies</i> , gluttony.    | <i>Scābies</i> , the scab, or itch. |
| <i>Cāries</i> , rottenness.                                        | <i>Mācies</i> , leanness.       | <i>Sēries</i> , an order.           |
| <i>Cæsāries</i> , the bair.                                        | <i>Māteries</i> , matter.       | <i>Spēcies</i> , an appearance.     |
| <i>Fācies</i> , the face.                                          | <i>Pernīcies</i> , destruction. | <i>Sūperficies</i> , the surface.   |
| <i>Glācies</i> , ice.                                              | <i>Prōlūvies</i> , a looseness. | <i>Tempērics</i> , temperateness.   |
|                                                                    | <i>Rābies</i> , madness.        |                                     |
|                                                                    | <i>Sānies</i> , gore.           |                                     |

Except *dies*, a day, masc. or fem. in the singular, and always masc. in the plural; and *mēridies*, the mid-day, or noon, masc.

The poets sometimes make the genitive, and more rarely the dative, in *e*.

The nouns of this declension are few in number, not exceeding fifty, and seem anciently to have been comprehended under the third declension. Most of them want the genitive, dative, and ablative plural, and many the plural altogether.

All nouns of the fifth declension end in *ies*, except three, *fides*, faith; *speres*, hope; *res*, a thing: and all nouns in *ies* are of the fifth, except these four, *ābies*, a fir-tree; *āries*, a ram; *pāries*, a wall; and *quies*, rest; which are of the third declension.

## IRREGULAR NOUNS.

Irregular nouns may be reduced to three classes, *Variable*, *Defective*, and *Redundant*.

## I. VARIABLE NOUNS.

Nouns are variable, either in gender, or declension, or in both.

I. Those which vary in gender are called *heterogeneous*, and may be reduced to the following classes:

E

1. Masculine

1. *Masculine in the singular, and neuter in the plural :*

*Ævernus*, a lake in Campania, bell. *Mænālus*, a hill in Arcadia.  
*Dindŷmus*, a hill in Phrygia. *Pangæus*, a promontory in Thrace.  
*Ismārus*, a hill in Thrace. *Tarārus*, a promontory in Laconia.  
*Malsicus*, a hill in Campania, famous for excellent wines. *Tartārus*, bell.  
*Tāygētus*, a hill in Laconia.

Thus, *Averna*, *Avernorum*; *Dindyma*, *-orum*, &c. These are thought by some to be properly adjectives, having *mons* understood in the singular, and *jūga* or *cacumina*, or the like, in the plural.

2. *Masc. in the sing. and in the plur. masc. and neuter.*

*Focus*, a jest, pl. *joci* and *joca*; *locus*, a place, pl. *loci* and *loca*. When we speak of passages in a book, or topics in discourse, *loci* only is used.

3. *Feminine in the singular, and neuter in the plural :*

*Carbāsus*, a sail, pl. *carbāsa*; *Pergāmus*, the citadel of Troy, pl. *Pergama*.

4. *Neuter in the singular, and masculine in the plural :*

*Calum*, pl. *cali*, heaven; *Ēlysium*, pl. *Elysi*, the Elysian fields; *Argos*, pl. *Argi*, a city in Greece.

5. *Neuter in the sing. in the plur. masc. or neuter :*

*Rastrum*, a rake, pl. *rastri* and *rastra*; *frēnum*, a bridle, pl. *freni* and *frena*.

6. *Neuter in the singular, and feminine in the plural :*

*Dēlicium*, a delight, pl. *deliciæ*; *Ēpulum*, a banquet, pl. *ēpula*; *Balneum*, a bath, pl. *balnea* and *balnea*.

II. Nouns which vary in declension are called *heteroelites*; as, *vas*, *vās*, a vessel, plur. *vāsa*, *vasorum*; *jūgerum*, *jugeri*, an acre, plur. *jūgera*, *jūgerum*, *jugeribus*, which has likewise sometimes *jūgeris* and *jūgere* in the singular, from the obsolete *jugus*, or *juger*.

## II. DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

Nouns are defective, either in cases or in number.

Nouns are defective in cases different ways.

1. Some are altogether indeclinable; as, *pondo*, a pound or pounds; *fas*, right; *nēfas*, wrong; *sināpi*, mustard; *māne*, the morning; as *clārum māne*, Pers. *A mane ad vesperam*, Plaut. *Multo mane*, &c.; *cēpe*, an onion; *gausape*,

*sāpe*, a rough coat, &c. ; all of them neuter. We may rank among indeclinable nouns, any word put for a noun ; as, *velle suum*, for *sua voluntas*, his own inclination, *Perf. Istud cras*, for *iste crastinus dies*, that to-morrow. *Mart. O magnam Græcorum*, the *Omēga*, or the large O of the Greeks ; *Infidus est compositum ex in et fidus* ; *infidus* is compounded of *in* and *fidus*. To these add foreign or barbarous names ; that is, names which are neither Greek nor Latin, as *Job*, *Elisabet*, *Jerusalem*, &c.

2. Some are used only in one case, and therefore called *monoptōta* : as, *inquier*, want of rest, in the nominative singular ; *dicis*, and *nauci*, in the genit. sing. ; thus, *dicis gratiā*, for form's sake ; *res nauci*, a thing of no value ; *inficias*, and *incūta* or *incūtas*, in the acc. plur. ; thus *ire inficias*, to deny ; *ad incūtas redactus*, reduced to a strait or non-plus ; *ingrātus*, in the abl. plur. in spite of one ; and these ablatives singular, *noctū*, in the night-time ; *diū*, *interdiū*, in the day-time ; *promptu*, in readiness ; *nātū*, by birth ; *injussu*, without command or leave : *ergō* for the sake, as, *ergo illius*, *Virg. Ambāge*, f. with a winding or a tedious story ; *Compēde*, m. with a fetter ; *Casse*, m. with a net ; *vepre*, m. a briar : Plur. *Ambāges*, -ibus ; *compedes*, -ibus ; *casses*, -ium ; *vepres*, -ium, &c.

3. Some are used in two cases only, and therefore called *diptōta* ; as, *nēcesse* or -um, necessity ; *vōlūpe* or *volup*, pleasure ; *instar*, likeness, bigness ; *astu*, a town ; *hir*, the palm of the hand ; in the nom. and acc. sing. ; *vesper*, m. abl. *vespēre* or *vespēri*, the evening ; *siremps*, the same all alike, abl. *sirempse* ; *spontis*, f. in the genitive, and *sponte* in the ablative, of its own accord : so *impētis*, m. and *impēte*, force ; *verbēris*, n. genit. and *verbēre*, abl. a stripe ; in the plural entire ; *verbēra*, *verberum*, *verberibus*, &c. *rēpētundarum*, abl. *repetundis*, sc. *pecuniis*, money unjustly taken in the time of one's office, extortion ; *suppētia*, nom. pl. *suppētias*, in the acc. help ; *inferia*, *inferias*, sacrifices to the dead.

4. Several nouns are only used in three cases, and therefore called *triptōta* ; as, *prēci*, *precem*, *prece*, f. a prayer, from *prex*, which is not used : in the plural it is entire, *preces*, *precum*, *precibus*, &c. *Femīnis*, gen. from the obsolete *femen*, the thigh ; in the dat. and abl. sing. ; in the

nom. acc. and voc. plur. *femina*. *Dīca*, a process, acc. sing. *dicam*, pl. *dicas*; *tantundem*, nom. and acc. *tantūdem*, genit. even as much. Several nouns in the plural want the genitive, dative, and ablative; as, *hiems*, *rus*, *thus*, *mētus*, *mel*, *far*, and most nouns of the fifth declension.

To this class of defective nouns may be added these neuter, *mēlos*, a song; *mēle*, songs; *ēpos*, a heroic poem; *cūcoēthes*, an evil custom; *cēte* whales; *Tempe*, plur. a beautiful vale in Thessaly, &c. used only in the nom. acc. and voc.; also *grātes*, f. thanks.

5. The following nouns want the nominative, and of consequence the vocative, and therefore are called *tetraptōta*: *vīcis*, f. of the place or stead of another; *pēcūdis*, f. of a beast; *sordis*, f. of filth; *ditiōnis*, f. of dominion, power; *ōpis*, f. of help. Of these *pēcūdis* and *sordis* have the plural entire: *ditiōnis* wants it altogether: *vīcis* is not used in the genitive plural; *ōpis* in the plural, generally signifies wealth, or power, seldom help. To these add *nex*, slaughter; *daps*, a dish of meat; and *frux*, corn; hardly used in the nominative singular, but in the plural mostly entire.

6. Some nouns only want one case, and are called *pentaptōta*: thus, *os*, the mouth; *lux*, light; *fax*, a torch, together with some others, want the genitive plural. *Chaos*, n. a confused mass, wants the genit. sing. and the plural entirely; dat. sing. *chao*. So *sātias*, i. e. *satietas*, a glut or fill of any thing. *Situs*, a situation, nastiness, of the fourth decl. wants the gen. and perhaps the dat. sing. also the gen. dat. and abl. plur.

Of nouns defective in number there are various sorts.

1. Several nouns want the plural, from the nature of the things which they express. Such are the names of virtues and vices, of arts, herbs, metals, liquors, different kinds of corn, most abstract nouns, &c. as, *iustitia*, justice; *ambitus*, ambition; *astus*, cunning; *mūsica*, music; *apium*, parsley; *argentum*, silver; *aurum*, gold; *lac*, milk; *triticum*, wheat; *hordeum*, barley; *avena*, oats; *iūventus*, youth, &c. But of these we find several sometimes used in the plural.

2. The



2. The following masculines are hardly ever found in the plural :

|                                        |                                                     |
|----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| Aër, aëris, <i>the air.</i>            | Nëmo, -inis, <i>no body.</i>                        |
| Æther, -ëris, <i>the sky.</i>          | Pënus, -i, or -üs, <i>all manner of provisions.</i> |
| Fimûs, -i, <i>dung.</i>                | Pontus, -i, <i>the sea.</i>                         |
| Hëspërus, -i, <i>the evening star.</i> | Pulvis, -ëris, <i>dust.</i>                         |
| Lîmus, -i, <i>slime.</i>               | Sanguis, -inis, <i>blood.</i>                       |
| Mëridies, -icî, <i>mid-day.</i>        | Söpor, -öris, <i>sleep.</i>                         |
| Mundus, <i>a woman's ornaments.</i>    | Viscus, -i, <i>bird-lime.</i>                       |
| Muscus, -i, <i>moss.</i>               |                                                     |

3. The following feminines are scarcely used in the plural :

|                                          |                                              |
|------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| Argilla, -æ, <i>potter's earth.</i>      | Sälus, -ütis, <i>safety.</i>                 |
| Fäma, -æ, <i>fame.</i>                   | Sitis, -is, <i>thirst.</i>                   |
| Hûmus, -i, <i>the ground.</i>            | Süpellex, -ëtis, <i>household-furniture.</i> |
| Lues, -is, <i>a plague.</i>              | Täbes, -is, <i>a consumption.</i>            |
| Plebs, plëbis, <i>the common people.</i> | Tellus, -üris, <i>the earth.</i>             |
| Pübes, -is, <i>the youth.</i>            | Vëspëra, -æ, <i>the evening.</i>             |
| Quies, -ëtis, <i>rest.</i>               |                                              |

4. These neuters are seldom used in the plural :

|                                                                    |                                                             |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| Album, -i, <i>a list of names.</i>                                 | Lütum, -i, <i>clay.</i>                                     |
| Dilüculum, -i, <i>the dawning of day.</i>                          | Nihil, nihîlum, or nil, <i>nothing.</i>                     |
| Ëbur, -öris, <i>ivory.</i>                                         | Pëlägus, -i, <i>the sea.</i>                                |
| Gëlu, ind. <i>frost.</i>                                           | Pënum, -i, and penus, -öris; <i>all kind of provisions.</i> |
| Hilum, -i, <i>the black speck of a bean, a trifle.</i>             | Sal, sälis, <i>salt.</i>                                    |
| Justitium, -i, <i>a vacation, the time when courts do not sit.</i> | Sënium, -ii, <i>old age.</i>                                |
| Lëthum, <i>death.</i>                                              | Ver, veris, <i>the spring.</i>                              |
|                                                                    | Virus, -i, <i>poison.</i>                                   |

5. Many nouns want the singular; as the names of feasts, books, games, and several cities; thus,

|                                                                      |                                                     |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| Äpollinäres, -ium, <i>games in honour of Apollo.</i>                 | Ölympia, -orum, <i>the Olympic games.</i>           |
| Bacchänälia, -ium, & -iorum, <i>the feasts of Bacchus.</i> [terals.] | Syracüsæ, -arum, <i>Syracuse.</i>                   |
| Bücölica, -orum, <i>a book of pastoral.</i>                          | Hierosölyma, -orum, <i>Jerusalem;</i>               |
|                                                                      | or Hierosölyma, -æ, <i>of the first declension.</i> |

6. The following masculines are hardly used in the singular :

|                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                      |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Cancelli, <i>lattices, or windows, made with cross bars like a net; a rail or balustrade round any place; bounds or limits.</i> | Cëlëres, -um, <i>the light-horse.</i>                                                |
| Cäni, <i>gray hairs.</i>                                                                                                        | Cödificilli, <i>writings.</i>                                                        |
| Cassë, -ium, <i>a hunter's net.</i>                                                                                             | Druïdes, -um, <i>the Druids, priests of the ancient Britons and Gauls.</i>           |
|                                                                                                                                 | Fäices, -ium, <i>a bundle of rods, carried before the chief magistrates of Rome.</i> |

|                                                                                                                       |                                                          |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| Fasti, -orum, <i>er fastus, -uum, calendar, in which were marked festival days, the names of magistrates, &amp;c.</i> | Lēmūres, -um, <i>bobgoblins, or spirits in the dark.</i> |
| Fines, -ium, <i>the borders of a country, or a country.</i>                                                           | Lībēri, <i>children.</i>                                 |
| Fōri, <i>the gang-ways of a ship, seats in the Circus, or the calls of a bee-hive.</i>                                | Majōres, -um, <i>ancestors.</i>                          |
| Fursures, -um, <i>scales in the head.</i>                                                                             | Mīnōres, -um, <i>successors.</i>                         |
| Infēri, <i>the gods below.</i>                                                                                        | Nātāles, -ium, <i>parentage.</i>                         |
|                                                                                                                       | Postēri, <i>posterity.</i>                               |
|                                                                                                                       | Prōcēres, -um, <i>the nobles.</i>                        |
|                                                                                                                       | Pūgillāres, -ium, <i>writing-tables.</i>                 |
|                                                                                                                       | Sentes, -ium, <i>thorns.</i>                             |
|                                                                                                                       | Sūpēri, <i>the gods above.</i>                           |
|                                                                                                                       | Vepres, -ium, <i>briars.</i>                             |

7. The following feminines want the singular number :

|                                                    |                                                                                               |                                                 |
|----------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| Alpes, -ium, <i>the Alps.</i>                      | Fēriæ, <i>holidays.</i>                                                                       | Offūciæ, <i>cheats.</i>                         |
| Angustix, <i>difficulties.</i>                     | Gādes, -ium, <i>Cadiz.</i>                                                                    | Ōpēræ, <i>workmen.</i>                          |
| Āpinæ, <i>gerogatus.</i>                           | Gerræ, <i>trifles.</i>                                                                        | Pāriētīnæ, <i>ruinous walls.</i>                |
| Argūtix, <i>quirks, wit-ticisms.</i>               | Hyaēdes, -um, <i>the seven stars.</i>                                                         | Partes, -ium, <i>a party.</i>                   |
| Bigæ, <i>a chariot drawn by two horses.</i>        | Indūciæ, <i>a truce.</i>                                                                      | Phālēræ, <i>trappings.</i>                      |
| Trīgæ, — <i>by three.</i>                          | Indūviæ, <i>cloaths to put on.</i>                                                            | Plāgæ, <i>nets.</i>                             |
| Quadrigæ, — <i>by four.</i>                        | Ineptix, <i>silly stories.</i>                                                                | Pleiādes, -um, <i>the seven stars.</i>          |
| Braccæ, <i>breeches.</i>                           | Invidiæ, <i>snarers.</i>                                                                      | Prestigiæ, <i>enchant-ments.</i>                |
| Branchiæ, <i>the gills of a fish.</i>              | Kālendæ, Nōnæ, Ī-dus, -uum, <i>names which the Romans gave to certain days in each month.</i> | Primitiæ, <i>first fruits.</i>                  |
| Charites, um, <i>the three graces.</i>             | Lāpīcīdīnæ, <i>stone-quarries.</i>                                                            | Quisquiliæ, <i>swappings.</i>                   |
| Cūnæ, <i>a cradle.</i>                             | Litēra, <i>an epistle.</i>                                                                    | Rēliquiæ, <i>a remainder.</i>                   |
| Dēcīmæ, <i>titbits.</i>                            | Lactes, -ium, <i>the small guts.</i>                                                          | Sālebræ, <i>rugged places.</i>                  |
| Dīræ, <i>imprecations, the furies.</i>             | Mānūbiæ, <i>spoils taken in war.</i>                                                          | Sālīnæ, <i>salt-pits.</i>                       |
| Divitiæ, <i>riches.</i>                            | Mīnæ, <i>threats.</i>                                                                         | Scālæ, <i>a ladder.</i>                         |
| Dryādes, um, <i>the nymphs of the woods.</i>       | Mīmūtīæ, <i>little niceties.</i>                                                              | Scātebræ, <i>a spring.</i>                      |
| Excūbiæ, <i>watches.</i>                           | Nūgæ, <i>trifles.</i>                                                                         | Scōpæ, <i>a besom.</i>                          |
| Exsequiæ, <i>funerals.</i>                         | Nundīnæ, <i>a market.</i>                                                                     | Tēnebræ, <i>darkness.</i>                       |
| Extūviæ, <i>spoils.</i>                            | Nuptiæ, <i>a marriage.</i>                                                                    | Thermæ, <i>hot baths.</i>                       |
| Fācētīæ, <i>pleasant say-ings.</i>                 |                                                                                               | Thermōpylæ, <i>straits of mount Oeta.</i>       |
| Fācultates, -ium, <i>one's goods and chattels.</i> |                                                                                               | Trīcæ, <i>toys.</i>                             |
|                                                    |                                                                                               | Valvæ, <i>folding doors.</i>                    |
|                                                    |                                                                                               | Vergiliæ, <i>the seven stars.</i>               |
|                                                    |                                                                                               | Vindictæ, <i>a claim of liberty, a defence.</i> |

8. The following neuter nouns want the singular :

|                                             |                                                                                             |
|---------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Acta, <i>public acts or records.</i>        | Castra, <i>a camp.</i>                                                                      |
| Æstiva, <i>sc. castra, summer quarters.</i> | Chāristia, -orum, <i>a peace-feast.</i>                                                     |
| Arma, <i>arms.</i>                          | Cībāria, <i>viñuals.</i>                                                                    |
| Bellāria, -orum, <i>sweet meats.</i>        | Cōmūtia, <i>an assembly of the people, to make laws, elect magistrates, or hold trials.</i> |
| Bona, <i>goods.</i>                         |                                                                                             |
| Brēvia, -ium, <i>shelves.</i>               |                                                                                             |

Crēpundia,

|                                                                        |                                                                                                             |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Crēpundia, children's babblings.                                       | Päräpherna, all things the wife brings her husband except her dowry.                                        |
| Cūnābūla, a cradle, an origin.                                         | Pären;ālia, -ium, solemnities at the funeral of parents.                                                    |
| Diētēria, scoffs, witticisms.                                          | Philtra, love potions.                                                                                      |
| Extra, the entrails.                                                   | Præcordia, the bowels.                                                                                      |
| Februa, -orum, purifying sacrifices.                                   | Principia, the place in the camp where the general's tent stood.                                            |
| Flabra, blasts of wind.                                                | Pŷthia, games in honour of Apollo.                                                                          |
| Frāga, strawberries.                                                   | Rostra, a place in Rome made of the beaks of ships, from which orators used to make orations to the people. |
| Hŷberna, sc. castra, winter quarters.                                  | Scrūta, old cloaths.                                                                                        |
| Īlia, -ium, the entrails.                                              | Sponsālia, -ium, espousals.                                                                                 |
| Incūnābūla, a cradle.                                                  | Stāctiva, sc. castra, a standing camp.                                                                      |
| Insecta, insects.                                                      | Suōvētaurilia, -ium, a sacrifice of a swine, a sheep, and an ox.                                            |
| Iusta, funeral rites.                                                  | Tālāria, -ium, winged shoes.                                                                                |
| Lāmenta, lamentations.                                                 | Tetiqua, rough places.                                                                                      |
| Lautia, provisions for the entertainment of foreign ambassadors.       | Transtra, the seats where the rowers sit in ships.                                                          |
| Lustra, dens of wild beasts.                                           | Ūtensilia, -ium, utensils.                                                                                  |
| Māgālia, -ium, cottages.                                               |                                                                                                             |
| Mœnia, -ium, the walls of a city.                                      |                                                                                                             |
| Mūnia, -iorum, offices.                                                |                                                                                                             |
| Orgia, the sacred rites of Bacchus.                                    |                                                                                                             |
| Ōvilia, -ium, an inclosure, where the people went to give their votes. |                                                                                                             |
| Pālēcāria, -ium, the dew-lap of a beast.                               |                                                                                                             |

Several nouns in each of the above lists are found also in the singular, but in a different sense; thus, *castrum*, a castle; *littera*, a letter of the alphabet, &c.

### III. REDUNDANT NOUNS.

Nouns are redundant in different ways: 1. In termination only; as, *arbo* and *arbor*, a tree. 2. In declension only; as, *laurus*, genit. *lauri*, and *laurūs*, a laurel tree, *sēqueſter* -tri, or -tris, a mediator. 3. Only in gender; as, *hic* or *hoc vulgus*, the rabble. 4. Both in termination and declension; as, *mātēria*, -a, or, *materiet*, -iēi, matter; *plebs*, -is, the common people, or *plebes*, -is, -iēi, or contracted *plebi*. 5. In termination and gender; as, *tonitrus*, -ūs, masc. *tonitru*, neut. thunder. 6. In declension and gender, as, *pēnus*, i, and -ūs, m. or f. or *penus*, -ōris, neut. all kind of provisions. 7. In termination, gender, and declension; as, *aether*, -etris, masc. and *aethra*, -a, fem. the sky. 8. Several nouns in the same declension are differently varied; as, *tigris*, -is, or *īdis*, a tyger: to which may be added, nouns which have the same signification in different numbers; as, *Fidēna*, -a; or *Fidēna*, -arum, the name of a city.

The most numerous class of redundant nouns consists of those which express the same meaning by different terminations; as, *menda*, -a; and *mendum*, -i, a fault; *casus*, -idus; and *casida*, -da, a helmet.—So,

*Acinus*,

|                                                                    |                                                  |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| Ācīnus, & -um, <i>a grape-stone.</i>                               | Hebdōmas, & -āda, <i>a week.</i>                 |
| Alvear, & -e, & -ium, <i>a bee-bive.</i>                           | Intrita, & -um, <i>fine mortar, minced meat.</i> |
| Āmārācus, & -um, <i>sweet marjoram.</i>                            | Librārium, & -a, <i>a book-case.</i>             |
| Ancile, & -ium, <i>an oval shield.</i>                             | Mācēria, & -es, īci, <i>a wall.</i>              |
| Angiportus, -ūs, & -i, & -um, <i>a narrow lane.</i>                | Milliāre, & -ium, <i>a mile.</i>                 |
| Aphrastus, & -um, <i>an open ship.</i>                             | Mōnītum, & -us, -ūs, <i>an admonition.</i>       |
| Aplustre, & -um, <i>the flag, colours.</i>                         | Muria, & -es, -īci, <i>brine or pickle.</i>      |
| Bācūlus, & -um, <i>a staff.</i>                                    | Nāsus, & -um, <i>the nose.</i>                   |
| Balteus, & -um, <i>a belt.</i>                                     | Obsīdio, & -um, <i>a siege.</i>                  |
| Bātillus, & -um, <i>a fire-shovel.</i>                             | Oestrus, & -um, <i>a gad bee.</i>                |
| Cāpūlus, & -um, <i>a bill.</i>                                     | Ostrea, & -um, <i>an oyster.</i>                 |
| Cāpus, & -o, <i>a capon.</i>                                       | Peplus, & -um, <i>a veil, a robe.</i>            |
| Cēpa, & -e indec. <i>an onion.</i>                                 | Piltrina, & -um, <i>a bake-house.</i>            |
| Clypeus, & -um, <i>a shield.</i>                                   | Prætextus, -us, & -um, <i>a pretext.</i>         |
| Collūvies, & -io, <i>filth, dirt.</i>                              | Rāpa, & -um, <i>a turnip.</i>                    |
| Compāges, & -go, <i>a joining.</i>                                 | Rūma, & -men, <i>the cud.</i>                    |
| Conger, & -grus, <i>a large eel.</i>                               | Ruscus, & -um, <i>a brush.</i>                   |
| Crōcus, & -um, <i>saffron.</i>                                     | Seps, & scēpes, f. <i>an hedge.</i>              |
| Cūbītus, & -um, <i>a cubit.</i>                                    | Segmen, & -mentum, <i>a piece or paring.</i>     |
| Dilūvium, & -es, <i>a deluge.</i>                                  | Sibīlus, & -um, <i>a hissing.</i>                |
| Ēlēphantus, & ēlephas, -antis, <i>an elephant.</i>                 | Sīnus, & -um, <i>a milk-pail.</i>                |
| Ēlēgus, & -cia, <i>an elegy.</i>                                   | Spurcītia, & -es, <i>nausea.</i>                 |
| Efsēda, & -um, <i>a chariot.</i>                                   | Strāmen, & -um, <i>straw.</i>                    |
| Ēventus, & -um, <i>an event.</i>                                   | Suffimen, & -um, <i>a perfume.</i>               |
| Fulgetra, & -um, <i>lightning.</i>                                 | Tīgnus, & -um, <i>a plank.</i>                   |
| Gālerus, & -um, <i>a hat.</i>                                      | Tōral, & -āle, <i>a bed-covering.</i>            |
| Gibbus, & -a; & -er, -ēris, or<br>ēri, <i>a bunch, a swelling.</i> | Torcūlar, & -are, <i>a wine press.</i>           |
| Glūtīnum, & -en, <i>glue.</i>                                      | Vīscus, & -um, <i>bird-lime.</i>                 |
|                                                                    | Vēternus, & -um, <i>a lethargy.</i>              |

*Note.* The nouns which are called variable and defective, seem originally to have been redundant: thus *vāsa*, -orum, properly comes from *vasum*, and not from *vas*; but custom, which gives laws to all languages, has dropt the singular, and retained the plural; and so of others.

### *Division of Nouns according to their signification and derivation.*

1. A substantive which signifies many in the singular number, is called a *Collective* noun; as, *pōpūlus*, a people; *exercitus*, an army.

2. A substantive derived from another substantive proper, signifying one's extraction, is called a *Patronymic* noun; as, *Priāmides*, the son of Priamus; *Eētiās*, the daughter

daughter of *Æetes*; *Nērīne*, the daughter of Nereus. Patronymics are generally derived from the name of the father; but the poets, by whom they are chiefly used, derive them also from the grandfather, or from some other remarkable person of the family; sometimes likewise from the founder of a nation or people; as, *Æacides*, the son, grandson, great-grandson, or one of the posterity of *Æacus*; *Rōmālidæ*, the Romans, from their first king Romulus.

Patronymic names of men end in *des*; of women, in *is*, *as*, or *ne*. Those in *des* and *ne* are of the first declension, and those in *is* and *as*, of the third; as, *Priamides*, *-dæ*, &c. pl. *-dæ*, *dārum*, &c.; *Nērīne*, *-es*; *Tyndāris*, *-idis* or *-idos*; *Æētias*, *-adis*, &c.

3. A noun derived from a substantive proper, signifying one's country, is called a *Patrial* or *Gentile* noun; as, *Tros*, *Trois*, a man born at Troy; *Troas*, *-adis*, a woman born at Troy. *Siculus*, *-i*, a Sicilian man; *Sicēlis*, *-idis*, a Sicilian woman: so, *Mācēdo*, *-ōnis*; *Arpīnas*, *-ātis*, a man born in Macedonia, Arpinum; from *Troja*, *Sicilia*, *Macedonia*, *Arpinum*. But patrials for the most part are to be considered as adjectives, having a substantive understood, as, *Romānus*, *Athēniensis*, &c.

4. A substantive derived from an adjective, expressing simply the quality of the adjective, without regard to the thing in which the quality exists, is called an *Abstract*; as, *justitia*, justice; *bōnitas*, goodness; *dulcēdo*, sweetness: from *justus*, just; *bonus*, good; *dulcis*, sweet. The adjectives from which these abstracts come, are called *Concretes*; because, besides the quality, they also suppose something to which it belongs. Abstracts commonly end in *a*, *as*, or *do*, and are very numerous, being derived from most adjectives in the Latin tongue.

5. A substantive derived from another substantive, signifying a diminution or lessening of its signification, is called a *Diminutive*; as, *libellus*, a little book; *chariūla*, a little paper; *opusculum*, a little work; *corcūlum*, a little heart; *reticulum*, a small net; *scābellum*, a small form; *lapillus*, a little stone; *culicellus*, a little knife; *pāgella*, a little  
little



little page : from *liber*, *charta*, *opus*, *cor*, *rēte*, *scamnum*, *lapis*, *culter*, *página*. Several diminutives are sometimes formed from the same primitive ; as, from *puer*, *puerulus*, *puellus*, *puellulus* ; from *cista*, *cistula*, *cistella*, *cistellula* ; from *homo*, *homuncio*, *homunculus*. Diminutives for the most part end in *lus*, *la*, *lum* ; and are generally of the same gender with their primitives. When the signification of the primitive is increased, it is called an *Amplificative*, and ends in *o* : as, *Capito*, *-ōnis*, having a large head : So, *nāso*, *lābeo*, *bucco*, having a large nose, lips, cheeks.

6. A substantive derived from a verb is called a *Verbal* noun ; as, *āmor*, love ; *doctrīna*, learning : from *āmo*, and *dōceo*. Verbal nouns are very numerous, and commonly end in *io*, *or*, *us*, and *ura* ; as, *leōio*, a lesson : *āmātor*, a lover ; *luctus*, grief, *creātūra*, a creature.

## A D J E C T I V E.

An adjective is a word *added* to a substantive, to express its quality ; as, *hard*, *soft*.

We know things by their qualities only. Every quality must belong to some subject. An adjective therefore always implies a substantive expressed or understood, and cannot make full sense without it.

An adjective may be thus distinguished from a substantive : If the word *thing* be joined to an adjective, it will make sense ; but if it be joined to a substantive, it will make nonsense : thus we can say, " a good thing ;" but we cannot say, " a book thing."

Adjectives in English admit of no variation, except that of the degrees of comparison.

## L A T I N A D J E C T I V E S.

Adjectives in Latin are varied by gender, number, and case, to agree with substantives in all these accidents.

An adjective properly hath neither genders, numbers, nor cases ; but certain terminations answering to the gender, number, and case of the substantive with which it is joined.

Adjectives are varied like three substantives of the same termination and declension.

All adjectives are either of the first and second declension, or of the third only.

Adjectives of three terminations are of the first and second declension ; but adjectives of one or two terminations are of the third.

Exc.

Exc. The following adjectives, though they have three terminations, are of the third declension.

|                                         |                                 |                            |
|-----------------------------------------|---------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Ācer, <i>sharp.</i>                     | Cēlēber, <i>famous.</i>         | Pēdestēr, <i>on foot.</i>  |
| Ālācer, <i>cheerful.</i>                | Cēler, <i>swift [horse].</i>    | Sāiūber, <i>wholesome.</i> |
| Campester, <i>belonging to a plain.</i> | Ēquestēr, <i>belonging to a</i> | Sylvester, <i>wooly.</i>   |
|                                         | Pāluster, <i>marshy.</i>        | Völūcer, <i>swift.</i>     |

### ADJECTIVES of the FIRST and SECOND DECLENSION.

Adjectives of the first and second declension have their masculine in *us* or *er*, their feminine always in *a*, and their neuter always in *um*; as, *bōnus*, for the masc. *bona*, for the fem. *bonum*, for the neut. good; thus,

| Sing.                | Plur.                      |
|----------------------|----------------------------|
| N. bōn-us, -a, -um,  | N. bon-i, -æ, -a,          |
| G. bon-i, -æ, -i,    | G. bon-orum, -arum, -orum, |
| D. bon-o, -æ, -o,    | D. bon-is, -is, -is,       |
| A. bon-um, -am, -um, | A. bon-os, -as, -a,        |
| V. bon-e, -a, -um,   | V. bon-i, -æ, -a,          |
| A. bon-o, -ā, -o.    | A. bon-is, -is, -is.       |

In like manner decline,

|                                  |                                    |                                               |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| Ācerbus, <i>unripe, bitter.</i>  | Arctus, <i>strait.</i>             | Cæcus, <i>blind.</i>                          |
| Ācidus, <i>sour, tart.</i>       | Arduus, <i>lofty.</i>              | Callidus, <i>cunning.</i>                     |
| Ācūtus, <i>sharp.</i>            | Argūtus, <i>quick, brill.</i>      | Calvus, <i>bald.</i>                          |
| Ādultērīnus, <i>counterfeit.</i> | Assus, <i>roasted, hot, pure.</i>  | Cāmūrus, <i>crooked.</i>                      |
| Āgrōtus, <i>sick.</i>            | Astūtus, <i>cunning.</i>           | Candīdus, <i>fair, sincere.</i>               |
| Āmūlus, <i>vying with.</i>       | Āvārus, <i>covetous.</i>           | Cānus, <i>hoary.</i>                          |
| Āquus, <i>equal, just.</i>       | Āvidus, <i>greedy.</i>             | Cārus, <i>dear.</i>                           |
| Āhēnus, <i>of brass.</i>         | Angustus, <i>venerable.</i>        | Cassus, <i>void.</i>                          |
| Albus, <i>white.</i>             | Aultērus, <i>harsh, rough.</i>     | Castus, <i>chaste.</i>                        |
| Altus, <i>high.</i>              | Balbus, <i>stammering.</i>         | Cautus, <i>wary.</i>                          |
| Āmārus, <i>bitter.</i>           | Barbārus, <i>savage.</i>           | Cāvus, <i>hollow.</i>                         |
| Āmēnus, <i>pleasant.</i>         | Bardus, <i>dull, slow.</i>         | Celsus, <i>high, lofty.</i>                   |
| Ambīguus, <i>doubtful.</i>       | Beātus, <i>blest.</i>              | Cernuus, <i>sleeping.</i>                     |
| Āmicus, <i>friendly.</i>         | Bellus, <i>pretty.</i>             | Certus, <i>certain, sure.</i>                 |
| Amplus, <i>large.</i>            | Bēnignus, <i>kind.</i>             | Clārus, <i>famous.</i>                        |
| Annuus, <i>yearly.</i>           | Bīmus, <i>two year old.</i>        | Claudus, <i>lame.</i>                         |
| Angustus, <i>narrow.</i>         | Blāsus, <i>lipping.</i>            | Cærūlus, <i>or -ēus, azure, sky-coloured.</i> |
| Antīquus, <i>ancient.</i>        | Blandus, <i>flattering.</i>        | Commōdus, <i>convenient.</i>                  |
| Aprīcus, <i>sunny.</i>           | Brūtus, <i>brutish, senseless.</i> | Concīnnus, <i>fine, neat.</i>                 |
| Aptus, <i>fit.</i>               | Cādūcus, <i>fading.</i>            | Cōrufcus, <i>glittering.</i>                  |
| Arcānus, <i>secret.</i>          |                                    | Crassus, <i>thick.</i>                        |

Crēpērus,

|                                   |                                                        |                                   |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| Crēperus, doubtful.               | Frētus, trusting.                                      | Largus, large.                    |
| Crīpus, curled.                   | Frivolus, trifling.                                    | Lascivus, wanton.                 |
| Crūdus, raw.                      | Fulvus, yellow.                                        | Lassus, weary.                    |
| Cunctus, all.                     | Furvus, swarthy.                                       | Lātus, broad.                     |
| Curtus, short.                    | Fuscus, brown.                                         | Laxus, loose, slack.              |
| Curvus, crooked.                  | Garrulus, prattling.                                   | Lentus, slow, pliant.             |
| Cynicus, churlish.                | Gēlidus, cold as ice.                                  | Lēpidus, pretty, witty.           |
| Dādālus, poet. curiously made.    | Gēmīnus, double.                                       | Limpidus, clear, pure.            |
| Dēcorus, graceful.                | Germānus, of the same stock, real.                     | Līmus, squinting.                 |
| Densus, thick.                    | Gibbus, convex.                                        | Lippus, blear-eyed.               |
| Dignus, worthy.                   | Gilvus, flesh-coloured.                                | Longinquus, far off.              |
| Dirus, direful.                   | Glaucus, grey.                                         | Longus, long.                     |
| Disertus, eloquent.               | Gnārus, skilful.                                       | Lubrīcus, slippery.               |
| Diuturnus, lasting.               | Gnāvus, active.                                        | Lūcidus, bright.                  |
| Doctus, learned.                  | Grātus, thankful.                                      | Lūridus, pale, ghastly.           |
| Dūbius, doubtful.                 | Hirsutus, hirtus, rough.                               | Luscus, blind of one eye.         |
| Dūrus, hard.                      | Hispidus, rugged.                                      | Mācilentus, lean.                 |
| Ebrius, drunk.                    | Honestus, honourable, honest.                          | Mālignus, spiteful.               |
| Effætus, past having young.       | Hornus, of this year.                                  | Māncus, maimed, lame.             |
| Ēgenus, poor.                     | Hūmānus, human, be- longing to a man : humane, polite. | Mānifestus, evident.              |
| Egrēgius, remarkable.             | Hūmidus, moist.                                        | Marcidus, rotten.                 |
| Ēlixus, boiled.                   | Idōneus, fit.                                          | Mēdius, mid or middle.            |
| Exiguus, small.                   | Jejunus, fasting.                                      | Mendicus, beggar-like.            |
| Eximius, excellent.               | Ignārus, ignorant.                                     | Menstruus, monthly.               |
| Exōticus, from a foreign country. | Ignāvus, slothful.                                     | Mērācus, without mixture.         |
| Externus, outward.                | Imprōbus, wicked.                                      | Mērus, pure.                      |
| Facētus, witty.                   | Incestus, unchaste.                                    | Mīrus, wonderful.                 |
| Facundus, eloquent.               | Inclūtus, renowned.                                    | Mōdestus, modest.                 |
| Falsus, false, lying.             | Indigus, needy.                                        | Mœstus, sad.                      |
| Fāmēlicus, famished.              | Industrius, diligent.                                  | Mōlestus, troublesome.            |
| Fātuus, foolish.                  | Īneptus, unfit.                                        | Mōrosus, surly.                   |
| Faustus, lucky.                   | Infīdus, unfaithful.                                   | Mōrus, foolish.                   |
| Fērus, wild, savage.              | Ingēnuus, free-born.                                   | Mūcidus, musty.                   |
| Fessus, weary.                    | Īnimicus, unfriendly.                                  | Mundus, neat.                     |
| Festinus, hastening.              | Īniquus, uneven, unjust.                               | Mūtīlus, maimed, without horns.   |
| Festus, festive.                  | Intentus, intense, strait.                             | Mūcus, dumb.                      |
| Fidus, faithful.                  | Invidus, envious.                                      | Mūtūus, mutual, lent or borrowed. |
| Finītimus, neighbouring.          | Invītus, unwilling.                                    | Nīmius, too much.                 |
| Firmus, firm, steady.             | Irācundus, passionate.                                 | Noxius, hurtful.                  |
| Placcus, flap-eared.              | Irātus, angry.                                         | Nūdus, naked.                     |
| Flāvus, yellow.                   | Irrītus, fruitless, vain.                              | Nuntius, bringing news.           |
| Fædus, ugly.                      | Jūcundus, pleasant.                                    | Obēsus, fat, dull.                |
| Fætus, big with young.            | Lætus, joyful.                                         | Obliquus, crooked.                |
| Formōsus, fair.                   | Lævus, on the left hand.                               | Obscænus, obscene, ominous.       |

Obscūrus,

|                                                                    |                                        |                                                           |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| Obscūrus, <i>dark, mean.</i>                                       | Prōfundus, <i>deep.</i>                | Sentus, <i>rough.</i>                                     |
| Obſolētus, <i>old, out of use.</i>                                 | Prōmiscuus, <i>confused.</i>           | Sērēnus, <i>clear.</i>                                    |
| Obſtīpus, <i>stiff, wary.</i>                                      | Promptus, <i>ready.</i>                | Sērius, <i>earnest.</i>                                   |
| Obtūſus, <i>blunt.</i>                                             | Prōnus, <i>with the face downward.</i> | Sērus, <i>late.</i>                                       |
| Ōdiōſus, <i>hateful.</i>                                           | Prōpērus, <i>hasty.</i>                | Sēvērus, <i>severe, harsh.</i>                            |
| Ōpācus, <i>dark, shady.</i>                                        | Prōpinquus, <i>near.</i>               | Siccus, <i>dry.</i>                                       |
| Ōpīmus, <i>rich, fat.</i>                                          | Proprius, <i>proper.</i>               | Sīmus, <i>flat-nesed.</i>                                 |
| Ōpipārus, <i>costly, dainty.</i>                                   | Prōtervus, <i>saucy.</i>               | Sīncērus, <i>sincere, pure.</i>                           |
| Opportūnus, <i>seasonable.</i>                                     | Pūblicus, <i>public.</i>               | Sītus, <i>situate, placed.</i>                            |
| Ōpulentus, <i>v. -ens, rich.</i>                                   | Pūdicus, <i>chaste.</i>                | Sobrius, <i>sober, temperate.</i>                         |
| Orbus, <i>destitute.</i>                                           | Pullus, <i>blackish.</i>               | Sōcius, <i>in alliance, a companion.</i>                  |
| Ōtiōſus, <i>at leisure.</i>                                        | Pūrus, <i>pure, clean.</i>             | Sōlidus, <i>solid.</i>                                    |
| Pætus, <i>pink-eyed.</i>                                           | Pūtus, <i>without mixture.</i>         | Sordīdus, <i>dirty.</i>                                   |
| Pallīdus, <i>pale.</i>                                             | Quantus, <i>how great.</i>             | Spīnōſus, <i>prickly.</i>                                 |
| Parcus, <i>sparing.</i>                                            | Quadrīmus, <i>four year old.</i>       | Spīssus, <i>thick.</i>                                    |
| Patrimus, <i>having father and</i>                                 | Quōtīdīanus, <i>daily.</i>             | Splendīdus, <i>bright.</i>                                |
| Matrimus, <i>mother alive.</i>                                     | Rābīdus, <i>mad.</i>                   | Spūrius, <i>base-born, not genuine.</i>                   |
| Pātūlus, <i>wide, spreading.</i>                                   | Rancīdus, <i>rank, stale.</i>          | Squālīdus, <i>naſty.</i>                                  |
| Paulus, <i>little.</i>                                             | Rārus, <i>rare, thin.</i>              | Stōlīdus, <i>foolish.</i>                                 |
| Pauci, <i>-æ, -ca, few.</i>                                        | Raucus, <i>hoarse.</i>                 | Strēnuus, <i>active, stout.</i>                           |
| Pēritus, <i>skilful.</i>                                           | Rectus, <i>right, straight.</i>        | Strīgōſus, <i>lean, lank.</i>                             |
| Perfidus, <i>treacherous.</i>                                      | Reus, <i>impeached.</i>                | Stultus, <i>foolish.</i>                                  |
| Perpetuus, <i>continual.</i>                                       | Rīgīdus, <i>cold, stiff, severe.</i>   | Strūpidus, <i>stupid, dull.</i>                           |
| Perſpicuus, <i>evident.</i>                                        | Rīguus, <i>moist, well watered.</i>    | Sūbītus, <i>sudden.</i>                                   |
| Pius, <i>pious.</i>                                                | Rōbustus, <i>strong.</i>               | Subſcēivus, <i>cut off, or taken from other business.</i> |
| Plānus, <i>plain.</i>                                              | Roscīdus, <i>dearly.</i>               | Sūdus, <i>fair, without clouds.</i>                       |
| Plēnus, <i>full.</i>                                               | Rōtundus, <i>round.</i>                | Sūperbus, <i>proud.</i>                                   |
| Plērique, <i>-æque, -aque, the most part: sing. fem. pleræque.</i> | Rūbīcundus, <i>blushing.</i>           | Sūpīnus, <i>lying on the back.</i>                        |
| Positūcus, <i>on the back part of a house.</i>                     | Rūfus, <i>reddish.</i>                 | Surdus, <i>deaf.</i>                                      |
| Præditus, <i>endued with.</i>                                      | Rūſſus, <i>of a carnation colour.</i>  | Tācītus, <i>silent.</i>                                   |
| Prāvus, <i>wicked.</i>                                             | Rūtilus, <i>fiery, red.</i>            | Tantus, <i>so great.</i>                                  |
| Præcārius, <i>at another's pleasure.</i>                           | Sævus, <i>cruel.</i>                   | Tardus, <i>slow.</i>                                      |
| Priscus, <i>old, out of use.</i>                                   | Sāgus, <i>knowing.</i>                 | Tēmērārius, <i>rash.</i>                                  |
| Pristīnus, <i>ancient.</i>                                         | Salsus, <i>salted, smart.</i>          | Tempeſtivus, <i>seasonable.</i>                           |
| Privātus, <i>private, retired.</i>                                 | Salvus, <i>safe.</i>                   | Tēmūlentus, <i>drunken.</i>                               |
| Privus, <i>single, peculiar.</i>                                   | Sanctus, <i>holy.</i>                  | Tēpidus, <i>lukewarm.</i>                                 |
| Prōbus, <i>good, honest.</i>                                       | Sānus, <i>sound.</i>                   | Tīmīdus, <i>fearful.</i>                                  |
| Prōcērus, <i>high, tall.</i>                                       | Saucius, <i>wounded.</i>               | Torvus, <i>fiery.</i>                                     |
| Prōfānus, <i>profane, unholy.</i>                                  | Sævus, <i>leſt.</i>                    | Tranquillus, <i>calm.</i>                                 |
|                                                                    | Scambus, <i>bow-legged.</i>            | Trēpidus, <i>trembling for fear.</i>                      |
|                                                                    | Scaurus, <i>club-footed.</i>           |                                                           |
|                                                                    | Sēcūrus, <i>secure, out of danger.</i> |                                                           |
|                                                                    | Sēdūlus, <i>careful.</i>               |                                                           |

## 62 ADJECTIVES of the First and Second Declension.

|                                  |                                    |                                         |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| Trüculentus, <i>cruel.</i>       | Väcuus, <i>empty, void.</i>        | Verbofus, <i>talkative.</i>             |
| Truncus, <i>maimed, wanting.</i> | Väguus, <i>wandering.</i>          | Vërecunus, <i>bashful.</i>              |
| Tümïdus, <i>swollen.</i>         | Valguus, <i>bow-legged.</i>        | Vernäculus, <i>born in one's house.</i> |
| Turbïdus, <i>muddy.</i>          | Välïdus, <i>strong.</i>            | Vërus, <i>true.</i>                     |
| Tütus, <i>safe.</i>              | Vänus, <i>vain, empty.</i>         | Vëscus, <i>fit for eating.</i>          |
| Üdus, <i>wet.</i>                | Värius, <i>various, different.</i> | Vicinus, <i>neighbouring.</i>           |
| Uncus, <i>crooked.</i>           | Värus, <i>bandy-legged.</i>        | Viduus, <i>deprived.</i>                |
| Ünicus, <i>only.</i>             | Västus, <i>huge.</i>               | Viëtus, <i>withered.</i>                |
| Urbänus, <i>courteous.</i>       | Vëgëtus, <i>vigorous.</i>          | Vivïdus, <i>lively.</i>                 |
| Väcivus, <i>at leisure.</i>      | Vënuſtus, <i>comely.</i>           | Vivus, <i>alive.</i>                    |

Tëner, tenëra, tenërum, *tender.*

|              | Sing.         |                    | Plur.             |
|--------------|---------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| N. tën-er,   | -ëra          | -ërum, N. ten-ëri, | -ëräe, -ëra,      |
| G. ten-ëri,  | -ëräe, -ëri,  | G. ten-erorum,     | -erarum, -erorum, |
| D. ten-ero,  | -eräe, -ero,  | D. ten-eris,       | -eris, -eris,     |
| A. ten-erum, | -eram, -erum, | A. ten-eros,       | -eras, -era,      |
| V. ten-er,   | -era, -erum,  | V. ten-eri,        | -eräe, -era,      |
| A. ten-ero,  | -erä, -ero.   | A. ten-eris,       | -eris, -eris.     |

In like manner decline,

|                                         |                     |                             |
|-----------------------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------|
| Asper, <i>rough.</i>                    | Läcer, <i>torn.</i> | Miser, <i>wretched.</i>     |
| Cëter, ( <i>hardly used</i> ) the rest. | Liber, <i>free.</i> | Prosper, <i>prosperous.</i> |
| Gibber, <i>crook-backed.</i>            |                     |                             |

Also the compounds of *gero* and *fero*; as, *läniger*, bearing wool: *spifer*, bringing help, &c. Likewise, *sätur*, *satüra*, *satürum*, full. But most adjectives in *er* drop the *e*; as, *äter*, *atra*, *atrum*, black: gen. *atri*, *aträ*, *atri*; dat. *atro*, *aträ*, *atro*, &c.—So,

|                            |                       |                       |
|----------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| Äger, <i>sick.</i>         | Mäcer, <i>lean.</i>   | Säcer, <i>sacred.</i> |
| Creber, <i>frequent.</i>   | Niger, <i>black.</i>  | Scäber, <i>rough.</i> |
| Gläber, <i>smooth.</i>     | Piger, <i>slow.</i>   | Tëter, <i>ugly.</i>   |
| Intëger, <i>entire.</i>    | Pulcher, <i>fair.</i> | Väfer, <i>crafty.</i> |
| Lüdicer, <i>ludicrous.</i> | Rüber, <i>red.</i>    |                       |

Dexter, *right*, has -tra, -trum, or -tëra, -tërum.

Obs. 1. The following adjectives have their genitive singular in *ius*, and the dative in *i*, through all the genders: in the other cases like *bonus* and *tener*.

|                                                 |                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| Ünus, -a, -um; gen. unius, dat. uni, <i>one</i> | Alter, altërius, <i>one of two, the other.</i>  |
| Älius, -ius, <i>one of many, another.</i>       | Neuter, -trius, <i>neither.</i>                 |
| Nullus, nullius, <i>none.</i>                   | Üter, utrius, <i>whether of the two.</i>        |
| Sölus, -ius, <i>alone.</i>                      | Üterque, utriusque, <i>both.</i>                |
| Tötus, -ius, <i>whole.</i>                      | Üterlibet, -triuslibet, <i>which of the two</i> |
| Üllus, -ius, <i>any.</i>                        | Ütervis, -triusvis, <i>you please.</i>          |
|                                                 | Alterüter,                                      |



Alterūter, *the one or the other*, alterutrus, alterutri, and sometimes alterius utrius, alteri utri, &c.

These adjectives, except *totus*, are called *Partitives*; and seem to resemble, in their signification as well as declension, what are called pronominal adjectives. In ancient writers we find them declined like *bonus*.

Obs. 2. To decline an adjective properly, it should always be joined with a substantive in the different genders; as, *bonus liber*, a good book; *bona penna*, a good pen; *bonum felile*, a good feat. But as the adjective in Latin is often found without its substantive joined with it, we therefore, in declining *bonus*, for instance, commonly say, *bonus*, a good man, understanding *vir* or *homō*; *bona*, a good woman, understanding *femina*; and *bonum*, a good thing, understanding *negotium*.

## ADJECTIVES of the THIRD DECLENSION.

1. Adjectives of one termination; as, *fēlix*, for the masc. *felix*, for the fem. *felix*, for the neut. happy; thus,

| Sing.                    |        |        | Plur.                            |          |          |
|--------------------------|--------|--------|----------------------------------|----------|----------|
| N. fel-ix,               | -ix,   | -ix,   | N. fel-ices,                     | -ices,   | -icis,   |
| G. fel-īcis,             | -īcis, | -īcis, | G. fel-icium,                    | -icium,  | -icium,  |
| D. fel-ici,              | -ici,  | -ici,  | D. fel-icibus,                   | -icibus, | -icibus, |
| A. fel-icem,             | -icem, | -ix,   | A. fel-ices,                     | -ices,   | -icia,   |
| V. fel-ix,               | -ix,   | -ix,   | V. fel-ices,                     | -ices,   | -icia,   |
| A. fel-ice, or -ici, &c. |        |        | A. fel-icibus, -icibus, -icibus. |          |          |

In like manner decline,

|                                           |                           |                          |
|-------------------------------------------|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| Amens, -tis, mad.                         | Fallax, deceitful.        | Prūdens, prudent.        |
| Atrox, -ōcis, cruel.                      | Fērax, fertile.           | Rēcens, fresh.           |
| Audax, -ācis, & -ens, -tis, bold.         | Fērox, fierce.            | Rēpens, sudden.          |
| Bilix, -icis, woven with a double thread. | Frequens, frequent.       | Sāgax, -ācis, sagacious. |
| Cāpax, capacious.                         | Ingens, huge.             | Sālux, -acis, lustful.   |
| Cicur, -ūris, tame.                       | Iners, -tis, sluggish.    | Sāpiens, wise.           |
| Clēmens, -tis, merciful.                  | Infons, guiltless.        | Sōlers, forward.         |
| Contūmax, stubborn.                       | Mendax, lying. [cal.]     | Sons, guilty.            |
| Dēmens, mad.                              | Mordax, biting, satiri.   | Tēnax, tenacious.        |
| Edax, gluttonous.                         | Pernix, -icis, swift.     | Trux, -ūcis, cruel.      |
| Efficax, effectual.                       | Pervicax, wilful.         | Ūber, -ēris, fertile.    |
| Elēgans, handsome.                        | Pētūlans, forward, saucy. | Vehemens, vehement.      |
|                                           | Prægnans, with child.     | Vēlox, -ōcis, swift.     |
|                                           |                           | Vōrax, devouring.        |

2. Adjectives of two terminations; as, *mītis*, for the masc. and fem. *Mite*, for the neut. meek; so, *mitior*, *mitior*, *mitius*, meeker; thus,

|           | <i>Sing.</i>         |               | <i>Plur.</i>                         |
|-----------|----------------------|---------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>N.</i> | <i>mītis, mitis,</i> | <i>mite,</i>  | <i>N. mītes, mites, mitia,</i>       |
| <i>G.</i> | <i>mitis, mitis,</i> | <i>mitis;</i> | <i>G. mitium, mitium, mitium,</i>    |
| <i>D.</i> | <i>miti, miti,</i>   | <i>miti,</i>  | <i>D. mitibus, mitibus, mitibus,</i> |
| <i>A.</i> | <i>mitem, mitem,</i> | <i>mite,</i>  | <i>A. mites, mites, mitia,</i>       |
| <i>V.</i> | <i>mitis, mitis,</i> | <i>mite,</i>  | <i>V. mites, mites, mitia,</i>       |
| <i>A.</i> | <i>miti, miti,</i>   | <i>miti.</i>  | <i>A. mitibus, mitibus, mitibus.</i> |

## In like manner decline,

|                                |                                            |                                        |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| <i>Agilis, active.</i>         | <i>Ignōbilis, of mean pa-<br/>rentage.</i> | <i>Rūdis, raw.</i>                     |
| <i>Amābilis, lovely.</i>       | <i>Immānis, huge, cruel.</i>               | <i>Sagax, shrewd.</i>                  |
| <i>Biennis, of two years.</i>  | <i>Inānis, empty.</i>                      | <i>Segnis, slow.</i>                   |
| <i>Brēvis, short.</i>          | <i>Incōlūmis, safe.</i>                    | <i>Sōlennis, annual, se-<br/>lemn,</i> |
| <i>Civilis, courteous.</i>     | <i>Infāmis, infamous.</i>                  | <i>Stērilis, barren.</i>               |
| <i>Cœlestis, heavenly.</i>     | <i>Insignis, remarkable.</i>               | <i>Suāvis, sweet.</i>                  |
| <i>Cōmis, mild, affable.</i>   | <i>Jūgis, perpetual.</i>                   | <i>Sublimis, lofty.</i>                |
| <i>Crūtēlis, cruel.</i>        | <i>Lævis, smooth.</i>                      | <i>Subtilis, subtle, fine.</i>         |
| <i>Debilis, weak.</i>          | <i>Lēnis, gentle.</i>                      | <i>Tālis, such.</i>                    |
| <i>Dēformis, ugly.</i>         | <i>Lēvis, light.</i>                       | <i>Tēnuis, small.</i>                  |
| <i>Dōcilis, teachable.</i>     | <i>Mēdiocris, middling.</i>                | <i>Terrestris, earthly.</i>            |
| <i>Dulcis, sweet in taste.</i> | <i>Mirābilis, wonderful.</i>               | <i>Terrībilis, dreadful.</i>           |
| <i>Exilis, slender.</i>        | <i>Mollis, soft.</i>                       | <i>Trīstis, sad.</i>                   |
| <i>Exanguis, bloodless.</i>    | <i>Omnis, all.</i>                         | <i>Turpis, base.</i>                   |
| <i>Fortis, brave.</i>          | <i>Pernix, swift, fleet.</i>               | <i>Ūtilis, useful.</i>                 |
| <i>Frāgilis, brittle.</i>      | <i>Putris, rotten.</i>                     | <i>Vilis, worthless.</i>               |
| <i>Grandis, great.</i>         | <i>Pinguis, fat.</i>                       | <i>Viridis, green.</i>                 |
| <i>Grāvis, heavy.</i>          | <i>Quālis, of what kind.</i>               | <i>Vitilis, pliant.</i>                |
| <i>Hilāris, cheerful.</i>      |                                            |                                        |

*Sing.*

|                                     |               |                                          |
|-------------------------------------|---------------|------------------------------------------|
| <i>N. mīti-or, -or,</i>             | <i>-us,</i>   | <i>N. mīti-ōres, -ōres, -ōra,</i>        |
| <i>G. mīti-ōris, -ōris,</i>         | <i>-ōris,</i> | <i>G. mīti-orum, -orum, -orum,</i>       |
| <i>D. mīti-ori, -ori,</i>           | <i>-ori,</i>  | <i>D. mīti-oribus, -oribus, -oribus,</i> |
| <i>A. mīti-orem, -orem, -us,</i>    |               | <i>A. mīti-ores, -ores, -ora,</i>        |
| <i>V. mīti-or, -or, -us,</i>        |               | <i>V. mīti-ores, -ores, -ora,</i>        |
| <i>A. mīti-ore, or-ori, &amp;c.</i> |               | <i>A. mīti-oribus, -oribus, -oribus.</i> |

*Plur.*

In this manner all comparatives are declined.

3. Adjectives of three terminations; as, *acer*, or *acris*, for the masc. *acris*, for the fem. *acre*, for the neut. *sharp*; thus,

|           | <i>Sing.</i>                         |                                       | <i>Plur.</i> |
|-----------|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|--------------|
| <i>N.</i> | <i>ā-cer or ācris, acris, acre,</i>  | <i>N. a-cres, -cres, -cria,</i>       |              |
| <i>G.</i> | <i>a-cris, -cris, -cris,</i>         | <i>G. a-crium, -crium, -crium,</i>    |              |
| <i>D.</i> | <i>a-cri, -cri, -cri,</i>            | <i>D. a-cribus, -cribus, -cribus,</i> |              |
| <i>A.</i> | <i>a-crem, -crem, -cre,</i>          | <i>A. a-cres, -cres, -cria,</i>       |              |
| <i>V.</i> | <i>a-cer, or acris, -cris, -cre,</i> | <i>V. a-cres, -cres, -cria,</i>       |              |
| <i>A.</i> | <i>a-cri, -cri, -cri.</i>            | <i>A. a-cribus, -cribus, -cribus.</i> |              |

In like manner, *ălăcer* or *alacris*, *cĕler* or *celĕris*, *cĕlēber* or *celebris*, *sălŭber* or *salŭbris*, *volŭcer* or *volucris*, &c.

## R U L E S.

1. Adjectives of the third declension have *e* or *i* in the ablative singular: but if the neuter be in *e*, the ablative has *i* only.

2. The genitive plural ends in *ium*, and the neuter of the nominative, accusative, and vocative, in *ia*: except comparatives, which have *um* and *a*.

## E X C E P T I O N S.

Exc. 1. *Dives*, *bospes*, *sospes*, *sŭperſtus*, *jŭvĕnis*, *sĕnex*, and *pauper*? have *e* only in the ablative singular, and consequently *um* in the genitive plural.

Exc. 2. The following have also *e* in the abl. sing. and *um*, not *ium*, in the genit. plur. *Compēs*, -*ōtis*, master of, that hath obtained his desire; *impos*, -*ōtis*, unable; *inops*, -*ōpis*, poor; *supplex*, -*icis*, suppliant, humble; *uber*, -*ĕris*, fertile; *confers*, -*tis*, sharing, a partner; *dĕgĕner*, -*ĕtis*, degenerate, or degenerating; *vĭgil*, watchful; *pŭber*, -*ĕris*, of age, marriageable; and *cĕler*: Also compounds in *ceps*, *ſex*, *pes*, and *corper*; as, *particeps*, partaking of; *artifex*, -*icis*, cunning, an artist; *bipes*, -*pĕdis*, two-footed; *bicorper*, -*ōtis*, two-bodied, &c. All these have seldom the neut. sing. and almost never the neut. plur. in the nominative and accusative. To which add *mĕmor*, mindful, which has *memōri*, and *memōrum*: also *dĕſes*, *rĭſes*, *bĕbes*, *perpes*, *præpes*, *tĕres*, *concŭlor*, *verſicŭlor*, which likewise for the most part want the genitive plural.

Exc. 3. *Par*, equal, has only *pāri*: but its compounds have either *e* or *i*; as *compāre*, or -*ri*. *Vetus*, old, has *vetĕra*, and *vetĕrum*: *plus*, more, which is only used in the neut. sing. has *plure*: and in the plural, *plŭres*, *plura*, or *pluria*, *plurium*.

Exc. 4. *Expes*, hopeless; and *pōtis*, -*a*, able, are only used in the nominative. *Potis* has also sometimes *potis* in the neuter.

## R E M A R K S.

1. Comparatives, and adjectives in *ns*, have *e* more frequently than *i*; and participles in the ablative called absolute have generally *e*; as, *Tiberio regante*, not *reganti*, in the reign of Tiberius.

2. Adjectives joined with substantives neuter for the most part have *i*; as *viſtrici ferro*, not *viſtrice*.

3. Different words are sometimes used to express the different genders; as, *viſtor*, victorious, for the masc. *viſtrix*, for the fem. *Viſtrix*, in the plur. has likewise the neuter gender; thus, *viſtrices*, *viſtricia*: so *ulter*, and *ultrin*, revengeful. *Viſtrix* is also neut. in the singular.

4. Several adjectives compounded of *clivus*, *frenum*, *bacillum*, *arma*, *jūgum*, *limus*, *somnus*, and *animus*, end in *is* or *us*; and therefore are either of the first and second declension, or of the third; as, *declivis*, *-is*, *-e*; and *declivus*, *-a*, *-um*, steep; *imbēcillis*, and *imbecillus*, weak; *semisomnis*, and *semisomnus*, half-asleep; *exanimis*, and *exanimus*, lifeless. But several of them do not admit of this variation; thus we say *magnānimus*, *flexanimus*, *effrēnus*, *levissomnus*; not *magnanimis*, &c. On the contrary, we say, *pussillanimis*, *injūgis*, *illimis*, *insomnis*, *exsomnis*; not *pussillanimus*, &c. So *semianimis*, *inermis*, *sublimis*, *acclivis*, *declivis*, *proclivis*; rarely *semianimus*, &c.

5. Adjectives derived from nouns are called *Denominatives*; as *cordatus*, *mōrātus*, *caelestis*, *ādāmantinus*, *corpōrēus*, *agrestis*, *āstivus*, &c. from *cor*, *moi*, *calum*, *adamas*, &c. Those which diminish the signification of their primitives are called *Diminutives*; as, *mīsellus*, *parvulus*, *durīscūlus*, &c. Those which signify a great deal of a thing are called *Amplificatives*, and end in *osus* or *entus*; as, *vīnōsus*, *vīnolentus*, given to much wine; *ōpērōsus*, laborious; *plumbōsus*, full of lead; *nōdōsus*, knotty, full of knots; *corpulentus*, corpulent, &c. Some end in *tus*; as, *aurītus*, having long or large ears; *nasūtus*, having a large nose; *līteratus*, learned, &c.

6. An adjective derived from a substantive or from another adjective, signifying possession or property, is called a *Possessive adjective*; as, *Scōticus*, *paternus*, *berīlis*, *aliēnus*, of or belongiug to Scotland, a father, a master, another: from *Scotia*, *pater*, *herus*, and *alius*.

7. Adjectives derived from verbs are called *Verbals*; as, *amābilis*, amiable; *capax*, capable; *docilis*, teachable: from *amo*, *capio*, *doceo*.

8. When participles become adjectives, they are called *Participials*; as, *sapiens*, wise; *acutus*, sharp; *disertus*, eloquent. Of these many also become substantives; as, *adolescens*, *animans*, *rudens*, *serpens*, *advocatus*, *sponsus*, *natus*, *legatus*; *sponsa*, *nata*, *ferta*, sc. *corona*, a garland; *prætexta*, sc. *vestis*; *dubitum*, *decretum*, *præceptum*, *sotum*, *tectum*, *votum*, &c.

9. Adjectives derived from adverbs, are called *Adverbials*; as, *hodiernus*, from *hodie*; *crassinus*, from *cras*; *binus*, from *bis*; &c. There are likewise adjectives derived from prepositions; as, *contrarius* from *contra*; *anticus*, from *ante*; *posticus*, from *post*.

## NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives which signify number, are divided into four classes, *Cardinal*, *Ordinal*, *Distributive*, and *Multiplicative*.

1. The *Cardinal* or *Principal* numbers are :

|           |        |            |            |
|-----------|--------|------------|------------|
| Unus,     | one.   | Septem,    | seven.     |
| Duo,      | two.   | Octo,      | eight.     |
| Tres,     | three. | Novem,     | nine.      |
| Quattuor, | four.  | Decem,     | ten.       |
| Quinque,  | five.  | Undecim,   | eleven.    |
| Sex,      | six.   | Duoddecim, | twelve.    |
|           |        |            | Triddecim, |

|                  |               |
|------------------|---------------|
| Trēddēcim,       | thirteen.     |
| Quatuordecim,    | fourteen.     |
| Quindecim,       | fifteen.      |
| Sexdecim,        | sixteen.      |
| Septendecim,     | seventeen.    |
| Octōddēcim,      | eighteen.     |
| Nōvemdecim,      | nineteen.     |
| Viginti,         | twenty.       |
| Viginti unus, or | } twenty-one. |
| Unus & viginti,  |               |
| Viginti duo, or  | } twenty two. |
| Duo & viginti,   |               |
| Trīginta,        | thirty.       |
| Quadrāginta,     | forty.        |
| Quinquāginta,    | fifty.        |
| Sexāginta,       | sixty.        |
| Septuāginta,     | seventy.      |
| Octōginta,       | eighty.       |

|                    |                    |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| Nōnaginta,         | ninety.            |
| Centum,            | a hundred.         |
| Dūcenti,           | two hundred.       |
| Trēcenti,          | three hundred.     |
| Quadrīngenti,      | four hundred.      |
| Quīngenti,         | five hundred.      |
| Sexcenti,          | six hundred.       |
| Septīngenti,       | seven hundred.     |
| Octīngenti,        | eight hundred.     |
| Nongenti,          | nine hundred.      |
| Mille,             | a thousand.        |
| Duo millia, or     | } two thousand.    |
| bis mille,         |                    |
| Dēcem millia, or   | } ten thousand.    |
| dēcies mille,      |                    |
| Vīginti millia, or | } twenty thousand. |
| vīcies mille,      |                    |

The Cardinal numbers, except *unus* and *mille*, want the singular.

*Unus* is not used in the plural, unless when joined with a substantive which wants the singular; as, *in unis adibus*, in one house, *Terent. Eun. ii. 3. 75. Una nuptia*, *Id. And. iv. 1. 51. In una mania convenire*, *Sallust. Cat. 6.* or when several particulars are considered as one whole; as, *una vestimenta*, one suit of cloaths, *Cic. Flacc. 29.*

*Duo* and *tres* are thus declined:

|                               | <i>Plur.</i> |         |  |                   | <i>Plur.</i> |         |  |
|-------------------------------|--------------|---------|--|-------------------|--------------|---------|--|
| <i>N.</i> duo,                | duæ,         | duo,    |  | <i>N.</i> tres,   | tres,        | tria,   |  |
| <i>G.</i> duōrum,             | duārum       | duōrum, |  | <i>G.</i> trium,  | trium,       | trium,  |  |
| <i>D.</i> duōbus,             | duābus,      | duōbus, |  | <i>D.</i> tribus, | tribus,      | tribus, |  |
| <i>A.</i> duos <i>or</i> duo, | duas,        | duo,    |  | <i>A.</i> tres,   | tres,        | tria,   |  |
| <i>V.</i> duo,                | duæ,         | duo,    |  | <i>V.</i> tres,   | tres,        | tria,   |  |
| <i>A.</i> duobus,             | duabus,      | duobus. |  | <i>A.</i> tribus, | tribus,      | tribus. |  |

In the same manner with *duo*, decline *ambo*, both.

All the Cardinal numbers from *quatuor* to *centum*, including them both, are indeclinable; and from *centum* to *mille*, are declined like the plural of *bonus*; thus, *ducenti*, -ta, -ta; *ducenturum*, -tarum, -torum, &c.

*Mille* is used either as a substantive or adjective; when taken substantively it is indeclinable in the singular number; and in the plural has *millia*, *millium*, *millibus*, &c.

*Mille*, an adjective, is commonly indeclinable, and to express more than one thousand, has the numeral adverbs joined with it; thus, *mille homines*, a thousand men; *mille hominum*, of a thousand men, &c. *Bis mille homines*, two thousand men; *ter mille homines*, &c. But with *mille*, a substantive, we say *mille hominum*, a thousand men; *duo millia hominum*, tria millia, quatuor millia, centum or centena millia hominum; *Decies centena millia*, a million; *Vicies centena millia*, two millions, &c.

2. The



2. The Ordinal numbers are, *primus*, first; *secundus*, second, &c. declined like *bonus*.

3. The distributive are, *singuli*, one by one; *binī*, two by two, &c. declined like the plural of *bonus*.

The following table contains a list of the Ordinal and Distributive Numbers, together with the Numeral Adverbs, which are often joined with the Numeral Adjectives.

|      | <i>Ordinal.</i>                         | <i>Distributive.</i>                 | <i>Numeral Adverbs.</i>             |
|------|-----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1    | <i>Primus</i> , a, um.                  | <i>Singuli</i> , æ, a.               | <i>Semel</i> , <i>once</i> .        |
| 2    | <i>secundus</i> .                       | <i>binī</i> .                        | <i>bis</i> , <i>twice</i> .         |
| 3    | <i>tertius</i> .                        | <i>terni</i> .                       | <i>ter</i> , <i>thrice</i> .        |
| 4    | <i>quartus</i> .                        | <i>quaterni</i> .                    | <i>quater</i> , <i>four times</i> . |
| 5    | <i>quintus</i> .                        | <i>quīni</i> .                       | <i>quinquies</i> , &c.              |
| 6    | <i>sextus</i> .                         | <i>seni</i> .                        | <i>sexies</i> .                     |
| 7    | <i>septimus</i> .                       | <i>septēni</i> .                     | <i>septies</i> .                    |
| 8    | <i>octāvus</i> .                        | <i>octōni</i> .                      | <i>octies</i> .                     |
| 9    | <i>nonus</i> .                          | <i>novēni</i> .                      | <i>novies</i> .                     |
| 10   | <i>dēcimus</i> .                        | <i>dēni</i> .                        | <i>dēcies</i> .                     |
| 11   | <i>undēcimus</i> .                      | <i>undēni</i> .                      | <i>undecies</i> .                   |
| 12   | <i>duodecim</i> .                       | <i>duodēni</i> .                     | <i>duodecies</i> .                  |
| 13   | <i>decimus tertius</i> .                | <i>trēdēni</i> , <i>terni deni</i> . | <i>tredecies</i> .                  |
| 14   | <i>decimus quartus</i> .                | <i>quaterni deni</i> .               | <i>quatuordecies</i> .              |
| 15   | <i>decimus quintus</i> .                | <i>quīdeni</i> .                     | <i>quindecies</i> .                 |
| 16   | <i>decimus sextus</i> .                 | <i>seni deni</i> .                   | <i>sexdecies</i> .                  |
| 17   | <i>decimus septimus</i> .               | <i>septēni deni</i> .                | <i>dēcies ac septies</i> .          |
| 18   | <i>decimus octāvus</i> .                | <i>octōni deni</i> .                 | <i>dēcies ac octies</i> .           |
| 19   | <i>decimus nonus</i> .                  | <i>novēni deni</i> .                 | <i>dēcies et novies</i> .           |
| 20   | <i>vīgesimus</i> , <i>viceſimus</i> .   | <i>vicēni</i> .                      | <i>vicies</i> .                     |
| 21   | <i>vīgesimus primus</i> .               | <i>vicēni singuli</i> .              | <i>vicies semel</i> .               |
| 30   | <i>trigesimus</i> , <i>triceſimus</i> . | <i>tricenī</i> .                     | <i>tricies</i> .                    |
| 40   | <i>quadragesimus</i> .                  | <i>quadrāgenī</i> .                  | <i>quadrāgies</i> .                 |
| 50   | <i>quinquagesimus</i> .                 | <i>quīquāgenī</i> .                  | <i>quīnquāgies</i> .                |
| 60   | <i>sexagesimus</i> .                    | <i>sexāgenī</i> .                    | <i>sexāgies</i> .                   |
| 70   | <i>septuagesimus</i> .                  | <i>septuāgenī</i> .                  | <i>septuāgies</i> .                 |
| 80   | <i>octogesima</i> .                     | <i>octōgenī</i> .                    | <i>octōgies</i> .                   |
| 90   | <i>nonagesimus</i> .                    | <i>nonagenī</i> .                    | <i>nonāgies</i> .                   |
| 100  | <i>centesima</i> .                      | <i>centenī</i> .                     | <i>centies</i> .                    |
| 200  | <i>dūcentesima</i> .                    | <i>dūcēni</i> .                      | <i>dūcenties</i> .                  |
| 300  | <i>trēcentesima</i> .                   | <i>trēcentenī</i> .                  | <i>trēcenties</i> .                 |
| 400  | <i>quadrīngentesima</i> .               | <i>quāter centenī</i> .              | <i>quadrīngenties</i> .             |
| 500  | <i>quīngentesima</i> .                  | <i>quīnquies centenī</i> .           | <i>quīngenties</i> .                |
| 600  | <i>ſexcentesima</i> .                   | <i>ſexies centenī</i> .              | <i>ſexcenties</i> .                 |
| 700  | <i>ſeptīngentesima</i> .                | <i>ſepties centenī</i> .             | <i>ſeptīngenties</i> .              |
| 800  | <i>octīngentesima</i> .                 | <i>octies centenī</i> .              | <i>octīngenties</i> .               |
| 900  | <i>nongentesima</i> .                   | <i>novies centenī</i> .              | <i>nōnīngenties</i> .               |
| 1000 | <i>milleſima</i> .                      | <i>millēni</i> .                     | <i>millies</i> .                    |
| 2000 | <i>bis milleſima</i> .                  | <i>bis millēni</i> .                 | <i>bis millies</i> .                |

4. The multiplicative numbers are *simplex*, simple; *duplex*, double, or two-fold; *triplex*, triple, or three-fold; *quadruplex*, four-fold, &c.; all of them declined like *felix*; thus, *simplex*, -*icis*, &c.

The interrogative words, to which the above numerals answer, are *quot*, *quōtus*, *quōtēni*, *quōties*, and *quōtūplex*.

*Quot*, how many? is indeclinable: So *Tot*, so many; *cōtidem*, just so many; *quotquot*, *quocunque*, how many soever; *aliquot*, some.

To these numeral adjectives may be added such as express division, proportion, time, weight, &c. as, *bipartitus*, *tripartitus*, &c. *duplus*, *triplus*, &c. *bi-mus*, *tri-mus*, &c. *bienatis*, *triennatis*, &c. *bi-mensis*, *tri-mensis*, &c. *bilibris*, *trilibris*, &c. *binārius*, *ternarius*, &c. which last are applied to the number of any kind of things whatever; as *versus*, *senārius*, a verse of six feet; *denārius nummus*, a coin of ten asses; *octogenarius senex*, an old man eighty years old; *grex centenarius*, a flock of an hundred, &c.

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

The comparison of adjectives expresses the quality in different degrees; as, *hard*, *harder*, *hardest*.

Those adjectives only are compared, whose signification admits the distinction of *more* and *less*.

The degrees of comparison are three, the *Positive*, *Comparative*, and *Superlative*.

The *Positive* seems improperly to be called a degree. It simply signifies the quality: as, *durus*, hard: and serves only as a foundation for the other degrees. By it we express the relation of equality; as *he is as tall as I*.

The *Comparative* expresses a greater degree of the quality, and has always a reference to a less degree of the same; as, *stronger*, *wiser*.

The *Superlative* expresses the quality carried to the greatest degree; as, *strongest*, *wisest*.

### Comparison of ENGLISH Adjectives.

In English the comparative is formed from the positive, by adding to the end of the word *r* or *er*; and the superlative, by adding *st* or *est*; as, *wise*, *wiser*, *wisest*; *cold*, *colder*, *coldest*. The adverbs *more* and *most*, put before the adjective, have the same effect; as *brave*, *more brave*, *most brave*.

Monosyllables for the most part are compared by *er* and *est*; as, *fair*, *fairer*, *fairest*; and polysyllables, by *more* and *most*; as *beautiful*, *more beautiful*, *most beautiful*.

In some few adjectives, the superlative is formed by adding *most*; as, *undermost*, *uttermost*, or *utmost*, *uppermost*, *nethermost*, *foremost*.

Comparison

## Comparison of LATIN Adjectives.

The comparative degree is formed from the first case of the positive in *i*, by adding the syllable *or*, for the masculine and feminine, and *us* for the neuter: The superlative is formed from the same case, by adding *ssimus*; as, *Altus*, high, genit. *alti*; Comparative *altior*, for the masc. *altior*, for the fem. *altius*, for the neut. higher: Superlative, *altissimus*, -a, -um, highest. So *mitis*, meek; dat. *miti*: *mitior*, -or, -us, meeker: *mitissimus*, -a, -um, meekest.

If the positive end in *er*, the superlative is formed by adding *rimus*; as, *pauper*, poor; *pauperrimus*, poorest.

The comparative is always of the third declension: The superlative of the first and second; as, *altus*, *altior*, *altissimus*; *alta*, *altior*, *altissima*; *altum*, *altius*, *altissimum*; genit. *alti*, *altiōris*, *altissimi*, &c.

## Irregular and Defective Comparison.

|           |         |          |        |          |           |
|-----------|---------|----------|--------|----------|-----------|
| 1. Bonus, | mēlior, | optimū,  | good,  | better,  | best.     |
| Mālus,    | pejor,  | peſsimū, | bad,   | worse,   | worst.    |
| Magnus,   | major,  | maximū,  | great, | greater, | greatest. |
| Parvus,   | minor,  | minimū,  | small, | less,    | least.    |
| Multus,   | —       | plurimū, | much,  | more,    | most.     |

*Fem.* Multa, plurima; neut. multum, plus, plurimum; plur. multi, plures, plurimi; multæ, plures, plurimæ, &c.

In several of these, both in English and Latin, the comparative and superlative seem to be formed from some other adjective, which in the positive has fallen into disuse: in others, the regular form is contracted; as, *maximus*, for *magnissimus*; *most*, for *morest*; *least*, for *lessest*; *worst*, for *worrest*.

2. These five have their superlative in *limus*;

|                                        |                                                       |
|----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| Fācilis, facilior, facillimū, easy.    | Imbecillis, imbecillior, imbecillissimū, limus, weak. |
| Grācilis, gracilior, gracillimū, lean. |                                                       |
| Hūmilis, humilior, humillimū, low.     | Similis, similior, simillimū, like.                   |

## 3. The following adjectives have regular comparatives, but form the superlative differently;

|                                             |                                                 |
|---------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| Citer, citior, citimū, near.                | Māturus, -ior, maturrimū, or maturissimū, ripe. |
| Dexter, dexterior, dextimū, right.          | Posterus, posterior, postremū, behind.          |
| Sinister, sinisterior, sinistimū, left.     | Sūperus, -rior, suprēmū, or summū, high.        |
| Exter, -erior, extimū, or extrēmū, outward. | Vētus, vēterior, vēterrimū, old.                |
| Inferus, -ior, infimū or imus, below.       |                                                 |
| Intērus, intērior, intimū, inward.          |                                                 |

## 4. Compounds

4. Compounds in *dicus*, *loquus*, *ficus*, and *volus*, have *entior*, and *entissimus*; as, *maledicus*, railing, *maledicentior*, *maledicentissimus*: So *magniloquus*, one that boasteth; *beneficus*, beneficent; *malevolus*, malevolent; *mirificus*, wonderful, *-entior*, *-entissimus*, or *mirificissimus*. *Nequam*, indecl. worthless, vicious, has *nequior*, *nequissimus*.

There are a great many adjectives, which, though capable of having their signification increased; yet either want one of the degrees of comparison, or are not compared at all.

1. The following adjectives are not used in the positive:

*Deterior*, worse, *deterimus*.

*Proprior*, nearer, *proximus*, nearest or next.

*Ociior*, swifter, *ocissimus*.

*Ultior*, farther, *ultimus*.

*Prior*, former, *primus*.

2. The following want the comparative:

*Inclutus*, *inclutissimus*, renowned.

*Nuperus*, *nuperrimus*, late.

*Meritus*, *meritissimus*, deserving.

*Par*, *parissimus*, equal.

*Novus*, *novissimus*, new.

*Sacer*, *facerrimus*, sacred.

3. The following want the superlative:

*Adolescens*, *adolescencior*, young.

*Pronus*, *pronior*, inclined downwards.

*Diuturnus*, *diuturnior*, lasting.

*Satur*, *satutior*, full.

*Ingens*, *ingentior*, huge.

*Senex*, *senior*, old.

*Juvenis*, junior, young.

*Optimus*, *opimior*, rich.

To supply the superlative of *juvenis* or *adolescens*, we say, *minimus natu*, the youngest; and of *senex*, *maximus natu*, the oldest.

Adjectives in *ilis*, *alis*, and *ilis*, also want the superlative; as *civilis*, *civilior*, civil; *regalis*, *regalior*, regal; *stibilis*, *-ior*, lamentable. So, *juvenilis* youthful; *exilis*, small, &c.

To these add several others of different terminations: Thus, *arcanus*, *-ior*, secret; *declivis*, *-ior*, bending downwards; *longinquus*, *-ior*, far off; *propinquus*, *-ior*, near.

*Anterior*, former; *sequior*, worse; *sutior*, better; are only found in the comparative.

4. Many adjectives are not compared at all: such are those compounded with nouns or verbs; as, *versicolor*, of diverse colours; *pestifer*, poisonous: also adjectives in *us* pure, in *ivus*, *ivus*, *ivus*, or *ivus*, and diminutives; as, *dubius*, doubtful; *vacuus*, empty; *fugitivus*, that flieth away; *matutinus*, early; *candrus*, shrill; *legimus*, lawful; *tenuis*, somewhat tender; *majusculus*, &c.: together with a great many others of various terminations; as, *almus*, gracious; *præcox*, *-ociis*, soon or early ripe; *mirus*, *egēnus*, *lacer*, *mēmor*, *sempes*, &c.

This defect of comparison is supplied by putting the adverb *magis* before the adjective, for the comparative degree; and *valde* or *maxime* for

for the superlative; thus, *egēus*, needy; *magis egenus*, more needy; *valde* or *maxime egenus*, very or most needy. Which sort of comparison is also used in those adjectives which are regularly compared

## P R O N O U N.

A Pronoun is a word which stands *instead of a Noun*.

Thus, *I* stands for the name of the person who speaks; *thou* for the name of the person addressed.

Pronouns serve to point out objects, whose names we either do not know, or do not want to mention. They also serve to shorten discourse, and prevent the too frequent repetition of the same word; thus, instead of saying, *When Cæsar had conquered Gaul, Cæsar turned Cæsar's arms against Cæsar's country*, we say, *When Cæsar had conquered Gaul, he turned his arms against his country*.

## E N G L I S H P R O N O U N S.

In English there are five substantive pronouns, *I, thou, he, she, and it*.

The first is used, when one speaks of himself; as *I love*: the second, when the person spoken to is the subject of the discourse; as, *thou lovest*: and the last three, in speaking of any other person or thing; as, *he, she, or it falls*.

*I* is said to be of the first person; *thou*, of the second; and *he, she, or it*, together with all other words, of the third: and so in the plural number, *we, ye, they*. Hence these are called *Personal Pronouns*.

The person speaking, and the person spoken to, do not need the distinction of gender; because they are supposed to be present, and therefore their sex is commonly known. But the third person, or thing spoken of, being frequently absent, and often unknown, requires to be distinguished by different genders; thus, *he, she, it*.

Substantive pronouns in English have three cases, the *nominative*, the *genitive* or *possessive*, and the *objective* or *accusative* case, which follows the verb active, or the preposition.

*Substantive Pronouns, according to their Cases, Numbers, and Persons.*

|            | Singular.   |            |  | Plural.  |            |         |
|------------|-------------|------------|--|----------|------------|---------|
|            | Persons.    |            |  | Persons. |            |         |
| Cases. 1.  | 2.          | 3.         |  | 1.       | 2.         | 3.      |
| Nom. I,    | thou, he,   | she, it;   |  | we,      | ye or you, | they.   |
| Gen. mine, | thine, his, | hers, its; |  | ours,    | yours,     | theirs. |
| Acc. me,   | thee, him,  | her, it;   |  | us,      | you,       | them.   |

All



All other pronouns are adjectives; as, *this, that, our, your, &c.* A pronominal adjective differs from a common adjective in this, that it does not express quality.

Several adjective pronouns do not admit the article before them, because they very much resemble it in their signification; as, *that man, &c.*

From the personal pronouns are formed these pronominal adjectives, *my, thy, his, her, our, your, their.* *Mine* and *thine* are often used as adjectives for *my* and *thy*, when the substantive following them begins with a vowel.

Some adjective pronouns are varied to mark number; as, *this, these; that, those.* To these add the adjectives *other, one, which*, when their substantive is not expressed, have in the plural *others, ones*; as, *many others, great ones*; in which case they seem to be used as substantives.

*Who, which, that*, are called RELATIVES, because they refer to some substantive going before, which is therefore called the ANTECEDENT. *Who* is varied by cases, thus, *who, whose, whom.* *His* and *whose* seem to be contractions for *him's* and *whom's*, the possessive case being formed from the objective; as *hers* from *her*; *mine* from *me*, &c.

*Who, which, what, whether*, are called INTERROGATIVES, when used in asking questions; when used otherwise, they are called INDEFINITES.

*Own, and self*, in the plural *selves*, are joined to the possessives; *my, our, thy, your, his, her, their*; as, *my or mine own hand, myself, yourselves.* *Self* is likewise joined to the substantive pronoun *it*, as *itself.* *Himself, themselves*, seem to be used by corruption for *hisself, theirselves.*

## LATIN PRONOUNS.

The simple pronouns in Latin are eighteen; *ego, tu, sui; ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, quis, qui; meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester; nostras, vestras, and cujus;*

Three of them are substantives, *ego, tu, sui*; the other fifteen are adjectives.

Ego, I.

Sing.  
Nom. *ego, I,*  
Gen. *mei, of me,*  
Dat. *mihi, to me,*  
Acc. *me, me;*  
Voc. \_\_\_\_\_  
Abl. *me, with me.*

Plur.  
Nom. *nos, we,*  
Gen. *nostrum or nostri, of us,*  
Dat. *nobis, to us,*  
Acc. *nos, us,*  
Voc. \_\_\_\_\_  
Abl. *nobis, with us.*

G

Tu,

Tu, thou,

| Sing.             |   |         | Plur.                         |   |
|-------------------|---|---------|-------------------------------|---|
| N. tu, thou,      | } | or you. | N. vos, ye or you,            | } |
| G. tui, of thee,  |   |         | G. vestrum or vestri, of you, |   |
| D. tibi, to thee, |   |         | D. vobis, to you,             |   |
| A. te, thee,      |   |         | A. vos, you,                  |   |
| V. tu, O thou,    |   |         | V. vos, O ye or you,          |   |
| A. te, with thee, |   |         | A. vobis, with you.           |   |

Sui, of himself, of herself, of itself.

| Sing.                                      |   |  | Plur.                   |   |
|--------------------------------------------|---|--|-------------------------|---|
| N. _____                                   | } |  | N. _____                | } |
| G. sui, of himself, of herself, of itself, |   |  | G. sui, of themselves,  |   |
| D. sibi, to himself, to herself, &c.       |   |  | D. sibi, to themselves, |   |
| A. se, himself, &c.                        |   |  | A. se, themselves,      |   |
| V. _____                                   |   |  | V. _____                |   |
| A. se, with himself, &c.                   |   |  | A. se, with themselves. |   |

Obs. 1. *Ego* wants the vocative, because one cannot call upon himself, except as a second person: thus we cannot say, *O ego*, *O I*; *O nos*, *O we*.

Obs. 2. *Mibi* in the dative is sometimes by the poets contracted into *mi*.

Obs. 3. The genitive plural of *ego* was anciently *nostrorum* and *nostrarum*; of *tu*, *vestrorum* and *vestrarum*, which were afterwards contracted into *nostrum* and *vestrum*.

We commonly use *nostrum* and *vestrum* after partitives, numerals, comparatives, or superlatives; and *nostri* and *vestri* after other words.

The English substantive pronouns, *he*, *she*, *it*, are expressed in Latin by these pronominal adjectives, *ille*, *iste*, *hic*, or *is*; as,

*Ille*, for the masc. *illa*, for the fem. *illud*, for the neut. that; or, *ille*, he; *illa*, she; *illud*, it, or that; thus,

| Sing.      |         |         | Plur.       |          |          |
|------------|---------|---------|-------------|----------|----------|
| N. ille,   | illa,   | illud,  | N. illi,    | illæ,    | illa,    |
| G. illius, | illius, | illius, | G. illorum, | illarum, | illorum, |
| D. illi,   | illi,   | illi,   | D. illis,   | illis,   | illis,   |
| A. illum,  | illam,  | illud,  | A. illos,   | illas,   | illa,    |
| V. ille,   | illa,   | illud,  | V. illi,    | illæ,    | illa,    |
| A. illo,   | illâ,   | illo.   | A. illis,   | illis,   | illis.   |

*Ipse*

*Ipse*, he himself, *ipsa*, she herself, *ipsum*, itself; and *iste*, *ista*, *istud*, that, are declined like *ille*; only *ipse* has *ipsum* in the nom. acc. and voc. sing. neut.

*Ipse* is often joined to *ego*, *tu*, *sui*; and has in Latin the same force with *self* in English, when joined with a possessive pronoun; as, *ego ipse*, I myself.

Hic, hæc, hoc, *this*.

| Sing.     |        |        | Plur.     |        |        |
|-----------|--------|--------|-----------|--------|--------|
| N. hic,   | hæc,   | hoc,   | N. hi,    | hæ,    | hæc,   |
| G. hujus, | hujus, | hujus, | G. horum, | harum, | horum, |
| D. huic,  | huic,  | huic,  | D. his,   | his,   | his,   |
| A. hunc,  | hanc,  | hoc,   | A. hos,   | has,   | hæc,   |
| V. hic,   | hæc,   | hoc,   | V. hi,    | hæ,    | hæc,   |
| A. hoc,   | hac,   | hoc.   | A. his,   | his,   | his.   |

Is, ea, id; *he, she, it*; or *that*.

| Sing.    |       |       | Plur.          |        |        |
|----------|-------|-------|----------------|--------|--------|
| N. is,   | ea,   | id,   | N. ii,         | eæ,    | ea,    |
| G. ejus, | ejus, | ejus, | G. eorum,      | earum, | eorum, |
| D. ei,   | ei,   | ei,   | D. iis or eis, | &c.    |        |
| A. eum,  | eam,  | id,   | A. eos,        | cas,   | ea,    |
| V. _____ |       |       | V. _____       |        |        |
| A. eo,   | eâ,   | eo.   | A. iis or eis, | &c.    |        |

*Quis, quæ, quod*, or *quid*? which, what? Or *Quis*? who? or what man? *quæ*? who? or what woman? *quod* or *quid*? what? which thing? or what thing? thus,

| Sing.     |        |               | Plur.               |         |         |
|-----------|--------|---------------|---------------------|---------|---------|
| N. quis,  | quæ,   | quod or quid, | N. qui,             | quæ,    | quæ,    |
| G. cujus, | cujus, | cujus,        | G. quorum,          | quarum, | quorum, |
| D. cui,   | cui,   | cui,          | D. queis or quibus, | &c.     |         |
| A. quem,  | quam,  | quod or quid, | A. quos,            | quas,   | quæ,    |
| V. _____  |        |               | V. _____            |         |         |
| A. quo,   | qua,   | quo;          | A. queis or quibus, | &c.     |         |

*Qui, quæ, quod*, who, which, that; Or *vir qui*, the man *who* or *that*; *fœmina quæ*, the woman *who* or *that*; *negotium quod*, the thing *which* or *that*: genit. *vir cujus*, the man *whose* or *of whom*; *mulier cujus*, the woman *whose* or *of whom*; *negotium cujus*, the thing *of which*, seldom *whose*, &c. thus,

|           | Sing.  |        |             | Plur.           |
|-----------|--------|--------|-------------|-----------------|
| N. qui,   | quæ,   | quod,  | N. qui,     | quæ, quæ,       |
| G. cujus, | cujus, | cujus, | G. quorum,  | quarum, quorum, |
| D. cui,   | cui,   | cui,   | D. queis or | quibus, &c.     |
| A. quem,  | quam,  | quod,  | A. quos,    | quas, quæ,      |
| V. —      | —      | —      | V. —        | —               |
| A. quo,   | qua,   | quo.   | A. queis or | quibus, &c.     |

The other pronouns are derivatives, coming from *ego*, *tu*, and *sui*. *Meus*, my or mine; *tuus*, thy or thine; *suus*, his own, her own, its own, their own, are declined like *bonus*, -a, -um; and *noſter*, our; *veſter*, your, like *pulcher*, -chra, -chrum, of the first and ſecond declenſion.

*Noſtras*, of our country; *veſtras*, of your country; *cujas*, of what or which country, are declined like *felix*, of the third declenſion: gen. *noſtrātis*, dat. *noſtrāti*, &c.

Pronouns as well as nouns, that ſignify things, which cannot be addreſſed, or called upon, want the vocative.

*Meus* hath *mi*, and ſometimes *meus*, in the voc. ſing. maſc.

The relative *qui* has frequently *quī* in the ablative, and that, which is remarkable, in all genders and numbers.

*Qui* is ſometimes uſed for *quis*: and inſtead of *cujus* the gen. of *quis*, we find an adjective pronoun *cujus*, -a, -um.

Simple pronouns, with reſpect to their ſignification, are divided into the following claſſes:

1. *Demonſtratives*, which point out any perſon or thing preſent, or as if preſent: *Ego*, *tu*, *hic*, *iſte*, and ſometimes *ille*, *is*, *iſſe*.

2. *Relatives*, which refer to ſomething going before: *ille*, *iſſe*, *iſte*, *hic*, *is*, *qui*.

3. *Poſſeſſives*, which ſignify poſſeſſion: *meus*, *tuus*, *ſuus*, *noſter*, *veſter*.

4. *Patrials* or *Gentiles*, which ſignify one's country: *noſtras*, *veſtras*, *cujas*.

5. *Interrogatives*, by which we aſk a queſtion: *quis*? *cujas*? When they do not aſk a queſtion, they are called *Indefinites*, like other words of the ſame nature.

6. *Reciprocal*s, which again call back or repreſent the ſame object to the mind: *sui*, and *ſuus*.

#### COMPOUND LATIN PRONOUNS.

Pronouns are compounded variously:

1. With other pronouns; as, *iſtūc*, *iſtūc*, *iſtūc*, *iſtūc*, or *iſtūc*, Acc. *iſtūc*, *iſtūc*, *iſtūc*, or *iſtūc*. Abl. *iſtūc*, *iſtūc*, *iſtūc*. Nom. and acc. plur. neut. *iſtūc*, of *iſte* and *hic*. So *illūc*, of *ille* and *hic*.

2. With ſome other parts of ſpeech; as *cujusmodi*, *cujusmodi*, &c. *meum*, *tuum*, *ſuum*, *nobiſcum*, *vobiſcum*, *quocum* or *quicum* and *quibuſcum*:

*cum* : *ecum*, *ecum* ; *ecum*, *ecum*, and sometimes *ecum*, in the nom. sing. of *ecce* and *is*. So *ellum*, of *ecce* and *ille*.

3. With some syllable added : as, *tute* of *tu* and *te*, used only in the nom. *egimet*, *tutemet*, *fuimet*, through all the cases, thus, *meimet*, *tuimet*, &c. of *ego*, *tu*, *sui*, and *mei*. Instead of *tumet* in the nom. we say, *tutemet* : *hiacine*, *haccine*, &c. in all the cases that end in *C* ; of *hic* and *cine* : *Meapte*, *tuapte*, *fuapte*, *nostrapte*, *vestrapte*, in the ablat. fem. and sometimes *meapte*, *tuapte*, &c. of *meus*, &c. and *pte* : *hicce*, *hacce*, *hosce* ; *hujusce*, *hice*, *hisce*, *hysce* : of *hic* and *ce* : whence *hujuscemodi*, *ejuscemodi*, *cujuscemodi*. So *IDEM*, the same, compounded of *is* and *dem*, which is thus declined :

| Sing.       |                   | Plur.                |                     |
|-------------|-------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| N. idem,    | eadem ; idem,     | N. iidem,            | eadem, eadem,       |
| G. ejusdem, | ejusdem, ejusdem, | G. eorundem,         | earundem, eorundem, |
| D. eidem,   | eidem, eidem,     | D. eisdem or iisdem, | &c.                 |
| A. eundem,  | eandem, idem,     | A. eisdem,           | eisdem, eadem,      |
| V. idem,    | eadem, idem,      | V. iidem,            | eadem, eadem,       |
| A. eodem,   | eodem, eodem ;    | A. eisdem or iisdem, | &c.                 |

The pronouns which we find most frequently compounded, are *quis* and *qui*.

*Quis* in composition is sometimes the first, sometimes the last, and sometimes likewise the middle part of the word compounded : but *qui* is always the first.

1. The compounds of *quis*, in which it is put first, are, *quisnam*, who ? *quispiam*, *quisquam*, any one ; *quisque*, every one ; *quisquis*, whoever ; which are thus declined :

| Nom.                                      | Gen.                | Dat. |
|-------------------------------------------|---------------------|------|
| Quisnam, quamnam, quodnam or quidnam ;    | cujusnam, cuinam,   |      |
| Quispiam, quæpiam, quodpiam or quidpiam ; | cujuspiam, cuipiam, |      |
| Quisquam, quæquam, quodquam or quidquam ; | cujusquam, cuiquam, |      |
| Quisque, quæque, quodque or quidque ;     | cujusque, cuique,   |      |
| Quisquis, — quidquid or quicquid ;        | cujusque, cuique,   |      |

And so in the other cases, according to the simple *quis*. But *quisquis* has not the feminine at all, and the neuter only in the nominative and accusative. *Quisquam* has also *quicquam* for *quidquam*. Accusative, *quengquam*, without the feminine. The plural is scarcely used.

2. The compounds of *quis*, in which *quis* is put last, have *qua* in the nominative sing. fem. and in the nominative and accusative plur. neut. as, *aliquis*, some ; *ecquis*, who ? of *is* and *quis* ; also *nequis*, *siquis*, *numquis*, which for the most part are read separately, thus, *ne quis*, *si quis*, *num quis*. They are thus declined :

| Nom.                    | Gen.                  | Dat.               |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|
| Aliquis, aliqua,        | aliquod or aliquid,   | alicujus, alicui,  |
| Ecquis, ecqua or ecquæ, | ecquod or ecquid,     | ecujus, ecui,      |
| Si quis, si qua,        | si quod or si quid,   | si ejus, si cui,   |
| Ne quis, ne qua,        | ne quod or ne quid,   | ne ejus, ne cui,   |
| Num quis, num qua,      | num quod or num quid, | num ejus, num cui, |



3. The compounds which have *quis* in the middle, are, *æquisnam*, who? *unusquisque*, gen. *uniuscujusque*, every one. The former is used only in the nom. sing. and the latter wants the plural.

4. The compounds of *qui* are *quicunque*, whosoever; *quidam*, some; *quilibet*, *quivis*, any one, whom you please; which are thus declined.

|                       | Nom.                    | Gen.         | Dat.         |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|--------------|--------------|
| Quicunque, quæcunque, | quodcunque,             | cujuscunque, | cuiuscunque, |
| Quidam, quædam,       | quoddam or quiddam,     | cujusdam,    | cuidam,      |
| Quilibet, quælibet,   | quodlibet or quidlibet, | cujuslibet,  | cuilibet,    |
| Quivis, quævis,       | quodvis or quidvis,     | cujusvis,    | cuivis.      |

Obs. 1. All these compounds have seldom or never *queis*, but *quibus*, in their dat. and abl. plur.; thus, *aliquibus*, &c.

Obs. 2. *Quis*, and its compounds in comic writers, have sometimes *quis* in the feminine gender.

Obs. 3. *Quidam* has *quendam*, *quandam*, *quoddam* or *quiddam*, in the acc. sing. and *quorundam*, *quarundam*, *quorundam*, in the gen. plur. *n* being put instead of *m*, for the better sound.

Obs. 4. *Quod*, with its compounds, *aliquod*, *quodvis*, *quoddam*, &c. are used, when they agree with a substantive in the same case; *quid*, with its compounds *aliquid*, *quidvis*, &c. for the most part have either no substantive expressed, or govern one in the genitive. For this reason they are by some reckoned substantives.

## VERB.

A verb is a word which expresses what is affirmed of things; as, The boy *reads*. The sun *shines*. The man *loves*.

Or, *A verb is that part of speech which signifies to be, to do, or to suffer.*

It is called *Verb* or *Word*, by way of eminence, because it is the most essential word in a sentence, without which the other parts of speech can form no complete sense: Thus, *the diligent boy reads his lesson with care*, is a perfect sentence; but if we take away the affirmation, or the word *reads*, it is rendered imperfect, or rather becomes no sentence at all: thus, *the diligent boy his lesson with care*.

A verb therefore may be thus distinguished from any other part of speech: Whatever word expresses an affirmation or assertion is a verb; or thus, Whatever word, with a substantive noun or pronoun before or after it, makes full sense, is a verb; as, *stones fall*, *I walk*, *walk thou*. Here *fall* and *walk* are verbs, because they contain an affirmation; but when we say, *a long walk*, *a dangerous fall*, there is no affirmation expressed; and the same words *walk* and *fall* become substantives or nouns. We often find likewise in Latin the same word used as a verb, and also as some other part of speech; thus, *amor*, *-oris*, love, a substantive; and *amor*, I am loved, a verb.

Verbs, with respect to their signification, are divided into three different classes, *Active*, *Passive*, and *Neuter*; because we consider things either as acting, or being acted upon; or as neither acting, nor being acted upon; but simply existing, or existing in a certain state or condition; as in a state of motion or rest. &c.

1. An *Active* verb expresses an action, and necessarily supposes an agent, and an object acted upon, as, *amāre*, to love; *amo te*, I love thee.

2. A verb *Passive* expresses a passion or suffering, or the receiving of an action; and necessarily implies an object acted upon, and an agent, by which it is acted upon; as, *amāri*, to be loved; *tu amāris a me*, thou art loved by me.

3. A *Neuter* verb properly expresses neither action nor passion, but simply the being, state, or condition of things; as, *dormio*, I sleep; *sedeo*, I sit.

The verb *Active* is also called *Transitive*, when the action *passeth over* to the object, or hath an effect on some other thing; as, *scribo lītēras*, I write letters: but when the action is confined within the agent, and *passeth not over* to any object, it is called *Intransitive*; as, *ambulo*, I walk; *curro*, I run, which are likewise called *Neuter Verbs*. Many verbs in Latin and English are used both in a transitive and in an intransitive or neuter sense; as, *stāre*, to stop; *incipere*, to begin; *durare*, to endure, or to harden, &c.

Verbs which simply signify *being*, are likewise called *Substantive* verbs; as, *esse* or *existere*, to be or to exist. The notion of existence is implied in the signification of every verb; thus, *I love*, may be resolved into, *I am loving*.

When the meaning of a verb is expressed without any affirmation, or in such a form as to be joined to a substantive noun, partaking thereby of the nature of an adjective, it is called a *Participle*; as, *amans*, loving; *amatus*, loved. But when it has the form of a substantive, it is called a *Gerund*, or a *Supine*: as, *amandum*, loving; *amatum*, to love; *amatu*, to love, or to be loved.

A verb is varied or declined by *Voices*, *Modes*, *Tenses*, *Numbers*, and *Persons*.

There are two voices; the *Active* and *Passive*.

The

The modes are four; *Indicative*, *Subjunctive*, *Imperative*; and *Infinitive*.

The tenses are five; the *Present*, the *Preter-imperfect*, the *Preter-perfect*, the *Preter-pluperfect*, and the *Future*.

The numbers are two; *Singular* and *Plural*.

The persons are three; *First*, *Second*, *Third*.

1. *Voice* expresses the different circumstances in which we consider an object, whether as acting, or being acted upon. The *Active voice* signifies action; as, *amo*, I love; the *Passive*, suffering, or being the object of an action; as, *amor*, I am loved.

2. *Modes* or *Moods* are the various *manners* of expressing the signification of the verb.

The *Indicative* declares or affirms positively; as, *amo*, I love; *amābo*, I shall love; or asks a question; as, *an tu amas?* dost thou love?

The *Subjunctive* is usually joined to some other verb, and cannot make a full meaning by itself; as, *si me obsēcret*, *redābo*, if he intreat me, I will return. *Ter.*

The *Imperative* commands, exhorts, or intreats; as, *ama*, love thou.

The *Infinitive* simply expresses the signification of the verb, without limiting it to any person or number; as, *amāre*, to love.

3. *Tenses* or *Times* express the time when any thing is supposed to be, to act, or to suffer.

Time in general is divided into three parts, the present, past, and future.

Past time is expressed three different ways. When we speak of a thing, which was doing, but not finished at some former time, we use the *Preter-imperfect*, or past time not completed; as, *scribēbam*, I was writing.

When we speak of a thing now finished, we use the *Preter-perfect*, or past time completed; as, *scripsi*, I wrote, or have written.

When we speak of a thing finished at or before some past time, we use the *Preter-pluperfect*, or past time more than completed; as, *scripsēram*, I had written.

Future time is expressed two different ways. A thing may be considered either as simply about to be done, or as actually finished, at some future time; as, *scribam*, I shall write, or, I shall [then] be writing. *scripsēro*, I shall have written.

4. *Number* marks how many we suppose to be, to act, or to suffer.

5. *Person* shews to what the meaning of the verb is applied, whether to the person speaking, to the person addressed, or to some other person or thing.

Verbs have two numbers and three persons, to agree with substantive nouns and pronouns in these respects: for a verb properly hath neither numbers nor persons, but certain terminations answering to the person and number of its nominative.

A verb is properly said to be *conjugated*, when all its parts are properly classed, or, as it were, yoked together, according to Voice, Mode, Tense, Number, and Person.

ENGLISH VERBS.

English verbs change their termination to express only the present and the past time of the Active voice; and in regular verbs, the Perfect participle is always the same with the perfect or past time, both of them ending in *ed* or *d*. The present participle always ends in *ing*. The English has no future participle, which defect is supplied by a circumlocution; as *about to love*.

An English Verb is thus varied:

TO LOVE.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mode.

| Present Time.          |                 | Past Time.       |                  |
|------------------------|-----------------|------------------|------------------|
| Sing.                  | Plur.           | Sing.            | Plur.            |
| 1. I love,             | We love,        | 1. I loved,      | We loved,        |
| 2. Thou lovest,        | Ye or you love, | 2. Thou lovedst, | Ye or you loved, |
| 3. He loveth or loves; | They love.      | 3. He loved;     | They loved.      |

Subjunctive Mode.

Imperative Mode.

| <i>Present Time.</i>                               |                 |                          |                       |
|----------------------------------------------------|-----------------|--------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i>                                       | <i>Plur.</i>    | <i>Sing.</i>             | <i>Plur.</i>          |
| 1. I love,                                         | We love,        | 2. Love thou,            | Love ye, or love you. |
| 2. Thou love,                                      | Ye or you love, | <i>Infinitive Mode.</i>  |                       |
| 3. He love;                                        | They love.      | <i>Present, To love.</i> |                       |
| <i>Participle Present, Loving; Perfect, Loved.</i> |                 |                          |                       |

The several remaining parts of the English verb are formed by the assistance of other verbs, called therefore *Auxiliaries* or *Helpers*. The chief of these are *have*, *be*, *shall*, and *will*, which are thus varied.

TO HAVE.

Indicative Mode.

| Present Time.       |            | Past Time.     |           |
|---------------------|------------|----------------|-----------|
| Sing.               | Plur.      | Sing.          | Plur.     |
| 1. I have,          | We have,   | 1. I had,      | We had,   |
| 2. Thou hast,       | Ye have,   | 2. Thou hadst, | Ye had,   |
| 3. He hath, or has; | They have. | 3. He had,     | They had. |
| Subjunctive         |            |                |           |

| <i>Subjunctive Mode.</i>                         |              | <i>Imperative Mode.</i>  |              |
|--------------------------------------------------|--------------|--------------------------|--------------|
| <i>Present.</i>                                  |              |                          |              |
| <i>Sing.</i>                                     | <i>Plur.</i> | <i>Sing.</i>             | <i>Plur.</i> |
| 1. I have;                                       | We have,     | 2. Have thou;            | Have ye.     |
| 2. Thou have,                                    | Ye have,     | <i>Infinitive Mode.</i>  |              |
| 3. He have;                                      | They have.   | <i>Present, To have.</i> |              |
| <i>Participle Present, Having; Perfect, Had.</i> |              |                          |              |

## TO BE.

| Indicative Mode. |           |               |            |
|------------------|-----------|---------------|------------|
| Present Time.    |           | Past Time.    |            |
| Sing.            | Plur.     | Sing.         | Plur.      |
| 1. I am,         | We are,   | 1. I was,     | We were,   |
| 2. Thou art,     | Ye are,   | 2. Thou wast, | Ye were,   |
| 3. He is;        | They are. | 3. He was;    | They were. |

| Subjunctive Mode. |          |               |            |
|-------------------|----------|---------------|------------|
| Present.          |          | Past Time.    |            |
| Sing.             | Plur.    | Sing.         | Plur.      |
| 1. I be,          | We be,   | 1. I were,    | We were,   |
| 2. Thou be,       | Ye be,   | 2. Thou wert, | Ye were,   |
| 3. He be;         | They be. | 3. He were;   | They were. |

| Imperative Mode. |        | Infinitive Mode. |  |
|------------------|--------|------------------|--|
| Sing.            | Plur.  | Present, To be.  |  |
| 2. Be thou;      | Be ye. |                  |  |

| Participle.     |             |                |            |
|-----------------|-------------|----------------|------------|
| Present, Being. |             | Perfect, Been. |            |
| SHALL.          |             | WILL.          |            |
| Sing.           | Plur.       | Sing.          | Plur.      |
| 1. I shall,     | We shall,   | 1. I will,     | We will,   |
| 2. Thou shalt,  | Ye shall,   | 2. Thou wilt,  | Ye will,   |
| 3. He shall;    | They shall. | 3. He will;    | They will. |

The terminations of these auxiliary verbs seem to be irregular. Most of them however are only contractions of the regular form. Thus, *hast* is contracted for *havest*; *hath*, for *haveth*; *has*, for *haves*; and *wilt*, for *willest*; which last is likewise used from the regular verb, *to will*; thus, *I will*, *thou willest*, *he willetb*, or *wills*, &c.

The tenses of the subjunctive mode are expressed by *may* or *can*; *might*, *could*, *would*, and *should*, together with the other auxiliary verbs. *Would*, *wouldst*, comes from *will*; and *should*, *shouldst*, from *shall*. *Might* and *could* seem to be the past time of *may* and *can*.

To express with greater force the present and past time of the indicative Mode, we use the auxiliary verb *do*; as, *I do love*; *I did love*. And so in the Imperative, *do thou love*, *do ye love*. In the third person of the Imperative, we always use *let*, which, being an active verb, has always an accusative after it; as, *let him love*, *let them love*.

When we speak of present time indeterminately, we use the simple form;



form; as *I love, I loved*: but when we speak of it with some particular limitation, we use an auxiliary; as, *I am loving* just now; *I was* (then) *loving*. The termination *th*, in the third person of the present of the Indicative, properly belongs to solemn discourse; as, *he bath, he doth, &c.*

The whole of the passive voice in English is formed by the auxiliary verb *to be*, and the participle perfect; as, *I am loved, I was loved, &c.* In many verbs the present participle also is used in a passive sense; as, *These things are doing, were doing, &c.*; *The house is building, was building, &c.*

When an auxiliary is joined to a verb, the auxiliary is varied according to number and person, and the verb itself always continues the same. When there are two or more auxiliaries joined to the verb, the first of them only is varied according to person and number. The auxiliary *must* admits of no variation.

*Shall* and *will* are always employed to express future time. *Will*, in the first person singular and plural, promises or threatens; in the second and third persons, only foretels: *shall*, on the contrary, in the first person, simply foretels; in the second and third persons, promises, commands, or threatens. But the contrary of this holds, when we ask a question: thus, "*I shall go*;" "*you will go*;" express event only; but "*will you go*?" imports intention; and "*shall I go*?" refers to the will of another.

The neuter verb is varied like the active; but sometimes it assumes the passive form; as, *I had fallen, or I was fallen.*

### IRREGULAR ENGLISH VERBS.

The English language abounds in irregular verbs.

A verb in English is said to be irregular, which has not the Past Time and the Participle Perfect in *ed*.

Most English verbs are liable to some irregularity from contraction.

To this we are led by the nature of the language, and the manner of pronouncing it. Thus, instead of *loved, lovedest*, we say, *lov'd, lov'dst*. Hence in many verbs *ed* is changed into *t*; as *snatcht, checkt, snapt, mixt, dwelt, past, meant, felt, left, bereft, &c.* for *snatched, checked, &c.* In such words, however, the entire form is also used, and in general to be preferred. They are not therefore commonly ranked among irregular verbs.

Irregular verbs in English, properly so called, are all monosyllables, unless compounded; and may be reduced to the three following classes, in which those marked \* are likewise used in the regular form.

#### 1. Irregulars by Contraction.

These commonly end in *d* or *t*, and have the Present, the Past Time, and the Participle Perfect, all alike, without any variation: as, *beat, burst, cast, cost, cut, bit, hurt, knit, let, lift\*, light\* put, quit\*, read, rent, rid, set, steel, stored, shut, slit, split, spread, thrust, wet\**; all of which are contracted for *beated, bursted, casted, &c.*

The

The following in the Past Time, and Participle Perfect, vary a little from the Present; as, *lead, led; sweat, sweated; meet, met; breed, bred; feed, fed; spend, spent; bend, bent; lend, lent; rend, rent; send, sent; build, built; geld, gelt; gild, gilt; gird, girt; lose, lost.*

*Sold, told, bad, made, fled, fiod, clad; from sell, tell, have, make, flee, shoe, clothe; are contracted for felled, telled, &c. Stand has stood; smelt, smelt: dare, durst, in the participle dared.*

### 2. Irregulars in ght.

These are few in number, and have the Past Time and Participle in *ght*; as *bring, brought; buy, bought; catch, caught; fight, fought; teach, taught; think, thought; seek, sought; work, wrought.*

### 3. Irregulars in en.

This is by far the most numerous class of irregular verbs. They have commonly the Participle Perfect in *en*, and form the Past Time by changing the vowel or diphthong of the Present. Some form the Past Time regularly.

| Present. | Past.         | Participle. | Present. | Past.    | Participle.   |
|----------|---------------|-------------|----------|----------|---------------|
| Fall,    | fell,         | fallen.     | Creep,   | crope *  | crept *       |
| Awake,   | awoke *       | (awaked).   | Freeze,  | froze,   | frozen.       |
| Forake,  | forlook,      | foraken.    | Seethe,  | fod,     | fodden.       |
| Shake,   | shook,        | shaken.     | See,     | faw,     | seen.         |
| Take,    | took,         | taken.      | Bite,    | bit,     | bitten.       |
| Draw,    | drew,         | drawn.      | Chide,   | chid,    | chidden.      |
| Slay,    | slew,         | slain.      | Hide,    | hid,     | hidden.       |
| Get,     | gat or got,   | gotten.     | Slide,   | slid,    | slidden.      |
| Help,    | (helped)      | holpen *    | Abide,   | abode,   | (climbed) *   |
| Melt,    | melted,       | molten *    | Climb,   | clomb,   | driven.       |
| Swell,   | swelled,      | swollen *   | Drive,   | drove,   | ridden.       |
| Eat,     | ate,          | aten.       | Ride,    | rode,    | risen.        |
| Bear,    | bare, or      | born.       | Rise,    | rose,    | shined.       |
|          | bore,         |             | Shine,   | shone *  | shined.       |
| Break,   | brake, or     | broken.     | Strive,  | strove * | striven *     |
|          | broke,        |             | Smite,   | smote,   | smitten.      |
| Cleave,  | clave, or     | cloven.     | Stride,  | strode,  | stridden.     |
|          | clove *       |             | Shrive,  | shrove,  | shriven.      |
| Speak,   | spake or      | spoken.     | Thrive,  | throve,  | thriven.      |
|          | spoke,        |             | Write,   | wrote,   | written.      |
| Swear,   | sware, or     | sworn.      | Strike,  | struck,  | stricken or   |
|          | swore,        |             |          |          | strucken.     |
| Tear,    | tare or tore, | torn.       | Bid,     | bade,    | bidden.       |
| Wear,    | ware or       | worn.       | Give,    | gave,    | given.        |
|          | wore,         |             | Sit,     | sat,     | sitten.       |
| Heave,   | hove *        | hoven *     | Spit,    | spat,    | spitten.      |
| Shear,   | shore,        | shorn.      | Dig,     | dug *    | digged.       |
| Steal,   | stole,        | stolen.     | Lie,     | lay,     | lain or lien. |
| Tread,   | trod,         | trodden.    | Chuse,   | chose,   | chosen.       |
| Weave,   | wove,         | woven.      | Hold,    | held,    | holden.       |

Do,

| <i>Present.</i> | <i>Past.</i> | <i>Participle.</i> | <i>Present.</i> | <i>Past.</i> | <i>Participle.</i> |
|-----------------|--------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------|--------------------|
| Do,             | did,         | done.              | Rive,           | (rived),     | riven,             |
| Blow,           | blew,        | blown.             | Saw,            | (sawed),     | sawn*.             |
| Crow,           | crew,        | (crowed).          | Shave,          | (shaved),    | shaven*.           |
| Grow,           | grew,        | grown.             | Shew,           | (shewed),    | shewn*.            |
| Know,           | knew,        | known.             | Show,           | (showed),    | shown.             |
| Throw,          | threw,       | thrown.            | Sow,            | (sowed),     | sown*.             |
| Fly,            | flew,        | flown.             | Straw,          | (strawed,    | strawn*.           |
| Bake,           | (baked),     | baken*.            | strew, or       | (strewed,    | strown*.           |
| Grave,          | (graved),    | graven*.           | strow,          | &c.)         |                    |
| Hew,            | (hewed),     | hewen or           | Wash,           | (washed),    | washen*.           |
|                 |              | hewn.              | Wax,            | (waxed),     | waxen*.            |
| Lade,           | (laded),     | laden.             | Wreath,         | (wreathed),  | wreathen*.         |
| Load,           | (loaded),    | loaden*.           | Writhe,         | (writhed),   | writhen.           |
| Mow,            | (mowed),     | mown*.             |                 |              |                    |

Several verbs seem to have dropt the termination *en* in the Participle; as,

| <i>Present.</i> | <i>Past.</i>  | <i>Participle.</i> | <i>Present.</i> | <i>Past.</i> | <i>Participle.</i> |
|-----------------|---------------|--------------------|-----------------|--------------|--------------------|
| Begin           | began,        | begun.             | Stink,          | stank or     | stunk.             |
| Cling,          | clang or      | clung.             | String,         | strung,      | strung.            |
|                 | clung,        |                    |                 |              |                    |
| Drink,          | drank,        | drunk or           | Swim,           | swam or      | swum.              |
|                 |               | drunken.           |                 | swum,        |                    |
| Fling,          | flung,        | flung.             | Swing,          | swung,       | swung.             |
|                 |               |                    |                 |              |                    |
| Ring,           | rang or       | rung.              | Wring,          | wrung,       | wrung.             |
|                 | rung,         |                    |                 |              |                    |
| Shrink,         | shrank or     | shrunk.            | Bind,           | bound,       | bound or           |
|                 | shrunk,       |                    |                 | bounden,     |                    |
| Sing,           | sang or sung, | sung.              | Find,           | found,       | found.             |
| Sink,           | sank or sunk, | sunk.              | Grind,          | ground,      | ground.            |
|                 |               |                    | Wind,           | wound,       | wound.             |
| Sling,          | slang or      | slung.             | Hang,           | hung*,       | hung*.             |
|                 | slung,        |                    | Shoot,          | shot,        | shot.              |
| Slink,          | slunk,        | slunk.             | Stick,          | stuck,       | stuck.             |
| Spin,           | span or spun, | spun.              | Come,           | came,        | come.              |
|                 |               |                    |                 |              |                    |
| Spring,         | sprang or     | sprung.            | Run,            | ran,         | run.               |
|                 | sprung,       |                    | Win,            | won,         | won.               |
| Sting,          | stung,        | stung.             |                 |              |                    |

Frequent mistakes are committed with regard to those verbs which make the Participle Perfect different from the Past Time: thus it is said, *he begun*, for *he began*; *he run*, for *he ran*; the Participle being used instead of the Past Time: and much more frequently the Past Time instead of the Participle; as, *I had wrote*, for *I had written*; *it was wrote*, for *it was written*; so *bore* for *borene*; *chose* for *chosen*; *bid*, for *bidden*; *drove*, for *driven*; *broke* for *broken*; *rode* for *ridden*, &c.

Several verbs are either defective or made up of parts derived from different verbs of the same signification; as, *go*, *went*, *gone*, *went*, *wit* or *wet*, *wot*; *wis*, *wist*; *avght*, *quoth*, *must*, together with most of the auxiliary verbs.

## LATIN VERBS.

The Latins have four different ways of varying verbs, called the *First*, the *Second*, the *Third*, and the *Fourth Conjugation*.

The Conjugations are thus distinguished:

The First has *a* long before *re* of the Infinitive; the Second has *e* long, the Third has *e* short, and the Fourth has *i* long, before *re* of the Infinitive.

Except *dāre* to give, which has *ā* short, and also its compounds; thus. *Circumdāre*, to surround; *circumdāmus*, -*dātis*, -*dābam*, -*dābo*. &c.

The different conjugations are likewise distinguished from one another by the different terminations of the following tenses:

## ACTIVE VOICE.

## Indicative Mode.

## Present Tense.

|              | Singular.<br>Persons. |      |      | Plural.<br>Persons. |        |        |
|--------------|-----------------------|------|------|---------------------|--------|--------|
|              | 1.                    | 2.   | 3.   | 1.                  | 2.     | 3.     |
| Conjugation. | 1. -o,                | -as, | -at; | -āmus,              | -ātis, | -ant.  |
|              | 2. -eo,               | -es, | -et; | -ēmus,              | -ētis, | -ent.  |
|              | 3. -o,                | -is, | -it; | -imus,              | -itis, | -unt.  |
|              | 4. -io,               | -is, | -it; | -īmus,              | -ītis, | -iunt. |

## Imperfect.

|            |         |         |           |           |          |
|------------|---------|---------|-----------|-----------|----------|
| 1. -ābam,  | -ābas,  | -ābat;  | -ābāmus,  | -ābātis,  | -ābant.  |
| 2. -ēbam,  | -ēbas,  | -ēbat;  | -ēbāmus,  | -ēbātis,  | -ēbant.  |
| 3. -ēbam,  | -ēbas,  | -ēbat;  | -ēbāmus,  | -ēbātis,  | -ēbant.  |
| 4. -iēbam, | -iēbas, | -iēbat; | -iēbāmus, | -iēbātis, | -iēbant. |

## Future.

|          |        |        |          |          |         |
|----------|--------|--------|----------|----------|---------|
| 1. -ābo, | -ābis, | -ābit; | -ābīmus, | -ābītis, | -ābunt. |
| 2. -ēbo, | -ēbis, | -ēbit; | -ēbīmus, | -ēbītis, | -ēbunt. |
| 3. -am,  | -es,   | -et;   | -ēmus,   | -ētis,   | -ent.   |
| 4. -iam, | -ies,  | -iet,  | -iēmus,  | -iētis,  | -ient.  |

## Subjunctive Mode.

## Present Tense.

|          |       |       |         |         |        |
|----------|-------|-------|---------|---------|--------|
| 1. -em,  | -es,  | -et;  | -ēmus,  | -ētis,  | -ent.  |
| 2. -eām, | -eas, | -eat; | -eāmus, | -eātis, | -eant. |
| 3. -am,  | -as,  | -at;  | -āmus,  | -ātis,  | -ant.  |
| 4. -iam, | -ias, | -iat; | -iāmus, | -iātis, | -iant. |

## Imperfect.

Imperfect.

- |           |        |         |          |          |         |
|-----------|--------|---------|----------|----------|---------|
| 1. -ārem, | -āres, | -āret ; | -ārēmus, | -ārētis, | -ārent. |
| 2. -ērem, | -ēres, | -ēret ; | -ērēmus, | -ērētis, | -ērent. |
| 3. -ĕrem, | -ĕres, | -ĕret ; | -ĕrēmus, | -ĕrētis, | -ĕrent. |
| 4. -īrem, | -īres, | -īret ; | -irēmus, | -irētis, | -irent. |

*Imperative Mode.*

- |                |        |                 |         |
|----------------|--------|-----------------|---------|
| 2.             | 3.     | 2.              | 3.      |
| 1. -a or -āto, | -āto ; | -āte or -ātōte, | -anto.  |
| 2. -e or -ēto, | -ēto ; | -ēte or -ētōte, | -ento.  |
| 3. -e or -ĭto, | -ĭto ; | -ĭte or -ĭtōte, | -unto.  |
| 4. -i or -īto, | -īto ; | -īte or -ītōte, | -iunto. |

P A S S I V E V O I C E.

*Indicative Mode.*

Present Tense.

- |          |                |         |        |         |          |
|----------|----------------|---------|--------|---------|----------|
| 1. -or,  | -āris or -āre, | -ātur ; | -āmur, | -āmīni, | -antur.  |
| 2. -eor, | -ēris or -ēre, | -ētur ; | -ēmur, | -ēmīni, | -entur.  |
| 3. -or,  | -ĕris or -ĕre, | -ĭtur ; | -īmur, | -īmīni, | -untur.  |
| 4. -ior, | -īris or -īre, | -itur ; | -imur, | -imīni, | -iuntur. |

Imperfect.

- |           |                    |           |          |           |           |
|-----------|--------------------|-----------|----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. -ābar, | -ābāris or -ābāre, | -ābātur ; | -ābāmur, | -ābāmīni, | -ābantur. |
| 2. -ēbar, | -ēbāris or -ēbāre, | -ēbātur ; | -ēbāmur, | -ēbāmīni, | -ēbantur. |
| 3. -ĕbar, | -ĕbāris or -ĕbāre, | -ĕbātur ; | -ĕbāmur, | -ĕbāmīni, | -ĕbantur. |
| 4. -ībar, | -ībāris or -ībāre, | -ībātur ; | -ībāmur, | -ībāmīni, | -ībantur. |

Future.

- |           |                    |           |          |           |            |
|-----------|--------------------|-----------|----------|-----------|------------|
| 1. -ābor, | -ābēris or -ābēre, | -ābītur ; | -ābīmur, | -ābīmīni, | -ābuntur.  |
| 2. -ēbor, | -ēbēris or -ēbēre, | -ēbītur ; | -ēbīmur, | -ēbīmīni, | -ēbuntur.  |
| 3. -ar,   | -ĕris or -ĕre,     | -ĭtur ;   | -īmur,   | -īmīni,   | -ientur.   |
| 4. -iāi,  | -īcīris or -īcīre, | -īcītur ; | -īcīmur, | -īcīmīni, | -īcīentur. |

*Subjunctive Mode.*

Present Tense.

- |          |                  |          |         |          |          |
|----------|------------------|----------|---------|----------|----------|
| 1. -er,  | -ēris or -ēre,   | -ētur ;  | -ēmur,  | -ēmīni,  | -entur.  |
| 2. -ear, | -ēāris or -ēāre, | -ēātur ; | -ēāmur, | -ēāmīni, | -eantur. |
| 3. -ar,  | -āris or -āre,   | -ātur ;  | -āmur,  | -āmīni,  | -antur.  |
| 4. -iar, | -iāris or -iāre, | -iātur ; | -iāmur, | -iāmīni, | -iantur. |

Imperfect.

- |           |                    |           |          |           |           |
|-----------|--------------------|-----------|----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. -ārer, | -ārēris or -ārēre, | -ārētur ; | -ārēmur, | -ārēmīni, | -ārentur. |
| 2. -ērer, | -ērēris or -ērēre, | -ērētur ; | -ērēmur, | -ērēmīni, | -ērentur. |
| 3. -ĕrer, | -ĕrēris or -ĕrēre, | -ĕrētur ; | -ĕrēmur, | -ĕrēmīni, | -ĕrentur. |
| 4. -īrer, | -īrēris or -īrēre, | -īrētur ; | -īrēmur, | -īrēmīni, | -īrentur. |



*Imperative Mode.*

|                   | 2.      | 3.      | 2.       | 3. |
|-------------------|---------|---------|----------|----|
| 1. -āre or -ātor, | -ātor ; | -āmīni, | -āntor.  |    |
| 2. -ēre or -ētor, | -ētor ; | -ēmīni, | -ēntor.  |    |
| 3. -ēre or -ītor, | -ītor ; | -īmīni, | -untor.  |    |
| 4. -īre or -ītor, | -ītor ; | -imīni, | -iuntor. |    |

*Observe*, Verbs in *io* of the third conjugation have *iunt* in the third person plur. of the present indic. active, and *iuntur* in the passive ; and so in the imperative, *iunto* and *iuntor*. In the imperfect and future of the indicative they have always the terminations of the fourth conjugation, *iēbam* and *iam* ; *iēbar* and *iar*, &c.

The terminations of the other tenses are the same through all the Conjugations. Thus,

## ACTIVE VOICE.

*Indicative Mode.*

|              | Sing.  |        |         | Plur.    |          |                 |
|--------------|--------|--------|---------|----------|----------|-----------------|
|              | 1.     | 2.     | 3.      | 1.       | 2.       | 3.              |
| <i>Perf.</i> | -i,    | -isti, | -it ;   | -imus,   | -istis,  | -erunt or -ere. |
| <i>Plu.</i>  | -eram, | -eras, | -erat ; | -erāmus, | -erātis, | -erant.         |

*Subjunctive Mode.*

|       |         |         |          |           |           |          |
|-------|---------|---------|----------|-----------|-----------|----------|
| Perf. | -erim,  | -eris,  | -erit ;  | -erīmus,  | -erītis,  | -erint.  |
| Plu.  | -issem, | -isses, | -isset ; | -issemus, | -issetis, | -issent. |
| Fut.  | -ero,   | -eris,  | -erit ;  | -erimur,  | -eritis,  | -erint.  |

These Tenses, in the Passive Voice, are formed by the Participle Perfect, and the auxiliary verb *sum*, which is also used to express the Future of the Infinitive Active.

SUM is an irregular verb, and thus conjugated :

## Principal Parts.

|              |              |              |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| Pres. Indic. | Perf. Indic. | Pres. Inf.   |
| Sum,         | fui,         | esse, To be. |

*Indicative Mode.*

Present Tense. *am.*

|            | Sing.                                   | Plur.                        |
|------------|-----------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Person: 1. | Sum, <i>I am,</i>                       | Sūmus, <i>We are,</i>        |
| 2.         | Es, <i>Thou art,</i> or <i>you are,</i> | Estis, <i>Ye or you are,</i> |
| 3.         | Est, <i>He is ;</i>                     | Sunt, <i>They are.</i>       |
|            |                                         | Imperfect.                   |

Imperfect. *was.*

- |                                         |                          |
|-----------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. Ēram, <i>I was,</i>                  | Erāmus, <i>We were,</i>  |
| 2. Eras, <i>Thou wast, or you were,</i> | Erātis, <i>Ye were,</i>  |
| 3. Erat, <i>He was ;</i>                | Erant, <i>They were.</i> |

Perfect. *have been or was.*

- |                                   |                                         |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| 1. Fui, <i>I have been,</i>       | Fuimus, <i>We have been,</i>            |
| 2. Fuisti, <i>Thou hast been,</i> | Fuistis, <i>Ye have been,</i>           |
| 3. Fuit, <i>He hath been ;</i>    | Fuerunt or -ēre, <i>They have been.</i> |

Plu-perfect. *had been.*

- |                                    |                                |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. Fuēram, <i>I had been,</i>      | Fuērāmus, <i>We had been,</i>  |
| 2. Fueras, <i>Thou hadst been,</i> | Fueratis, <i>Ye had been,</i>  |
| 3. Fuerat, <i>He had been ;</i>    | Fuerant, <i>They had been.</i> |

Future. *shall or will.*

- |                                |                              |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. Ēro, <i>I shall be,</i>     | Erimus, <i>We shall be,</i>  |
| 2. Eris, <i>Thou shalt be,</i> | Eritis, <i>Ye shall be,</i>  |
| 3. Erit, <i>He shall be ;</i>  | Erunt, <i>They shall be.</i> |

Subjunctive Mode.

Present Tense. *may or can.*

- |                                |                           |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Sim, <i>I may be,</i>       | Simus, <i>We may be,</i>  |
| 2. Sis, <i>Thou mayest be,</i> | Sitis, <i>Ye may be,</i>  |
| 3. Sit, <i>He may be ;</i>     | Sint, <i>They may be.</i> |

Imperfect. *might, could, would, or should.*

- |                                    |                               |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. Essem, <i>I might be,</i>       | Essemus, <i>We might be,</i>  |
| 2. Esset, <i>Thou mightest be,</i> | Essetis, <i>Ye might be,</i>  |
| 3. Esset, <i>He might be ;</i>     | Essent, <i>They might be.</i> |

Perfect. *may have.*

- |                                          |                                     |
|------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Fuērim, <i>I may have been,</i>       | Fuērīmus, <i>We may have been,</i>  |
| 2. Fueris, <i>Thou mayest have been,</i> | Fueritis, <i>Ye may have been,</i>  |
| 3. Fuerit, <i>He may have been ;</i>     | Fuerint, <i>They may have been.</i> |

Plu-perfect. *might, could, would, or should have. ; or had,*

- |                                             |                                        |
|---------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| 1. Fuissem, <i>I might have been,</i>       | Fuissemus, <i>We might have been,</i>  |
| 2. Fuisses, <i>Thou mightest have been,</i> | Fuissetis, <i>Ye might have been,</i>  |
| 3. Fuisset, <i>He might have been ;</i>     | Fuissent, <i>They might have been.</i> |

Future. *shall have.*

- |                                         |                                       |
|-----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. Fuēro, <i>I shall have been,</i>     | Fuērīmus, <i>We shall have been,</i>  |
| 2. Fueris, <i>Thou shalt have been,</i> | Fueritis, <i>Ye shall have been,</i>  |
| 3. Fuerit, <i>He shall have been ;</i>  | Fuerint, <i>They shall have been.</i> |

*Imperative Mode.*

2. Es *vel* esto, *Be thou,*      Este *vel* estōte, *Be ye.*  
 3. Esto,      *Let him be ;*      Suntō,      *Let them be.*

*Infinitive Mode.*

*Pres.* Esse, *To be.*

*Perf.* Fuisse, *To have been.*

*Fut.* Esse futurus, -a, -um, *To be about to be.*

Fuisse futurus, -a, -um, *To have been about to be.*

*Participle.*

*Future,* Fütürus, -a, -um, *About to be.*

Obs. 1. The personal pronouns, which in English are, for the most part, added to the verb, in Latin are commonly understood; because the several persons are sufficiently distinguished from one another by the different terminations of the verb, though the persons themselves be not expressed. The learner however at first may be accustomed to join them with the verb; thus, *ego sum*, I am; *tu es*, thou art, *or* you are; *ille est*, he is; *nos sumus* we are, &c. So *ego amo*, I love; *tu amas*, thou lovest, *or* you love; *ille amat*, he loveth *or* loves; *nos amamus*, we love, &c.

Obs. 2. In the second person singular in English, we commonly use the plural form, except in solemn discourse; as, *tu es*, thou art, *or* much oftener, you are; *tu eras*, thou wast, *or* you were; *tu sis*, thou mayest be, *or* you may be, &c. So *tu amas*, thou lovest, *or* you love; *tu amabas*, thou lovedst, *or* you loved, &c.

Verbs are thus varied in the different Conjugations.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

## Principal Parts.

| <i>Pres. Indic.</i> | <i>Perfect.</i> | <i>Supine.</i> | <i>Pres. Infinit.</i>  |
|---------------------|-----------------|----------------|------------------------|
| Amo,                | āmāvi,          | āmātum,        | āmāre, <i>To love.</i> |

*Indicative Mode.*

*Present Tense.* love, do love, or am loving,

|                 |               |                                   |
|-----------------|---------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> 1. | <b>A</b> M-o, | <i>I love,</i>                    |
|                 | 2. Am-as,     | <i>Thou lovest, or you love ;</i> |
|                 | 3. Am-at,     | <i>He loveth, or he loves ;</i>   |
| <i>Plur.</i> 1. | Am-āmus,      | <i>We love,</i>                   |
|                 | 2. Am-atis,   | <i>Ye or you love,</i>            |
|                 | 3. Am-ant,    | <i>They love.</i>                 |

*Imperfect.*

Imperfect. *loved, did love, or was loving.*

|                            |                         |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-ābam,   | <i>I loved,</i>         |
| 2. Am-abas,                | <i>Thou lovedst,</i>    |
| 3. Am-abat,                | <i>He loved ;</i>       |
| <i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-abamus, | <i>We loved,</i>        |
| 2. Am-abatis,              | <i>Ye or you loved,</i> |
| 3. Am-abant,               | <i>They loved,</i>      |

Perfect. *loved, have loved, or did love.*

|                            |                         |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-āvi,    | <i>I have loved,</i>    |
| 2. Am-avisti,              | <i>Thou hast loved,</i> |
| 3. Am-avi                  | <i>He hath loved ;</i>  |
| <i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-āvimus, | <i>We have loved,</i>   |
| 2. Am-avistis,             | <i>Ye have loved,</i>   |
| 3. Am-avērunt, v.-avēre,   | <i>They have loved.</i> |

Plu-perfect. *had.*

|                              |                          |
|------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-āvēram,   | <i>I had loved,</i>      |
| 2. Am-averas,                | <i>Thou hadst loved,</i> |
| 3. Am-averat,                | <i>He had loved ;</i>    |
| <i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-averamus, | <i>We had loved,</i>     |
| 2. Am-averatis,              | <i>Ye had loved,</i>     |
| 3. Am-averant,               | <i>They had loved.</i>   |

Future. *shall or will.*

|                            |                         |
|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-ābo,    | <i>I shall love,</i>    |
| 2. Am-abis,                | <i>Thou shalt love,</i> |
| 3. Am-abit,                | <i>He shall love ;</i>  |
| <i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-abīmus, | <i>We shall love,</i>   |
| 2. Am-abitis,              | <i>Ye shall love,</i>   |
| 3. Am-abunt,               | <i>They shall love.</i> |

Subjunctive Mode.

Present Tense. *may or can.*

|                          |                          |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-em,   | <i>I may love,</i>       |
| 1. Am-es,                | <i>Thou mayest love,</i> |
| 3. Am-et,                | <i>He may love ;</i>     |
| <i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-ēmus, | <i>We may love,</i>      |
| 2. Am-etis,              | <i>Ye may love,</i>      |
| 3. Am-ent,               | <i>They may love.</i>    |

Imperfect.

Imperfect. *might, could, would, or should.*

- Sing.* 1. Am-ārem, *I might love,*  
 2. Am-ares, *Thou mightest love,*  
 3. Am-aret, *He might love ;*  
*Plur.* 1. Am-arēmus, *We might love,*  
 2. Am-aretis, *Ye might love,*  
 3. Am-arent, *They might love.*

Perfect. *may have.*

- Sing.* 1. Am-āvērim, *I may have loved,*  
 2. Am-averis, *Thou mayest have loved,*  
 3. Am-averit, *He may have loved ;*  
*Plur.* 1. Am-averimus, *We may have loved,*  
 2. Am-averitis, *Ye may have loved.*  
 3. Am-averint, *They may have loved.*

Plu-perfect. *might, could, would, or should have ; or had.*

- Sing.* 1. Am-avisse[m], *I might have loved,*  
 2. Am-avisses, *Thou mightest have loved,*  
 3. Am-avisset, *He might have loved ;*  
*Plur.* 1. Am-avisse[m]us, *We might have loved,*  
 2. Am-avissetis, *Ye might have loved,*  
 3. Am-avissent, *They might have loved.*

Future. *shall have.*

- Sing.* 1. Am-āvēro, *I shall have loved,*  
 2. Am-averis, *Thou shalt have loved,*  
 3. Am-averit, *He shall have loved ;*  
*Plur.* 1. Am-averimus, *We shall have loved,*  
 2. Am-averitis, *Ye shall have loved,*  
 3. Am-averint, *They shall have loved.*

Imperative Mode.

- Sing.* 2. Am-a, *vel* am-āto, *Love thou, or do thou love,*  
 3. Am-ato, *Let him love ;*  
*Plur.* 2. Am-āte, *vel* amatōte, *Love ye, or do ye love,*  
 3. Am-anto, *Let them love.*

Infinitive Mode.

- Pres.* Am-āre, *To love.*  
*Perf.* Am-avisse, *To have loved.*  
*Fut.* Esse amaturus, -a, -um, *To be about to love.*  
 Fuisse amaturus, -a, -um, *To have been about to love.*

Participle.



## Participle.

|                                     |                        |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>Present</i> , Am-ans,            | <i>Loving</i> .        |
| <i>Future</i> , Am-aturus, -a, -um, | <i>About to love</i> . |

## Gerunds.

|                       |                      |
|-----------------------|----------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i> Am-andum, | <i>Loving</i> ,      |
| <i>Gen.</i> Am-andi,  | <i>Of loving</i> ,   |
| <i>Dat.</i> Am-ando,  | <i>To loving</i> ,   |
| <i>Acc.</i> Am-andum, | <i>Loving</i> .      |
| <i>Abl.</i> Am-ando,  | <i>With loving</i> . |

## Supine.

|                          |                                  |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>Former</i> . Am-ātum, | <i>To love</i> ,                 |
| <i>Latter</i> . Am-atu,  | <i>To love, or to be loved</i> . |

## PASSIVE VOICE.

|                             |                             |                     |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>Present Indicative</i> . | <i>Perfect Participle</i> . | <i>Infinitive</i> . |
| Amor,                       | amātus,                     | amāri, to be loved. |

## Indicative Mode.

## Present Tense. am.

|                              |                              |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-or,       | <i>I am loved</i> ,          |
| 2. Am-āris, <i>vel</i> -āre, | <i>Thou art loved</i> ,      |
| 3. Am-atur,                  | <i>He is loved</i> ;         |
| <i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-amur,     | <i>We are loved</i> ,        |
| 2. Am-amīni,                 | <i>Ye or you are loved</i> , |
| 3. Am-antur,                 | <i>They are loved</i> .      |

## Imperfect. was.

|                                 |                          |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> 1. Am-ābar,        | <i>I was loved</i> ,     |
| 2. Am-abāris <i>vel</i> -abāre, | <i>Thou wast loved</i> , |
| 3. Am-abatur,                   | <i>He was loved</i> ;    |
| <i>Plur.</i> 1. Am-abamur,      | <i>We were loved</i> ,   |
| 2. Am-abamīni,                  | <i>Ye were loved</i> ,   |
| 3. Am-abantur,                  | <i>They were loved</i> . |

## Perfect. am ; have been, or was.

|                                                |                               |
|------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>Sing.</i> 1. Amatus sum, <i>vel</i> fui,    | <i>I have been loved</i> ,    |
| 2. Amatus es, <i>v.</i> fuisti,                | <i>Thou hast been loved</i> , |
| 3. Amatus est, <i>v.</i> fuit,                 | <i>He hath been loved</i> ;   |
| <i>Plur.</i> 1. Amati sumus, <i>v.</i> fuimus, | <i>We have been loved</i> ,   |
| 2. Amati estis, <i>v.</i> fuistis,             | <i>Ye have been loved</i> ,   |
| 3. Amati sunt, fuerunt, <i>v.</i> fuere,       | <i>They have been loved</i> . |

## Plu-perfect.

Plu-perfect. *had been, or was.*

- Sing.* 1. Amatus eram *vel* fueram, *I had been loved,*  
 2. Amatus eras *v.* fueras, *Thou hadst been loved,*  
 3. Amatus erat *v.* fuerat, *He had been loved;*  
*Plur.* 1. Amati eramus *v.* fueramus, *We had been loved,*  
 2. Amati eratis *v.* fueratis, *Ye had been loved,*  
 3. Amati erant *v.* fuerant, *They had been loved.*

Future. *shall, or will be.*

- Sing.* 1. Am-ābor, *I shall be loved,*  
 2. Am-abēris *vel* -abēre, *Thou shalt be loved,*  
 3. Am-abitur, *He shall be loved;*  
*Plur.* 1. Am-ābimur, *We shall be loved,*  
 2. Am-abimini, *Ye shall be loved,*  
 3. Am-abuntur, *They shall be loved.*

## Subjunctive Mode.

Present Tense. *may or can be.*

- Sing.* 1. Am-er, *I may be loved,*  
 2. Am-ēris *vel* -ēre, *Thou mayest be loved,*  
 3. Am-etur, *He may be loved;*  
*Plur.* 1. Am-ēmur, *We may be loved,*  
 2. Am-emiini, *Ye may be loved,*  
 3. Am-entur, *They may be loved.*

Imperfect. *might, could, would, or should be.*

- Sing.* 1. Am-ārer, *I might be loved,*  
 2. Am-arēris *vel* -arēre, *Thou mightest be loved,*  
 3. Am-aretur, *He might be loved;*  
*Plur.* 1. Am-ārēmur, *We might be loved,*  
 2. Am-aremini, *Ye might be loved,*  
 3. Am-arentur, *They might be loved.*

Perfect. *may have been.*

- Sing.* 1. Amatus sim *vel* fuerim, *I may have been loved,*  
 2. Amatus sis *v.* fueris, *Thou mayest have been loved,*  
 3. Amatus sit *v.* fuerit, *He may have been loved;*  
*Plur.* 1. Amati simus *v.* fuerimus, *We may have been loved,*  
 2. Amati sitis *v.* fueritis, *Ye may have been loved,*  
 3. Amati sint *v.* fuerint, *They may have been loved.*

Plu-perfect. *might, could, would, or should have been; or had been.*

- Sing.* 1. Amatus essem *vel* fuisset, *I might have been loved,*  
 2. Amatus esses *v.* fuisses, *Thou mightest have been loved,*  
 3. Amatus esset *v.* fuisset, *He might have been loved;*

*Plur.*

- Plur.* 1. Amati essemus v. fuissetus, *We might have been loved,*  
 2. Amati essetis v. fuissetis, *Ye might have been loved,*  
 3. Amati essent v. fuissent, *They might have been loved.*

*Future. shall have been.*

- Sing.* 1. Amatus fuëro, *I shall have been loved,*  
 2. Amatus fueris, *Thou shalt have been loved.*  
 3. Amatus fuerit, *He shall have been loved;*  
*Plur.* 1. Amati fuerimus, *We shall have been loved,*  
 2. Amati fueritis, *Ye shall have been loved,*  
 3. Amati fuerint, *They shall have been loved.*

*Imperative Mode.*

- Sing.* 2. Am-äre vel am-ātor, *Be thou loved,*  
 3. Am-ātor, *Let him be loved;*  
*Plur.* 2. Am-amīni, *Be ye loved.*  
 3. Am-antor, *Let them be loved.*

*Infinitive Mode.*

- Pres.* Am-āri, *To be loved.*  
*Perf.* Esse v. fuisse amatus, -a, -um, *To have been loved.*  
*Fut.* Am-ātum iri, *To be about to be loved.*

*Participle.*

- Perf.* Am-ātus, -a, -um, *Loved.*  
*Fut.* Am-andus, -a, -um, *To be loved.*

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

Dōceo, dōcui, doctum, dōcēre, *To teach.*

*Indicative Mode.*

- |              | <i>Sing.</i>    |                  | <i>Plur.</i>                        |
|--------------|-----------------|------------------|-------------------------------------|
|              | 1.              | 2.               | 3.                                  |
| <i>Pres.</i> | <b>D</b> Oc-co, | -es,             | -et ; -ēmus, -ētis, -ent.           |
| <i>Imp.</i>  | Doc-ēbam,       | -ebas,           | -ebat ; -ebāmus, -ebatis, -ebant.   |
| <i>Perf.</i> | Doc-ui,         | -uisti, -uit ;   | -uimus, -uistis, -uērunt, v. -uēre. |
| <i>Plu.</i>  | Doc-uēram,      | -ueras, -uerat ; | -uerāmus, -ueratis, uerant.         |
| <i>Fut.</i>  | Doc-ēbo,        | -ēbis, -ēbit ;   | -ēbimus, -ēbitis, -ēbunt.           |

*Subjunctive Mode.*

- Pres.* Doc-eam, -eas, -eat ; -eāmus, -eatis, -eant.  
*Imp.* Doc-ērem, -eres, -eret ; -erēmus, -eretis, -erent.  
*Perf.* Doc-uērim, -ueris, -uerit ; -uerīmus, -ueritis, -uerint.  
*Plu.* Doc-uissē, -uissēs, -uisset ; -uissēmus, -uissetis, -uissent.  
*Fut.* Doc-uēro, -ueris, -uerit ; -uerīmus, -ueritis, -uerint.

*Imperative.*

*Imperative Mode.*

2. 3. 2. 3.  
*Pres.* Doc-e vel -ēto, -ēto; ēte vel -etote, -ento.

*Infinitive.*      *Participles.*      *Gerunds.*      *Supines.*

*Pres.* Doc-ēre. *Pr.* Doc-ens, Doc-endum, 1. Doc-tum,  
*Perf.* Doc-uisse *Fut.* Doc-tūrus. Doc-endi, 2. Doc-tu.  
*Fut.* Esse-docturus, -a, um. Doc-endo, &c.  
 Fuisse docturus, a, -um.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

Dōceor, doctus, dōcēri, *To be taught.*

*Indicative Mode.*

Sing.

Plur.

*Pr.* Doc eor, -ēris, -etur; -emur, -emini, -entur.  
*Im.* Doc-ēbar, -ebāris, -ebatur; -ebamur, -ebamini, -ebantur.  
*Perf.* Doctus sum vel fui, doctus es vel fuisti, &c.  
*Plu.* Doctus eram v. fueram, doctus eras v. fueras, &c.  
*Fut.* Doc-ebor, -ebēris, -ebitur; -ebimur, -ebimini, ebuntur.  
 vel -ebere.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

*Pr.* Doc-ear, -eāris, -eatur; -eamur, -eamini, -eantur.  
 vel -eare,  
*Im.* Doc-erer, -erēris, -eretur; -eremur, -eremini, -erentur.  
 vel -erere,  
*Perf.* Doctus sim vel fuerim, doctus sis vel fueris, &c.  
*Plu.* Doctus essem v. fuisssem, doctus esses v. fuisset, &c.  
*Fut.* Doctus fuero, doctus fueris, doctus fuerit, docti fuerimus, &c.

*Imperative Mode.*

2. 3. 2. 3.  
*Pres.* Doc-ēre vel -ētor, -ctor; -emini, -entor.

*Infinitive.**Participles.*

*Pres.* Doc-eri, *Perf.* Doc-tus, -a, -um.  
*Perf.* Esse vel fuisse doctus, -a, -um, *Fut.* Doc-endus, -a, um.  
*Fut.* Doctum iri,

THIRD

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

Lēgo, lēgi, lectum, lēgere, To read.

## Indicative Mode.

|              | Sing.     |        |         | Plur.    |          |               |
|--------------|-----------|--------|---------|----------|----------|---------------|
|              | 1.        | 2.     | 3.      | 1.       | 2.       | 3.            |
| <i>Pres.</i> | Lēg-o,    | -is,   | -it ;   | -imus,   | -itis,   | -unt.         |
| <i>Imp.</i>  | Leg-ēbam, | -ebas, | -ebat ; | -ebamus, | -ebatis, | -ebant,       |
| <i>Perf.</i> | Lēg-i     | -isti, | -it ;   | -imus,   | -istis,  | -ērunt, -ēre. |
| <i>Plu.</i>  | Lēg-eram, | -eras, | -erat ; | -eramus, | -eratis, | -erant.       |
| <i>Fut.</i>  | Lēg-am,   | -es,   | -et ;   | -emus,   | -etis,   | -ent.         |

## Subjunctive Mode.

|              |           |         |          |           |           |          |
|--------------|-----------|---------|----------|-----------|-----------|----------|
| <i>Pres.</i> | Lēg-am,   | -as,    | -at ;    | -amus,    | -atis,    | -ant.    |
| <i>Imp.</i>  | Lēg-ērem, | -eres,  | -eret ;  | -ērēmus,  | -eretis,  | -erent.  |
| <i>Perf.</i> | Lēg-ērim, | -eris,  | -erit ;  | -erīmus,  | -eritis,  | -erint.  |
| <i>Plu.</i>  | Lēg-isse, | -isses, | -isset ; | -issemus, | -issetis, | -issent. |
| <i>Fut.</i>  | Lēg-ēro,  | -eris,  | -erit ;  | -erīmus,  | -eritis,  | -erint.  |

## Imperative Mode.

|              | 2.               | 3.     | 2.                | 3.     |
|--------------|------------------|--------|-------------------|--------|
| <i>Pres.</i> | Lēg-e, vel -ito, | -ito ; | -ite, vel -itōte, | -unto. |

## Infinitive.

## Participles.

## Gerunds.

## Supines.

|              |                  |             |               |            |    |          |
|--------------|------------------|-------------|---------------|------------|----|----------|
| <i>Pres.</i> | Lēg-ēre,         | <i>Pr.</i>  | Leg-ens.      | Lēg-endum. | 1. | Lec-tum. |
| <i>Perf.</i> | Lēg-isse,        | <i>Fut.</i> | Lec-tūrus.    | Leg-endi.  | 2. | Lec-tu.  |
| <i>Fut.</i>  | Esse lectūrus,   | -a, -um,    | Leg-endo, &c. |            |    |          |
|              | Fuisse lectūrus, | -a, -um,    |               |            |    |          |

## PASSIVE VOICE.

Lēgor, lectus, lēgi, To be read.

## Indicative Mode.

|             | Sing.                   | Plur.                                           |
|-------------|-------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Pr.</i>  | Leg-or,                 | -ēris, -itur ; -imur, -imini, -untur.           |
|             | vel -ēre,               |                                                 |
| <i>Im.</i>  | Leg-ēbar,               | -ebaris, -ebatur ; -ebamur, -ebamini, -ebantur. |
|             | vel -ebare,             |                                                 |
| <i>Per.</i> | Lectus sum vel fui,     | lectus es vel fuisti, &c.                       |
| <i>Pla.</i> | Lectus eram vel fueram, | lectus eras vel fueras, &c.                     |
| <i>Fut.</i> | Legar,                  | -ēris, -ētur ; -ēmur, -emini, -entur.           |
|             | vel -ēre,               |                                                 |

## I

## Subjunctive



*Subjunctive Mode.*

|                      |                         |          |          |          |           |
|----------------------|-------------------------|----------|----------|----------|-----------|
| <i>Pr.</i> Lēg-ar,   | -āris,<br>vel -āre,     | -atur;   | -amur,   | -amini,  | -antur.   |
| <i>Im.</i> Leg-ērer, | -erēris,<br>vel -erēre, | -eretur; | -eremur, | -eremini | -erentur. |

*Perf.* Lēctus sim *vel* fuerim, lēctus sis *vel* fueris, &c.  
*Plu.* Lēctus essem *v.* fuisset, lēctus esses *v.* fuisset, &c.  
*Fut.* Lēctus fuero, lēctus fueris, lēctus fuerit, &c.

*Imperative Mode.*

|                                         |        |         |         |
|-----------------------------------------|--------|---------|---------|
| 2.                                      | 3.     | 2.      | 3.      |
| <i>Pref.</i> Leg-ēre, <i>vel</i> -itor, | -itor; | -imīni, | -untor, |

*Infinitive.**Participles.*

|                                                     |                                 |
|-----------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>Pref.</i> Lēg-i.                                 | <i>Perf.</i> Lec-tus, -a, -um,  |
| <i>Perf.</i> Esse <i>v.</i> fuisse lectus, -a, -um. | <i>Fut.</i> Leg-endus, -a, -um. |
| <i>Fut.</i> Lēctum iri.                             |                                 |

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

Audio, audīvi, audītum; audīre, *To hear.*

*Indicative Mode.*

| <i>Sing.</i>           |          |          | <i>Plur.</i> |            |                                 |
|------------------------|----------|----------|--------------|------------|---------------------------------|
| 1.                     | 2.       | 3.       | 1.           | 2.         | 3.                              |
| <i>Pr.</i> A Ud-io,    | -is,     | -it;     | -īmus,       | -ītis,     | -iunt.                          |
| <i>Im.</i> Aud-iēbam,  | -iebas,  | -iebat;  | -iebamus,    | -iebatis   | -iebant.                        |
| <i>Per.</i> Aud-īvi,   | -ivisti, | -ivit;   | -ivimus,     | -ivistis,  | -ivērunt,<br><i>vel</i> -ivēre. |
| <i>Pl.</i> Aud-ivēram, | -iveras, | -iverat; | -iveramus,   | -iveratis, | -iverant.                       |
| <i>Fu.</i> Aud-iam,    | -ies,    | -iet;    | -iemus,      | -ietis,    | -ient.                          |

*Subjunctive Mode.*

|                         |           |           |             |             |            |
|-------------------------|-----------|-----------|-------------|-------------|------------|
| <i>Pr.</i> Aud-iam,     | -ias,     | -iat;     | -iamus      | -iatis,     | -iant.     |
| <i>Im.</i> Aud-irem.    | -ires,    | -iret;    | -irēmus,    | -iretis,    | -irent.    |
| <i>Per.</i> Aud-iverim, | -iveris,  | -iverit;  | -iverimus   | -iveritis,  | -iverint.  |
| <i>Pl.</i> Aud-ivissem, | -ivesses, | -ivesset; | -ivissemus, | -ivissetis, | -ivissent. |
| <i>Fu.</i> Aud-ivero,   | -iveris,  | -iverit;  | -iverimus,  | -iveritis,  | -iverint.  |

*Imperative Mode.*

|                                    |       |                          |         |
|------------------------------------|-------|--------------------------|---------|
| 2.                                 | 3.    | 2.                       | 3.      |
| <i>Pr.</i> Aud-i, <i>vel</i> -īto, | -īto; | -īte, <i>vel</i> -itōte, | -iunto. |

*Infinitive.*

| <i>Infinitive.</i>                   | <i>Participles.</i>    | <i>Gerunds.</i> | <i>Supines.</i> |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| <i>Pr.</i> Aud-īre.                  | <i>Pr.</i> ud-iens.    | Aud-iendum.     | 1. Auditum.     |
| <i>Per.</i> Aud-ivisse.              | <i>Fu.</i> Aud-iturus. | Aud-iendi.      | 2. Auditū.      |
| <i>Fut.</i> Esse auditurus, -a, -um, |                        | Aud-iendo, &c.  |                 |
| Fuisse auditurus, -a, -um.           |                        |                 |                 |

## PASSIVE VOICE.

Audior,      Auditus,      Audiri,      *To be heard.*

*Indicative Mode.*

| <i>Sing.</i>                                                                       | <i>Plur.</i>                                             |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Pr.</i> Aud-ior,      -iris,<br><i>vel</i> -īre,                                | -itur;      -imur,      -imīni,      -iuntur.            |
| <i>Im.</i> Aud-ic̄bar,      -iebaris,<br><i>vel</i> -iebare,                       | -iebatur;      -iebamur,      -iebamini,      -iebantur. |
| <i>Perf.</i> Auditus sum <i>vel</i> fui,      Auditus es <i>v.</i> fuisti, &c.     |                                                          |
| <i>Plu.</i> Auditus eram <i>v.</i> fueram,      Auditus eras <i>v.</i> fueras, &c. |                                                          |
| <i>Fut.</i> Aud-iar,      -ieris,<br><i>vel</i> -iere,                             | -ietur;      -iemur,      -iemini,      -ientur.         |

*Subjunctive Mode.*

|                                                                                        |                                                      |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Pr.</i> Aud-iar,      -iaris,<br><i>vel</i> -iare,                                  | -iatur;      -iamur,      -iamini,      -iantur.     |
| <i>Im.</i> Aud-irer,      -ireris,<br><i>vel</i> -irere,                               | -iretur;      -iremur,      -iremini,      -irentur. |
| <i>Perf.</i> Auditus sim <i>vel</i> fuerim,      Auditus sis <i>v.</i> fueris, &c.     |                                                      |
| <i>Plu.</i> Auditus essem <i>v.</i> fuissem,      Auditus esses <i>v.</i> fuisset, &c. |                                                      |
| <i>Fut.</i> Auditus fuero,      Auditus fueris, &c.                                    |                                                      |

*Imperative Mode.*

|                                                                               |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2.      3.      2.      3.                                                    |
| <i>Pres.</i> Aud-īre, <i>vel</i> -itor,      -itor;      imīni,      -iuntor. |

| <i>Infinitive.</i>                                                                      | <i>Participles.</i>             |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>Pres.</i> Aud-iri,                                                                   | <i>Perf.</i> Aud-itus, -a, -um. |
| <i>Perf.</i> Esse <i>vel</i> fuisse aud-itus, -a, -um, <i>Fut.</i> Aud-iendus, -a, -um. |                                 |
| <i>Fut.</i> Aud-itum iri.                                                               |                                 |

## FORMATION of VERBS.

There are four principal parts of a verb, from which all the rest are formed; namely, *o* of the present, *i* of the perfect, *um* of the supine, and *re* of the infinitive; according to the following rhyme:

1. From *o* are formed *am* and *em*.
2. From *i*; *ram*, *rim*, *ro*, *ſſe*, and *ſſem*.
3. *U*, *us*, and *rus*, are formed from *um*.
4. All other parts from *re* do come; *ās*, *bam*, *bo*, *rem*; *a*, *e*, and *i*; *ns* and *dus*; *dum*, *do*, and *di*; *ās*,

**AM**-o, -em; **AM-AVI**, -eram, -erim, -iſſem, -ero, -iſſe; **AMAT-UM**, -u, -urus, -us; **AM-ARE**, -abam, -abo, -arem, -a, -ans, -andum, di, do; -andus.

**DOC-EO**, -eam; **DOC-UI**, -ueram, &c.; **DOCT-UM**, -u, -urus, -us; **DOC-ERE**, -ebam, -ebo, -erem, -e, -ens, -endum, di, do, -endus.

**LEG-O**, -am; **LEG-I**, -eram, &c.; **LECT-UM**, -u, -urus, -us; **LEG-ĒRE**, -ebam, -ĕrem, -e, -ens, -endum, &c.

**AUD-IO**, -iam; **AUD-IVI**, -iveram, &c.; **AUDIT-UM**, -u, -urus, -us; **AUD-IRE**, -iebam, -irem, -i, -iens, -iendum, di, do, -iendus. — So verbs of the third conjugation in *io*; as, **CAP-IO**, -iam; **CĒP-I**, -eram, &c.; **CAPT-UM**, -u, &c.; **CAP-ĒRE**, -iebam, -ĕrem, -e, -iens, -iendum, di, do, -iendus.

The passive voice is formed from the active, by adding *r* to *e*, or changing *m* into *r*.

But it is much more easy and natural to form all the parts of a verb from the present and perfect of the indicative, and from the supine; thus,

**AM**-o, -ābam, -ābo, -em, -ārem, -a or -āto, -āre, -ans, -andum, di, do, &c. -andus:

**AMAV-I**, -ēram, -ērim, -iſſem, -ēro, -iſſe: **AMĀT-UM**, -us, -ūrus.

So **DOC-EO**, -ēbam, -ēbo, -eam, -ērem, -e or -eto, -ēre, -ens, -endum, di, &c. -endus; **DOCUI**, -ēram, -ērim, -iſſem, -ēro, -iſſe: **DOCT-UM**, -us, -ūrus:

**LĒG-O**, -ēbam, -am, es, et, &c. -am, as, at, &c. -ĕrem, -e or -ito, -ĕre, -ens, -endum, &c. -endus:

**LĒG-I**, -ēram, &c. **LECT-UM**, -us, -urus:

**CĀP-IO**, -iebam, -iam, ies, iet, &c. -iam, ias, &c. -ĕrem, -e or -ito, -ĕre, -iens, -iendum, -iendus: **CĒP-I**, -ēram, &c. **CAPT-UM**, -us, -ūrus.

**AUD IO**, -iebam, &c. **AUDĪV-I**, -ēram, &c.

A verb is commonly said to be conjugated, when only its principal parts are mentioned, because from them all the rest are derived.

The first person of the Present of the Indicative is called the *Theme* or the *Root* of the verb, because from it the other three principal parts are formed.

The letters of a verb which always remain the same, are called *Radical* letters; as, *am*, in *am-o*. The rest are called the *Termination*; as, *abamius* in *am-abamius*.

All the letters which come before *-āre*, *-ēre*, *-ēre*, or *-īre*, of the infinitive, are radical letters. By putting these before the terminations, all the parts of any regular verb may be readily formed, except the compound tenses.

SIGNIFICATION of the TENSES in the various Modes.

The tenses formed from the present of the indicative or infinitive signify in general the continuance of an action or passion, or represent them as present at some particular time: the other tenses express an action or passion completed; but not always so absolutely, as entirely to exclude the continuance of the same action or passion; thus, *Amo*, I love, do love, or am loving; *amabam*, I loved, did love, or was loving, &c.

*Amavi*, I loved, did love, or have loved, *that is*, have done with loving, &c.

In like manner, in the passive voice; *Amor*, I am loved, I am in loving, or in being loved, &c.

Past time in the passive voice is expressed several different ways, by means of the auxiliary verb *sum*, and the participle perfect; thus,

*Indicative Mode.*

Perfect. *Amatus sum*, I am, or have been loved, or oftener, I was loved.

*Amatus fui*, I have been loved, or I was loved.

Plu-perfect. *Amatus eram*, I was or had been loved.

*Amatus fueram*, I had been loved.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

Perfect. *Amatus sim*, I may be or may have been loved.

*Amatus fuerim*, I may have been loved.

Plu-perfect. *Amatus essem*, I might, could, would, or should be or have been loved.

*Amatus fuissem*, I might, could, would, or should have been loved; or I had been loved.

Future. *Amatus fuero*, I shall have been loved.

The verb *sum* is also employed to express future time in the indicative mode, both active and passive; thus,

*Amaturus sum*, I am about to love, I am to love, I am going to love, or I will love. We chiefly use this form, when some purpose or intention is signified.

*Amatus ero*, I shall be loved.

Obs. 1. The participles *amatus* and *amaturus* are put before the auxiliary verb, because we commonly find them so placed in the classics.

Obs. 2. In these compound tenses the learner should be taught to vary the participle like an adjective noun, according to the gender and number of the different substantives to which it is applied; thus, *amatus est*, he is or was loved, when applied to a man; *amata est*, she was loved, when applied to a woman; *amatum est*, it was loved, when applied to a thing: *amati sunt*, they were loved, when

applied to men, &c. The connecting of syntax, so far as is necessary, with the inflection of nouns and verbs, seems to be the most proper method of teaching both.

Obs. 3. The past time and participle perfect in English are taken in different meanings, according to the different tenses in Latin which they are used to express. Thus, "I loved," when put for *amabam*, is taken in a sense different from what it has when put for *amavi*: so *amor*, and *amatus sum*, I am loved; *amabar*, and *amatus eram*, I was loved; *amer*, and *amatus sim*, &c. In the one, *loved* is taken in a present, in the other, in a past sense. This ambiguity arises from the defective nature of the English verb.

Obs. 4. The tenses of the subjunctive mode may be variously rendered, according to their connection with the other parts of a sentence. They are often expressed in English as the same tenses of the indicative, and sometimes one tense apparently put for another.

Thus, *Quasi intelligant, qualis sit*, As if they understood, what kind of person he is, Cic. *In facinus jurasse putes*, You would think, &c. Ov. *Eloquar an sileam?* Shall I speak out, or be silent? *Nec vos arguerim, Teucris*, for *arguam*, Virg. *Si quid te fugerit, ego perierim*, for *perire*, Ter. *Hunc ego si potui tantum sperare dolorem; Et preferre, forer, petero*: for *potuisssem* and *possem*, Virg. *Singula quid referam?* Why should I mention every thing? Id. *Prædiceres mihi*, you should have told me before hand, Ter. *At tu dictis, Albane, maneres*, ought to have stood to your word, Virg. *Citius crediderim*, I should sooner believe, Juv. *Hauferit ensis*, The sword would have destroyed, Virg. *Fuerint irati*, Grant or suppose they were angry. *Si id fecisset*, If he did or should do that, Cic. The same promiscuous use of the tenses seems also to take place sometimes in the indicative and infinitive; and the indicative to be put for the subjunctive; as, *Animus meminisse horret, luctuque refugit*, for *refugit*, Virg. *Fuerat melius*, for *fuisse*, Id. *Invidiæ dilapsa erat*, for *fuisse*, Sall. *Quamdiu in portum veni?* for *venissi*, Plaut. *Quam mox navigo Ephesum*, for *navigabo*, Id. *Tu si hic sis, aliter sentias*, Ter. for *esses* and *sentires*. Cato affirmat, *se vivo, illum non triumphare*, for *triumphaturum esse*, Cic. *Persuadet Castice, ut occuparet*, for *occupet*, Cæf.

Obs. 5. The future of the subjunctive, and also of the indicative, is often rendered by the present of the subjunctive in English; as, *nisi hoc faciet or fecerit*, unless he do this, Ter.

Obs. 6. Instead of the imperative we often use the present of the subjunctive; as, *valeas*, farewell; *huc venias*, come hither, &c. And also the future both of the indicative and subjunctive; as, *non occides*, do not kill; *ne feceris*, do not do it; *valebis, miique amabis*, farewell, and love me. Cic.

The present time and the preter-imperfect of the infinitive are both expressed under the same form. All the varieties of past and future time are expressed by the other two tenses. But in order properly to exemplify the tenses of the infinitive mode, we must put an accusative, and some other verb, before each of them: thus,

*Disit*



*Dicit me scribere*; he says that I write, do write, or am writing.  
*Dixit me scribere*; he said that I wrote, did write, or was writing.  
*Dicit me scripisse*; he says that I wrote, did write, or have written.  
*Dixit me scripisse*; he said that I had written.  
*Dicit me scripturum esse*; he says that I will write.  
*Dixit nos scripturos esse*; he said that we would write.  
*Dicit nos scripturos fuisse*; he says that we would have written.  
*Dicit literas scribi*; he says that letters are written, writing, a-writing, or in writing.  
*Dixit literas scribi*; he said that letters were writing, or written.  
*Dicit literas scriptas esse*; he says that letters are or were written.  
*Dicit literas scriptas fuisse*; he says that letters have been written.  
*Dixit literas scriptas fuisse*; he said that letters had been written.  
*Dicit literas scriptum iri*; he says that letters will be written.  
*Dixit literas scriptum iri*; he said that letters would be written.

The future, *scriptum iri*; is made up of the former supine, and the infinitive passive of the verb *eo*, and therefore never admits of any variation.

The future of the infinitive is sometimes expressed by a *periphrasis* or circumlocution; thus, *scio fore vel futurum esse ut scribant*, — *ut literæ scribantur*; I know that they will write, — that letters will be written. *Scivi fore vel futurum esse ut scriberent*, — *ut literæ scriberentur*; I knew that they would write, &c. *Scivi futurum fuisse, ut literæ scriberentur*; I knew that letters would have been written. This form is necessary in verbs which want the supine.

Obl. 7. The different tenses, when joined with any expediency or necessity, are thus expressed:

*Scribendum est mihi, puero, nobis*, &c. *literas*; I, the boy, we, &c. must write letters.

*Scribendum fuit mihi, puero, nobis*, &c. I must have written, &c.

*Scribendum erit mihi*; I shall be obliged to write.

*Scio scribendum esse mihi literas*; I know that I must write letters.

— *Scribendum fuisse mihi*; — that I must have written.

*Dixit scribendum fore mihi*; He said that I would be obliged to write.

Or with the participle in *us*,

*Literæ sunt scribendæ mihi, puero, hominibus*, &c. or *a me, puero*, &c.; Letters are to be, or must be written by me, by the boy, by men, &c. So *literæ scribendæ erant, fuerunt, erunt*, &c. *Si literæ scribendæ sint, essent, forent*, &c. *Scio literas scribendas esse*; I know that letters are to be or must be written. *Scivi literas scribendas fuisse*; I knew that letters ought to have been, or must have been written.

*Note.* Most of the simple tenses of a verb in Latin may be expressed, as in English, by the participle and the auxiliary verb *sum*; as, *Sum amans*, for *amo*, I am loving; *eram amans* for *amabam*, &c.; *Fui te carens*, for *carui*, Plaut. *Ut fu scias*, for *ut scias*, Ter. Only the tenses in the active which come from the preterite, and those in the passive which come from the present, cannot be properly expressed in this manner; because the Latins have no participle perfect active, nor participle present passive. This manner of expression however does not often occur.

FOR-

## FORMATION OF THE PRETERITE AND SUPINE.

## GENERAL RULES.

1. Compound and simple verbs form the preterite and supine in the same manner; as,

*Voco, vocāvī, vocātum*, to call: *Revoco, revocāvī, revocātum*, to recall.

Exc. 1. When the simple verb in the preterite doubles the first syllable of the present, the compounds lose the former syllable; as, *pello, pēpuli*, to beat; *repello, rēpuli*, never *repēpuli*, to beat back. But the compounds of *do*, *ſto*, *disco*, and *posco*, follow the general rule; thus, *ēdiſco, ēdidici*, to get by heart; *dēpoſco, dēpōpoſci*, to demand: So, *præcurro, præcūcurri*; *rēpungo, rēpūpūgi*.

Exc. 2. Compounds which change *a* of the simple verb into *i*, have *e* in the supine; as, *fācio, feci, faſtum*, to make; *perſcīo, perſēcī, perſecūm*, to perfect. But compound verbs ending in *do* and *go*; alſo the compounds of *hābeo*, *plāceō*, *sāpio*, *sālio*, and *ſtātuo*, obſerve the general rule.

2. Verbs which want the preterite, want likewiſe the ſupine.

## SPECIAL RULES.

## First Conjugation.

Verbs of the firſt conjugation have *āvī* in the preterite, and *ātum* in the ſupine; as,

|                                                        |                                                 |                                            |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <i>Creo, creāvī, creatum</i> , to create;              | <i>pāro, pārāvī, pārātum</i> , to prepare.— So, |                                            |
| <i>Abundo</i> , to abound.                             | <i>ſcribo, ſcripſi, ſcriptum</i> , to write.    | <i>Bululo</i> , to boot like an owl.       |
| <i>Accuſo</i> , to charge with a crime.                | <i>Apto</i> , to fit.                           |                                            |
| <i>Adumbro</i> , to ſhade, to delineate.               | <i>Arro</i> , to plough.                        | <i>Cāco</i> , to go to ſchool.             |
| <i>Ædificō</i> , to build.                             | <i>Ascio</i> , to cut or hew.                   | <i>Caco</i> , to blind or dazzle.          |
| <i>Æſtimo</i> , to value.                              | <i>Aſſevēro</i> , to affirm.                    | <i>Caelo</i> , to curve.                   |
| <i>Ambulo</i> , to walk.                               | <i>Auſculto</i> , to liſten.                    | <i>Calceo</i> , to put on ſhoes, to ſhoe.  |
| <i>Amplio</i> , to enlarge, to put off a cauſe.        | <i>Auctōro</i> , to engage for ſervice.         | <i>Calitro</i> , to kick.                  |
| <i>Animo</i> , to encourage.                           | <i>Autūmo</i> , to ſuppoſe.                     | <i>Calco</i> , to tread.                   |
| <i>Anticipo</i> , to anticipate.                       | <i>Averrunco</i> , to avert.                    | <i>Cāſigo</i> , to be dark or dim-ſighted. |
| <i>Antiquo</i> , i. e. antiqua probo, to reject a law. | <i>Bajulo</i> , to carry.                       | <i>Carmino</i> , to card wool.             |
| <i>Appello</i> , to call.                              | <i>Bālo</i> , to bleat.                         | <i>Caſſigo</i> , to chaſtiſe.              |
| <i>Appropinquo</i> , to approach.                      | <i>Bāſio</i> , to kiſs.                         | <i>Caſtro</i> , to cut off.                |
|                                                        | <i>Bello</i> , to war.                          | <i>Cēlebro</i> , to make famous.           |
|                                                        | <i>Beo</i> , to bleſs.                          | <i>Cēlo</i> , to conceal.                  |
|                                                        | <i>Blātēro</i> , to babble.                     | <i>Centurio</i> , & concenturio,           |
|                                                        | <i>Boo</i> , to bellow.                         |                                            |

|                                                                                    |                                                       |                                                                                           |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| túrio, to divide into companies.                                                   | Dedico, to dedicate.                                  | Flo, to blow.                                                                             |
| Certo, to strive, to fight.                                                        | Delecto, to delight.                                  | Focillo, resocillo, to cherish, to warm.                                                  |
| Cesso, to cease.                                                                   | Delibero, to deliberate.                              | Fodico, to pierce or push.                                                                |
| Clamo, to cry.                                                                     | Delineo, to trace, to chalk out.                      | Foro, to bore.                                                                            |
| Claudico, to limp.                                                                 | Deliro, to doat, to rave.                             | Fortuno, to prosper.                                                                      |
| Coagulo, to curdle.                                                                | Defumbo, to weaken.                                   | Fragro, to smell sweetly.                                                                 |
| Cogito, to think.                                                                  | Desidero, to desire.                                  | Fraudo, to defraud.                                                                       |
| Collineo, to aim at, to hit the mark.                                              | Desolo, to lay waste.                                 | Frio, to crumble.                                                                         |
| Colo, to strain.                                                                   | Destino, to design.                                   | Frustro, & -or, to disappoint.                                                            |
| Communico, to impart.                                                              | Dico, to dedicate.                                    | Fuco, to colour, to paint.                                                                |
| Compáro, to compare.                                                               | Discepto, disputo, to debate.                         | Fugo, to put to flight.                                                                   |
| Compensó, to make amends.                                                          | Disipo, to scatter.                                   | Fundo, to found.                                                                          |
| Comprehendo, to put off a cause to the day after to-morrow.                        | Dolo, to bew or cut.                                  | Genero, to begit.                                                                         |
| Compilo, to pile up, to pillage.                                                   | Dono, to present.                                     | Gravo, to weigh down.                                                                     |
| Concilio, to gain, to reconcile.                                                   | Duplico, to double.                                   | Guberno, to govern.                                                                       |
| Concordo, to agree.                                                                | Educo, to bring up.                                   | Gusto, to taste.                                                                          |
| Confuto, resuto, to disprove.                                                      | Ejulo, to wail, to weep.                              | Habito, to dwell.                                                                         |
| Congelo, to freeze.                                                                | Emancipo, to free a son from the power of his father. | Hesito, to doubt.                                                                         |
| Considero, to consider.                                                            | Emendo, to amend.                                     | Halo, to breathe.                                                                         |
| Contamino, to pollute.                                                             | Enucleo, to take out the kernel, to explain.          | Hio, to gape.                                                                             |
| Copulo, to couple.                                                                 | Enodo, to unknot, to explain.                         | Honoro, to honour.                                                                        |
| Corrugo, to wrinkle.                                                               | Equito, to ride.                                      | Jaço, to boast, to brag.                                                                  |
| Corruico, to brandish.                                                             | Erro, to wander.                                      | Jento, to breakfast.                                                                      |
| Crema, to burn.                                                                    | Examino, to examine, to try.                          | Ignoro, to be ignorant.                                                                   |
| Creo, to create.                                                                   | Exantlo, to empty, to endure.                         | Immo, to sacrifice.                                                                       |
| Cribo, to sift.                                                                    | Exaro, to plough up, to scratch, to write fast.       | Impetro, to obtain.                                                                       |
| Crispo, to curl.                                                                   | Exentero, to take out the guts.                       | Impero, to command.                                                                       |
| Crucio, to torment.                                                                | Existimo, to think.                                   | Impetro, to obtain.                                                                       |
| Curo, to care.                                                                     | Exploro, to search.                                   | Inauro, to gild.                                                                          |
| Damno, to condemn.                                                                 | Exnico, to disintangle.                               | Inchoo, to begin.                                                                         |
| Decimo, to take the tenth part, or punish every tenth man.                         | Fabrico, to frame.                                    | Inclino, to incline.                                                                      |
| Declaro, to declare.                                                               | Fascino, to bewitch.                                  | Indago, to trace out.                                                                     |
| Decoilo, to loose a thing from off the neck, to belaud.                            | Fatigo, to weary.                                     | Indico, to show.                                                                          |
| Decoro, to adorn.                                                                  | Fermento, to leaven with dough, to ferment.           | Inquino, to pollute.                                                                      |
| Decurio, to divide soldiers into files or small companies, or citizens into wards. | Festino, to hasten.                                   | Inspico, to sharpen at the end.                                                           |
|                                                                                    | Flagito, to dun.                                      | Instauro, to revere.                                                                      |
|                                                                                    | Flagro, to be on fire.                                | Instigo, to push on.                                                                      |
|                                                                                    |                                                       | Intercalo, to insert one or more days, to make the year agree with the course of the sun. |
|                                                                                    |                                                       | Intro, to enter.                                                                          |
|                                                                                    |                                                       | Invio, to invite.                                                                         |
|                                                                                    |                                                       | Irradio, to shine upon.                                                                   |
|                                                                                    |                                                       | Irrito, to provoke.                                                                       |
|                                                                                    |                                                       | Itero, to do again.                                                                       |
|                                                                                    |                                                       | Jubilo, to shout for joy.                                                                 |
|                                                                                    |                                                       | Jurgo,                                                                                    |

|                                              |                                               |                                                            |
|----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| Jurgo, & -or, to chide or scold.             | Natio, to tell.                               | Præbo, to approve.                                         |
| Jûro, to swear.                              | Nauſco, to be sea-sick.                       | Procrastiño, to delay.                                     |
| Lâbôro, to labour.                           | Nâvigo, to sail.                              | Proſſigo, to rout.                                         |
| Lâcero, to tear.                             | Nâvo, to act vigorously.                      | Pronulgo, to publiſh.                                      |
| Lachrymo, & -or, to weep.                    | Nêgo, to deny.                                | Propago, to propagate.                                     |
| Lavigo, to smooth or polish.                 | Nicto, to wink.                               | Prôpero, to hasten.                                        |
| Lallo, to sing as a nurse to a child.        | No, to swim.                                  | Propino, to drink to.                                      |
| Lanio, to tear.                              | Nodo, to knot, rar. aâ.                       | Protelo, to chase away.                                    |
| Latro, to bark.                              | Nomino, to name.                              | Publico, to publiſh, to confiscate.                        |
| Laxo, to loose.                              | Noto, to mark.                                | Pugno, to fight.                                           |
| Lêgo, to send as an ambassador, to bequeath. | Novo, to renew.                               | Pullulo, to bud.                                           |
| Lêvo, to lighten.                            | Nûdo, to make bare.                           | Purgo, to cleanse.                                         |
| Libo, to taste.                              | Nûmero, to count.                             | Pûto, to think.                                            |
| Libero, to free.                             | Nuncupo, to call.                             | Quadro, to square.                                         |
| Ligo, to bind.                               | Nuntio, to tell.                              | Rêcupero, to recover.                                      |
| Liquo, to melt.                              | Nûto, to nod.                                 | Rêcuſo, to refuse.                                         |
| Litigo, to quarrel.                          | Obſecro, to beseech.                          | Reſtigero, to cool.                                        |
| Lito, to appease by sacrifice.               | Obſero, to lock.                              | Rêgelo, to thraw.                                          |
| Lucubro, to sit up late, to study.           | Obtempéro, to obey.                           | Rêparo, to repair.                                         |
| Lustro, to survey.                           | Obtrunco, to kill.                            | Rêpreſento, to reſemble, to ſhow; to pay money in advance. |
| Luxo, to put out of joint.                   | Obtûro, to step up.                           | Rêſero, to unlock.                                         |
| Maſto, to slay, to sacrifice.                | Occo, to burrow.                              | Rîgo, to water.                                            |
| Mando, to command, to commit.                | Odoro, to perfume.                            | Rôgo, to ask.                                              |
| Mâno, to flow.                               | ônero, to load.                               | Rôto, to wheel about.                                      |
| Mâtûro, to hasten.                           | Opto, to wiſh.                                | Ruſto, & -or, to belch.                                    |
| Mêdico, & -or, to cure.                      | Orbo, to deprive.                             | Rûmiño, to chew the cud.                                   |
| Mêmôro, to tell.                             | Ordino, to put in order.                      | Runco, to weed. [cud.]                                     |
| Meo, to go or pass.                          | Orno, to deck, to adorn.                      | Sacro, to consecrate.                                      |
| Mêridio, & -or, to sleep at noon.            | oro, to beg.                                  | Sâgino, to fatten.                                         |
| Migro, to remove.                            | Oſcito, & -or, to yawn, to be listless.       | Sâlivo, to spit or flaver.                                 |
| Milito, to be a soldier.                     | Pâco, to subdue.                              | Salto, to dance.                                           |
| Ministro, to serve.                          | Palpito, to beat or throb.                    | Sâluto, to salute.                                         |
| Mitigo, to pacify.                           | Palpo, to stroke, to gain by flattery.        | Sâno, to heal.                                             |
| Monitro, to ſwear or tell.                   | Pâento, to perform funeral rites, to revenge. | Sâtio, to satisfy.                                         |
| Mulco, to beat.                              | Pâro, to prepare.                             | Sâtûro, to fill, to glut.                                  |
| Multo, & -elo, to fine.                      | Patro, to perform.                            | Scârifiſco, to lance or open.                              |
| Muſſo, & -ito, to mutter.                    | Pecco, to sin.                                | Screeo, to bark or retch in ſpitting.                      |
| Mûtilo, to maim.                             | Pênetro, to pierce.                           | Sêcundo, to prosper.                                       |
| Mûto, to change.                             | Pêſêvero, to continue conſtant.               | Sêdo, to allay.                                            |
|                                              | Pio, to expiate.                              | Sêparo, to sever.                                          |
|                                              | Piâco, to appease.                            | Servô, to keep.                                            |
|                                              | Plôro, to bewail.                             | Sibilo, to hiss.                                           |
|                                              | Porto, to carry.                              | Sicco, to dry.                                             |
|                                              | Postulo, to demand.                           | Signo, to mark out.                                        |
|                                              | Privo, to deprive.                            |                                                            |

|                                                              |                                  |                                                            |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| Significo, to mean, to give notice.                          | Sulco, to furrow.                | Vasto, to lay waste.                                       |
| Simulo, to pretend.                                          | Supero, to overcome.             | Vellico, to pluck, to twist or pinch; to taunt or rail at. |
| Socio, to match, to join.                                    | Suppedito, to afford.            | Velo, to cover.                                            |
| Solicito, to stir up, to disquiet.                           | Sufurro, to whisper.             | Ventilo, to fan.                                           |
| Somnio, to dream.                                            | Tardo, to stop.                  | Verbéro, to rub.                                           |
| Specto, to behold.                                           | Taxo, to rate, to reprove.       | Vestigo, to search for.                                    |
| Spéro, to hope.                                              | Temero, to desile.               | Vibro, to brandish, to shake.                              |
| Spéro, to breathe.                                           | Tempéro, to temper.              | Viduo, to deprive.                                         |
| Spolio, to rob.                                              | Tenuo, to make small.            | Vigilo, to watch.                                          |
| Spumo, to foam.                                              | Terebro, to bore.                | Vindico, to claim, to revenge.                             |
| Stagno, to stand in water.                                   | Termino, to bound.               | Violo, to violate.                                         |
| Stillo, to drop.                                             | Titillo, to tickle.              | Vitio, to spoil.                                           |
| Stimulo, to goad, to vex.                                    | Titubo, to stagger.              | Vito, to sew.                                              |
| Stipo, to stuff, to guard.                                   | Tolero, to bear.                 | Vitupero, to blame.                                        |
| Strangulo, to strangle.                                      | Trano, to swim over.             | Voco, to call.                                             |
| Strigo, to breathe, or rest, in work, as oxen, or horses do. | Tripudio, to caper.              | Volo, to fly.                                              |
| Sudo, to sweat.                                              | Triumpho, to triumph.            | Voro, to devour.                                           |
| Suffoco, to strangle.                                        | Trucido, to kill.                | Vulgo, to spread abroad.                                   |
| Suffoco, to burn incense.                                    | Turbo, to disturb.               | Vulnero, to wound.                                         |
| Sugillo, to taunt or jeer.                                   | Ululo, to howl.                  |                                                            |
|                                                              | Umbro, to shade.                 |                                                            |
|                                                              | Vacillo, to waver.               |                                                            |
|                                                              | Vaco, to want, to be at leisure. |                                                            |

Exc. 1. *Do, dēdi, dātum, dāre*, to give: so, *venundo*, to sell; *circundo*, to surround; *perundo*, to overthrow; *satisdo*, to give surety; *venundēdi, venundātum, venundāre*, &c. The other compounds of *do* are of the third conjugation.

*Sto, stēti, statum*, to stand. Its compounds have *stēti, stitum*, and oftener *stātum*; as, *præsto, præstiti, præstitum*, or *præstātum*, to excel, to perform. So *ad-, ante-, con-, ex-, in-, ob-, per-, pro-, re-sto*.

Exc. 2. *Lavo, lāvi, lotum, lautum, lavātum*, to wash.

*Poto, pōtavi, pōtum, or pōtātum*, to drink.

*Juvo, jūvi, jūtum*, to help; fut. part. *juvaturus*. So *adjuvo*.

Exc. 3. *Cubo, cūbui, cūbitum*, to ly. So, *ac-, ex-, oc-, re-cubo*. The other compounds insert an *m*, and are of the third conjugation.

*Domo, dōmui, dōmitum*, to subdue. So *ē-, per-domo*.

*Sono, sōnui, sōnitum*, to sound. So *af-, circum-, con-, dis-, ex-, in-, per-, præ-, re-sōno*.

*Tono, tōnui, tōnitum*, to thunder. So *at- circum-, in-, superin-, re-tōno*. Horace has *intōnatus*.

*Veto, vētui, vētūm*, to forbid.



*Crēpo, crēpui, crēpitum*, to make a noise. So *con-*, *in-*, *per-*, *rē-crēpo* : *discrēpo* has rather *discrēpāvi*.

**Exc. 4.** *Fricō, fricui, frictum*, to rub. So *af-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *ef-*, *in-*, *per-*, *re-fricō*. But some of these have also *atum*.

*Sēco, sēcui, sectum*, to cut. So *circum-*, *con-*, *dē-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *rē-*, *sub-sēco*.

*Nēcō, nēcui, or nēcavi, nēcātum*, to kill. So *inter-*, *ē-nēcō* : but these have oftener *edum* ; *enectum, internectum*.

*Mīco, mīcui, —* to glitter, to shine. So *inter-*, *prō-mīco*. *Emīco*, has *ēmīcui, ēmicātum* : *dimīco, dimicāvi, dimicātum*, rarely, *dūmicui*, to fight.

**Exc. 5.** These three want both pret. and sup. *lābo*, to fall or faint ; *nexo*, to bind ; and *plico*, to fold.

*Plico*, compounded with a noun, or with the prepositions *re*, *sub*, has *āvi, ātum* ; as, *duplico, duplicavi, duplicatum*, to double. So *multi-*, *sup-*, *re-plico*.

The other compounds of *plico* have either *āvi* and *ātum*, or *ui* and *itum* ; as *aplico, applicui, applicitum*, or *-āvi, ātum*, to apply. So *in-*, *com-plico*. *Explico*, to unfold, has commonly *explicui, explicitum* ; but when it signifies to explain or interpret, *explicāvi, explicātum*.

### Second Conjugation.

Verbs of the second conjugation have *ui* and *itum* ; as *hābeo, habui, habitum*, to have.—So,

*Adhībeo*, to admit, to use.

*Cohībeo, inhībeo*, to restrain.

*Exhibeo*, to shew, to give.

*Pērhibeo*, to say, to give out.

*Prohibeo*, to hinder.

*Posthabeo*, to value less.

*Præbeo*, to afford.

*Rēdhībeo*, to return or take back a thing that was sold for some fault.

*Dēbeo*, to owe.

*Mēreo*, to deserve : *Com-*, *de-*, *e-*, *per-*, *pro-mēreo*, or *mereor*.

*Mōnēo*, to admonish : *Ad-*, *com-*, *præ-mōneo*.

*Terreo*, to terrify : *Abf-*, *con-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *per-terreo*.

*Dīrībeo*, to count over, to distribute.

Neuter verbs which have *ui* want the supine ; as, *āreo, ārui*, to be dry : So,

*āceo, & -sco*, to be sour.

*Albeo*, to be white.

*Candeo*, to be white.

*Calleo*, to be hard.

*Cāneo*, to be hoary.

*Clāreo*, to be bright.

*āgeo, indīgeo*, to want.

*ēmīneo*, to stand above others.

*Flacceō*, to wither.

*Flōreo*, to flourish.

*Fatēo*, to sink.

*Frēdeo*, to gnash the teeth.

*Frōdeno*, to hear leaves.

*Horreo*, to be rough.

*Hūmeo*, to be wet.

*Imāmīneo*, to hang over.

*Langueo*,

|                                                       |                              |                                |
|-------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Languéo, <i>to languish.</i>                          | Pâteo, <i>to be open.</i>    | Stúdeo, <i>to favour.</i>      |
| Liqueo, licui, <i>to melt,</i><br><i>to be clear.</i> | Púteo, <i>to sink.</i>       | Stúpeo, <i>to be amazed.</i>   |
| Máceo, <i>to be lean.</i>                             | Putreo, <i>to rot.</i>       | Splendeo, <i>to shine</i>      |
| Mádeo, <i>to be wet.</i>                              | Ranceo, <i>to be mouldy.</i> | Têpeo, <i>to be warm.</i>      |
| Marceo, <i>to wither.</i>                             | Rígeo, <i>to be stiff.</i>   | Torpeo, <i>to be benumbed.</i> |
| Múceo, <i>to be mouldy.</i>                           | Rúbeo, <i>to be red.</i>     | Túmeo, <i>to swell.</i>        |
| Níteo, <i>to shine.</i>                               | Squáleo, <i>to be foul.</i>  | Vígeo, <i>to be strong</i>     |
| Palleo, <i>to be pale.</i>                            | Sordeo, <i>to be nasty.</i>  | Víreo, <i>to be green.</i>     |

But the neuter verbs which follow, together with their compounds, have the supine, and are regularly conjugated: *Váleo*, to be in health; and *equi-*, *con-*, *e-*, *in-*, *præ-váleo*: *Pláceo*, to please; and *com-*, *per-pláceo*: *displíceo*, to displease: *Cáreo*, to want; *Páreo*, to appear, to obey; and *ap-*, *com-páreo*: *Jáceo*, to lie; and *ad-*, *circum-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *præ-*, *sub-*, *super-jáceo*: *Cáleo*, to be warm; and *con-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *re-cáleo*: *Nóceo*, to hurt; *Dóleo*, to be grieved; and *con-*, *de-*, *in-*, *per-dóleo*: *Coaleo*, to grow together: *Líceo*, which in the active signifies, to be lawful, to be valued; and, what is singular, in the passive, to bid a price: *Láteo*, to lurk, the compounds of which want the supine, *delíteo*, *inter-*, *sub-láteo*: as likewise do those of *Táceo*, *-cui*, *-cítum*, to be silent, *con-*, *ob-*, *rê-tíceo*.

These three active verbs likewise want the supine: *Tímeo*, *-ui*, to fear; *Síleo*, *-ui*, to conceal; *Arcéo*, *-cui*, to drive away: But the compounds of *arceo* have the supine; as, *exerceo*, *exercui*, *exercítum*, to exercise. So *co-erceo*, to restrain.

Exc. 1. The following verbs in *BEO* and *CEO*:

*Júbeo*, *jussi*, *jussum*, to order. So *fidê-júbeo*, to bail, or be surety for.

*Sorbeo*, *sorbui*, *sorptum*, to sup. So *ab-sorbeo*, to suck in; *ex-*, *rê-sorbeo*. We also find *absorpsi*, *exsorpsi*: *Exsorptum*, *rê-sorptum*, are not in use.

*Dóceo*, *dócui*, *doctum*, to teach. So *ad-*, *con-*, *de-*, *e-*, *per-*, *sub-dóceo*.

*Misceo*, *miscui*, *mixtum* or *mixtum*, to mix. So *ad-*, *com-*, *im-*, *inter-*, *per-*, *rê-misceo*.

*Mulceo*, *mulsi*, *mulsum*, to stroak, to soothe. So *ad-*, *circum-*, *com-*, *de-*, *per-*, *rê-mulceo*.

*Lúceo*, *luxi*, — to shine. So *al-*, *circum-*, *col-*, *di-*, *ê-*, *il-*, *inter-*, *per-*, or *pel-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *sub-*, *trans-lúceo*.

Exc. 2. The following verbs in *DEO* :

*Prandeo, prandi, pransum*, to dine.

*Video, vidi, vîsum*, to see. So *in-, per-, præ-, pro-, rē-video*.

*Sēdeo, sēdi, sessum*, to sit. So *af-, con-, de-, dis-, in-, ob-, per-, pos-, præ-, rē-, sub-sēdeo*: *Circumsēdeo*, or *circumsēdeo*, *supersēdeo*. But *dē-, dis-, per-, præ-, rē-, sub-fideo*, seem to want the supine.

*Strīdeo, strīdi, —* to make a noise.

*Pendeo, pēpendi, pensum*, to hang. So *de-, im-, pro-, super-pendeo*.

*Mordeo, mōmordi, morsum*, to bite. So *ad-, com-, de-, ob-, præ-, re-mordeo*.

*Spondeo, spōpondi, sponsum*, to promise. So *de-, re-spondeo*.

*Tondeo, tōtondi, tonsum*, to clip. So *at-, circum-, de-tondeo*.

But the compounds of these verbs do not double the first syllable; thus, *dependi, remordi, respondi, attondi, &c.*

*Rīdeo, rīsi, risum*, to laugh. So *ar-, de-, ir-, sub-rīdeo*.

*Suādeo, suāsi, suāsum*, to advise. So *dis-, per-suādeo*.

*Ardeo, arsi, arsum*, to burn. So *ex-, in-, ob-ardeo*.

Exc. 3. The following verbs in *GEO* :

*Augeo, auxi, auctum*, to increase. So *ad-, ex-augeo*.

*Lūgeo, luxi, —* to mourn. So *e-, pro-, sub-lugeo*.

*Frīgeo, frixi, —* to be cold. So *per-, re-frīgeo*.

*Tergeo, terxi, tersum*, to wipe. So *abs-, circum-, de-, ex-, per-tergeo*.

*Mulgeo, mulsi, mulsū, or mulctum*, to milk. So *e-, im-mulgeo*.

*Indulgeo, indulsi, indultum*, to grant, to indulge.

*Urgeo, urxi, —* to press. So *ad-, ex-, in-, per-, sub-, super-urgeo*.

*Fulgeo, fulsi, —* to shine. So *af-, circum-, con-, ef-, inter-, præ-, re-, super-fulgeo*.

*Turgeo, turxi, —* to swell. *Algeo, alsi, —* to be cold.

Exc. 4. The following verbs in *IEO* and *LEO* :

*Vico, viēvi, viētum*, to bind with twigs, to hoop a vessel.

*Cico, (cīvi) cītum*, to stir up, to rouse. So *ac-, con-, ex-, in-, per-cico*. *Cīvi* comes from *cio* of the fourth conjugation.

*Fleo, flēvi, flētum*, to weep. So *af-, de-fleo*.

*Compleo, complēvi, complētum*, to fill. So the other compounds of *pleo*; *de-, ex-, im-, adim-, op-, re-, sup-pleo*.

*Dēleo,*

*Dēleo, dēlēvi, dēlētum*, to destroy, to blot out.

*ōleo*, to smell, has *ōlui, ōlitum*. So likewise its compounds which have a similar signification; *ob-, per-, red-, sub-ōleo*. But such of the compounds as have a different signification make *ēvi* and *ētum*; thus *exōleo, exōlēvi, exōlētum*, to fade. So *inōleo, -ēvi, -ētum*, or *-itum*, to grow into use; *obōleo, -ēvi, -ētum*, to grow out of use. *Abōleo*, to abolish, has *abōlēvi, abōlitum*; and *adōleo*, to grow up, to burn, *adōlēvi, adultum*.

Exc. 5. Several verbs in *NEO, QUEO, REO*, and *SEO*.

*Māneo, mansi, mansum*, to stay. So *per-, rē-māneo*.

*Neo, nēvi, nētum*, to spin. So *per-neo*.

*Tēneo, tēnui, tentum*, to hold. So *con-, de-, dis-, ob-, re-, sus-tineo*. But *attineo, pertineo*, are not used in the supine; and seldom *abstineo*.

*Torqueo, torfi, tortum*, to throw, to whirl, to twist. Thus, *con-, de-, dis-, ex-, in-, ob-, re-torqueo*.

*Hæreo, hæsi, hæsum*, to stick. Thus, *ad-, con-, in-, ob-, sub-hæreo*.

*Torreo, torrui, tostum*, to roast. So *extorreo*.

*Censeo, censui, censum*, to judge. So *ac-, per-, re-censeo*, to review; *succenseo*, to be angry.

Exc. 6. Verbs in *VEO* have *vi, tum*; as, *mōveo, mōvi, mōtum*, to move; *Fōveo, fōvi, fōtum*, to cherish. So *con-, rē-foveo*. So *vōveo*, to vow, or wish, and *dēvōveo*.

*Fāveo*, to favour; has *fāvi, fautum*; and *cāveo*, to be-ware of; *cāvi, cautum*. So *præ-cāveo*.

Neuter verbs in *veo* want the supine; as, *pāveo, pāvi*, to be afraid.

*Ferveo*, to boil, to be hot, makes *ferbui*. So *de-, ef-, in-, per-, rē-ferveo*.

*Conniveo*, to wink, has *connīvi* and *connixi*.

Exc. 7. The following verbs want both preterite and supine: *Lacteo*, to suck milk, *liveo*, to be black and blue; *scāteo*, to abound; *renīdeo*, to shine; *mæreo*, to be sorrowful; *āveo*, to desire; *polleo*, to be able; *flāveo*, to be yellow; *denseo*, to grow thick; *glabreo*, to be smooth or bare. To these add *calveo*, to be bald; *cēveo*, to wag the tail, as dogs do when they fawn on one; *hēbeo*, to be dull; *ūveo*, to be moist; and some others.

*Third Conjugation.*

Verbs of the third conjugation form their preterite and supine variously, according to the termination of the present.

10.

1. *Facio, feci, factum*, to do, to make. So the compounds which retain *a*: *lucrī-, magnī-, ārē-, cālē-, mādē-, tēpē- bēnē-, mālē-. sātis-facio, &c.* But those which change *a* into *i*, have *eum*; as, *afficio, affeci, affectum*. So, *con- de- ef- in- inter- of- per-, pra-, pro-, re-, sufficio*. Note; *FACIO*, compounded with a noun, verb, or adverb, retains *a*; but when compounded with a preposition, it changes *a* into *i*.

Some compounds of *facio* are of the first conjugation; as, *Amplifico, sacrifico, terrifico, magnifico; gratificor*, to gratify, or do a good turn, to give up; *ludificor*, to mock.

*Facio, jeci, jactum*, to throw. So *ab-, ad-, circum-, con-, de-, dis-, e-, in-, inter-, ob-, pro-, re-, sub-, super-, superin-, tra-jicio*; in the supine *-eum*.

The compounds of *spicio* and *lacio*, which themselves are not used, have *exi*, and *eum*; as, *aspicio, aspexi, aspectum*, to behold. So *circum-, con-, de-, dis-, in-, intro-, per-, pro-, re-, retro-, suspicio*.

*Allicio, allexi, allectum*, to allure. So *il-, pel-licio*; but *elicio*, to draw out, has *eliciui, elicium*.

2. *Fodio, fodi, fossum*, to dig, to delve. So *ad-, circum-, con- ef-, in-, inter-, per-, pra-, re-, sus-, trans-fodio*.

*Fugio, fugi, fugitum*, to fly. So *au-, (for ab-), con-, de-, dis-, ef-, per-, pro-, re-, sus-, subter-, trans-fugio*.

3. *Capio, cepi, captum*, to take. So *ac-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, inter-, oc-, per-, pra-, re-, sus-cipio*, (in the supine *-eptum*;) and *ante-capio*.

*Rapio, rapui, raptum*, to pull or snatch. So *ab-, ar-, cor-, de-, di-, e-, pra-, pro-, sur-ripio, -ripui, -reptum*.

*Sapio, sapui, —* to favour, to be wise. So *consipio*, to be well in one's wits; *desipio*, to be foolish; *resipio*, to come to one's wits.

*Cupio, cupivi, cupitum*, to desire. So *con-, dis-, per-cupio*.

4. *Pario, peperī, paritum*, or *partum*, to bring forth a child, to get. Its compounds are of the fourth conjugation.

*Quatio,*



*Quætio quæssi quæssum*, to shake : but *quæssi* is hardly used. Its compounds have *cussi*, *cussum*, as, *concûtio*, *concussi concussum*, So *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *per-*, *re-*, *reper-*, *suc-cûtio*.

*UO* has *ui*, *ûtum* ; as,

*Arguo*, *argui*, *argûtum*, to shew, to prove, or argue, to reprove. So *co-*, *reul-arguo*, to confute.—So,

*Acuo*, *Exâcuo*, to sharpen.

*Batuo*, *vel battuo*, to beat, to fight,  
to fence with foils.

*Induo*, to put on cloaths.

*Exuo*, to put off cloaths.

*Imbuo*, to wet or imbrue, to season  
or instruct.

*Minuo*, to lessen : *Com-*, *de-*, *di-*,  
*im-minuo*.

*Spuo*, to spit : *Con-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *in-spuo*.

*Stâtuo*, to set or place, to ordain :

*Con-*, *de-*, *in-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *re-*,  
*sub-stituo*.

*Sternuo*, to sneeze.

*Suo*, to sew or stitch, to tack together : *Al-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *dis-*,  
*in-*, *præ*, *rē*, *suo*.

*Tribuo*, to give, to divide : *At-*,  
*coh-*, *dis-*, *re-tribuo*.

Exc. 1. *Flo*, *fluxi*, *fluxum*, to flow. So *af-*, *circum-*,  
*con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ef-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *per-*, *præter-*, *pro-*, *re-*,  
*jâpter-*, *super-*, *trans-flo*.

*Struo*, *struxi*, *strûctum*, to put in order, to build. So  
*ad-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *præ-*, *sub-*, *super-*  
*struo*.

Exc. 2. *Luo*, *lui*, *lûtum*, to pay, to wash away, to  
suffer punishment. Its compounds have *ûtum* ; as, *abluo*,  
*-ui*, *-ûtum*, to wash away, to purify. So *al-*, *circum-*,  
*col-*, *de-*, *di-*, *e-*, *inter-*, *per-*, *pol-*, *pro-*, *sub-luo*.

*Ruo*, *ru*, *ruîtum*, to rush, to fall. Its compounds have  
*ûtum* ; as *diruo*, *dirui*, *dirûtum*, to overthrow. So *ē-*,  
*ob-*, *prō-*, *sub-ruo*. *Corruo*, and *irruo*, want the supine ;  
as likewise do *mêtuo*, to fear ; *pluo*, to rain ; *ingruo*, to af-  
fâil ; *congruo*, to agree ; *respuo*, to reject, to slight ; *annuo*,  
to assent ; and the other compounds of the obsolete verb  
*nuo* ; *abnuo*, to refuse ; *innuo*, to nod or beckon with the  
head ; *rēnuo*, to deny : all which have *ui* in the preterite.

*BO* has *bi*, *bîtum* ; as,

*Bibo*, *bibi*, *libitum*, to drink, So *ad-*, *com-*, *e-*, *im-*,  
*per-*, *præ-bibo*.

Exc. 1. *Scrîbo*, *scripsi*, *scriptum*, to write. So *ad-*,  
*circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *per-*, *post-*, *præ-*, *pro-*,  
*re-*, *sub-*, *super-*, *supra-*, *trans-scrîbo*.

*Nūbo, nupsī, nuptum*, to veil, to be married. So *de-, e-, in-, ob-nubo*. Instead of *nupsī*, we often find *nupta sum*.

Exc. 2. The compounds of *cūbo* in this conjugation insert an *m* before the last syllable; as, *accumbo, accūbui, accūbitum* to recline at table. So *con-, de-, dis-, in-, oc-, pro- re-, suc-, superin-cumbo, -cūbui, -cūbitum*.

These two verbs want the supine; *scābo, scābi*, to scratch; *lambo, lambi*, to lick. So *ad-, circum-, dē-, prae-lambo*.

*Glūbo and deglūbo*, to strip, to flay, want both pret. & sup. CO.

1. *Dīco, dixi, dictum*, to say. So *ab-, ad-, con-, contra-, e-, in-, inter-, prae-, pro-dīco*.

*Dūco duxi, ductum*, to lead. So *ab-, ad-, circum-, con-, de-, di-, e-, in-, intro-, ob-, per-, prae-, pro-, re-, se-, sub- tra-, or trans-dūco*.

2. *Vīco, vīci, victum*, to overcome. So *con-, de-, e-, per-, rē-vīco*.

*Parco, pēperci, parsum*, seldom *parsi, parsitum*, to spare. So *comparco*, or *comperco*, which is seldom used.

*Ico, īci, icum*, to strike.

SCO has *vi, tum*; as,

*Nosco, nōvi, nōtum*, to know; fut. part, *nosciturus*. So  
*Dignosco, to distinguish*; *ignosco, Quiesco, -ēvi, -ētum, to rest*: *Ac-,*  
*to pardon*; also *inter-, per-, prae-* con-, inter-, *rē-quiesco*.  
*nosco.* *Scisco, -īvi, -itum, to ordain*; *ad-,*  
*Cresco, -ēvi, -ētum, to grow*: *Con-* or *ascisco, to take to, to affiliate*;  
*de-, ex-, re-, and without the su-* concisco, *to vote, to commit*; also  
*pine, ac, in-, per-, pro-, suc-,* *prae-, re-cisco; descisco, to revolt.*  
*super-cresco.* *Suesco, to be accustomed*: *As-, con-,*  
*de-, in-suesco, -ēvi, -ētum.*

Exc. 1. *Agnosco, agnōvi, agnītum*, to own; *cognosco, cognōvi, cognītum*, to know. So *rēcognosco*, to review.

*Pasco, pāvi, pastum*, to feed. So *com-, dē-pasco*.

Exc. 2. The following verbs want the supine.

*Disco, didīci*, to learn. So *ad-, con-, de-, e-, per-, rē-disco, didīci*.

*Posco, pōposci*, to demand. So *ap-, dē-, ex-, rē-posco*.

*Compesco, compescei*, to stop to restrain. So *dispesco, dispescui*, to separate.

Exc. 3. *Glisco*, to grow; *fatisco*, to be weary; and likewise

likewise inceptive verbs, want both preterite and supine ; as *aresco*, to become dry. But these verbs borrow the preterite and supine from their primitives ; as *ardescō*, to grow hot, *arſi*, *arſum*, from *ardeo*.

DO has *di*, *ſum* ; as,

*Scando*, *ſcandi*, *ſcanſum*, to climb ; *ēdo*, *ēdi*, *ēſum*, to eat.  
So,

|                                                     |                                              |                                                   |
|-----------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Ascendo</i> , to mount.                          | <i>Cūdo</i> , to forge, to stamp             | <i>Mando</i> , to chew: <i>Præ-</i>               |
| <i>Descendo</i> , to go down :                      | or coin: <i>Ex</i> , <i>in</i> ,             | <i>re-mando</i> .                                 |
| <i>Con</i> -, <i>e</i> -, <i>ex</i> -, <i>in</i> -, | <i>per</i> -, <i>pro</i> -, <i>re-cūdo</i> . | <i>Prehendo</i> , to take bold                    |
| <i>tranſcendo</i> .                                 | <i>Defendo</i> , to defend.                  | <i>of</i> : <i>Ap</i> -, <i>com</i> -, <i>de-</i> |
| <i>Accendo</i> , to kindle :                        | <i>Offendo</i> , to strike a-                | <i>prehendo</i> .                                 |
| <i>In</i> -, <i>ſuc-cendo</i> .                     | <i>gainſt</i> , to offend, to find.          |                                                   |

Exc. 1. *Divido*, *diviſi*, *diviſum*, to divide.

*Rādo*, *rāſi*, *rāſum*, to shave. So *ab*-, *circum*-, *cor*-, *de*-, *e*-, *inter*-, *præ*-, *ſub-rādo*.

*Claudo*, *clauſi*, *clauſum*, to cloſe. So *circum*-, *con*-, *diſ*-, *ex*-, *in*-, *inter*-, *præ*-, *re*-, *ſe-clūdo*.

*Plaudo*, *plauſi*, *plauſum*, to clap hands for joy. So *ap*-, *circum-plaudo* : alſo *com*-, *diſ*-, *ex*-, *ſup-plōdo*, *-plōſi*, *-plōſum*.

*Lūdo*, *lūſi*, *lūſum*, to play. So *ab*-, *al*-, *col*-, *de*-, *e*-, *il*-, *inter*-, *ob*-, *præ*-, *pro*-, *re-lūdo*.

*Trūdo*, *trūſi*, *trūſum*, to thruſt. So *abſ*-, *con*-, *de*-, *ex*-, *in*-, *ob*-, *pro*-, *re-trūdo*.

*Lādo*, *laſi*, *laſum*, to hurt. So *al*-, *col*-, *e*-, *il-lido*, *-liſi*, *-liſum*.

*Rōdo*, *rōſi*, *rōſum*, to gnaw. So *ab*-, *ar*-, *circum*-, *cor*-, *de*-, *e*-, *ob*-, *per*-, *præ-rodo*.

*Vādo*, to go, wants both preterite and ſupine : but its compounds have *ſi*, *ſum* ; as *invādo*, *invāſi*, *invāſum*, to invade, or fall upon. So *circum*-, *ē*-, *ſuper-vādo*.

*Cēdo*, *ceſſi*, *ceſſum*, to yield. So *abſ*-, *ac*-, *antiē*-, *con*-, *dē*-, *diſ*-, *ex*-, *in*-, *inter*-, *præ*-, *pro*-, *rē*-, *retro*-, *ſe*-, *ſuc-cēdo*.

Exc. 2. *Pando*, *pandi*, *paſſum*, and ſometimes *panſum*, to open, to ſpread. So *diſ*-, *ex*-, *op*-, *præ*-, *rē-pando*.

*Cōmēdo*, *comēdi*, *comēſum*, or *comeſum*, to eat. But *ēdo* itſelf and the reſt of its compounds have always *ēſum* ; as, *ad*-, *amb*-, *ex*-, *per*-, *ſub*-, *ſuper-ēdo*, *-ēdi*, *-ēſum*.

*Fundo*, *fūdi*, *fūſum*, to pour forth. So *aſ*-, *circum*-, *con*-, *de*-, *diſ*-, *ef*-, *in*-, *inter*-, *of*-, *per*-, *pro*-, *re*-, *ſuſ*-, *ſuper*-, *ſuperin*-, *tranſ-fundo*.

*Scindo*,

*Scindo, scīdi, scissum*, to cut. So *af-, circum-, con-, ex-, inter-, per-, præ-, pro-, re-, tran-scindo*.

*Findo, fīdi, fissum*, to cleave. So *con-, dis-, in-findo*.

Exc. 3. *Tundo, tūtūdi, tunsum*, and sometimes *tūsum*, to beat. The compounds have *tūdi, tūsum*; as, *contundo, contūdi, contūsum*, to bruise. So *ex-, ob-, per-, re-tundo*.

*Cado, cēcīdi, cāsum*, to fall. The compounds want the supine; as, *ac-, con-, de-, ex-, inter-, pro-, suc-cido, -cidi, —*: except, *incido, incīdi, incūsum*, to fall in; *recido, recīdi, recūsum*, to fall back; and *occido, occīdi, oc-cūsum*, to fall down.

*Cædo, cēcīdi, cæsum*, to cut, to kill. The compounds change *æ* into *i* long; as, *accido, accīdi, accūsum*, to cut about. So *ab-, con-, circum-, de-, ex-, in-, inter-, oc-, per-, præ-, rē-, suc-cido*.

*Tendo, tētēdi, tensum*, or *tentum*, to stretch out. So *at-, con-, de-, dis-, ex-, ob-, præ-, pro-tendo, -tēdi, -tensum* or *-tentum*. But the compounds have rather *tentum*, except *of-tendo*, to shew; which has commonly *of-tensum*.

*Pædo, pēpēdi, peditum*, to break wind backwards. So *op-pædo*.

*Pendo, pēpendi, pensum*, to weigh. So *ap-, de-, dis-, ex-, im-, per-, re-, sus-pendo, -pendi, -pensum*.

Exc. 4. The compounds of *do* have *dīdi*, and *dītum*; as, *abdo, abdīdi, abdītum*, to hide. So *ad-, con-, de-, dī-, ē-, ob-, per-, pro-, red-, sub-, trado*: also *decon-, recon-do*: and *coad-, supperad-do*; and *deper-, disper-do*. To these add *crædo, crēdīdi, crēdītum*, to believe; *vendo, vendīdi, vendītum*, to sell. *Abscundo*, to hide, has *abscōdi, abscōdītum*, rarely *abscōdīdi*.

Exc. 4. These three want the supine: *strido, strīdi*, to creak; *rūdo, rūdi*, to bray like an ass; and *sīdo, sīdi*, to sink down. The compounds of *sīdo* borrow the preterite and supine from *sēdeo*; as, *consīdo, consēdi, confessum*, to sit down. So *af-, circum-, de-, in-, ob-, per-, rē-, sub-sīdo*.

Note, Several compounds of verbs in *do* and *deo*, in some respects resemble one another, and therefore should be carefully distinguished; as, *concīdo, concēdo, concīdo*; *consīdo* and *consideo*; *conscīdo, conscendo*, &c.

GO, GUO has *xi*, *ſum*; *as*,

*Rēgo*, *rexī*, *reſum*, to rule, to govern; *dirigo*, *-exī*, *-eſum*, to direct; *arrigo*, & *erigo*, *-exī*, *-eſum*, to raiſe up: *corrigo*, to correct; *porrigo*, to ſtretch out; *ſubrigo*, to raiſe up. So

*Cingo*, *cinxī*, *cinctum*, to gird, to ſurround: *Ac-*, *diſ-*, *circum-*, *in-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *ſuc-* *cingo*.

*Fligo*, to daſh or beat upon: *At-*, *con-*, *in-* *fligo*: alſo *proſſigo*, to rout, of the firſt conj.

*Jungo*, to join; *abjungo*, to ſeparate: *Ad-*, *con-*, *de-*, *diſ-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *ſe-*, *ſub* *jungo*.

*Lingo*, to lick: *de-*, *e-* *lingo*; & *pollingo*, to anoint a dead body.

*Mungo*, to wipe or clean the noſe.

*emungo*, to wipe, to cheat.

*Plango*, to beat, to lament.

*Stingo*, or *Stinguo*, to daſh out, to extinguiſh: *Di-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *præ-*, *re-* *stinguo*.

*Tēgo*, to cover: *Circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *ſub-*, *ſuper-* *tēgo*.

*Tingo*, or *Tinguo*, to dip or dye: *Con-*, *in-* *tingo*.

*Ungo*, or *Unguo*, to anoint: *ex-*, *in-*, *per-*, *ſuper-* *ungo*.

Exc. 1. *Surgo*, to riſe, has *furrexi*, *furreſum*. So *aſ-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *re-* *ſurgo*.

*Pergo*, *perrexi*, *perreſum*, to go forward.

*Stringo*, *ſtrinxī*, *ſtriſum*, to bind, to ſtrain, to lop. So *ad-*, *con-*, *de-*, *diſ-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *ſub-* *ſtringo*.

*Fingo*, *finxi*, *fiſum*, to feign. So *aſ-*, *con-*, *ef-*, *re-* *ſingo*.

*Pingo*, *pinxi*, *piſum*, to paint. So *ap-*, *de-* *pingo*.

Exc. 2. *Frango*, *frēgi*, *fraſum*, to break. So *con-*, *de-*, *diſ-*, *ef-*, *in-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *ſuſ-* *fringo*, *-frēgi*, *-fraſum*.

*Āgo*, *ēgi*, *aſum*, to do, to drive. So *ab-*, *ad-*, *ex-*, *red-*, *ſub-*, *trans-*, *transad-* *āgo*; and *circum-*, *per-* *āgo*: *cōgo*, for *coāgo*, *coēgi*, *coactum*, to bring together, to force.

Theſe three compounds of *āgo* want the ſupine: *ſātāgo*, *ſatēgi*, to be buſy about a thing; *prōdāgo*, *prodēgi*, to la- viſh, or ſpend riotouſly; *dāgo*, for *deāgo*; *dēgi*, to live or dwell. *Ambigo*, to doubt, to diſpute, alſo wants the pre- terite.

*Lēgo*, *lēgi*, *leſum*, to gather, to read. So *al-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *ſub-* *lēgo*: alſo *col-*, *de-*, *e-*, *recol-*, *ſe-* *lēgo*, which change *e* into *i*.

*Diligo*, to love, has *dilexi*, *dileſum*. So *negligo*, to neglect; and *intelligo*, to underſtand; but, *negligo* has ſometimes *neglēgi*, Sall. Jug. 40.

Exc. 3. *Tango*, *tēgi*, *taſum*, to touch. So *at-*, *con-*, *ob-*, *per-* *tingo*; thus, *attingo*, *attingi*, *attaſum*, &c.

*Pungo*,



*Pungo, pūpūgi, punctum*, to prick or sting. The compounds have *punxi*; as, *compungo, compunxi, compunctum*. So *dis-*, *ex-*, *inter-pungo*: but *repungo* has *repunxi*, or *repūpūgi*.

*Pango, panxi, pactum*, to fix, to drive in, to compose: or *pēpīgi*, which comes from the obsolete verb *pāgo*, to bargain, for which we use *paciscor*. The compounds of *pango*, have *pēgi*; as, *compingo, compēgi, compactum*, to put together. So *im-*, *ob-*, *sup-pingo*.

Exc. 4. *Spargo, sparsi, sparsum*, to spread. So *ad-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *di-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *re-spargo*.

*Mergo, mērsi, mersum*, to dip, or plunge. So *de-*, *e-*, *im-*, *sub-mergo*.

*Tergo, tersi, tersum*, to wipe, or clean. So *abs-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *per-tergo*.

*Figō, fixi, fixum*, to fix or fasten. So *af-*, *con-*, *de-*, *in-*, *of-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *suf-*, *trans-figo*.

*Frigo, frixi, frixum, or frictum*, to fry.

Exc. 5. These three want the supine: *clango, clanxi*, to sound a trumpet; *ningo*, or *ninguo, ninxi*, to snore; *ango, anxi*, to vex. *Vergo*, to incline or lie towards, wants both preterite and supine. So *e-*, *de-*, *in-vergo*.

### HO, JO.

1. *Trāho, traxi, tractum*, to draw. So *abs-*, *at-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *sub-trāho*.

*Veho, vexi, vectum*, to carry. So *a-*, *ad-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *di-*, *e-*, *in-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *prater-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *sub-*, *super-*, *trans-vēho*.

2. *Mejo, or mingo, minxi, mictum*, to make water. So *immejo*.

### LO.

1. *Cōlo, cōlui, cultum*, to adorn, to inhabit, to honour, to till. So *ac-*, *circum-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *re-cōlo*: and likewise *occūlo, occului, occultum*, to hide.

*Consūlo, consului, consultum*, to advise or consult.

*Alō, alui, alitum*, or contracted *altum*, to nourish.

*Mōlo, molui, molitum*, to grind. So *com-*, *e-*, *per-mōlo*. The compounds of *cello*, which itself is not in use, want the supine; as, *ante-*, *ex-*, *præ-cello, -cellui*, to excel. *Per-cello*, to strike, to astonish, has *percūli, percusum*

*Pello,*

*Pello*, *pēpūli*, *pulsum*, to thrust. So *ap-*, *af-*, *com-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *im-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *re-pello*; *appūli*, *appulsum*, &c.

*Fallo*, *fēfelli*, *falsum*, to deceive. But *rēfello*, *refelli*, to confute, wants the supine.

3. *Vello*, *velli*, or *vulsi*, *vulsum*, to pull or pinch. So *a-*, *con-*, *e-*, *inter-*, *præ*, *re-vello*. But *de-*, *di-*, *per-vello*, have rather *velli*.

*Sallo*, *falli*, *falsum*, to falt. *Psallo*, *psalli*, — to play on a musical instrument, wants the supine.

*Tollo*, to lift up, to take away, in a manner peculiar to itself, makes *fussuli*, and *sublatum*; *Extollo*, *extūli*, *elātum*; but *attollo*, to take up, has neither preterite nor supine.

*MO* has *ui*, *itum*; as,

*Gēmo*, *gēmui*, *gemitum*, to groan. So *ad-*, or *ag-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *in-*, *re-gēmo*.

*Frēmo*, *fremui*, *fremtum*, to rage or roar, to make a great noise. So *af-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *in-*, *per-frēmo*.

*Vōmo*, *ēvōmo*, *-ui*, *-itum*, to vomit or spew, to cast up.

Exc. 1. *Dēmo*, *dēmpsī*, *demptum*, to take away.

*Prōmo*, *prōmpsī*, *promptum*, to bring out. So *de-*, *ex-prōmo*.

*Sūmo*, *sūmpsī*, *sumptum*, to take. So *ab-*, *af-*, *con-*, *de-*, *in-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *tran-sūmo*.

*Cōmo*, *compī*, *comptum*, to deck or dress.

These verbs are also used without the *p*; as *dēmsī*, *dēmtum*; *sūmsī*, *sūmtum*, &c.

Exc. 2. *Ēmo*, *ēmi*, *emptum*, or *emtum* to buy. So *ad-*, *dir-*, *ex-*, *inter-*, *per-*, *red-īmo* and *co-ēmo*, *-emi*, *-emptum* or *-emtum*.

*Prāmo*, *prēssī*, *pressum*, to press. So *ap-*, *com-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *im-*, *op-*, *per-*, *re-*, *sup-prāmo*.

*Trēmo*, *trēmui*, to tremble, to quake for fear, wants the supine. So *at-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *in-trēmo*.

*NO*.

1. *Pōno*, *pōsui*, *pōsitum*, to put or place. So *ap-*, *ante-*, *circum-*, *com-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *im-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *post-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *se-*, *sup-*, *super-*, *superim-*, *trans-pōno*.

*Gigno*, *gēnui*, *gēnitum*, to beget. So *con-*, *e-*, *in-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *re-gigno*.

*Cāno*, *cēcīni*, *cantum*, to sing. But the compounds have *cinui* and *cēntum*; as, *accīno*, *accīnui*, *accentum*, to sing  
in

in concert. So *con-*, *in-*, *præ-*, *suc-cino*; *oc-cino*, and *oc-cāno*: *re-cino* and *re-cāno*. But *occanui*, *recanui*, are not in use.

*Temno*, to despise, wants both preterite and supine: but its compound *Contemno*, to despise, to scorn, has *contempsī*, *contemptum*; or, without the *p*, *contemsi*, *contemtum*.

2. *Sperno*, *sprēvi*, *sprētum*, to disdain or slight. So *desperno*.

*Sterno*, *strāvi*, *strātum*, to lay flat, to strow. So *ad-*, *con-*, *in-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *sub-sterno*.

*Sino*, *sīvi*, or *sii*, *situm*, to permit. So *desino*, *desīvi*, oftener *desii*, *desitum*, to leave off.

*Lino*, *līvi*, or *lēvi*, *litum*, to anoint or daub. So *al-*, *circum-*, *col-*, *de-*, *il-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *sub-*, *subter-*, *super-*, *superil-lino*.

*Cerno*, *crēvi*, seldom *crētum*, to see, to decree, to enter upon an inheritance. So *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *se-cerno*.

### PO, QUO.

Verbs in *po* have *psi* and *ptum*; as, *Carpo*, *carpsi*, *carptum*, to pluck or pull, to crop, to blame. — So *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *præ-cerpo*, *-cerpsi*, *-cerptum*.

*Clēpo*, *-psi*, *-ptum*, to steal.

*Scalpo*, to scratch or engrave. So

*Rēpo*, to creep: *Ad-*, v. *ar-*, *cor-*,

*circum-*, *ex-scalpo*.

*de-*, *di-*, *e-*, *ir*, *intro-*, *ob-*,

*Sculpo*, to grave or carve. So *ex-*,

*per-*, *pro-*, *sub-rēpo*, *-psi*,

*in-sculpo*.

*-ptum*.

*Serpo*, to creep as a serpent.

Exc. 1. *Strēpo*, *strēpui*, *strēpitum*, to make a noise. So *ad-*, *circum-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *per-strepo*.

Exc. 2. *Rumpo*, *rūpi*, *ruptum*, to break. — So *ab-*, *cor-*, *di-*, *e-*, *inter-*, *intro-*, *ir-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *pro-rumpo*.

There are only two simple verbs ending in *QUO*, viz.

*Cōquo*, *coxi*, *coctum*, to boil. So *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *per-*, *re-cōquo*.

*Linguo*, *liqui*, —, to leave. The compounds have *litum*; as, *relinquo*, *reliqui*, *relictum*, to forsake. So *de-*, and *dēre-linguo*.

### RO.

1. *Quero* makes *quasīvi*, *quasitum*, to seek. So *ac-*, *an-*, *con-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *per-*, *re-qui-ro*, *-quisīvi*, *-quissitum*.

*Tēro*, *trīvi*, *tritum*, to wear, to bruise. So *at-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *sub-tēro*.

*Verro*, *verri*, *versum*, to sweep, brush, or make clean. So *ā-*, *con-*, *dē-*, *ē-*, *præ-*, *rē-verro*.

*Uro, uſſi, uſtum*, to burn. So *ad-, amb-, comb-, de-, ex-, in-, p̄r-, ſub-ūro*.

*Gero, geſſi, geſtum*, to carry. So *ag-, con-, dī-, in-ſrō-, rē-, ſug-gero*.

2. *Curro, cūcurri, curſum*, to run. So *ac-, con-, dē-, diſ-, ex-, in-, oc-, per-, pra-, prō-curro*, which ſometimes double the firſt ſyllable, and ſometimes not; as, *ac-curri*, or *accūcurri*, &c. *Circum-, rē-, ſuc-, tranſ-curro*, hardly ever redouble the firſt ſyllable.

3. *Sero, ſevi, ſātum*, to ſow. The compounds which ſignify *planting* or *sowing*, have *ſevi, ſitum*; as, *conſero conſevi, conſitum, conſitum*, to plant together. So *af-, circum-, dē-, diſ-, in-, inter-, ob-, pro-, rē-, ſub-, tranſ-sero*.

*Sero, —* to knit, had anciently *ſervi, ſertum* which its compounds ſtill retain; as, *aſſero, aſſerui, aſſertum*, to claim. So *con-, circum-, dē- diſ-, ēdiſ-, ex-, in-, inter-sero*.

4. *Furo*, to be mad, wants both preterite and ſupine.

SO has *ſivi, ſitum*; as,

*Arceſſo, arceſſivi, arceſſitum*, to call or ſend for. So *cāpeſſo*, to take; *ſāceſſo*, to do, to go away; *lāceſſo*, to provoke.

Exc. 1. *Viſo, viſi, —* to go to ſee, to viſit. So *in-, rē-viſo*. *Inceſſo, inceſſi, —* to attack, to ſeize.

Exc. 2. *Depſo, depſui, depſum*, to knead. So *con-, per-depſo*.

*Piſo, piſui, or piſi, piſum, piſum, or piſitum*, to bake.

# TO.

1. *Fleſto, has flexi, flexum*, to bow. So *circum-, de-, in-, re-, retro-fleſto*.

*Pleſto, plexi, and plexui, plexum*, to plait. So *impleſto*.

*Necſto, nexi, and nexui, nexum*, to tie or knit. So *ad-, vel an-, con-, circum-, in-, ſub-necſto*.

*Peſto, pexi and pexui, pexum*, to dreſs or comb. So *de-, ex-, re-peſto*.

2. *Meto, meſſui, meſſum*, to reap, mow, or cut down. So *de-, e-, pra-meto*.

3. *Peto, p̄tivi, p̄tītum*, to ſeek, to purſue. So *ap-, com-, ex-, in-, op-, re-, ſup-peto*.

*Mitto, miſi, miſſum*, to ſend. So *a-, ad-, com-, circum-, de-,*

*dē-, dī-, ē-, im-, inter-, intro-, ō-, per-, prae-, prater-, prō-, rē-, sub-, super-, trans-mitto.*

*Verto, verti, versum, to turn.* So *a-, ad-, animad-, ante-, circum-, con-, de-, di-, e-, in-, inter-, ob-, per-, prae-, prater-, re-, sub-, trans-vertō.*

*Sterto, stertui, — to snore.* So *de-ster-to.*

4. *Sisto*, an active verb, to stop, has *stīti, stātum*; but *sisso*, a neuter verb, to stand still, has *stēti, statum*, like *sto*. The compounds have *stīti*, and *stītum*; as, *assistō, assisti, assistum*, to stand by. So *ab-, circum-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, inter-, ob-, per-, re-, sub-sisto*. But the compounds are seldom used in the supine.

#### VO, XO.

There are three verbs in *vo*, which are thus conjugated:

1. *Vivo, vixi, vīdum*, to live. So *ad-, con-, per-, pro-, re-, super-v-vo*.

*Solvo, solvi, sōlūtum*, to loose. So *absolvo*, to acquit, *dis-ex-, per-, re-solvo*.

*Volvo, volvi, vōlūtum*, to roll. So *ad-, circum-, con-, dē-, ē-, in-, ob-, per-, prō-, rē-, sub-volvo*.

2. *Texo*, to weave, (the only verb of this conjugation ending in *vo*), has *texui, textum*. So *at-, circum-con-, de-, in-, inter-, ob-, per-, prae-, pro-, re-, sub-texo*.

#### Fourth Conjugation.

Verbs of the fourth conjugation make the preterite in *īvi*, and the supine in *ītum*; as,

*Mūnio, mūnīvi, mūnītum*, to fortify. So,

*Balbūcio, to flammer, Glūcio, to swallow.*

*to lisp, to stutter. Gruanio, to grant.*

*Bullio, to boil or bubble. Hinnio, to neigh.*

*Conodio, to season. Impēdio, to entangle,*

*Crōcio, to croak. to binder.*

*Custōdio, to keep. Insānio, to be mad.*

*Dormio, to sleep. Irrētio, to ensnare.*

*Effūtio, to babble or Lascīvio, to be wanton.*

*blab out. Lēnio, to ease or mi-*

*Erūdīo, to instruct. tigate.*

*Expēdio, to disentangle, Ligūrio, to eat delici-*

*to free. ously, to stabber up.*

*Gannio, to yelp, or Lippio, to be dim-*

*whine. sighted*

*Garrio, to prate. Mollio, to soften.*

*Mūgio, to bellow.*

*Mūtio, to mutter.*

*Nutrio, to nourish.*

*Obēdio, to obey.*

*Pāvio, to beat.*

*Pīpio, to peep like a*

*chicken.*

*Pōlio, to polish.*

*Prūrio, to itch, to tickle.*

*Pūnio, to punish.*

*Rēdīmīo, to bind.*

*Rūgio, to roar like a*

*lion.*

*Szvio, to rage.*

*Sāgio,*



|                                           |                                 |                                |
|-------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Sāgio, <i>præ-āgio</i> , to               | Servio, <i>to serve</i> .       | Tinnio, <i>to tinkle</i> .     |
| <i>guess</i> , to <i>foresee</i> .        | Sitio, <i>to thirst</i> .       | Tussio, <i>to cough</i> .      |
| Sarrio, <i>to weed</i> , to <i>rake</i> . | Sōpio, <i>to tuck asleep</i> .  | Vāgio, <i>to cry or squeal</i> |
| Scio, <i>to know</i> .                    | Stābilio, <i>to establish</i> . | <i>as a child</i> .            |
| Nescio, <i>not to know</i> .              | Sūperbio, <i>to be proud</i> .  | Vestio, <i>to clothe</i> .     |
| Scātūrio, <i>to gush out</i> .            | Suffio, <i>to perfume</i> .     |                                |

Exc. 1. Singultio, *singultivi*, *singultum*, to sob.

Sēpēlio, *sēpēliui*, *sēpultum*, to bury.

Vēnio, *vēni*, *ventum*, to come. So *ad-*, *ante-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *contra-*, *de-*, *e-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *intro-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *post-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *sub-*, *super-vēnio*.

Vēneo, *vēni*, — to be sold.

Sālio, *sālui*, and *sālū*, *saltum*, to leap. The compounds have commonly *silui*, sometimes *sili*, or *silui*, and *sultum*; as, *transilio*, *transilui*, *transilū*, and *transilui*; *transultum*, to leap over. So *ab-*, *af-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *re-*, *sub-*, *super-silio*.

Exc. 2. Amicio, has *amicui*, *amicum*, seldom *amixi*, to cover or clothe.

Vincio, *vinxi*, *vincum*, to tie. So *circum-*, *de-*, *e-*, *re-vincio*,

Sancio, *sanxi*, *sanctum*; and *sancīui*, *sancitum*, to establish or ratify.

Exc. 3. Cambio, *campsi*, *campsum*, to change money.

Sēpio, *sēpsi*, *septum*, to hedge or inclose. So *circum-*, *dis-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *præ-sēpio*.

Haurio, *hausi*, *haustum*, rarely *hausum*, to draw out, to empty, to drink. So *de-*, *ex-haurio*.

Sentio, *sensi*, *sensum*, to feel, to perceive, to think. So *af-*, *con-*, *dis-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *sub-sentio*.

Raucio, *rauxi*, *rausum*, to be hoarse.

Exc. 4. Sarcio, *sarxi*, *sartum*, to mend or repair. So *ex-*, *re-sarcio*.

Farcio, *farsxi*, *fartum*, to cram. So *con-fercio*, *ef-fercio*, or *ef-farcio*; *in-fercio*, or *in-farcio*; *re-fercio*.

Fulcio, *fulxi*, *fulum*, to prop or uphold. So *con-*, *ef-*, *in-*, *per-*, *suf-fulcio*.

Exc. 5. The compounds of *pārio*, have *pēru*, *pertum*; as, *āpērio*, *apēru*, *āpertum*, to open. So *ōpērio*, to shut, to cover. But *compērio*, has *compēri*, *compertum*, to know a thing for certain. *Rēpērio*, *repēri*, *repertum*, to find.

Exc. 6. The following verbs want the supine. *Cecūtio, cecutivi*, to be dim-sighted. *Gestio, gestivi*, to shew one's joy by the gesture of his body. *Glōcio, glōcivi*, to cluck or keckle as a hen. *Dementio, dementivi*, to be mad. *Ineptio, ineptivi*, to play the fool. *Prōsilio, prosilui*, to leap forth. *Fērōcio, ferōcivi*, to be fierce.

*Ferio*, to strike, wants both preterite and supine. So *referio*, to strike again.

### DEPONENT and COMMON VERBS.

A deponent verb is that which, under a passive form, has an active or neuter signification; as, *Lōquor*, I speak; *mōriar*, I die.

A common verb, under a passive form, has either an active or passive signification; as, *Crimīnor*, I accuse; or I am accused.

Most deponent verbs of old were the same with common verbs. They are called *Deponent*, because they have laid aside the passive sense.

Deponent and common verbs form the participle perfect in the same manner as if they had the active voice; thus, *Lator, latātus, latāri*, to rejoice; *vēreor, veritus, vēreri*, to fear; *fungor, functus, fungi*, to discharge an office; *pōrior, pōritus, pōiri*, to enjoy, to be master of.

The learner should be taught to go through all the parts of deponent and common verbs, by proper examples in the several conjugations; thus, *lator*, of the first conjugation, like *amor*:

#### Indicative Mode.

Pres. *Lator*, I rejoice; *latāris*, vel *-āre*, thou rejoicest, &c.

Imp. *Latabar*, I rejoiced, or did rejoice; *latabaris*, &c.

Perf. *Latatus sum* vel *ful*\*, I have rejoiced, &c.

Plu-perf. *Latatus eram* vel *fueram*, I had rejoiced, &c.

Fut. *Lataber*, I shall or will rejoice; *latabēris*, or *-abēre*, &c.

*Lataturus sum*, I am about to rejoice, or I am to rejoice, &c.

#### Subjunctive.

Pres. *Lator*, I may rejoice; *latēris*, or *-ēre*, &c.

Imp. *Latarer*, I might rejoice; *latārēris*, or *-ārēre*, &c.

Perf. *Latatus sim* vel *fuerim*, I may have rejoiced, &c.

Plu-perf. *Latatus essem* vel *fuissem*, I might have rejoiced, &c.

Fut. *Latatus fuero*, I shall have rejoiced, &c.

\* *Fui, fueram*, &c. are seldom joined to the participles of deponent verbs; and not so often to those of passive verbs as *sum, eram*, &c.

*Imperatives.*

Pres. *Latere*, vel *-ātor*, rejoice thou; *latator*, let him rejoice, &c.

*Infinitive.*

Pres. *Latari*, to rejoice.

Perf. *Latatus esse* vel *fuisse*, to have rejoiced.

Fut. *Lataturus esse*, to be about to rejoice.

*Lataturus fuisse*, to have been about to rejoice.

*Participles.*

Pres. *Latans*, rejoicing.

Perf. *Latatus*, having rejoiced.

Fut. *Lataturus*, about to rejoice.

*Latans*, to be rejoiced at.

In like manner conjugate, in the First Conjugation,

|                                                             |                                                                 |                                                  |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Abhōmīnor</i> , to abhor.                                | <i>Commentor</i> , to meditate on, or write what one is to say. | <i>Inficior</i> , to deny.                       |
| <i>Adūlor</i> , to flatter.                                 |                                                                 | <i>Insector</i> , to pursue, to inveigh against. |
| <i>Amūlor</i> , to vie with, to envy.                       | <i>Conciōnor</i> , to range.                                    | <i>Insidiōr</i> , to lie in wait.                |
| <i>Altercor</i> , to dispute, to make a repast.             | <i>Consiōlor</i> , to struggle.                                 | <i>Interpretor</i> , to explain.                 |
| <i>Apriōr</i> , to bask in the sun.                         | <i>Cōnor</i> , to endeavour.                                    | <i>Jaciōr</i> , to dart.                         |
| <i>Arbitror</i> , to think.                                 | <i>Conspiciōr</i> , to spy to see.                              | <i>Jociōr</i> , to jest.                         |
| <i>Aspernor</i> , to despise.                               | <i>Contemplor</i> , to view.                                    | <i>Lamentor</i> , to bewail.                     |
| <i>Āversor</i> , to dislike.                                | <i>Convivor</i> , to feast.                                     | <i>Lucror</i> , to gain.                         |
| <i>Auctiōnor</i> , to sell by auction.                      | <i>Cornicor</i> , to chatter like a crow.                       | <i>Luclor</i> , to wrestle.                      |
| <i>Aucūpor</i> , & -o, to hunt after.                       | <i>Crimīnor</i> , to blame.                                     | <i>Machiōnor</i> , to contrive.                  |
| <i>Augūror</i> , & -o, to forebode, or presage by augury.   | <i>Cunctor</i> , to delay.                                      | <i>Mēdicor</i> , to cure.                        |
| <i>Auspicior</i> , to take an omen, to begin.               | <i>Detestor</i> , to abhor.                                     | <i>Mēditiōr</i> , to muse or ponder.             |
| <i>Auxilior</i> , to assist.                                | <i>Dōmīnor</i> , to rule.                                       | <i>Mercor</i> , to purchase.                     |
| <i>Bacchor</i> , to rage, to revel, to riot.                | <i>Epūlor</i> , to feast.                                       | <i>Mētor</i> , to measure.                       |
| <i>Calumniōr</i> , to accuse falsely.                       | <i>Exsecrer</i> , to curse.                                     | <i>Minor</i> , to threaten.                      |
| <i>Cavillor</i> , to scoff.                                 | <i>Fanūlor</i> , to serve.                                      | <i>Miror</i> , to wonder.                        |
| <i>Caupōnor</i> , to huckster, to retail.                   | <i>Ferīor</i> , to keep holy day.                               | <i>Misēror</i> , to pity.                        |
| <i>Causor</i> , to plead in excuse, to blame.               | <i>Frustror</i> , to disappoint.                                | <i>Mōderor</i> , to rule.                        |
| <i>Circūlor</i> , to meet in companies, to stroll, to talk. | <i>Fūrōr</i> , to flesh.                                        | <i>Mōdiōlor</i> , to play a tune.                |
| <i>Cōmēssor</i> , to revel.                                 | <i>Glōriōr</i> , to boast.                                      | <i>Morigētor</i> , to humour.                    |
| <i>Cōmītor</i> , to accompany.                              | <i>Grātūlor</i> , to rejoice, to wish one joy.                  | <i>Mōrōr</i> , to delay.                         |
|                                                             | <i>Grāvōr</i> , to grudge.                                      | <i>Mūnēror</i> , to present.                     |
|                                                             | <i>Hāridiōlor</i> , to conjecture.                              | <i>Mūtuor</i> , to borrow.                       |
|                                                             | <i>Heiluo</i> , to guttle or gormandize, to waste.              | <i>Nūōr</i> , to trifle.                         |
|                                                             | <i>Horter</i> , to encourage.                                   | <i>Onestor</i> , to beseech.                     |
|                                                             | <i>Hallūciōnor</i> , to speak at random, to err.                | <i>Odōror</i> , to smell.                        |
|                                                             | <i>Imāgiōnor</i> , to conceive.                                 | <i>Opēror</i> , to work.                         |
|                                                             | <i>Imitor</i> , to imitate.                                     | <i>Opīnor</i> , to think.                        |
|                                                             | <i>Indignor</i> , to disdain.                                   | <i>Opitūlor</i> , to help.                       |
|                                                             |                                                                 | <i>Oscūlor</i> , to kiss.                        |
|                                                             |                                                                 | <i>ōtiōr</i> , to be at leisure.                 |
|                                                             |                                                                 | <i>Pālor</i> , to stroll or strollgle.           |
|                                                             |                                                                 | <i>Palpor</i> ,                                  |

|                                                                 |                                           |                                                |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| Palpor, or -o, to stroke<br>or feel.                            | Præcor, to pray.                          | Stömniächor, to be angry.                      |
| Patriöcinor, to patro-<br>nise.                                 | Depreëcor, to enreat,<br>to pray against. | Suäviör, to kiss.                              |
| Percontor, to inquire.                                          | Pröcor, to ask, to woo.                   | Suffrägör, to vote for<br>one, to favour.      |
| Përegriñor, to go a-<br>broad.                                  | Reäcordor, to remem-<br>ber.              | Suspïcor, to suspect.                          |
| Përiclïtor, to be in<br>danger.                                 | Refrägör, to be against.                  | Tergiverlor, to boggle,<br>to put off.         |
| Pignëcor, to pledge.                                            | Rimör, to search.                         | Testor to witness.                             |
| Piscor, to fish.                                                | Rixor, to scold or brawl.                 | Tutor to defend.                               |
| Pöpülör, & -o, to lay<br>waste.                                 | Rusticor, to dwell in<br>the country.     | Vädor, to give bail, to<br>force to give bail. |
| Prædor, to plunder.                                             | Scrütör, to search.                       | Vägör, to wander.                              |
| Præliör, to fight.                                              | Sölor, to comfort.                        | Väricinör, to prophesy.                        |
| Præstölör, to wait for.                                         | Spätiör, to walk abroad.                  | Vëlitor, to skirmish.                          |
| P.ævâricor, to go crook-<br>ed, to shuffle or pre-<br>varicate. | Spëcülör, to view, to<br>spy.             | Vënëcor, to worship.                           |
|                                                                 | Stipülör, to stipulate or<br>agree.       | Vënor, to hunt.                                |
|                                                                 |                                           | Vërsör, to be employed.                        |
|                                                                 |                                           | Vöciferör, to bark.                            |

## In the Second Conjugation,

|                                     |                                        |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| Mëreor, mërïtus, to deserve.        | Pollicëor, pollicëtus, to promise.     |
| Tucor, tuëtus, or tutus, to defend. | Lïceor, licëtus, to bid at an auction. |

## In the Third Conjugation,

Amplector, amplexus; and complector, complexus, to embrace.  
Revertor, reversus, to return.

## In the Fourth Conjugation,

|                                         |                                |
|-----------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Blandior, to sooth, to flatter.         | Partior, to divide.            |
| Mentior, to lie.                        | Sortior, to draw or cast lots. |
| Möliör, to attempt something difficult. | Largior, to give liberally.    |

Part. perf. Blandïtus, mentïtus, molïtus, partïtus, sortïtus, largïtus.

There are no exceptions in the First Conjugation.

## EXCEPTIONS in the Second Conjugation.

Reor, rätus, to think.

Misëreor, misëritus, or not contracted misëritus, to pity.

Päteor, fassus, to confess. The compounds of fäteor have sessus; as, pröfëteor, professus, to profess. So confëtor, to confess, to own or acknowledge.

## EXCEPTIONS in the Third Conjugation.

Läbor, lapsus, to slide. So al-, col-, de-, di-, e-, il-, inter-, per-, præter-, pro-, re-, sub-, subter-, super-, trans-läbor.

Ulciscor, ultus, to revenge.

Ûter, ùsus, to use. So ab-, de-ûtor.

Löquor,

*Lōquor, lōquūtus, or locūtus, to speak. So al-, col-, circum-, e-, inter-, ob-, præ-, pro-lōquor.*

*Sēquor, sēquūtus, or sēcutus, to follow. So af-, con-ex-, in-, ob-, per-, pro-, re-, sub-sēquor.*

*Quēror, quēstus, to complain. So con-, inter-, præ-quēror.*

*Nītor, nīsus, or nixus, to endeavour, to lean upon. So ad-vel an-, con-, e-, in-, ob-, re-, sub-nītor: but the compounds have oftener nixus.*

*Pācīscor, pactus, to bargain. So de-pecīscor.*

*Grādior, grassus, to go. So ag-, ante-, circum-, con-, de-, di-, e-, in-, intro-, præ-, præter-, pro-, re-, retro-, sug-, super-, trans-gredior.*

*Prōfīcīscor, profectus, to go a journey.*

*Nancīscor, nactus, to get.*

*Pātior, passus, to suffer. So per-pātior.*

*Apīscor, aptus, to get. So adipīscor, adeptus, and indīpīscor, indeptus,*

*Commīnīscor, commentus, to devise or invent.*

*Fruor, fruitus, or fructus, to enjoy. So per-fruor.*

*Oblīvīscor, oblitus, to forget.*

*Expergīscor, experrectus, to awake.*

*Mōrior, mortuus, to die. So com-, de-, e-, im-, inter-, præ-mōrior.*

*Nāscor, nātus, to be born. So ad-, circum-, de-, e-, in-, inter-, re-, sub-nāscor.*

*Ōrior, ortus, ōriri, to rise. So ab-, ad-, co-, ex-, ob-, sub-ōrior.*

The three last form the future participle in *itūrus*; thus *meritūrus, nascitūrus, ōritūrus*.

### EXCEPTIONS in the Fourth Conjugation.

*Mētor, mēsus, to measure. So ad-, com-, di-, e-, præ-, re-mētor.*

*Ordior, orsus, to begin. So ex-, red-ordior.*

*Expērior, expertus, to try.*

*Oppērior, oppertus, to wait or tarry for one.*

The following verbs want the participle perfect:

*Vescor, vesci, to feed.*

*Mēdeor, mederi, to heal.*

*Līquor, liqui, to melt or be dissolved.*

*Rēmīnīscor, reminisci, to remember.*

*Irāscor, irasci, to be angry.*

*Ringor,*



Ringor, ringi, *to grin like a dog.*      Divertor, diverti, *to turn aside, to take lodging.*  
 Prævertor, præverti, *to get before, to outrun.*      Dēfētīscor, dēfētīsci, *to be weary, or faint.*  
 Dissiteor, dissiteri, *to deny.*

The verbs which do not fall under any of the foregoing rules are called *Irregular*.

## IRREGULAR VERBS.

The irregular verbs are commonly reckoned eight; *sum, eo, quco, vōlo, nōlo, mālō, fēro, and fīo*, with their compounds.

But properly there are only six; *nolo* and *malo* being compounds of *volo*.

*SUM* has already been conjugated. After the same manner are formed its compounds, *ad-, ab-, de-, inter-, præ-, ob-, sub-, super-sum*, and *in-sum*, which wants the preterite; thus, *adsum, assui, atess* &c.

*PROSUM*, to do good, has a *d* where *sum* begins with *e*; as, Ind. *Pr. Prō-sum, prod-es, prod-est; pro-sūmus, &c.*

*Im. Prōd-eram, prod-eras, prod-erat; prod-eramus, &c.*  
*Sub. Im. Prod-essēm, prod-esses, prod-esset; prod-essēmus, &c.*  
*Imperat. Prod-esto, prod-este. Infinit. Pres. Prod-esse.*

In the other parts it is like *sum*: *Pro-sim, -sis, &c. Pro-fui, -fueram, &c.*

*POSSUM* is compounded of *pōtis*, able, and *sum*; and is thus conjugated:

*Possūm, pōtui, posse, To be able.*

*Indicative Mode.*

*Pr. Possūm, pōtes, pōtest; possūmus, pōtestis, possunt.*

*Im. Pot-eram, -eras, -erat; -eramus, -eratis, -erant.*

*Per. Pot-ui -uisti, uit; -uimus, -istis, -uerunt. -uere.*

*Plu. Pot-uēram, -ueras, -uerat; -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.*

*Fut. Pot-ēro -eris, -erit; -erimus, -eritis, -erunt.*

*Subjunctive Mode.*

*Pr. Pos-sim, -sis, -sit; -sīmus, -sītis, -sint.*

*Im. Pos-sem, -ses, -set; -sēmus, -setis, -sent.*

*Per. Pot-uērim, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.*

*Plu. Pot-uissēm, -uisses, -uisset; -uissēmus, -uissetis, -uissent.*

*Fut. Pot-uēro, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.*

*Infinitive.*

*Pres. Possē.*

*Per. Potuisse.*

*The rest wanting.*

EO, īvi, itum, īre, *To go.*

*Indicative Mode.*

*Pr.* Eo, is, it; īmus, itis, eunt,  
*Imp.* Ibam, ibas, ibat; ibamus, ibatis, ibant.  
*Per.* Ivi, ivisti, ivit; ivimus, ivistis, iverunt, ivero.  
*Plu.* Iveram, iveras, iverat; iveramus, iveratis, iverant.  
*Fut.* Ibo, ibis, ibit; ibimus, ibitis, ibunt.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

*Pr.* Eam, eas, eat; eamus, eatis, eant.  
*Im.* Irem, īres, iret; iremus, iretis, irent.  
*Per.* Iverim, iveris, iverit; iverimus, iveritis, iverint.  
*Plu.* Ivissē, ivissēs, ivisset; ivissemus, ivissetis, ivissent.  
*Fut.* Ivero, iveris, iverit; iverimus, iveritis, iverint.

*Imperative.*

*Pres.* { I, ito; { ite, eunto.  
 { Ito, ito; { itote,

*Infinitive.*

*Pres.* Ire.  
*Perf.* Ivisse.  
*Fut.* Esse iturus, a, um.  
 Fuisse iturus.

*Participles.*

*Pr.* Iens, *Gen.* euntis.  
*Fut.* Iturus, -a, -um.

*Gerunds.*

Eundum.  
 Eundi.  
 Eundo, &c.

*Supines.*

1. Itum.  
 2. Itu.

The compounds of *eo* are conjugated after the same manner; *ad-*, *ab-*, *ex-*, *ob-*, *red-*, *sub-*, *per-*, *cō-*, *in-*, *pra-*, *ante-*, *prōd-eo*: only in the perfect and the tenses formed from it, they are usually contracted; thus, *Ad eo*, *adii*, seldom *adivi*, *aditum*, *adire*, to go to; perf. *Adii*, *adiisti* or *adisti*, &c. *adiēram*, *adiērim*, &c. So likewise *veneo*, *venii*, — to be sold, (compounded of *venum* and *eo*.) But *AMBIO*, *-īvi*, *-itum*, *-īre*, to surround, is a regular verb of the fourth conjugation.

*Eo*, like other neuter verbs, is often rendered in English under a passive form: thus, *it*, he is going; *ivit*, he is gone; *ivērat*, he was gone; *iverit*, he may be gone, or shall be gone. So *venit*, he is coming; *vēnit*, he is come; *vēnerat*, he was come, &c. In the passive voice these verbs for the most part are only used impersonally; as, *itur ab illo*, he is going; *ventum est ab illis*, they are come. We find some of the compounds of *eo*, however, used personally: as, *pericula aducuntur*, are undergone. Cic. *Libri syllini aditi sunt*, were looked into, Liv. *Flumen pedibus transiri potest*. Caes. *Inimicitia subeantur*. Cic.

*QUEO*, I can, and *NEQUEO*, I cannot, are conjugated the same way as *eo*; only they want the imperative and the gerunds; and the participles are seldom used.

VOLO,

VOLO, völuī, velle, *To will, or to be willing.*

*Indicative Mode.*

*Pr.* Völ-o, vis, vult; volūmus, vultis, volunt.  
*Im.* Vol-ebam, -ebas, -ebat; -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.  
*Per.* Vol-ui, -uisti, -uit; -uimus, -uistis, -uerunt, -uerunt.  
*Pl.* Vol-ueram, -ueras, -uerat; -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.  
*Fut.* Vol-am, -es -et; -emus, -etis, -ent.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

*Pr.* Velim, velis, velit; velīmus, velitis, velint.  
*Im.* Vellem, velles, vellet; vellēmus, velletis, vellent.  
*Per.* Vol-uerim, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.  
*Plu.* Vol-uissē, -uisses, -uisset; -uissēmus, -uissetis, -uissent.  
*Fut.* Vol-uerō, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimūs, -ueritis, -uerint.

*Infinitive.*

*Pres.* Velle.

*Perf.* Voluisse.

*Participle.*

*Pres.* Volens.

*The rest not used.*

NOLO, nolui, nolle, *To be unwilling.*

*Indicative Mode.*

*Pr.* Nōlo, non-vis, non-vult; nolūmus, non-vultis, nolunt.  
*Im.* Nol-ebam, -ebas, -ebat; -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.  
*Per.* Nol-ui, -uisti, -uit; -uimus, -uistis, -uerunt, -uerunt.  
*Plu.* Nol-ueram, -ueras, -uerat; -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.  
*Fut.* Nōlam, noles, nolet; nolemus, noletis, nolent.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

*Pr.* Nolim, nolis, nolit; nolīmus, nolitis, nolint.  
*Im.* Nollem, nolles, nollet; nollemus, nolletis, nolent.  
*Per.* Nol-uerim, ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.  
*Plu.* Nol-uissē, -uisses, -uisset; uissēmus, -uissetis, -uissent.  
*Fut.* Nol-uerō, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimūs, -ueritis, -uerint.

*Imperative.*

*Infinitive.*

*Participle.*

2. Sing. 2. Plur.  
*Pr.* { Noli, vel { nolite, vel *Pr.* Nolle. *Pr.* Nolens.  
 { Nolito; { nolitote. *Per.* Noluisse. *The rest wanting.*

MALO,

MALO, malui malle, *To be more willing.*

*Indicative Mode.*

*Pr.* Māl-o, mavis, mavult; malūmus, mavultis, malunt.  
*Im.* Mal-ebam, -ebas, -ebat; -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.  
*Per.* Mal-ui, -uisti, -uit; -uimus, -uistis, -uerunt.  
*Plu.* Mal-ueram, -ueras, -uerat; -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.  
*Fut.* Mal-am, -es, -et: *Sc. This is scarcely in use.*

*Subjunctive Mode.*

*Pr.* Malim, malis, malit; malimus, malitis, malint.  
*Im.* Mallem, malle, mallet; mallemus, malletis, mallent.  
*Per.* Mal-uerim, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.  
*Plu.* Mal-uissē, -uisses, -uisset; -uissēmus, -uissetis, -uissent.  
*Fut.* Mal-uerō, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

*Infinitive Mode.*

*Pres.* Malle. *Perf.* Maluisse. *The rest not used.*

FERO, tūli, lātum, ferre, *To carry to bring or suffer.*

ACTIVE VOICE.

*Indicative Mode.*

*Pr.* Fēro, fers, fert; ferimus, fertis, ferunt.  
*Im.* Fer-ebam, -ebas, -ebat; -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.  
*Per.* Tuli, tulisti, tulit; tulimus, tulistis, tulerunt, -ere.  
*Plu.* Tul eram, -eras, -erat; -eramus, -eratis, -erant.  
*Fut.* Feram, feres, feret; feremus, feretis, ferent.

*Subjunctive Mode.*

*Pr.* Feram, feras, ferat; feramus, feratis, ferant.  
*Im.* Ferrem, ferres, ferret; ferremus, ferretis, ferrent.  
*Per.* Tul-erim, -eris, -erit; -erimus, -eritis, -erint.  
*Plu.* Tul-issē, -isses, -isset; -issēmus, -issetis, -issent.  
*Fut.* Tul-erō, -eris, -erit; -erimus, -eritis, -erint.

*Imperative.*

*Infinitive.*

*Pr.* { Fer, fertē, ferunto.  
 { Ferto, fertō: { fertote,

*Pr.* Ferre.  
*Per.* Tulisse.

*Fut.* Eūe laturus, a, um.  
 Fuissē laturus, a, um.

*Participles.*

*Gerunds.*

*Supines.*

*Pres.* Fērens,  
*Fut.* Laturus, -a, -um.

Ferendum.  
 Ferendi.  
 Ferendo, &c.

1. Latum.  
 2. Latu.

PASSIVE

## PASSIVE VOICE.

Fēror, lātus, ferri, *To be brought.**Indicative Mode.**Pr.* Fēror, ferris, feritur; ferimur, ferimini, feruntur.*Im.* Fer-ebat, -ebaris, -ebatur; -ebamur, -ebamini, -ebantur.*Perf.* Latus sum, &c. latus fui, &c.*Plu.* Latus eram, &c. latus fueram, &c.*Fut.* Ferar, ferēris, feretur; feremur, feremini, ferentur.*Subjunctive Mode.**Pr.* Ferar, feraris, feratur; feramur, feramini, ferantur.*Im.* Ferrer, ferreris, ferretur; ferremur, ferremini, ferrentur.*Per.* Latus sim, &c. latus fuerim, &c.*Plu.* Latus essem, &c. latus fuissem, &c.*Fut.* Latus fuero, &c.*Imperative Mode.**Pres.* Ferre vel fertor, fertor; ferimini, feruntor.*Infinitive.**Participles.**Pres.* Ferri.*Perf.* Latus, -a, -um.*Perf.* Esse vel fuisse latus, -a, -um. *Fut.* Ferendus, -a, -um.*Fut.* Latum iri.

In like manner are conjugated the compounds of *fēro*; as, *affēro*, *attūli*, *allatum*; *aufēro*, *abūli*, *ablatum*; *diffēro*, *disūli*, *dilatam*; *confēro*, *contuli*, *collatum*; *infēro*, *intuli*, *illatum*; *offēro*, *obtuli*, *oblatum*; *effēro*, *extuli*, *elatum*. So *circum-*, *per-*, *trans-*, *de-*, *pro-*, *ante-*, *præ-* *fēro*. In some writers we find *adfero*, *adtūli*, *adlatum*; *conlatum*, *inlatum*; *obfero*, &c. for *affero*, &c.

Obs. 1. Most part of the above verbs are made irregular by contraction. Thus, *nolo* is contracted for *non volo*; *maior*, for *magis volo*; *fero*, *fers*, *fert*, &c. for *feris*, *ferit*, &c. *Feror*, *ferris*, v. *ferre*, *feritur*, for *ferēris*, &c.

Obs. 2. The imperatives of *dico*, *dūco*, and *fācio* are contracted in the same manner with *fer*: thus we say, *dic*, *duc*, *fāc*, instead of *dīce*, *dūce*, *fāce*. But these often occur likewise in the regular form.

FIO, factus, fieri, *To be made or done, to become.**Indicative Mode.**Pr.* Fio, fis, fit; sumus, fitis, fiunt.*Im.* Fiebam, fiebas, fiebat; fiebamus, fiebatis, fiebant.*Per.* Factus sum, &c. factus fui, &c.*Plu.* Factus eram, &c. factus fueram, &c.*Fut.* Fiam, fies, fiet; fiemus, fietis, fient.*Subjunctive*



*Subjunctive Mode.*

*Pr.* Fiam, fias, fiat; fiamus, fiatis, fiant.  
*Im.* Fiërem, fieres, fieret; fieremus, fieretis, fierent.  
*Per.* Factus sim, &c. factus fuerim, &c.  
*Plu.* Factus essem, &c. factus fuisssem, &c.  
*Fut.* Factus fuero, &c.

*Imperative.*

*Infinitive.*

*Pr.* { Fi, fito: { fite, fiunto. *Pr.* Fieri.  
 { Fito, fitote, { fitote, *Per.* Esse velfuisse factus, a, um.  
*Fut.* Factum iri.

*Participles.*

*Supine.*

*Per.* Factus, -a, -um. *Factu.*  
*Fut.* Faciendus, -a, -um.

The compounds of *facio* which retain *a*, have also *so* in the passive, and *fac* in the imperative active; as, *calefacio*, to warm, *calefo*, *calefac*: but those which change *a* into *i*, form the passive regularly, and have *fice* in the imperative; as, *conficio*, *confice*; *conficior*, *confectus*, *confici*. We find, however, *confit*, it is done, and *confiteri*; *desit*, it is wanting; *infit*, he begins.

To irregular verbs may properly be subjoined what are commonly called NEUTER PASSIVE Verbs, which, like *fo*, form the preterite tenses according to the passive voice, and the rest in the active. These are, *soleo*, *solutus*, *solere*, to use; *audere*, *ausus*, *audere*, to dare; *gaudere*, *gavisus*, *gaudere*, to rejoice; *fido*, *fusus*, *fidere*, to trust: So *confido*, to trust; and *diffido*, to distrust; which also have *confidi*, and *diffidi*. Some add *maereo*, *maesus*, *maere*, to be sad; but *maesus* is generally reckoned an adjective. We likewise say *iuratus sum* and *canatus sum*, for *juravi* and *canavi*, but these may also be taken in a passive sense.

To these may be referred verbs, wholly active in their termination, and passive in their signification; as *vāpūlo*, -avi, -atum, to be beaten or whipped; *vēno*, to be sold; *exūlo*, to be banished, &c.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Verbs are called *Defective*, which are not used in certain tenses, numbers, and persons.

These three, *ōdi*, *capi*, and *mēmīni*, are only used in the preterite tenses; and therefore are called *Preteritive Verbs*; though they have sometimes likewise a present signification: thus,

*Odi*, I hate, or have hated, *oderam*, *oderim*, *odissem*; *odero*, *odisse*. Participles, *osus*, *osurus*: *exosus*, *perosus*.

*Capi*, I begin or have begun, *caperam*, -erim, -issem, -ero, -isse. Supine, *captu*. Participles, *captus*, *capturus*.

M

*Mēmīni*,

*Mēmīni*, I remember, or have remembered, *memineram*, -*erim*, -*issem*, -*ero*, -*isse* : Imperative, *memento*, *memento*.

Instead of *odi*, we sometimes say, *opus sum*; and always *exopus*, *peropus sum*, and not *exodi*, *perodi*. We say, *opus capiti fieri*, or *cautum est*.

To these some add *nōvi*, because it frequently has the signification of the present, *I know*, as well as, *I have known*, though it comes from *nisco*, which is complete.

*Fūro*, to be mad, *dor*, to be given, and *for*, to speak, as also, *der* and *fer*, are not used in the first person singular; thus, we say, *daris*, *datur*; but never *dor*.

Of verbs which want many of their chief parts, the following most frequently occur: *Aio*, I say, *inquam*, I say, *fōrem*, I should be; *aufim*, contracted for *aufus sim*, I dare; *faxim*, I'll see to it, or I will do it; *āve* and *salve*, save you, hail, good-morrow; *cedo*, tell thou, or give me; *quæso*, I pray.

|           |         |        |         |          |          |         |
|-----------|---------|--------|---------|----------|----------|---------|
| Ind. Pr.  | Aio,    | ais,   | ait :   | —        | —        | aiunt.  |
| Im.       | Aiebam, | -ebas, | -ebat : | -ebamus, | -ebatis, | -ebant. |
| Per.      | —       | aisti, | —       | —        | —        | —       |
| Sub. Per. | —       | aias,  | aiat :  | —        | aiatis,  | aiant.  |

Imperat. Ai.

Particip. Pres. Aiens.

|          |         |           |              |          |          |              |
|----------|---------|-----------|--------------|----------|----------|--------------|
| Ind. Pr. | Inquam, | -quis,    | -quit :      | -quimus, | -quitis, | -quiunt.     |
| Im.      | —       | —         | inquirebat : | —        | —        | inquirebant. |
| Per.     | —       | inquisti, | —            | —        | —        | —            |
| Fut.     | —       | inquies,  | inquiet :    | —        | —        | —            |

Imperat. Inque, inquito.

Particip. Pr. Inquiens.

|          |          |        |         |          |          |         |
|----------|----------|--------|---------|----------|----------|---------|
| Sub. Im. | } Fōrem, | fores, | foret : | foremus, | foretis, | forent. |
| Plu.     |          |        |         |          |          |         |

Inf. Fore, to be hereafter, or to be about to be, the same with *esse futurus*.

|          |        |        |         |   |          |         |
|----------|--------|--------|---------|---|----------|---------|
| Sub. Pr. | Aufim, | aufis, | aufit : | — | —        | —       |
| Per.     | Faxim, | faxis, | faxit : | — | —        | faxint. |
| Fut.     | Faxo,  | faxis, | faxit : | — | faxitis, | faxint. |

Note. *Faxim* and *faxo* are used instead of *fexerim* and *facero*.

Imper. Ave vel avēto; plur. avēte vel avetote. Inf. avere.

— Salve v. salvēto; — salvēte v. salvēote. — salvere.

Indic. Fut. — Salvebis.

Imperat. second pers. sing. Cedo, plur. cedite.

Indic. Pres. first pers. sing. Quæso, plur. quæsumus.

Most of the other Defective verbs are but single words, and rarely to be found, but among the poets; as, *infir*, he begins; *desit*, it is wanting. Some are compounded of a verb and the conjunction *si*; as, *si*, for *si vis*, if thou wilt; *sultis*, for *si vultis*; *sodes*, for *si audes*, equivalent to *quæso*, I pray; *capis*, for *cape si vis*.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

A verb is called *Impersonal*, which has only the terminations of the third person singular, but does not admit any *person* or nominative before it.

Impersonal verbs in English, have before them the neuter pronoun *it*, which is not considered as a person; thus, *dēlectat*, it delights; *dēcet*, it becomes; *contingit*, it happens; *evenit*, it happens:

|          | 1st Conj.      | 2d Conj.   | 3d Conj.     | 4th Conj.  |
|----------|----------------|------------|--------------|------------|
| Ind. Pr. | Delectat,      | Dēcet,     | Contingit,   | Evenit,    |
| Im.      | Delectabat,    | Decebat,   | Contingebat, | Eveniebat, |
| Per.     | Delectavit,    | Decuit,    | Contigit,    | Evenit,    |
| Plu.     | Delectaverat,  | Decuerat,  | Contigerat,  | Evenerat,  |
| Fut.     | Delectabit.    | Decabit.   | Continget.   | Eveniet.   |
| Sub. Pr. | Dēlectet,      | Dēceat,    | Contingat,   | Eveniat,   |
| Im.      | Delectaret,    | Deceret,   | Contingeret, | Eveniret,  |
| Per.     | Delectaverit,  | Decuerit,  | Contigerit,  | Evenerit,  |
| Plu.     | Delectavisset, | Decuisset, | Contigisset, | Evenisset, |
| Fut.     | Delectaverit.  | Decuerit.  | Contigerit.  | Evenerit.  |
| Inf. Pr. | Delectāre,     | Decēre,    | Contingēre,  | Evenire,   |
| Per.     | Delectavisse.  | Decuisse.  | Contigisse.  | Evenisse.  |

Most Latin verbs may be used impersonally in the passive voice, especially Neuter and Intransitive verbs which otherwise have no passive; as, *pugnātur*, *fāvētur*, *curritur*, *vēnītur*; from *pugno*, to fight; *favēo*, to favour; *curro*, to run; *venio*, to come:

|          |                  |                |                |                |
|----------|------------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| Ind. Pr. | Pugnātur,        | Fāvētur,       | Curritur,      | Vēnītur,       |
| Im.      | Pugnabatur,      | Favebatur,     | Currebatur,    | Veniebatur,    |
| Per.     | Pugnatum est,    | Fautum est,    | Cursum est,    | Ventum est,    |
| Plu.     | Pugnatum erat,   | Fautum erat,   | Cursum erat,   | Ventum erat,   |
| Fut.     | Pugnabitur.      | Favebitur.     | Curretur.      | Venietur.      |
| Sub. Pr. | Pugnetur,        | Faveatur,      | Curratur,      | Veniat,        |
| Im.      | Pugnaretur,      | Faveretur,     | Curreretur,    | Veniretur,     |
| Per.     | Pugnatum sit,    | Fautum sit,    | Cursum sit,    | Ventum sit,    |
| Plu.     | Pugnatum esset,  | Fautum esset,  | Cursum esset,  | Ventum esset,  |
| Fut.     | Pugnatum fuerit. | Fautum fuerit. | Cursum fuerit. | Ventum fuerit. |
| Inf. Pr. | Pugnari,         | Faveri,        | Curri,         | Veniri,        |
| Per.     | Pugnatum esse,   | Fautum esse,   | Cursum esse,   | Ventum esse,   |
| Fut.     | Pugnatum iri.    | Fautum iri.    | Cursum iri.    | Ventum iri.    |

Obs. 1. Impersonal verbs are scarcely used in the imperative, but instead of it we take the subjunctive; as, *dēlectet*, let it delight, &c.; nor in the supines, participles, or gerunds, except a few; as, *passi-*

*tens, -dum, -dus, &c.* *Inducti ad pudendum et pigendum*, Cic. In the preterite tenses of the passive voice, the participle perfect is always put in the neuter gender.

Obs. 2. Grammarians reckon only ten real impersonal verbs, and all in the second conjugation; *dēcet*, it becomes; *pānit*, it repents; *oportet*, it behoves; *misēret*, it pities; *pīget*, it irketh; *pūdet*, it shames; *licet*, it is lawful; *libet* or *lūbet*, it pleaseth; *tēdet*, it wearie; *liquet*, it appears. Of which the following have a double preterite; *miseret*, *miseruit*, or *miserum est*; *piget*, *piguit*, or *pigitum est*; *pudet*, *pudivit*, or *pudivitum est*; *licet*, *licuit*, or *licitum est*; *libet*, *libuit*, or *libitum est*; *tēdet*, *tēdedit*, or *tēdētum est*, oftener *peritum est*. But many other verbs are used impersonally in all the conjugations:

In the first, *Juvat*, *speolat*, *vācat*, *stat*, *constat*, *præstat*, *reflat*, &c.

In the second, *Apparet*, *attinet*, *perinet*, *dēbet*, *dēlet*, *nōcet*, *lūet*, *liquet*, *pāet*, *placet*, *displecet*, *sēdet*, *sōlet*, &c.

In the third, *Accidit*, *incipit*, *desinit*, *sufficit*, &c.

In the fourth, *Convēnit*, *expēdit*, &c.

Also Irregular verbs, *Est*, *obeat*, *prōdest*, *pōtest*, *intērest*, *supērest*; *fit*, *præterit*, *nequit*, and *nequitur*, *subit*, *confert*, *refert*, &c.

Obs. 3. Under impersonal verbs may be comprehended those which express the operations or appearances of nature; as, *Fulgurat*, *fulminat*, *tōnat*, *grandinat*, *gēlat*, *pluit*, *ningit*, *lucescit*, *advesperascit*, &c.

Obs. 4. Impersonal verbs are applied to any person or number, by putting that which stands before other verbs, after the impersonals, in the cases which they govern; as, *placet mihi*, *tibi*, *illi*, it pleases me, thee, him; or *I* please, thou pleasest, &c. *pugnatur a me*, *a te*, *ab illo*, I fight, thou fightest, he fighteth, &c. So *Curritur*, *urnitur a me*, *a te*, &c. I run, thou runnest, &c. *Favetur tibi a me*, Thou art favoured by me, or I favour thee, &c.

Obs. 5. Verbs are used personally or impersonally, according to the particular meaning which they express, or the different import of the words with which they are joined: thus we can say, *ego placeo tibi*, I please you; but we cannot say, *si places audire*, if you please to hear, but *si placet tibi audire*. So, we can say, *multa homini contingunt*, many things happen to a man: but instead of *ego contigi esse domi*, we must either say, *me contigit esse domi*, or *mibi contigit esse domi*, I happened to be at home. The proper and elegant use of Impersonal verbs can only be acquired by practice.

#### REDUNDANT VERBS.

Those are called *Redundant Verbs*, which have different forms to express the same sense: thus, *assentio* and *assentior*, to agree; *fabrico* and *fabricor*, to frame; *merco* and *mereor*, to deserve, &c. These verbs, however, under the passive form have likewise a passive signification.

Several verbs are used in different conjugations.

1. Some are usually of the first conjugation, and rarely of the third; as, *lavo*, *lavo*, *lavo*, *lavare*: and *lavo*, *lavis*, *lavare*, to wash.

2. Some are usually of the second, and rarely of the third; as, *Ferveo*, *ferveo*, and *fervo*, *fervis*, to boil.

*Fulgeo*, *fulges*, and *fulgo*, *fulgis*, to shine.

Strideo, strides, and strido, stridis, to make a hissing noise, to creak.  
Tueor, tuëris, and tuor, tuëris, to defend.

To these add *tergeo, terges*; and *tergo, tergis*, to wipe, which are equally common.

3. Some are commonly of the third conjugation, and rarely of the fourth; as;

Fodio, fodis, fodere, and fodio, fodis, fodire, to dig.  
Sallo, fallis, fallere, and fallio, fallis, fallire, to salt.  
Arcesso, -is, arcessere, and arcessio, arcessire, to send for.  
Moriør, morëris, mori, and morior, moriris, moriri, to die.  
So Orior, orëris, and orior, oriris, oriri, to rise.  
Potior, potëris, and potior, potiris, potiri, to enjoy.

There is likewise a verb, which is usually of the second conjugation, and more rarely of the fourth, namely, *ciso, cis, ciere*; and *cio, cis, cire*, to rouse; whence *accire* and *accitus*.

To these we may add the verb *EDO*, to eat, which though regularly formed, also agrees in several of its parts with *sum*; thus,

Ind. Pres. *Edo, edis* or *es*; *edit* or *est*; — *editis* or *estis* —

Sub. Imperf. *Ederem* or *essem*, *ederes* or *esses*, &c.

Imp. *Edo* or *es*, *edito* or *esto*; *edite* or *estis*; *edite* or *estote*.

Inf. Pres. *Edere* or *esse*.

Passive Ind. Pres. *Editur* or *estur*.

It may not be improper here to subjoin a list of those verbs which resemble one another in some of their parts, though they differ in signification. Of these some agree in the present, some in the preterite, and others in the supine.

1. The following agree in the present, but are differently conjugated :

Aggëro, -as, to heap up.

Appello, -as, to call.

Compello, -as, to address.

Colligo, -as, to bind.

Consterno, -as, to astonish.

Effëro, -as, to enrage.

Fundo, -as, to found.

Mando, -as, to command.

Obsëro, -as, to lock.

Völo, -as, to fly.

Aggëro, -is, to bring together.

Appello, -is, to drive to, to arrive.

Compello, -is, to drive together.

Colligo, -is, to gather together.

Consterno, -is, to stress.

Effëro, fers, to bring out.

Fundo, -is, to pour out.

Mando, -is, to cheer.

Obsëro, is, to beset.

Völo, vis, to will.

Of this class some have a different quantity; as,

Cölo, -as, to strain.

Dico, -as, to dedicate.

Edüco, -as, to train up.

Lëgo, -as, to send on an embassy.

Vädo, -as, to wade.

Cölo, -is, to till.

Dico, -is, to say.

Edüco, -is, to lead forth.

Lëgo, -is, to read.

Vädo, -is, to go.



## 2. The following verbs agree in the preterite:

|                                   |                                  |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>Œceo, acui, to be sour.</i>    | <i>Acuo, acui, to sharpen.</i>   |
| <i>Cresco, crevi, to grow.</i>    | <i>Cerno, crevi, to see.</i>     |
| <i>Frigeo, frixi, to be cold.</i> | <i>Frigo, frixi, to fry.</i>     |
| <i>Fulgeo, fulsi, to shine.</i>   | <i>Fulcio, fulsi, to prop.</i>   |
| <i>Lūceo, luxi, to shine.</i>     | <i>Lūgeo, luxi, to mourn.</i>    |
| <i>Pāveo, pāvi, to be afraid.</i> | <i>Palco, pāvi, to feed.</i>     |
| <i>Pendeo, pēpendi, to hang.</i>  | <i>Pendo, pēpendi, to weigh.</i> |

## 3. The following agree in the supine:

|                                         |                                       |
|-----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>Cresco, cretum, to grow.</i>         | <i>Cerno, cretum, to behold.</i>      |
| <i>Māneo, mansum, to stay.</i>          | <i>Mando, mansum, to chew.</i>        |
| <i>Sto, statum, to stand.</i>           | <i>Sisto, statum, to stop.</i>        |
| <i>Succenseo, -censum, to be angry.</i> | <i>Succendo, -censum, to kindle.</i>  |
| <i>Tēneo, tentum, to hold.</i>          | <i>Tendo, tentum, to stretch out.</i> |
| <i>Verro, -versum, to sweep.</i>        | <i>Verto, -versum, to turn.</i>       |
| <i>Vinco, victum, to overcome.</i>      | <i>Vivo, victum, to live.</i>         |

## THE OBSOLETE CONJUGATION.

This chiefly occurs in old writers, and only in particular conjugations and tenses.

1. The ancient Latins made the imperfect of the indicative active of the fourth conjugation in *IBAM*, without the *e*; as, *audībam, scībam*; for *audiēbam, sciēbam*.

2. In the future of the indicative of the fourth conjugation, they used *IBO* in the active, and *ibor* in the passive voice; as, *dormībo, dormībor*, for *dormiam, dormiar*.

3. The present of the subjunctive anciently ended in *IM*: as, *edim*, for *edam*; *duim* for *deum*.

4. The perfect of the subjunctive active sometimes occurs in *SSIAM*, and the future in *SSO*; as, *levassim, levassē*, for *levaverim, levavero*; *cepsim, cepso*, for *ceperim, cepero*: Hence the future of the infinitive was formed in *ASSERE*; as, *levassere* for *levaturus esse*.

5. In the second person of the present of the imperative passive, we find *MINO* in the singular, and *minor* in the plural; as *fumino*, for *fare*; and *progrēdimīnor* for *progrēdimīni*.

6. The syllable *ER* was frequently added to the present of the infinitive passive; as, *furiē* for *fari*; *dicier* for *dici*.

7. The participles of the future time active, and perfect passive, when joined with the verb *esse*, were sometimes used as indeclinable: thus, *credo inimicos dicturum esse*, for *dicturos*, Cic. *Cobortes ad me missum facias*, for *missas*, Cic. ad Attic. viii. 12.

## DERIVATION AND COMPOSITION OF VERBS.

1. Verbs are derived either from nouns or from other verbs.

Verbs derived from nouns are called *Denominative*; as, *Cano*, to sup; *laudo*, to praise; *fraudo*, to defraud; *lapīdo*, to throw stones; *operor*, to work; *frumentor*, to forage; *lignor*, to gather fuel, &c. from *cana*, *laus*, *fraus*, &c. But when they express imitation or resemblance,

semblance, they are called *Imitative*; as, *Patrisso*, *Græcor*, *bubulo*, *cornicor*, &c. I imitate or resemble my father, a Græcian, a crow, &c. from *pater*, *Græcus*, *cornix*.

Of those derived from other verbs, the following chiefly deserve attention; namely, *Frequentatives*, *Inceptives*, and *Desideratives*.

1. *FREQUENTATIVES* express frequency of action, and are all of the first conjugation. They are formed from the last supine, by changing *ātu* into *īto*, in verbs of the first conjugation; and by changing *u* into *o*, in verbs of the other three conjugations; as, *clamo*, to cry, *clamito*, to cry frequently; *terreo*, *terrō*; *verto*, *verſo*; *dormio*, *dormīto*.

In like manner, Deponent verbs form *Frequentatives* in *or*; as, *minor*, to threaten; *minītor*, to threaten frequently.

Some are formed in an irregular manner; as, *nato* from *no*; *noſcito* from *noſco*; *ſcītor*, or rather *ſciſcītor*, from *ſcio*; *pavīto*, from *paveo*; *ſeſtor*, from *ſequor*, *loquītor*, from *loquer*. So *quarīto*, *fundīto*, *agīto*, *ſuīto*, &c.

From *Frequentative* verbs are also formed other *Frequentatives*; as *curro*, *curſo*, *curſito*; *pello*, *pulſo*, *pulſito*, or by contraction *pulſto*; *capio*, *capto*, *capīto*; *cano*, *canto*, *canīto*; *defendo*, *deſenſo*, *deſenſito*; *dico*, *diſto*, *diſcīto*; *gero*, *geſto*, *geſito*; *jacio*, *jaſto*, *jaſcīto*; *venio*, *venīto*; *mutio*, *muſſo*, (for *mutito*) *muſcīto*, &c.

Verbs of this kind do not always express frequency of action. Many of them have much the same ſenſe with their primitives, or express the meaning more ſtrongly.

2. *INCEPTIVE* Verbs mark the beginning or continued increaſe of any thing. They are formed from the ſecond perſon ſing. of the preſent of the indicative, by adding *co*: as, *calco*, to be hot, *cales*, *caleſco*, to grow hot. So in the other conjugations, *labafco*, from *labo*: *tremiſco*, from *tremo*; *obdormiſco*, from *obdormio*. *Hiſco*, from *bio*, is contracted for *biaſco*. *Inceptives* are likewiſe formed from ſubſtantives and adjectives; as, *pueraſco*, from *puer*; *dulceſco*, from *dulcis*; *juvenſco*, from *juvenis*.

All *Inceptives* are Neuter verbs, and of the third conjugation. They want both the preterite and ſupine; unleſs very rarely, when they borrow them from their primitives.

3. *DESIDERATIVE* Verbs ſignify a deſire or intention of doing a thing. They are formed from the latter ſupine, by adding *rio*, and ſhortening the *u*; as, *canātūrio*, I deſire to ſup, from *canatu*. They are all of the fourth conjugation; and want both preterite and ſupine, except theſe three, *cūrrio*, *-īvi*, *-īum*, to deſire to eat; *partūrio*, *-īvi*, *-*, to be in travail; *nuptūrio*, *-īvi*, *-*, to deſire to be married.

There are a few verbs in LLO, which are called *Diminutives*; as, *antillo*, *forbillo*, *-ari*, I ſing, I ſup a little: To theſe ſome add *albico* and *candico*, *-are*, to be or to grow whitish; alſo *nigrico*, *ſodico*, and *vellico*. Some verbs in SSO are called *Intenſive*; as *cupeſſo*, *faceſſo*, *peteſſo* or *petiſſo*, I take, I do, I ſeek earneſtly.

Verbs are compounded with nouns, with other verbs, with adverbs, and chiefly with prepoſitions. Many of the ſimple verbs are not in uſe; as, *Fūto*, *ſendo*, *ſperio*, *gruo*, &c. The component parts uſually remain

remain entire. Sometimes a letter is added; as *prodeo*, for *pro-er*; or taken away; as, *asporto*, *omitto*, *trado*, *pejoro*, *pergo*, *debeo*, *præbeo*, &c. for *absporto*, *obmitto*, *transdo*, *perjuro*, *perrego*, *debiteo*, *præbibeo*, &c. So *demo*, *promo*, *sumo*, *ex de*, *pro*, *sub*, and *emo*, which anciently signified to take or to take away. Often the vowel or diphthong of the simple verb, and the last consonant of the preposition, is changed: as, *damno*, *condemno*; *calco*, *conculco*; *laedo*, *collido*; *audio*, *obedio*, &c. *Afferro*, *auffero*, *collaudo*, *implifico*, &c. for *adfero*, *abfero*, *conlaudo*, *implifico*, &c.

## PARTICIPLE.

A Participle is a kind of adjective formed from a verb, which in its signification implies time.

It is so called, because it partakes both of an adjective and of a verb, having in Latin gender and declension from the one, time and signification from the other, and number from both. Participles in English, like adjectives, admit of no variation.

Participles in Latin are declined like adjectives; and their signification is various, according to the nature of the verbs from which they come; only participles in *du* are always passive, and import not so much future time, as obligation or necessity.

Latin verbs have four Participles, the present and future active; as, *Amans*, loving; *amaturus*, about to love; and the perfect and future passive; as, *amatus*, loved, *amandus*, to be loved.

The Latins have not a participle perfect in the active, nor a participle present in the passive voice; which defect must be supplied by a circumlocution. Thus, to express the perfect participle active in English, we use a conjunction, and the plu-perfect of the subjunctive in Latin, or some other tense, according to its connection with the other words of a sentence; as, he having loved, *quum amavisset*, &c.

Neuter verbs have commonly but two Participles; as, *Sedens*, *sessurus*; *stans*, *staturus*.

From some Neuter Verbs are formed Participles of the perfect tense; as, *Erratus*, *festinatus*, *juratus*, *laboratus*, *vigilatus*, *cessatus*, *sudatus*, *triumphatus*, *regnatus*, *desursus*, *desitus*, *emeritus*, *emersus*, *obitus*, *placitus*, *succensus*, *occusus*, &c. and also of the future in *du*; as, *Jurandus*, *vigilandus*, *regnandus*, *cavendus*, *dormiendus*, *erubescendus*, &c. Neuter passive verbs are equally various. *Veneo* has no participle: *Fido*, only *fidens* and *fidus*; *soleo*, *solens* and *solutus*; *vapulo*, *vapulans* and *vapulaturus*; *Gaudeo*, *gaudens*, *gavissus*, and *gavissurus*; *Audeo*, *audens*, *ausus*, *ausurus*, *audendus*. *Ausus* is used both in an active and passive sense; as, *Ausi omnes immane nefas, ausoque potiti*. Virg. *Æn.* vi. 624.

Deponent and Common verbs have commonly four Participles; as,

*Loquens,*

*Loquens*, speaking; *locuturus*, about to speak; *locutus*, having spoken; *loquendus*, to be spoken: *Dignans*, vouchsafing; *dignaturus*, about to vouchsafe; *dignatus*, having vouchsafed, being vouchsafed, or having been vouchsafed; *dignandus*, to be vouchsafed. Many Participles of the perfect tense from Deponent verbs have both an active and passive sense; as, *Abominatus*, conatus, *confessus*, adortus, *amplexus*, *blanditus*, *largitus*, *mentitus*, *oblitus*, *testatus*, *veneratus*, &c.

There are several Participles compounded with *in* signifying *not*, the verbs of which do not admit of such composition; as, *Insciens*, *insperans*, *indicens*, for, *non dicens*, *inopinans*, and *recopinans*, *immrens*; *Illusus*, *impransus*, *inconsultus*, *incusoditus*, *immetatus*, *impunitus*, *impavatus*, *incomitatus*, *incomptus*, *indemnatus*, *indotatus*, *in corruptus*, *interritus*, and *imperfertitus*, *inestatus*, *inausus*, *inopinatus*, *inultus*, *incensus*, for *non census*, not registered; *infectus*, for *non factus*, *invisus*, for *non visus*, *indictus*, for *non dictus*, &c. There is a different *incensus* from *incendo*; *infectus* from *inficio*; *invisus* from *inviden*; *indictus* from *indico*, &c.

If from the signification of a Participle we take away time, it becomes an adjective, and admits the degrees of comparison; as,

*Amans*, loving, *amantior*, *amantissimus*; *doctus*, learned, *doctior*, *doctissimus*; or a substantive; as, *Præfectus*, a commander or governor; *consonans*, f. sc. *litera*, a consonant; *continens*, f. sc. *terra*, a continent; *confluens*, m. a place where two rivers run together; *orientis*, m. sc. *sol*, the east; *occidentis*, m. the west; *dictum*, a saying; *scriptum*, &c.

There are many words in *ATUS*, *ITUS*, and *UTUS*, which although resembling participles are reckoned adjectives, because they come from nouns, and not from verbs; as, *alatus*, *barbatus*, *cordatus*, *caudatus*, *cristatus*, *auritus*, *pellitus*, *turratus*; *asutus*, *cornutus*, *nasutus*, &c. winged, bearded, discreet, &c. But *auratus*, *aratus*, *argentatus*, *ferratus*, *plumbatus*, *gypsatus*, *calceatus*, *clypeatus*, *galeatus*, *tunicatus*, *larvatus*, *palliatu*, *lymbatus*, *purpuratus*, *prætextatus*, &c. covered with gold, brass, silver, &c. are accounted participles, because they are supposed to come from obsolete verbs. So perhaps *calamistratus*, frizzled, crisped or curled, *crinatus*, having long hair, *peritus*, skilled, &c.

There are a kind of Verbal adjectives in *BUNDUS*, formed from the imperfect of the indicative, which very much resemble Participles in their signification, but generally express the meaning of the verb more fully, or denote an abundance or great deal of the action; as, *vitabundus*, the same with *valde vitans*, avoiding much; *Sall. Jug. 60.* and *101.*; *Liv. xxv. 13.* So *errabundus*, *ludibundus*, *populabundus*, *moribundus*, &c.

#### GERUNDS AND SUPINES.

GERUNDS are participial words, which bear the signification of the verb from which they are formed; and are declined like a neuter noun of the second declension, through all the cases of the singular number, except the vocative.

There are, both in Latin and English, substantives derived from the

the verb, which so much resemble the Gerund in their signification, that frequently they may be substituted in its place. They are generally used, however, in a more undetermined sense than the Gerund, and in English have the article always prefixed to them. Thus, with the gerund, *Delector legendo Ciceronem*, I am delighted with reading Cicero. But with the substantive, *Delector lectione Ciceronis*, I am delighted with the reading of Cicero.

The Gerund and Future Participle of verbs in *io*, and some others, often take *u* instead of *e*; as, *faciundum*, *di*, *do*, *dus*; *experiundum*, *petiundum*, *gerundum*, *dicundum*, &c. for *faciendum*, &c.

SUPINES have much the same signification with Gerunds; and may be indifferently applied to any person or number. They agree in termination with nouns of the fourth declension, having only the accusative and ablative cases.

The former Supine is commonly used in an active, and the latter in a passive sense, but sometimes the contrary; as, *coctum non vapulatum dudum conviciatus fui*, i. e. *ut vapularem*, *v. verberarer*, to be beaten, Plaut.

## A D V E R B.

An adverb is an indeclinable part of speech, *added to a verb*, adjective, or other adverb, to express some circumstance, quality, or manner of their signification.

All adverbs may be divided into two classes, namely, those which denote *Circumstance*; and those which denote *Quality, manner, &c.*

I. Adverbs denoting CIRCUMSTANCE are chiefly those of *Place, Time, and Order.*

1. Adverbs of *Place*, are fivefold, namely, such as signify,

| 1. Motion or rest in a place. |                    | 3. Motion towards a place. |                    |
|-------------------------------|--------------------|----------------------------|--------------------|
| Ubi?                          | Where?             | Huc,                       | Hither.            |
| Hic,                          | Here.              | Iluc,                      | } Thither.         |
| Illic,                        |                    | Isthuc,                    |                    |
| Isthic,                       | } There.           | Intro,                     | In.                |
| Ibi,                          |                    | Foras,                     | Out.               |
| Intus,                        | Within.            | Eò,                        | To that place.     |
| Foris,                        | Without.           | Aliò,                      | To another place.  |
| Ubique,                       | Every where.       | Aliquò,                    | To some place.     |
| Nusquam,                      | No where.          | Eòdem,                     | To the same place. |
| Allicubi,                     | Some where.        |                            |                    |
| Alibi,                        | Else where.        | Quorsum?                   | Whitherward?       |
| Ubivis,                       | Any where.         | Versus,                    | Towards.           |
| Ibidem,                       | In the same place. | Horsum,                    | Hitherward.        |
|                               |                    | Illorsum,                  | Thitherward.       |
|                               |                    | Sursum,                    | Upward.            |
|                               |                    | Deorsum,                   | Downward.          |
|                               |                    | Antrorsum,                 | Forward.           |
|                               |                    |                            | Retrorsum,         |
| 2. Motion to a place.         |                    |                            |                    |
| Quo?                          | Whither?           |                            |                    |



|                         |                      |                                  |                    |
|-------------------------|----------------------|----------------------------------|--------------------|
| Retorsum,               | Backward.            | Sicunde,                         | If from any place. |
| Dextrorsum,             | Towards the right.   | Utriusque,                       | On both sides.     |
| Sinistrorsum,           | Towards the left,    | Süperne,                         | From above.        |
| 4. Motion from a place. |                      | Inferne,                         | From below.        |
| Unde?                   | Whence?              | Cælitus,                         | From heaven.       |
| Hinc,                   | Hence.               | Funditus,                        | From the ground.   |
| Illinc,                 | } Thence.            | 5. Motion through or by a place. |                    |
| Isthinc,                |                      | Quâ?                             | Which way?         |
| Inde,                   |                      | Hæc,                             | This way.          |
| Indidem,                | From the same place. | Illac,                           | } That way.        |
| Aliunde,                | From else where.     | Isthac,                          |                    |
| Allicunde,              | From some place.     | Aliâ,                            | Another way.       |

2. Adverbs of Time are threefold, namely, such as signify,

1. Some particular time, either present, past, future, or indefinite.

|                 |                 |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| Nunc,           | Now.            |
| Hodie,          | To day.         |
| Tunc,           | } Then.         |
| Tum,            |                 |
| Hieri,          | Yesterday.      |
| Dudum,          | } Heretofore.   |
| Pridem,         |                 |
| Prædie,         | The day before. |
| Nudius tertius, | Three days ago. |
| Nuper,          | Lately.         |
| Jamjam,         | } Presently.    |
| Mox,            |                 |
| Statim,         | By and by.      |
| Protinus,       | Instantly.      |
| Illico,         | Straightway.    |
| Cras,           | To-morrow.      |
| Postridie,      | The day after.  |
| Pereundie,      | Two days hence. |
| Nondum,         | Not yet.        |
| Quando?         | When?           |
| Aliquando,      | } Sometimes.    |
| Nonnunquam,     |                 |
| Interdum,       |                 |
| Semper,         | Ever, always.   |

|           |                   |
|-----------|-------------------|
| Nunquam,  | Never.            |
| Interim,  | In the mean time. |
| Quotidie, | Daily.            |

2. Continuance of time.

|            |             |
|------------|-------------|
| Diu,       | Long.       |
| Quamdü?    | How long?   |
| Tamdiu,    | So long.    |
| Jamdiu,    | } Long ago. |
| Jamdudum,  |             |
| Jampridem, |             |

3. Vicissitude or repetition of time.

|             |                                |
|-------------|--------------------------------|
| Quoties?    | How often?                     |
| Sæpe,       | Often.                         |
| Raro,       | Seldom.                        |
| Toties,     | So often.                      |
| Aliquoties, | For several times.             |
| Vicissim,   | } By turns.                    |
| Alternatim, |                                |
| Rursus,     | } Again.                       |
| Iterum,     |                                |
| Subinde,    | } Ever and anon, now and then. |
| Identidem,  |                                |
| Semel,      | Once.                          |
| Bis,        | Twice.                         |
| Ter,        | Thrice.                        |
| Quater,     | Four times, &c.                |

3. Adverbs of Order.

|           |             |               |               |
|-----------|-------------|---------------|---------------|
| Inde,     | Then.       | Denique,      | Finally.      |
| Deinde,   | After that. | Postremo,     | Lastly.       |
| Dehinc,   | Henceforth. | Primo, -um,   | First.        |
| Porro,    | Moreover.   | Secundo, -um, | Secondly.     |
| Deinceps, | So forth.   | Tertio, -um,  | Thirdly.      |
| Denuo,    | Of new.     | Quarto, -um,  | Fourthly, &c. |

II. Adverbs

II. Adverbs denoting QUALITY, MANNER, &c. are either *Absolute* or *Comparative*.

Those called *Absolute* denote,

1. QUALITY, simply; as, *bene*, well; *male*, ill; *fortiter*, bravely; and innumerable others that come from adjective nouns or participles.

2. CERTAINTY; as, *profectè*, *certè*, *sànè*, *plànè*, *ne*, *utique*, *ita*, *etiam*, truly, verily, yea; *quidni*, why not? *omnino*, certainly.

3. CONTINGENCE; as, *fortè*, *forſan*, *fortaſſis*, *forſ*, haply, perhaps, by chance, peradventure.

4. NEGATION; as, *non*, *laud*, not; *nequāquam*, not at all; *neūſquam*, by no means; *minime*, nothing leſs.

5. PROHIBITION; as, *ne*, not.

6. SWEARING; as, *bercle*, *pol*, *edēpol*, *mēcaſtor*, by Hercules, by Pollux, &c.

7. EXPLAINING; as, *utpōte*, *videlicet*, *ſcilicet*, *nimirum*, *nempe*, to wit, namely.

8. SEPARATION; as, *ſeorſum*, apart; *ſēpārātīm*, ſeparately; *ſigillatīm*, one by one; *vīrītīm*, man by man; *oppīdātīm*, town by town, &c.

9. JOINING TOGETHER; as, *ſimul*, *undē*, *pārītēr*, together; *gēnērālītēr*, generally; *ūnīverſālītēr*, univerſally; *plērūmq̄*, for the moſt part.

10. INDICATION or POINTING out; as, *en*, *ecce*, lo, behold.

11. INTERROGATION; as, *cur*, *quāre*, *quāmobrēm*, why, wherefore? *num*, *an*, whether? *quōmōdō*, *quē*, how? To which add, *Ubi*, *quō*, *quorſum*, *undē*, *quā*, *quando*, *quāmdū*, *quātēs*.

Those Adverbs which are called *Comparative* denote,

1. EXCESS, as, *Valde*, *maximè*, *magnopere*, *maximopere*, *ſummopere*, *admōdum*, *oppōſitō*, *perquam*, *longè*, greatly, very much, exceedingly; *nimis*, *nimum*, too much; *prorſus*, *penitus*, *omnino*, altogether, wholly; *magis*, more; *melius*, better; *pejus*, worſe; *fortius*, more bravely; and *optimè*, beſt; *peſſimè*, worſt; *fortiſſimè*, moſt bravely; and innumerable others of the comparative and ſuperlative degrees.

2. DEFECT; as, *Ferme*, *fere*, *propemodum*, *pene*, almoſt; *pārum*, little; *paulo*, *paululum*, very little.

3. PREFERENCE; as, *pōtius*, *sātius*, rather; *pōtiſſimū*, *præcipuè*, *præſertim* chiefly, eſpecially; *imo*, yes, nay, nay rather.

4. LIKENESS or EQUALITY; as, *ita*, *ſic*, *adēd*, ſo; *ut*, *utī*, *ſicut*, *ſicutī*, *vclut*, *velutī*, *ceu*, *tāquam*, *quāſi*, as, as if; *quemadmodum*, even as; *sātis*, enough; *iſidēm*, in like manner; *juxta*, alike, equally.

5. UNLIKENESS or UNEQUALITY; as, *altēr*, *ſecus*, otherwiſe; *aliōq̄* or *aliōquin*, elſe; *nēdum*, much more or much leſs.

6. ABATEMENT; as, *ſenſim*, *paulatim*, *pēdēſentim*, by degrees, piecemeal; *vix*, ſcarcely; *agre*, hardly, with difficulty.

7. EXCLUSION; as, *tantum*, *ſolū*, *modō*, *tantummodō*, *duntaxat*, *ſc̄m*, only.

DERIVATION

## DERIVATION, COMPARISON, and COMPOSITION of ADVERBS.

Adverbs are derived, 1. from Substantives, and end commonly in TIM or TUS; as, *Partim*, partly, by parts; *nominatim*, by name; *generatim*, by kinds, generally; *speciatim*, *vicatim*, *gregatim*; *radicitus*, from the root, &c. 2. From Adjectives: and these are by far the most numerous. Such as come from Adjectives of the first and second declension usually end in E; as, *liberè*, freely; *plenè*, fully; Some in O, UM, and TER; as, *falsò*, *tantum*, *graviter*: A few in A, ITUS, and IM; as, *rectà*, *antiquitùs*, *privatim*. Some are used two or three ways, as, *primum*, v. -ò; *purè*, -iter; *certè*, -ò; *cautè*, -tim; *humanè*, -iter, -itus; *publicè*, *publicitùs*, &c. Adverbs from Adjectives of the third declension commonly end in TER, seldom in E; as, *turpiter*, *feliciter*, *acriter*, *pariter*; *facilè*, *repente*: one in O, *omnino*. The neuter of Adjectives is sometimes taken Adverbially; as, *recens natus*, for *recenter*; *perfidum videns*, for *perfidè*, Hor. *multa reluctans*, for *multum* or *valde*, Virg. So in English we say, to speak loud, high, &c. for loudly, highly, &c. In many cases a Substantive is understood; as, *primò*, sc. *loco*, *optatò advenis*, sc. *tempore*; *hàc*, sc. *vià*, &c.

3. From each of the pronominal adjectives, *ille*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, *idem*, &c. are formed adverbs, which express all the circumstances of place; as from *ille*, *illic*, *illuc*, *illorsum*, *illinc*, and *illac*. So from *quis*, *ubi*, *quo*, *quorsum*, *unde*, and *quà*. Also of time: thus, *quando*, *quandiu*, &c.

4. From verbs and participles; as, *casim*, with the edge: *punctim*, with the point; *strictim*, closely; from *cado*, *punga*, *stringo*: *amanter*, *properanter*, *dubitanter*; *discretè*, *emendatè*; *meritò*, *inopinato*, &c. But these last are thought to be in the ablative, having *ex* understood, which is also sometimes expressed.

5. From prepositions; as, *intus*, *intro*, from *in*; *clanculum*, from *clam*; *subtus*, from *sub*, &c.

Adverbs derived from adjectives are commonly compared like their primitives. The *positive* generally ends in *e*, or *ter*; as, *durè*, *facilè*, *acriter*: The *comparative*, in *ius*; as, *duriùs*, *faciliùs*, *acriùs*: The *superlative*, in *imè*; as, *durissimè*, *facillimè*, *acerrimè*.

If the comparison of the adjective be irregular or defective, the comparison of the adverb is so too: as, *benè*, *malùs*, *optimè*; *male*, *pejùs*, *pejissimè*; *parum*, *minùs*, *minimè*, & -um; *multum*, *plus*, *plurimum*; *prope*, *propiùs*, *proximè*; *ocys*, *ocysime*; *priùs*, *priusò*, -um; *nuper*, *nuperrimè*; *novè*, & *noviter*, *novissimè*; *meritò*, *meritissimè*; &c. Those adverbs also are compared whose primitives are obsolete; as, *sapè*, *sapiùs*, *sapissimè*; *penitùs*, *penitiùs*, *penitissimè*; *satis*, *satiùs*; *secus*, *seciùs*; &c. *Magis*, *maxime*; and *potius*, *potissimum*, want the positive.

Adverbs in English are not varied by comparison, except some few of them, particularly irregulars; as, *often*, *oftener*, *oftenest*; *well*, *better*, *best*; *much*, *more*, *most*, &c.

Adverbs are variously compounded with all the different parts of speech; thus, *postridie*, *magnopere*, *maximopere*, *summopere*, *tantopere*, *multimodis*,

*multimodis, omnimodis, quomodo, quare; of postero die; magno opere, &c. Illuc, scilicet, videlicet, of ire, scire, videre, licet; illico, of in loco; quorsum, of quo versum; comminus, hand to hand, of cum or con and manus; eminus, at a distance, of e and manus; quorsum, of quo versum; denovo, anew, of de novo; quin, why not, but, of qui ne; cur, of cui rei; pedetentim, step by step, as it were pedem tendendo; perendie, for perempto die; nimirum, of ne, i. e. non and mirum; antea, postea, praterea, &c. of ante and ea, &c. Ubivis, quovis, undelibet, quousque, sicut, sicuti, velut, veluti, desuper, insuper, quomobrem, &c. of ubi, and vis, &c. nudius tertius, of nunc dies tertius: idemdem, of idem et idem; impraesentiarum, i. e. in tempore rerum praesentium, &c.*

Obs. 1. The Adverb is not an essential part of speech. It only serves to express shortly, in one word, what must otherwise have required two or more; as, *sapienter*, wisely, for *cum sapientia*; *hic*, for *in hoc loco*; *semper*, for *in omni tempore*; *semel*, for *una vice*; *bis*, for *duabus vicibus*; *Mehercule*, for *Hercules me juvet, &c.*

Obs. 2. Some adverbs of time, place, and order, are frequently used the one for the other: as, *ubi*, where or when; *inde*, from that place, from that time, after that, next; *hactenus*, hitherto, thus far, with respect to place, time, or order, &c.

Obs. 3. Some adverbs of time are either *past*, *present*, or *future*; as, *jam*, already, now, by and by; *olim*, long ago, some time, hereafter. Some adverbs of place are equally various; thus, *esse peregrè*, to be abroad; *ire peregrè*, to go abroad; *redire peregrè*, to return from abroad.

Obs. 4. Interrogative adverbs of time and place doubled, or compounded with *cumque*, answer to the English adjection *so ever*; as, *ubi-ubi*, or *ubicumque*, wheresoever; *quoque, quocumque*, whithersoever, &c. The same holds also in other interrogative words; as, *quotquot*, or *quotcumque*, how many soever; *quantusquantus*, or *quantuscumque*, how great soever; *utut* or *utcumque*, however or howsoever, &c. In English, the adverbs *here*, *there*, and *where*, when joined to certain participles or prepositions, as, *to*, *of*, *by*, *with*, *in*, &c. have the signification of pronouns; as, *hereof*, the same with *of this*; *thereof*, the same with *of that*; *whereof*, *of which*, &c.

## PREPOSITION.

A Preposition is an indeclinable word which shews the relation of one thing to another.

There are twenty-eight Prepositions in Latin, which govern the accusative; that is, have an accusative after them.

|           |                     |         |                 |
|-----------|---------------------|---------|-----------------|
| Ad,       | To.                 | Cis,    | } On this side. |
| Apud,     | At.                 | Citra,  |                 |
| Ante,     | Before.             | Circa,  | } About.        |
| Adversus, | } Against, towards. | Circum, |                 |
| Adversum, |                     | Erga,   | Towards.        |
| Contra,   | Against.            | Extra,  | Without.        |
|           |                     |         | Inter,          |

|          |                        |           |                             |
|----------|------------------------|-----------|-----------------------------|
| Inter,   | <i>Between, among.</i> | Pēnes,    | <i>In the power of.</i>     |
| Intra,   | <i>Within.</i>         | Post,     | <i>After.</i>               |
| Infra,   | <i>Beneath.</i>        | Pōne,     | <i>Behind.</i>              |
| Juxta,   | <i>Nigh to.</i>        | Sēcus,    | <i>By, along.</i>           |
| Ob,      | <i>For.</i>            | Sēcundum, | <i>According to.</i>        |
| Propter, | <i>For, hard by.</i>   | Supra,    | <i>Above.</i>               |
| Per,     | <i>By, though.</i>     | Trans,    | <i>On the farther side.</i> |
| Præter,  | <i>Beside, except.</i> | Ultra,    | <i>Beyond.</i>              |

The Prepositions which govern the ablative are fifteen ; namely,

|         |                                            |        |                               |
|---------|--------------------------------------------|--------|-------------------------------|
| A,      | } <i>From, or by.</i>                      | De,    | <i>Of, concerning.</i>        |
| Ab,     |                                            | E,     | } <i>Of, out of.</i>          |
| Abs,    | } <i>Without.</i>                          | Ex,    |                               |
| Absque, |                                            | Pro,   | <i>For.</i>                   |
| Cum,    | <i>With.</i>                               | Præ,   | <i>Before.</i>                |
| Clam,   | } <i>Without the know-<br/>ledge of.</i>   | Pālam, | <i>With the knowledge of.</i> |
| Cōram,  |                                            | Sine,  | <i>Without.</i>               |
|         | } <i>Before, in the pre-<br/>sence of.</i> | Tēnus, | <i>Up to, as far as.</i>      |

These four govern sometimes the accusative, and sometimes the ablative :

*In, In, into.* Sub, *Under.* Sūper, *Above.* Subter, *Beneath.*

Obs. 1. Prepositions are so called, because they are generally placed before the word with which they are joined. Some, however, are put after ; as, *cum*, when joined with *me, te, se*, and sometimes with *quo, qui*, and *quibus* : thus, *mecum, tecum*, &c. *Tenus* is always placed after ; as, *mento tenus*, up to the chin. So likewise are *versus* and *usque* ; and *tward*, in English ; as, *toward, eastward*, &c.

Obs. 2. Prepositions, both in English and Latin, are often compounded with other parts of speech, particularly with verbs ; as, *subire*, to undergo. In English they are frequently put after verbs ; as, *to go in, to go out, to look to*, &c.

Prepositions are also sometimes compounded together ; as, *Ex adversus eum locum*, Cic. *Ex adversum Athenas*, C. Nep. *In ante diem quartum Kalendarum Decembris distulit*, i. e. *usque in eum diem*, Cic. *Supplicatio indicta est ex ante diem quintum idus Octob.* i. e. *ab eo die*, Liv. *Ex ante pridie Idus Septembris*, Plin. But prepositions compounded together commonly become adverbs or conjunctions ; as, *propālam, profinus, insuper*, &c.

Obs. 3. Prepositions in composition usually retain their primitive signification : as, *adeo*, to go to : *præpono*, to place before. But from this there are several exceptions. 1. *IN* joined with adjectives generally denotes privation ; as, *infidus*, unfaithful : but when joined with verbs, increases their signification ; as, *induro*, to harden greatly. In some words *in* has two contrary senses ; as, *invocatus*, called upon, or not called upon. So *infrēnatus, immutatus, insuctus, impensus, inhumatus, intentatus*, &c. 2. *PEN* commonly increases the



signification; as, *Percārus*, *percēter*, *percōmis*, *percutiōsus*, *perdifficilis*, *perelegans*, *pergrātus*, *pergrāvis*, *perhospitālis*, *perillustis*, *perlatus*, &c. very dear, very swift, &c. 3. *PRÆ* sometimes increases; as, *Præclārus*, *prædixus*, *prædulcis*, *prædurus*, *præpinguis*, *prævalidus*; *prævaléo*, *præpolleo*; and also *Ex*; as, *Exclāmo*, *exaggeō*, *exaugeo*, *exalefacio*, *extenuo*, *exilāro*; but *EX* sometimes denotes privation, as, *Exsanguis*, bloodless, pale; *excors*, *exanimis*, -mo, &c. 4. *SUB* often diminishes; as, *Subaltidus*, *subabsurdus*, *subamārus*, *subdulcis*, *subgrandis*, *subgrāvis*, *subniger*; &c. a little white or whitish, &c. *DE* often signifies downward; as, *Decīdo*, *decurro*, *degrāvo*, *despicio*, *delābor*: sometimes increases; as, *Deāmo*, *demīror*; and sometimes expresses privation; as, *Demens*, *decōlor*, *deformis*, &c.

Obs. 4. There are five or six syllables, namely, *am*, *di* or *dis*, *re*, *se*, *con*, which are commonly called, *Inseparable Prepositions*, because they are only to be found in compound words: however they generally add something to the signification of the words with which they are compounded; thus,

|      |                        |       |              |                          |
|------|------------------------|-------|--------------|--------------------------|
| Am,  | <i>round about.</i>    | } as, | { Ambio,     | <i>to surround.</i>      |
| Di,  | } <i>asunder.</i>      |       | { Dīvello,   | <i>to pull asunder.</i>  |
| Dis, |                        |       | { Dīstrāho,  | <i>to draw asunder.</i>  |
| Re,  | <i>again.</i>          |       | { Rēlēgo,    | <i>to read again.</i>    |
| Se,  | <i>aside or apart.</i> |       | { Sēpono,    | <i>to lay aside.</i>     |
| Con, | <i>together.</i>       |       | { Concreſco, | <i>to grow together.</i> |

## INTERJECTION.

An Interjection is an indeclinable word *thrown in between* the parts of a sentence, to express some passion or emotion of the mind.

Some Interjections are natural sounds, and common to all languages; as, *Oh!* *Ah!*

Interjections express in one word a whole sentence, and thus fitly represent the quickness of the passions.

The different passions have commonly different words to express them; thus,

1. JOY; as, *evax*, hey, brave, io!
2. GRIEF; as, *ah*, *bei*, *beu*, *ebcu*! ah, alas, woes me!
3. WONDER; as, *papa*! O strange! *vah*! hah!
4. PRAISE; as, *euge*! well done!
5. AVERSION; as, *apāge*! away, begone, avaunt, off, fy, tush!
6. EXCLAIMING; as, *Oh*, *prob*! O!
7. SURPRISE or FEAR; as, *atat*! ha, aha!
8. IMPRECATION; as, *væ*! wo, pox on't!
9. LAUGHTER; as, *ha*, *ha*, *be*!
10. SILENCING; as, *au*, 'st, *pax*! silence, hush, 'st!
11. CALLING; as, *eho*, *ebūdum*, *io*, *ho*! so, ho, ho, O!

12. DERISION; as, *hui!* away with!

13. ATTENTION; as, *hem!* ha!

Some interjections denote several different passions: thus, *Fab* is used to express joy, and sorrow, and wonder, &c.

Adjectives of the neuter gender are sometimes used for interjections; as, *Malum!* with a mischief! *Infandum!* O shame! fy, fy! *Miserum,* O wretched! *Nefas!* O the villany!

## CONJUNCTION.

A conjunction is an indeclinable word, which serves to join sentences together.

Thus *You and I, and the boy, read Virgil,* is one sentence, made up of these three, by the conjunction *and* twice employed; *I read Virgil; You read Virgil; The boy reads Virgil.* In like manner, "*You and I read Virgil, but the boy reads Ovid,*" is one sentence, made up of three, by the conjunctions *and* and *but.*

Conjunctions, according to their different meaning, are divided into the following classes:

1. COPULATIVE; as, *et, ac, atque, que,* and; *etiam, quodque,* item, also; *cum, tum,* both, and. Also their contraries, *nec, neque, neu, neve,* neither, nor.

2. DISJUNCTIVE; as, *aut, ve, vel, seu, sive,* either, or.

3. CONCESSIVE; as, *etiam, tametsi, licet, quanquam, quamvis,* though, although, albeit.

4. ADVERSATIVE; as, *sed, verum, autem, at, atque, but;* *tamen, attamen, veruntamen, verumtamen,* yet, notwithstanding, nevertheless.

5. CAUSAL; as, *nam, namque, enim,* for; *quia, quippe, quoniam,* because; *quod,* that, because.

6. ILLATIVE or RATIONAL; as, *ergo, ideo, igitur, idcirco, itaque,* therefore; *quapropter, quocirca,* wherefore; *proinde,* therefore; *cum, quum,* seeing, since; *quatenus, quatenus,* forasmuch as.

7. FINAL or PERFECTIVE; as, *ut, uti,* that, to the end that.

8. CONDITIONAL; as, *si, si, if; dum, modo, dummodo,* provided, upon condition that; *siquidem,* if indeed.

9. EXCEPTIVE or RESTRICTIVE; as, *ni, nisi,* unless, except.

10. DIMINUTIVE; as, *saltem, certe,* at least.

11. SUSPENSIVE or DUBITATIVE; as, *an, anne, num,* whether; *ne, annon,* whether, not; *neque, or, not.*

12. EXPLETIVE; as, *autem, vero, now, truly; quidem, equidem,* indeed.

13. ORDINATIVE; as, *deinde, thereafter; denique, finally; insuper, moreover; ceterum, moreover, but, however.*

14. DECLARATIVE; as, *videlicet, scilicet, nempe, nimirum, &c.* to wit, namely.

Obs. 1. The same words, as they are taken in different views, are both *adverbs* and *conjunctions.* Thus, *an, anne, &c.* are either *interrogative*

*gative adverbs*: as, *An scribit?* Does he write? or, *suspensive conjunctions*: as, *Nescio an scribat*, I know not if he writes.

Obs. 2. Some conjunctions, according to their natural order, stand first in a sentence; as, *Ac, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel, sive, at, sed, verum, nam, quandoquidem, quocirca, quare, fin, siquidem, praterquam, &c.*: some stand in the second place; as, *Autem, vero, quoque, quidem, enim*: and some may indifferently be put either first or second; as *Etiam, equidem, licet, quamvis, quanquam, tamen, attamen, namque, quod, quia, quoniam, quippe, ulpöte, ut, uti, ergo, ideo, igitur, idcirco, itaque, proinde, propterea, si, ni, nisi, &c.* Hence arose the division of them into *Prepositive, Subjunctive, and Common*. To the subjunctive may be added these three, *que, ve, ne*, which are always joined to some other word, and are called *Enclitics*, because, when put after long syllables, they make the accent incline to the foregoing syllable; as in the following verse,

*Indolusque pilæ, discive, trochive, quisfuit.* Horat.

But when these enclitic conjunctions come after a short vowel, they do not affect its pronunciation; thus,

*Arbuteos fetus montanæque fraga legebant.* Ovid.

## S E N T E N C E S.

**A** Sentence is any thought of the mind expressed by two or more words put together ; as, *I read.* *The boy reads Virgil.*

That part of grammar which teaches to put words rightly together in sentences, is called *Syntax* or *Construction*.

Words in sentences have a twofold relation to one another ; namely, that of *Concord* or Agreement ; and that of *Government* or Influence.

*Concord*, is when one word agrees with another in some accidents ; as, in gender, number, person, or case.

*Government*, is when one word requires another to be put in a certain case, or mode.

## General Principles of SYNTAX.

1. In every sentence there must be a verb and a nominative expressed or understood.
2. Every adjective must have a substantive expressed or understood.
3. All the cases of Latin nouns, except the nominative and vocative, must be governed by some other word.
4. The genitive is governed by a substantive noun expressed or understood.
5. The dative is governed by adjectives and verbs.
6. The accusative is governed by an active verb, or by a preposition ; or is placed before the infinitive.
7. The vocative stands by itself, or has an interjection joined with it.
8. The ablative is governed by a preposition expressed or understood.
9. The infinitive is governed by some verb or adjective.
10. The genitive or possessive case in English always depends on some noun ; and the objective or accusative case is put after a verb active or a preposition.

Al

All Sentences are either SIMPLE or COMPOUND.

*Syntax* therefore may be divided into two parts, according to the general division of sentences.

### SIMPLE SENTENCES.

A Simple Sentence is that which has but one nominative; and one finite verb, *that is*, a verb in the indicative, subjunctive, or imperative mode.

In a simple sentence, there is only one *Subject* and one *Attribute*.

The *SUBJECT* is the word which marks the person or thing spoken of.

The *ATTRIBUTE* expresses what we affirm concerning the subject, as,

*The boy reads his lesson*: Here, "the boy," is the *Subject* of discourse, or the person spoken of; "reads his lesson," is the *Attribute*, or what we affirm concerning the subject. *The diligent boy reads his lesson carefully at home*. Here we have still the same subject, "the boy," marked by the character of "diligent," added to it; and the same attribute, "reads his lesson," with the circumstances of manner and place subjoined, "carefully," "at home."

### C O N C O R D.

The following words agree together in sentences, 1. A substantive with a substantive. 2. An adjective with a substantive. 3. A verb with a nominative.

#### 1. Agreement of one Substantive with another.

I RULE I. Substantives signifying the same thing, agree in case; as,

*Cicero orator*, Cicero the Orator; *Ciceronis oratoris*, Of Cicero the Orator. *Urbs Athenæ*, The city Athens; *Urbis Athenarum*, Of the city Athens.

#### 2. Agreement of an Adjective with a Substantive.

II An Adjective agrees with a Substantive, in gender, number, and case; as,

|                                       |                                     |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>Bonus vir</i> , a good man;        | <i>Boni viri</i> , good men.        |
| <i>Femina casta</i> , a chaste woman; | <i>Femine castæ</i> , chaste women. |
| <i>Dulce pomum</i> , a sweet apple;   | <i>Dulcia pomâ</i> , sweet apples.  |

And so through all the cases and degrees of comparison.

This



This rule applies also to Adjective pronouns and participles; as *Meus liber*, my book; *ager colendus*, a field to be tilled: Plur. *Mi libri*, *agri colendi*, &c.

Obs. 1. The substantive is frequently understood, or its place supplied by an infinitive; and then the adjective is put in the neuter gender; as, *triste*, sc. *negotium*, a sad thing, Virg.; *Tuum scire*, the same with *tua scientia*, thy knowledge, Pers. We sometimes however find the substantive understood in the feminine; as, *Non posteriores feram*, sup. *partes*, Ter.

Obs. 2. An adjective often supplies the place of a substantive; as, *Certus amicus*, A sure friend: *Bona ferina*, Good venison; *Summum bonum*, The chief good: *Homo* being understood to *amicus*, *caro* to *ferina*, and *negotium* to *bonum*. A substantive is sometimes used as an adjective; as, *incola turba vocant*, the inhabitants, Ovid *Fasti* 3. 582.

Obs. 3. These adjectives, *primus*, *medius*, *ultimus*, *extremus*, *infimus*, *imus*, *summus*, *supremus*, *reliquus*, *cetera*, usually signify *the first part*, *the middle part*, &c. of any thing; as, *Media nox*, the middle part of the night; *Summa arbor*, the highest part of a tree.

Obs. 4. In English, the adjective generally goes before the noun; as, *a wise man*, *a good horse*; unless something depend upon the adjective; as, *food convenient for me*; or the adjective be emphatical; as, *Alexander the Great*. And the article goes before the Adjective: except the adjectives *all*, *such*, and *many*, and others subjoined to the adverbs *so*, *as*, and *how*; as, *all the men*; *many a man*, *so good a man*; *as good a man*; *how beautiful a prospect*! or when there are two or more adjectives joined to the noun; as, *a man learned and religious*.

Obs. 5. Whether the adjective or substantive ought to be placed first in Latin, no certain rule can be given. Only if the substantive be a monosyllable, and the adjective a polysyllable, the substantive is elegantly put first; as, *vir clarissimus*, *res praestantissima*, &c.

Obs. 6. A substantive in English, sometimes supplies the place of an adjective; as, *sea-water*, *land-fowl*, *forest-trees*, *a stone-arch*, &c.; and even when no hyphen is marked; as, *the London Chronicle*, *the Edinburgh Magazine*.

Obs. 7. Nouns of measure, number, and weight, are sometimes joined in the singular with Numeral Adjectives plural; as, *fifty foot*; *six score*; *ten thousand fathom*; *a hundred head*; *an hundred weight*. We say, *by this means*, *by that means*; for, *by these means*, *by those means*; or, *by this mean*, *by that mean*, as it was used anciently: So, *This ser-*

ty years, for *these*; *these* and *those* kind of things, for *this* and *that*. Each, every, either, are always joined with the singular number, unless the plural noun convey a collective idea; as, *every twelve years*.

### 3. Agreement of a Verb with a Nominative.

III. / A Verb agrees with its Nominative in number and person; / as,

*Ego lego*, I read;

*Nos legimus*, We read.

*Tu scribis*, Thou writest or you write; *Vos scribitis*, Ye or you write;

*Præceptor docet*, the master teaches; *Præceptores docent*, Masters teach.

And so through all the modes, tenses, and numbers.

Obs. 1. *Ego* and *nos* are of the first person; *tu* and *vos* of the second person; *ille* and all other words, of the third. The nominative of the first and second person in Latin is seldom expressed, unless for the sake of emphasis or distinction; as, *Tu es patronus, tu pater*, Ter. *Tu legis, ego scribo*.

Obs. 2. An infinitive, or some part of a sentence, often supplies the place of a nominative; as, *Mentiri est turpe*, to lie is base; *Diu non perlitatum tenuit dictatorem*; The sacrifice not being attended with favourable omens detained the dictator for a long time, Liv. 7. 8. Sometimes the neuter pronoun *id* or *illud* is added, to express the meaning more strongly; as, *Facere quæ libet, id est esse regem*, Sallust.

Obs. 3. The infinitive mode often supplies the place of the third person of the imperfect of the indicative; as, *Milites fugere*, the soldiers fled; for *fugiebant* or *fugere cæperunt*. *Invidere omnes mihi*, for *invidebant*.

Obs. 4. A collective noun may be joined with a verb either of the singular or of the plural number; as, *Multitudo stat*, or *stant*; The multitude stands, or stand.

A collective noun, when joined with a verb singular, expresses many considered as one whole; but when joined with a verb plural, signifies many separately, or as individuals. Hence, if an adjective or participle be subjoined to the verb, when of the singular number, they will agree both in gender and number with the collective noun; but if the verb be plural, the adjective or participle will be plural also, and of the same gender with the individuals of which the collective noun is composed; as, *Pars erant cæsi*; *Pars obnixæ trudent*, sc. *formica*, Virg. Æn. iv. 436. *Magna pars rapta*, sc. *virgines*, Liv. i. 9.

Sometimes,

Sometimes, however, though more rarely, the adjective is thus used in the singular; as, *Pars arduus*, Virg. *Æn.* viii. 624.

Obf. 5. The neuter pronoun *it* in English, is often the nominative to the verb when we speak either of persons or things; as, *It is I*; *it is he*; *it was they*; *it appears*; in Latin, *Ego sum*, *ille est*, &c. *It* is sometimes understood; as, *may be*, for, *it may be*; as *follows*, for, *as it follows*; as *is thought*, for, *as it is thought*.

Obf. 6. We often say in English, *You was*, instead of *You were*; which is a great inaccuracy in grammar; but so frequently used, particularly in common conversation, that it seems to be in a manner established by custom. So *there's two or three of us*, for *there are*; *There was more Sophists*, for *were*; *great pains has been taken*, for *have*, &c.

*Accusative before the Infinitive.*

¶ IV. / The infinitive mode has an accusative before it; as,

*Gaudeo te valere,*

I am glad that you are well.

Obf. 1. The participle *that* in English, is the sign of the accusative before the infinitive in Latin, when it comes between two verbs, without expressing intention or design. Sometimes the participle is omitted; as, *Adiunt regem adventare*, They say the king is coming, *that* being understood.

Obf. 2. The accusative before the infinitive always depends upon some other verb, commonly on a neuter or substantive verb; but seldom on a verb taken in an active sense.

Obf. 3. The infinitive, with the accusative before it, seems sometimes to supply the place of a nominative; as, *Turpe est militem fugere*, That a soldier should fly is a shameful thing.

Obf. 4. The infinitive *esse* or *fuisse*, must frequently be supplied, especially after participles; as, *Hostium exercitum casum fasumque cognovi*, Cic. Sometimes both the accusative and infinitive are understood; as, *Pollicitus suscepturum*, scil. *me esse*, Ter.

Obf. 5. The infinitive may frequently be otherwise rendered by the conjunctions, *quod*, *ut*, *ne*, or *quin*; as, *Gaudeo te valere*, i. e. *quod valeas*, or *propter tuam bonam valetudinem*: *Iubeo vos bene sperare*, or *ut bene speretis*; *Prohibeo eum exire*, or *ne exeat*: *non dubito eum fecisse*, or much better, *quin fecerit*. *Scio quod filius amet*, Plaut. for *filium amare*; *Miror, si potuit*, for *eum potuisse*, Cic. *Nemo dubitat, ut populus Romanus omnes virtute superârit*, for *populum Romanum superasse*, Nep. *Ex animi sententia juro, ut ego rempublicam non deseram*, for *me non deserturum esse*, Liv. xxii. 53.

*The*

*The same Case after a Verb as before it.*

¶ V.] Any Verb may have the same case after it as before it; *when both words refer to the same thing*; as,

*Ego sum discipulus,  
Tu vocaris Joannes,  
Illa incedit regina,  
Scio illum haberi sapientem,  
Scio vos esse discipulos,*

I am a scholar.  
You are named John.  
She walks as a queen.  
I know that he is esteemed wise.  
I know that you are scholars.

So *Redeo iratus, jaceo supplex*; *Evadent digni*, they will become worthy; *Rempublicam defendi adolescens*; *nolo esse longus*, I am unwilling to be tedious; *Malim videri timidus, quam parum prudens*, Cic. *Non licet mihi esse negligentem*, Cic. *Natura dedit omnibus esse beatis*, Claud. *Cupio me esse clementem*; *cupio non putari mendacem*; *Vult esse medium*, sc. se, He wishes to be neuter, Cic. *Disce esse pater*; *Hoc est esse patrem?* sc. eum, Ter. *Id est, dominum, non imperatorem esse*; S. *Alust.*

Obf. 1. This rule implies nothing else but the agreement of an adjective with a substantive, or of one substantive with another; for those words in a sentence which refer to the same object, must always agree together, how much soever disjoined.

Obf. 2. The verbs which most frequently have the same case after them as before them, are,

1. Substantive and neuter verbs; as, *Sum, fio, forem*, and *existo*; *eo, venio, sto, sedeo, evado, jaceo, fugio, &c.*

2. The passive of verbs of naming, judging, &c. as, *Dicor, appellor, vocor, nominor, nuncupor*, to which add, *videor, existimor, creor, constitutor, salutor, designor, &c.*

These and other like verbs, admit after them only the nominative, accusative, or dative. When they have before them the genitive, they have after them an accusative; as, *Interest omnium esse bonos*, scil. se; It is the interest of all to be good. In some cases we can use either the nom. or acc. promiscuously; as, *Cupio dici doctus* or *doctum*; sc. me dici; *Cupio esse clemens, non putari mendax*; *vult esse medius*.

Obf. 3. When any of the above verbs are placed between two nominatives of different numbers they commonly agree in number with the former; as, *Dos est decem talenta*, Her dowry is ten talents, Ter. *Omnia pontus erant*, Ovid. But sometimes with the latter; as, *Amantium iræ amoris integratio est*, The quarrels of lovers is a renewal of love, Ovid. So when an adjective is applied to two substantives of different genders, it commonly agrees in gender with that substantive

stantive which is most the subject of discourse ; as, *Oppidum est appellatum Possidonia*, Plin. Sometimes, however, the adjective agrees with the nearer substantive ; as, *Non omnis error stultitia est dicenda*, Cic.

Obs. 4. When the infinitive of any verb, particularly the substantive verb *esse*, has the dative before it, governed by an Impersonal verb, or any other word, it may have after it either the dative or the accusative ; as, *Licet mihi esse beato*, I may be happy ; or, *licet mihi esse beatum*, me being understood ; thus, *licet mihi (me) esse beatum*, The dative before *esse* is often to be supplied ; as, *Licet esse beatum*, One may be happy, *scil. alicui or homini*.

Obs. 5. The poets use certain forms of expression, which are not to be imitated in prose ; as, *Restulit Ajax Jovis esse pronēpos*, for *Se esse pronēpotem*, Ovid. Met. xii. 141. *Cum pateris sapiens emendatusque vocari*, for *te vocari sapientem*, &c. Horat. Ep. I. 16. 30. *Acceptum refero versibus esse nocens* ; Ovid. *Tutumque putavit jam bonus esse socer* ; Lucan.

Obs. 6. The verb *to be* in English, has always a nominative case after it ; as, *It was I* : unless it be of the infinitive mode ; as, *I took it to be him*. We often use however this impropriety in common conversation, *It is me*, *It can't be me*, *It was him* ; for, *It is I*, *It cannot be I*, *It was he*.

## GOVERNMENT.

### I. The GOVERNMENT of SUBSTANTIVES.

VI. / One Substantive governs another in the genitive, (*when the latter Substantive signifies a different thing from the former*) ; as,

*Amor Dei*, the love of God. *Lex natura*, The law of nature.

*Domus Cæsaris*, The house of Cæsar, or Cæsar's house.

Obs. 1. When one substantive is governed by another in the genitive, it expresses in general the relation of property or possession, and therefore is often elegantly turned into a possessive adjective ; as, *Domus patris*, or *paterna*, a father's house ; *Filius veri* or *berilis*, a master's son : and among the poets, *Labor Herculeus*, for *Herculis* ; *Ensis Evandrius*, for *Evandri*.

Obs. 2. When the substantive noun in the genitive signifies a person, it may be taken either in an active or a passive sense : thus, *Amor Dei*, The love of God, either means the love of God towards us, or our love towards him : So *caritas patris*, signifies either, the affection of a father to his children, or theirs to him. But often the substantive can only be taken either in an active or in a passive sense ; thus, *Timor Dei*, always implies *Deus timetur* ; and *Providentia Dei*, *Deus providet*. So *Caritas ipsius soli*, affection to the very soul, Liv. ii. 1.

Obs. 3. Both the former and latter substantive are sometimes to be understood ; as, *Heclōris Andromache*, *scil. uxor* ; *Ventum est ad Vestem*, *scil. adem* or *templum* ; *Ventum est tria millia*, *scil. passuum*, three miles.

Obs. 4. We find the dative often used after a verb for the genitive,

O

particularly



particularly among the poets; as, *Ei corpus porrigitur*, His body is extended; Virg. *Æn.* vi. 596.

Obs. 5. Some substantives are joined with certain prepositions; as, *Amicitia*, *inimicitia*, *pax*, *cum aliquo*; *Amor* *in*, *vel erga*, *aliquem*; *Gaudium de re*; *Cura de aliquo*; *Mentio illius*, *vel de illo*; *Quies ab armis*; *Fumus ex incendiis*; *Prædator ex sociis*, *for sociorum*, Sallust, &c.

Obs. 6. The genitive in Latin is often rendered in English by several other particles besides *of*; as, *Descensus Averni*, the descent to Avernus; *Prudentia juris*, skill in the law.

**SUBSTANTIVE PRONOUNS** are governed in the genitive like substantive nouns; as, *pars mei*, a part of me.

So also adjective pronouns when used as substantives, or having a noun understood; as, *Libri ejus*, *illius*, *hujus*, &c. The book of him, or his book, *sc. hominis*: The book of her, or her book, *sc. femine*. *Libri eorum*, *v. earum*, their books; *Cujus liber*, the book of whom, or whose book; *Quorum libri*, whose books, &c. But we always say, *meus liber*, not *mei*; *pater noster*, not *nostri*, *suum jus*, not *sui*.

When a passive sense is expressed, we use *mei*, *tui*, *sui*, *nostri*, *vestri*, *nostrum*, *vestrum*; but we use their possessives, when an active sense is expressed; as, *Amor mei*, The love of me, that is, The love wherewith I am loved: *Amor meus*, My love, that is, the love wherewith I love. We find however the possessives sometimes used passively, and their primitives taken actively; as, *Odium tuum*, Hatred of thee, Ter. Phorm. v. 8. 27. *Labor mei*, My Labour, Plaut.

The possessives *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *oster*, *vester*, have sometimes nouns, pronouns, and participles after them in the genitive; as, *Pectus tuum hominis simplicis*, Cic. Phil. ii. 43. *Noster duorum eventus*, Liv. *Tantum ipsius studium*, Cic. *Mea scripta timentis*, &c. Hor. *Solius meum peccatum corrigi non potest*, Cic. *Id maxime quemque decet, quod est cujusque suum maxime*. Id.

The reciprocals *SUI* and *SUUS* are used, when the action of the verb is reflected, as it were, upon its nominative: as, *Cato interfecit se*, *Miles defendit suam vitam*: *Dicit se scripturum esse*. We find however *is* or *ille* sometimes used in examples of this kind; as, *Deum agnoscimus ex operibus ejus*, Cic. *Persuadent Rauracis, ut una cum iis proficiantur*, *for una secum*, Cæsar.

**VII.** If the latter Substantive have an Adjective of praise or dispraise joined with it, they may be put in the genitive or ablative; as,

*Vir summa prudentia*, or *summâ prudentiâ*, A man of great wisdom.

*Puer probe indolis*, or *probâ indole*, A boy of a good disposition.

Obs. 1. The ablative here is not properly governed by the foregoing substantive, but by some preposition understood; as, *cum*, *de*, *ex*, *in*, &c. Thus, *Vir summâ prudentiâ*, is the same with *vir cum summa prudentiâ*.

Obs.

-Obf. 2. In some phrases the genitive is only used; as, *Magni formica laboris*, The labor is ant; *Vir imi subsellii*, homo *minimi pretii*, a person of the lowest rank. *Homo nullius stipendii*, a man of no experience in war; Sallust. *Non multi cibi bespitum accipies, sed multi joci*, Cic. *Ager trium jugerum*. In others only the ablative; as, *Es bono animo*, Be of good courage. *Mira sum acacritate ad litigandum*, Cic. *Capite aperto est*, His head is bare; *obvoluto*, covered. *Capite et supercilio semper est rufus*, Id. *Mulier magno natu*, Liv. Sometimes both are used in the same sentence; as, *Adolescens eximia spe, summa virtutis*, Cic. The ablative more frequently occurs in prose than the genitive.

Obf. 3. Sometimes the adjective agrees in case with the former substantive, and then the latter substantive is put in the ablative: thus, we say, either, *Vir prastantis ingenii*, or *prastanti ingenio*; or *Vir prastans ingenio*, and sometimes *prastans ingenii*. Among the poets the latter substantive is frequently put in the accusative by a Greek construction, *secundum*, or *quod ad* being understood by the figure commonly called *Synecdoche*; as *Miles fractus membra*, i. e. *fractus secundum* or *quod ad membra*, or *habens membra fracta*, Horat. *Os humerusque deo similis*, Virg.

#### *Adjectives taken as Substantives.*

VIII. / An Adjective in the neuter gender without a substantive governs the genitive; / as,

*Multum pecunia*, Much money. *Quid rei est?* What is the matter?

Obf. 1. This manner of expression is more elegant than *Multa pecunia*, and therefore is much used by the best writers; as, *Plus eloquentia, minus sapientia, tantum fidei, id negotii; quicquid erat patrum, reos disces*, Liv. *Id loci; Ad hoc atatis*, Sallust.

Obf. 2. The adjectives which thus govern the genitive like substantives, generally signify quantity; as, *multum, plus, plurimum, tantum, quantum, minus, minimum, &c.* To which add, *hoc, illud, istud, id, quid, aliquid, quidvis, quiddam, &c.* *Plus* and *quid* almost always govern the genitive, and therefore by some are thought to be substantives.

Obf. 3. *Nilil*, and these neuter pronouns *quid, aliquid, &c.* elegantly govern neuter adjectives of the first and second declension in the genitive; as, *nilil sinceri*, no sincerity; but seldom govern in this manner adjectives of the third declension, particularly those which end in *is* and *e*; as, *Nequid hostie timerent*, not *hostilis*: we find however *quicquid civilis*, Liv. v. 3.

Obf. 4. Plural adjectives of the neuter gender also govern the genitive, commonly the genitive plural; as, *Angusta viarum, Opaca locorum, Telluris operata*, *loca* being understood. So *Amara curarum, acuta belli*, i. e. *negotia*, Horat. An adjective indeed of any gender may have a genitive after it, with a substantive understood; as, *Amicus Caesaris, Pater Ulyssis, &c.*

*Opus and Usus.*

IX. *Opus* and *Usus*, signifying *need*, require the ablative ; as,

*Est opus pecuniâ*, There is need of money ; *Usus viribus*, Need of strength.

Obs. 1. *Opus* and *usus* are substantive nouns, and do not govern the ablative of themselves, but by some preposition, as *pro* or the like, understood. They sometimes also, although more rarely, govern the genitive ; as, *Lectionis opus est*, Quint. *Opera usus est*, Liv.

Obs. 2. *Opus* is often construed like an indeclinable adjective ; as, *Dux nobis opus est*, We need a general, Cic. *Dices nummos mihi opus esse*, Id. *Nobis exempla opus sunt*, Id.

Obs. 3. *Opus* is elegantly joined with the perfect participle ; as, *Opus maturato*, Need of haste ; *Opus consulto*, Need of deliberation ; *Quid facto usus est ?* Ter. The participle has sometimes a substantive joined with it ; as, *Mihi opus fuit Hirtio convento*, It behoved me to meet with Hirtius, Cic.

Obs. 4. *Opus* is sometimes joined with the infinitive, or the subjunctive with *ut*, as, *Siquid forte sit, quod opus sit sciri*, Cic. *Nunc tibi opus est, agrum ut te adimules*, Plaut. *Sive opus est imperitare equis*, Horat. It is often placed absolutely, i. e. without depending on any other word ; as, *sic opus est ; si opus sit*, &c.

## II. GOVERNMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

1. *Adjectives governing the Genitive.*

X. Verbal adjectives, or such as signify an affection of the mind, govern the genitive ; as,

*Avidus gloriæ*, Desirous of glory. *Ignarus fraudis*, Ignorant of fraud. *Memor beneficiorum*, Mindful of favours.

To this rule belong, I. Verbal adjectives in AX ; as, *capax*, *edax*, *ferax*, *tenax*, *perlinax*, &c. and certain participial adjectives in NS and TUS ; as, *amans*, *appetens*, *cupiens*, *insolens*, *sciens* ; *consultus*, *doctus*, *expertus*, *insuetus*, *insolitus*, &c. II. Adjectives expressing various affections of the mind ; 1. Desire ; as, *avarus*, *cupidus*, *studiosus*, &c. 2. Knowledge, ignorance and doubting ; as, *callidus*, *certus*, *certior*, *consciens*, *gnarus*, *peritus*, *prudens*, &c. *Ignarus*, *incertus*, *insciens*, *imprudens*, *imperitus*, *immemor*, *rudis* ; *ambiguus*, *dubius*, *suspensus*, &c. 3. Care and diligence, and the contrary : as, *anxius*, *curiosus*, *solicitus*, *providus*, *diligens* ; *incuriosus*, *securus*, *negligens*, &c. 4. Fear and confidence ; as, *formidolosus*, *pavidus*, *timidus*, *trepidus* ; *impavidus*, *inter-*  
tus,

*tus, intrepidus.* 5. Guilt and innocence; as, *noxius, reus, suspectus, compertus; innoxius, innocens, insons.*

To these add many adjectives of various significations; as, *ager animi; ardens, audax, aversus, diversus, egregius, erectus, falsus, felix, fessus, furens, ingens, integer, latus, praeclans animi; modicus voti; integer vitae; seri si diorum,* Hor. But we say *ager pedibus, ardens in cupiditatibus, praeclans doctrinâ, mollicus cultu; Latus negotio, de re, or propter rem.* &c. and never *ager pedum,* &c.

Obs. 1. Verbals in NS are used both as adjectives and participles; thus, *patiens algoris*, able to bear cold; and *patiens algorem*, actually bearing cold. So *amans virtutis*, and *amans virtutem*: *doctus grammaticæ*, skilled in grammar; *doctus grammaticam*, one who has learned it.

Obs. 2. Many of these adjectives vary their construction, as, *avidus in pecuniis*, Cic. *Avidior ad rem*, Ter. *Iure consultus & peritus, ve juris*, Cic. *Rudis literarum, in iure civili*, Cic. *Rudis arte, ad malum*, Ovid. *Doctus Latine, Latinis literis*, Cic. *Affectus labore, in omnia*, Liv. *mensæ herili*, Virg. *I factus moribus Romanis*, in the dat. Liv. *Laboris, ad onera portanda*, Cael. *Defectus bello, & triumphis*, in the dat. or abl. rather the dat. Virg. *Anxius, sollicitus, securus, de re aliqua; diligens, in, ad, de*, Cic. *Negligens in aliquem, in or de re; Reus de vi, criminibus*, Cic. *Certior factus de re*, rather than *rei*, Cic.

Obs. 3. The genitive after these adjectives is thought to be governed by *causâ*, in *re*, or in *negotio*, or some such word understood; as, *Cupidus laudis*; i. e. *causâ* or in *re laudis*, desirous of praise, that is, on account of, or in the matter of praise. But many of the adjectives themselves may be supposed to contain in their own signification the force of a substantive; thus, *stultissus pecunie*, fond of money, is the same with *habens studium pecunia*, having a fondness for money.

XI. Partitives, and words placed partitively, comparatives, superlatives, interrogatives, and some numerals, govern the genitive plural; as,

*Aliquis philosophorum,*  
*Senior fratrum,*  
*Doctissimus Romanorum,*  
*Quis nostrum?*  
*Una musarum,*  
*Octavus sapientum.*

Some one of the philosophers.  
The elder of the brothers.  
The most learned of the Romans.  
Which of us?  
One of the muses.  
The eighth of the wise men.

Adjectives are called *Partitives*, or are said to be placed *partitively*, when they signify a part of any number of persons or things, having after them, in English, *of* or *among*; as, *alius, nullus, solus, &c. quis* and *qui*, with their compounds: also Comparatives, Superlatives, and

some Numerals ; as, *unus, duo, tres ; primus, secundus, &c.* To these add *multi, pauci, plerique, medius.*

Obs. 1. Partitives, &c. agree in gender with the substantive which they have after them in the genitive ; but when there are two substantives of different genders, the partitive, &c. rather agrees with the former ; as, *Indus fluminum maximus*, Cic. Rarely with the latter ; as, *Delphinus animalium velocissimum*, Plin. The genitive here is governed by *ex numero*, or by the same substantive understood in the singular number ; as, *Nulla sororum*, scil. *soror*, or *ex numero sororum*.

Obs. 2. Partitives, &c. are often otherwise construed with the prepositions *de, e, ex*, or *in* ; as, *Unus de fratribus* ; or by the poets, with *ante* or *inter* ; as, *Pulcherrimus ante omnes*, for *optimum*, Virg. *Primus inter omnes*, Id.

Obs. 3. Partitives, &c. govern collective nouns in the genitive singular, and are of the same gender with the individuals of which the collective noun is composed ; as, *Vir fortissimus nostræ civitatis*. Cic. *Maximus stirpis*, Liv. *Ultimos orbis Britannos*, Horat. od. i. 35. 29.

Obs. 4. Comparatives are used, when we speak of two ; Superlatives when we speak of more than two ; as, *Major Fratrum*, The elder of the brothers, meaning *two* ; *Maximus fratrum*, The eldest of the brothers, meaning *more than two*. In like manner, *uter, alter, neuter*, are applied with regard to two ; *quis, unus, alius, nullus*, with regard to three or more ; as, *Uter vestrum*, Whether or which of you *two* ; *Quis vestrum*, Which of you *three* ; but these are sometimes taken promiscuously the one for the other.

## 2. Adjectives governing the Dative.

XII. Adjectives signifying profit or disprofit, likeness or unlikeness, &c. govern the dative ; as,

|                                |                              |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>Utilis bello,</i>           | Profitable for War.          |
| <i>Perniciosus reipublicæ,</i> | Hurtful to the commonwealth. |
| <i>Similis patri,</i>          | Like to his father.          |

Or thus, *Any adjective may govern the dative in Latin, which has the signs TO or FOR after it in English.*

To this rule belong ;

1. Adjectives of profit or disprofit ; as, *Benignus, bonus, commodus, felix, fructuosus, propper, saluber*.—*Calamitosus, damnosus, dirus, exitiosus, funestus, incommodus, malus, noxius, perniciosus, pestifer.*

2. Of pleasure or pain ; as, *Acceptus, dulcis, gratus, gratiosus, jucundus, letus, suavis*.—*Acerbus, amarus, insuavis, injucundus, ingratus, molestus, tristis.*

3. Of friendship or hatred ; as, *Additus, æquus, amicus, benevolus, blandus, carus, deditus, fidus, fidelis, lenis, mitis, propitius*.—*Adversus, æmulus, asper, crudelis, contrarius, insensus, infestus, infidus, immitis, inimicus, iniquus, invidus, iratus, odiosus, suspectus, trux.*

4. Of clearness or obscurity ; as, *Apertus, certus, compertus, conspicuus, manifestus,*



*manifestus, notus, perspicuus.* — *Ambiguus, dubius, ignotus, incertus, obscurus.*

5. Of nearness; as, *Finitimus, propior, proximus, propinquus, socius, vicinus.*

6. Of fitness or unfitness; as, *Aptus, appositus, accommodatus, habilis, idoneus, opportunus.* — *Ineptus, inhabilis, importunus, inconueniens.*

7. Of ease or difficulty; as, *Facilis; levis, obuius, peruius.* — *Difficilis, arduus, gravis, laboriosus, periculosus, inuius.* To these add such as signify propensity or readiness; as, *Prenus, proclivis, propensus, promptus, paratus.*

8. Of equality or inequality; as, *Æqualis, æquævus, par, compar, suppar.* — *Inequalis, impar, dispar, discors.* Also of likeness or unlikeness, as, *Similis, amulus, geminus.* — *Dissimilis, absenus, alienus, diversus, discolor.*

9. Several adjectives compounded with CON; as, *Cognatus, concolor, concors, confinis, congruus, consanguineus, consentaneus, consonus, conueniens, contiguus, continuus, continens, contiguous;* as, *Mari ær continens est, Cic.*

To these add many other Adjectives of various significations; as, *Obnoxius, subiectus, supplex, credulus, absurdus, decorus, deformis, præsto, indecl. at hand, secundus, &c.* — particularly,

| Verbals in BILIS and DUS govern the dative & as,

*Amandus vel amabilis omnibus,* To be loved by all men.

So *Mors est terribilis malis; Optabilis omnibus pax; Adhibenda est nobis diligentia, Cic. Semel omnibus calcanda est via leti, Hor.* Also some participles of the perfect tense; as, *Bella matribus detestata, hated by, Hor.*

Verbals in DUS are often construed with the prep. a; as, *Deus est venerandus & colendus a nobis, Cic.* Perfect participles are usually so; as, *Mors Crassi est a multis despecta, rather than, multis despecta, Cic. A te invitatus, rogatus, proditus, &c. hardly ever tibi.*

Obf. 1. The dative is properly not governed by adjectives, nor by any other part of speech; but put after them, to express the object to which their signification refers.

The particle *to* in English is often to be supplied; as, *Similis patri, Like his father, to being understood.*

Obf. 2. Substantives have likewise sometimes a dative after them; as, *Ille est pater, dux, vel filius mihi, He is father, leader, or son to me: so, Præsidium reis, decus amicis, &c. Hor. Exitium pecori, Virg. Virtutibus hostis, Cic.*

Obf. 3. The following adjectives have sometimes the dative after them, and sometimes the genitive; *Affinis, similis, communis, par, proprius, finitimus, fidus, contrerminus, superstes, conscius, æqualis, contrarius, and aduersus;*

*versus*; as, *Similis tibi*, or *tui*; *Superstes patri* or *patris*; *Conscijs facinori* or *facinoris*. *Conscijs* and some others frequently govern both the genitive and dative; as, *Mens sibi conscia recti*. We say, *Similes*, *disimiles*, *pares*, *dispares*, *aquales*, *communes*, *inter se*: *Par & communis cum aliquo*. *Civitas secum ipsa discors*; *discordes ad alia*. Liv.

Obs. 4. Adjectives signifying usefulness, or fitness, and the contrary, have after them the dative or the accusative with a preposition; as,

*Utilis*, *inutilis*, *aptus*, *ineptus*, *accommodatus*, *idoneus*, *habilis*, *inhabilis*, *opportūnus*, *conveniēns*, &c. *alicui rei*, or *ad aliquid*. Many other adjectives governing the dative are likewise construed with prepositions; as, *Attentus questitis*, Hor. *Attentus ad rem*, Ter.

Obs. 5. Of adjectives which denote friendship or hatred, or any other affection of the mind towards any one. I. Some are usually construed with the dative only; as, *Affabilis*, *arrogans*, *asper*, *carus*, *difficilis*, *fidelis*, *invidiosus*, *iratus*, *offensus*, *suspectus*, *ALICUI*. II. Some with the preposition *IN* and the accusative; as, *Acerbus*, *animatus*, *beneficus*, *gratiosus*, *injuriosus*, *liberalis*, *mendax*, *misericors*, *officiosus*, *pius*, *impius*, *prolixus*, *severus*, *sordidus*, *torvus*, *vehemens*, *IN ALIQUEM*. III. Some either with the dative, or with the accus. and the preposition *IN*, *ERGA*, or *ADVERSUS* going before; as, *Contemax*, *criminofus*, *durus*, *exitiabilis*, *gravis*, *hospitalis*, *implacabilis*, (and perhaps also *inexorabilis* & *intolerabilis*,) *iniquus*, *sævus*, *ALICUI* or *IN ALIQUEM*. *Benevolus*, *benignus*, *meleffus*, *ALICUI* or *ERGA ALIQUEM*. *Mitis comis*; *IN*, or *ERGA ALIQUEM*, and *ALICUI*. *Pervicax ADVERSUS ALIQUEM*. *Cruclis* *IN ALIQUEM*; seldom *ALICUI*. *Amicus*, *amulus*, *inseffus*, *inseffus*, *ALICUI*, seldom *IN ALIQUEM*. *Gratus ALICUI*, or *IN*, *ERGA*, *ADVERSUS ALIQUEM*. We say *alienus alicui* or *alicujus*; but oftener *ab aliquo*, and sometimes *aliquo* without the preposition.

*AUDIENS* is construed with two datives; as, *Regi dicto audiens erat*, he was obedient to the king; not *regis*; *Dicto audiens fuit jussu magistratum*, Nep. *Nobis dicto audientes sunt*, not *dictis*, Cic.

Obs. 6. Adjectives signifying motion or tendency to a thing, have usually after them the accusative with the preposition *ad* or *in*, seldom the dative; as,

*Pronus*, *propensus*, *proclivis*, *celer*, *tardus*, *piger*, &c. *ad iram*, or *in iram*.

Obs. 7. *Propior* and *proximus*, in imitation of their primitive *prope*, often govern the accusative; as, *Propior montem*, scil. *ad*, Sall. *Proximus finem*, Liv.

Obs. 8. *ID* sometimes has the dative, chiefly in the poets; as, *Invitum qui servat, idem facit occidenti*, Hor. *Jupiter omnibus idem*, Virg. *Eodem*

*Eadem illis censemus*, Cic. But in prose we commonly find, *idem qui*, *et*, *ac*, *atque*, and also *ut*, *cum*; as, *Peripatetici quondam iidem erant qui Academici*, Cic. *Est animus erga te, idem ac fuit*, Ter. *Dianam & Lunam eandem esse putant*, Cic. *Iidem faciunt, ut*, &c. *In eodem loco mecum*, Cic. But it would be improper to say of the same person or thing under different names, *idem cum*; as, *Luna eadem est cum Diana*.

We likewise say, *alius ac*, *atque* or *et*; and so sometimes *similis & par*.

### 3. Adjectives governing the Ablative.

XIII. / These adjectives, *dignus*, *indignus*, *contentus*, *præditus*, *captus*, and *fretus*; also *natus*, *satus*, *ortus*, *editus*, and the like, govern the ablative; / as,

*Dignus honore*, Worthy of honour. *Captus oculis*, Blind. [strength. *Contentus parvo*, Content with little. *Fretus viribus*, Trusting to his *Præditus virtute*, Endued with virtue. *Ortus regibus*, Descended of kings.

So *generatus*, *creatus*, *cretus*, *prognatus*, *oriundus*, *procreatus* *regibus*.

Obs. 1. The ablative after these adjectives is governed by some preposition understood: as, *Contentus parvo*, scil. *cum*; *Fretus viribus*, scil. *in*, &c. Sometimes the preposition is expressed; as, *Ortus ex concubina*, Sallust. *Editus de nympba*, Ovid.

Obs. 2. *Dignus*, *indignus*, and *contentus*, have sometimes the genitive after them: as, *dignus æverum*, Virg. So *Maest esse*, or *maest esse virtutis* or *virtute*, Increase in virtue, or Go on and prosper; *Juberem maest esse virtute esse*, sc. *te*, Liv. ii. 12. In the last example *maest* seems to be used adverbially.

### 4. Adjectives governing the Genitive or Ablative.

XIV. / Adjectives of plenty or want govern the genitive or ablative; / as,

*Plenus ira* or *ira*, Full of anger. *Inops rationis* or *ratione*, Void of reason.

So *Non inops temporis, sed præcipi sumus*, Sen. *Lentulus non verbis inops*, Cic. *Dei plena sunt omnia*, Cic. *Maxima quaque domus servis est plena superbis*, Juv. *Res est solliciti plena timoris amor*, Ovid. *Amor & mille & mille est sæundissimus*, Plaut. *Fecunda virorum paupertas fugitur*, Lucan. *Omnium consiliorum ejus particeps*, Curt. *Homo ratione particeps*, Cic. *Nihil infidiis vacuum*, Id. *Vacuas cedis habete manus*, Ovid.

Some of these adjectives are construed, 1. with the genitive only; as, *Benignus, exors, imops, impotens, irritus, liberalis, munificus, prælargus*.

2. With the ablative only: *Beatus, disertus, frugifer, mutilus, tentus, dissentus, tumidus, turgidus*.

3. With the genitive more frequently: *Compos, consors, cœnus, ex-baris, exors, fertilis, indigus, parvus, pauper, prodigus, sterilis*.

4. With

4. With the ablative more frequently: *Abundans, coffus, extorris, fatus, frequens, gravis, gravidus, jejunos, liber, locuples, nudus, oneratus, onustus, ortus, pollens, solutus, truncus, viduus, and captus.*

5. With both promiscuously: *Copiosus, dives, facundus, ferax, immuns, inanis, inops, largus, modicus, immodicus, nimius, opulentus, plenus, potens, repletus, satur, vacuus, uber.*

6. With a preposition; as, *Copiosus, firmus, paratus, imparatus, inops, instructus, à re aliqua*; *tor quod ad rem aliquam attinet, in, or with respect to any thing. Extorris ab solo patrie, banished; Orbs ab optimatibus conatio, Liv. So pauper, tenuis, facundus, modicus, parvus in re aliqua. Immunis, inanis, liber, nudus, solutus, vacuus a re aliqua. Potens ad rem, & in re.*

## GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

### § 1. VERBS governing only one Case.

#### 1. Verbs which govern the Genitive.

XV. | *Sum*, when it signifies possession, property, or duty, governs the genitive; ) as,

*Est regis.* It belongs to the king; It is the part or property of a king.

So *Insipientis est dicere, non putarum.* It is the part or property of a fool, &c. *Militum est suo duci parere.* It is the part or duty of soldiers; &c. *Laudare se vani; vituperare stulti est,* Sen. *Hominis est errare; Arrogantis est negligere quid d se quisque sentiat,* Cic. *Pecus est Melibai,* Virg. *Hec sunt hominis;* Ter. *Pauperis est numerare pecus,* Ovid. *Temeritas est florentis aetatis, prudentia senectutis,* Cic.

¶ *Meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum,* are excepted; as, *Tuum est,* It is your duty. *Scio tuum esse,* I know that it is your duty.

Obf. 1. These possessive pronouns are used in the neuter gender instead of their substantives, *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri.* Other possessives are also construed in this manner; as, *Est regium, est humanum,* the same with *est regis, est hominis.* *Et facere et parti fortia, Romanum est.* Liv. ii. 12.

Obf. 2. Here some substantive must be understood; as, *officium, munus, res, negotium, opus, &c.* which are sometimes expressed; as, *Munus est principum; Tuum est hoc munus,* Cic. *Neutiquam officium liberi esse hominis puto,* Ter. In some cases the preceding substantive may be repeated; as, *Hic liber est (liber) fratris.* In like manner, some substantive must be supplied in such expressions as these; *Ea sunt modo gloriosa, neque patrant belli,* scil. *causa* or *facta,* Sall. *Nihil tam æquandæ libertatis est,* for *ad æquandam libertatem pertinet,* Liv.

Obf.

Obs. 3. We say, *Hoc est tuum munus*, or *tui muneris*: So *mos est* vel *fuit*, or *moris*, or *in more*, Cic.

XVI. / *Misereor*, *misereſco*, and *ſatago*, govern the genitive ;/ as,

*Misereſce civium tuorum*,

Pity your countrymen.

*Satagit rerum ſuarum*,

{ He has his hands full at home, or has  
enough to do about his own affairs.

Obs. 1. Several other verbs among the poets govern the genitive by a Greek conſtruction, particularly ſuch as ſignify ſome affection of the mind ; as, *Ango*, *decipior*, *deſipio*, *diſcrucior*, *excrucio*, *ſullo* & *ſallor*, *ſuſſidio*, *invideo*, *lato*, *miror*, *pendeo*, *ſudeo*, *vereor* ; as, *Ne angas te animi*, Plaut. *Laborum decipitur*, Hor. *Diſcrucior animi*, Ter. *Pendet mihi animus*, *pendeo animi vel animo* ; but we always ſay, *Pendemus animis*, not *animorum*, are in ſuſpence, Cic. *Juſtitia prius mirer*, Virg. In like manner, *Abſtineo*, *deſino*, *deſiſſo*, *quieſco*, *regno* ; likewise, *adipiſcor*, *condico*, *credo*, *fruſtror*, *ſuro*, *laudo*, *libero*, *levo*, *participo*, *prohibeo* : as, *Abſtineo irarum* ; *Deſine querelarum* ; *Regnavit populoſum*, Hor. *Deſiſtere pugna*, Virg. *Quarum rerum condixit*, Liv.

But all theſe verbs are for the moſt part differently conſtrued ; thus, *Angor*, *deſipio*, *diſcrucior*, *ſallor*, *animo*. *Hoc animum meum excruciat*. *Faſſidio*, *miror*, *vereor*, *aliquem vel aliquid*. *Lator aliqua re*. Some of them are joined with the infinitive ; or with *quod*, *ut*, *ne*, and the ſubjunctive.

In like manner we uſually ſay, *Deſino aliquid*, & *ab aliquo*, to give over ; *Deſiſſo incepto*, *de negotio*, *ab illa mente* ; *Quieſco a labore* ; *Regnare in equitibus*, *oppidis*, ſc. in, Cic. *Per urbes*, Virg. *Adiſiſci id* ; *Fruſtrari in re* ; *Furere de aliquo*, Cic.

Obs. 2. The genitive after verbs, in the ſame manner as after adjectives, is governed by ſome ſubſtantive underſtood. This ſubſtantive is different according to the different meaning of the verbs : thus, *Misereor fratris*, ſcil. cauſa, *Angor animi*, ſcil. dolore, or anxietate.

## 2. VERBS governing the Dative.

XVII. / Any verb may govern the dative in Latin, which has the ſigns TO or FOR after it in Engliſh ;/ as,

*Finis venit imperio*, An end is come to the empire, Liv.

*Animus redit hoſtibus*, Courage returns to the enemy, Id.

*Tibi ſeris*, *tibi metis*, You ſow for yourſelf, you reap for yourſelf, Plaut.

So, *Non nobis ſolum nati ſumus*, Cic. *Multa male eveniunt bonis*, Id. *Sol lucet etiam ſcleratis*, Sen. *Hareet lateri lethalis arundo*, Virg.

But as the dative after verbs in Latin is not ſlways rendered in Engliſh



English by *to* or *for*; nor are these particles always the sign of the dative in Latin, it will be necessary to be more particular.

I. *Sum*, and its compounds govern the dative;  
(except *possum*) ; as,

*Præfuit exercitui,*  
*Adfuit precibus,*

He commanded the army.  
He was present at prayers.

¶ *EST* taken for *Habeo*, *to have*, governs the dative of a person ; as,

*Est mihi liber,*  
*Sunt mihi libri,*

A book is to me, that is, I have a book.  
Books are to me, i. e. I have books.

*Dico libros esse mihi,* I say that I have books.

This is more frequently used than *habeo librum*; *habeo libros*. In like manner *DEEST* instead of *careo*; as, *Liber deest mihi*, I want a book; *Libri defunt mihi*; *Scio libros deesse mihi*, &c.

II. Verbs compounded with *SATIS*, *BENE*, and *MALE*, govern the dative ; as,

*Satisfacio, fatiſdo, benefacio, benedico, benevolo, malefacio, maledico tibi*, &c.

III. Many verbs compounded with these nine prepositions, *AD*, *ANTE*, *CON*, *IN*, *INTER*, *OB*, *PRÆ*, *SUB*, and *SUPER*, govern the dative ; as, )

1. *Accedo, accresco, accumbo, acquiesco, adno, adnato, adequito, adhareo, adſto, adſpuler, aduolvor, aſſulgeo, allabor, allabero, annuo, appareo, applaudo, appropinquo, aridito, aspiro, aſſentior, aſſideo, aſſiſto, aſſueſco, aſſurgo.*

2. *Antecello, anteco, anteſto, anteverto.*

3. *Colludo, concino, conſano, convivo.*

4. *Incumbo, indormio, indubito, inbio, ingemiſco, inbareo, infideo, inſidiar, inſto, inſiſto, inſudo, inſulto, invigilo, illacrymo, illudo, immineo, immorior, impendeo.*

5. *Intervenio, intermico, intercedo, interſido, interjaceo.*

6. *Obreſpo, obluſtor, obtrecto, obſtrepo, obmurmuro, occumbo, occurro, occurſo, obſto, obſiſto, obvenio.*

7. *Præcedo, præcurro, præco, præſideo, prælucco, præniteo, præſto, prævaleo, præverto.*

8. *Succedo, succumbo, ſufficio, ſuffragor, ſubcreſco, ſuboleo, ſubjaceo, ſubrepo.*

9. *Supervenio, supercurro, ſuperſto.* But most verbs compounded with *SUPER* govern the accusative.

IV. Verbs govern the dative, which signify,

1. To profit or hurt ; as,

*Proſicio,*

*Proscio, presum, placeo, commodo, prospicio, caveo, metuo, timeo, consulo, for prospicio.* Likewise, *Nocto, officio, incommodo, displiceo, infestior.*

2. /To favour or assist, and the contrary ;/ as,

*Faveo, gratuler, gratificor, grator, ignosco, indulgeo, parco, aduler, plaudo, blandior, lenocinor, palpor, assentor, subparasitor.* Likewise, *Auxilior, adminiculator, subvenio, succurro, patrocinor, medeor, medicor, opitulator.* Likewise, *Derogo, detrabo, invideo, emulor.*

3. /To command and obey, to serve and resist ;/ as,

*Impero, præcipio, mando, moderor, for modum, adhibeo.* Likewise *Pareo, ausculto, obedio, obsequor, obtempero, moremgero, morigeror, obsecundo.* Likewise, *Fumulator, servio, inservio, ministro, ancillor.* Likewise, *Reprougno, obolo, reluctor, renitor, resisto, refragor, adversor.*

4. /To threaten and to be angry ;/ as,

*Minor, comminor, interminor, irascor, succensco.*

5. To trust ; as, *Fido, confido, credo, diffido.*

To these add *Nudo, excello, barco, supplico, cedo, despairo, operor, præstolor, prevaricor, recipio, to promise ; renuncio ; respondeo, to answer or satisfy ; tempero, studeo, vaco, to apply ; convicior.*

Exc. / *Jubeo, juvo, ludo, and offendo,* govern the accusative. |

Obf. 1. Verbs governing the dative only are either neuter verbs, or of a neuter signification. Active verbs governing the dative have also an accusative expressed or understood.

Obf. 2. Most verbs governing the dative only, have been enumerated, because there are a great many verbs compounded with prepositions, which do not govern the dative, but are otherwise construed ; and still more signifying advantage or disadvantage, &c. which govern the accusative ; as, *Levo, erigo, alo, nutrio, amo, diligo, vexo, crucio, averfor, &c. aliquem, not alicui.*

Obf. 3. Many of these verbs are variously construed ; particularly such as are compounded with a preposition ; as,

*Anteire, antecedere, antecellere, præcedere, præcurrere, præire, &c. alicui, or aliquem, to go before, to excel.*

*Acquiescere, rei, re, v. in re. Adequare portæ ; Syracusas.*

*Adjacere, mari, v. mare, to lie near.*

*Adnare navibus, naves, ad naves, to swim to.*

*Adversari ei, rarely eum, to oppose.*

*Advolvi genibus, genua, ad genua, to fall at one's knees.*

*Advolare ei, ad eum ; rostra, to fly up to.*

*Adspirare rei v. homini ; rem v. hominem ; aliquid alicui, to breathe upon.*

*Adulari ei, v. eum, to flatter. Allabi oris ; aures ejus, Virg. ad exta, Liv.*

Apparere consuli, *to attend*; ad solium Jovis; Rés apparet mihi, *appears*.  
 Appropinquare Britannia, portam, ad portam, *to approach*.  
 Dominari cunctis oris, Virg. in cætera animalia, *to rule over*, Ovid.  
 Congruere alicui, cum re aliqua, inter se, *to agree*.  
 Fidere, confidere alicui rei, aliqua re, in re, *to trust to or in*.  
 Ignoscere mihi, culpæ meæ, mihi culpam, *to pardon me or my fault*.  
 Impendere alicui, aliquem, in aliquem, *to hang over*.  
 Incessit cura, cupido, timor ei, eum, v. in eum, *seized*.  
 Incumbere toro; gladium, in gladium, *to fall upon*; labori, ad laudem,  
 ad studia, in studium, curam, cogitationem, &c. *to apply to*.  
 Indulgere alicui, id ei; nimio, vestitu, *to indulge in*. Ter.  
 Inhiare auro, bona ejus, *to gaze after*. Innasci agris, in agris, *to grow in*.  
 Inniti rei, re, in re; in aliquem, *to depend on*.  
 Insultare rei & homini, v. hominem; fores; patientiam ejus, in mi-  
 seriam ejus; bonos, *to insult over*.  
 Latet res mihi, v. me, i. unknown to me. Mederi ei; cupiditates, *to cure*.  
 Ministrare ei, *to serve*; arma ei, *to furnish*.  
 Moderari animo, gentibus; navim, omnia, *to rule*.  
 Nocere ei, rarely eum, *to hurt*, Plaut.  
 Nubere alicui; in familiam; nupta ei & cum eo, *to marry*, Cic.  
 Obrepere ei & eum, *to creep upon*; in animos; ad honores.  
 Obstreperere auribus & aures. Obrectare ei laudibus, ejus, *to detract from*.  
 Obumbrat sibi vinea; solem nubes, shades. Palpari alicui & aliquem.  
 Pascisci alicui, cum aliquo; vitam ab eo, Sall. vitam pro laude, Virg.  
 Prætolari alicui & aliquem, *to wait upon*.  
 Procumbere terræ; genibus ejus, Ovid. ad genua, Liv. ad pedes, *to fall*.

To these may be added verbs, which, chiefly among the poets, go-  
 vern the dative, but in prose are usually construed with a preposition;  
 as, 1. *Contendo, certo, bello, pugno, concurro, coco, alicui*, for *cum aliquo*;  
 2. *Disfare, dissentire, diserepare, dissidere, differre rei alicui*, for *a re ali-*  
*qua*. We also say, *Contendunt, pugnant, distant, &c. inter se*; and *con-*  
*tendere, pugnare contra & adversus aliquem*.

Obs. 4. Many verbs vary both their signification and construction;  
 as, *Timeo, metus, formido, horreo tibi, de te, & pro te*, I am afraid for  
 you, or for your safety; but *timeo, horreo te, v. a te*, I fear or dread  
 you as an enemy: So *Consulo, prospicio, caveo tibi*, I consult or provide  
 for your safety; but *consulo te, I ask your advice; prospicio hoc*, I foresee  
 this: *Studere aliquid*, to desire; *alicui*, to favour; *alicui rei, rem, &*  
*in re*, to apply to a thing. So, *Emulor tibi*, I envy; *te*, I imitate;  
*Ausculto tibi*, I obey or listen to; *te*, I hear; *Cupio tibi*, I favour, *rem*,  
 I desire; *Fanero, & -or tibi*, I lend you on interest; *abs te*, I borrow;  
*Metuisti, ne non tibi istuc sceneraret*, should not return with interest,  
 or bring usury, Ter. And thus many other verbs, which will be  
 afterwards explained.

Obs. 5. Verbs signifying *Motion* or *Tendency* to a thing  
 are construed with the preposition *ad*; as,

*Es, vado, curro, propero, festino, pergo, fugio, tendo, vergo, inclino, &c. ad locum, rem, v. hominem.* Sometimes however in the poets they are construed with the dative; as, *It clamor celo*, for *ad calum*, Virg.

### 3. Verbs governing the Accusative.

XVIII. / A Verb signifying actively governs the accusative; as,

*Ama Deum*, Love God. *Reverere parentes*, Reverence your parents.

Obs. 1. Neuter verbs also govern the accusative, when the noun after them has a signification similar to their own; as,

*Ire iter* or *viam*; *Pugnare pugnam* or *prælium*; *Currere cursum*; *Caveræ cantilenam*; *Vivere vitam*; *Ludere ludum*; *Sequi scellam*; *Somniare somnium*, &c. or when they are taken in a metaphorical sense; as, *Corydon ardebat Alexin*, scil. *propter*, i. e. *vehementer amabat*, Virg. *Currimus æquor*, scil. *per*, Id. So, *Comptes arsit adulteri crines*, Hor. *Salvare Cyclopa*; *olæ bircum*; *Sulcos et vineta crepat mera*, Hor. *Vox barninæ sonat*; *Sudare mella*, Virg. *Si Xerxes Hellesponto juncto, et Athens per-fosso, maria ambulavisset, terramque navigasset*, sc. *per*, Cic. Or when they have a kind of active sense; as, *Clamare aliquem nomine*, Virg. *Callere jura*; *Marere mortem*; *Horret iratum mare*, Hor.

Sometimes instead of the accusative neuter verbs have an ablative; as, *Ire itinere*; *dolere dolore*, *vicem ejus*; *gaudere gaudio*; *mori v. obire morte*; *vivere vitâ*; *ardet virgine*, Horat. *Ludere aleam*, v. *â*; *manare, pluvire, rorare, stillare, sudare, aliquid vel aliquo*. *Erubescere jura*, Virg. *origine*, Tacit. *equo vehi*, Curt.

Obs. 2. Several verbs are used both in an active and neuter sense; as,

*Abhorrere famam*, to dread infamy, Liv. a litibus; ab uxore du-cenda, to be averse from: Id. a meis moribus abhorret, is in-consistent with, Cic.

*Abolere monumenta viri*, to abolish, Virg. *Iis Cladis Caudinæ non-dum memoria aboleverat*, was not effaced from, they had not for-gotten, Liv.

*Adolere penates*, to burn, to sa-crifice to, Virg.

*Ætas adolevit*; *adolevit ad æta-tem*, Plaut.

*Declinare ictum*, to avoid; *loco*; *agmen aliquo*, to remove.

*Degenerare animos*, to weaken; pa-tri, to degenerate from; a virtute majorum.

*Durare adolescentes labore*, to har-den; *Resdurat ad breve tempus*, endures; *In ædibus durare ne-queo*, stay or remain, Plaut.

*Inclinare culpam in aliquem*, to lay; *Hos ut sequar inclinat ani-mus*, inclines; *acies inclinat*, vel *inclinatur*, gives way.

*Laborare arma*, to forge; *morbo*, a dolore, e renibus, to be ill; de-re aliqua, to be concerned.

*Morari iter*, to stop; *in urbe*, to stay;

*flay*; Hoc nihil moror, *I do not mind.* Suppeditare copiam dicendi, *to furnish*; Sumptus illi, *vel illi sumptibus*, Terent. suppeditat ei ratio, *is afforded*; Manubiæ in fundamenta vix suppeditârunt, *were sufficient*, Liv.

Obs. 3. These accusatives, *hoc, id, quid, aliquid, quicquid, nihil, idem, illud, tantum, quantum, multa, pauca*, &c. are often joined with neuter verbs, having the prepositions *circa* or *propter* understood; as, *Id laurumât, Id succenset*, Ter.

Obs. 4. The accusative is often understood. *Tum proa avertit*, sc. *se*, Virg. *Flumina præcipitant*, sc. *se, id.* *Quòcunque intenderat*, sc. *se*, turned or directed himself, Sallust. *Obiit*, sc. *mortem*, Ter. *Cum faciam vitulâ*, sc. *sacra*, Virg. Or its place supplied by an infinitive or part of a sentence; as, *Reddes dulce loqui, reddes videre decorum*; for *dulcem sermonem, decorum risum*, Hor.

XIX. | *Recordor, meminî, reminiscor*, and *obliscor*, govern the accusative or genitive; | as,

*Recordor lætionis* or *lætionem*,  
*Obliscor injuria* or *injuriam*,

I remember the lesson.  
I forget an injury.

Obs. 1. These verbs are often construed with the infinitive or some part of a sentence; as, *Memini videre virginem*, Ter. *Oblitus est, quid paulo ante posuisset*, Cic.

Obs. 2. *Memini*, when it signifies to *make mention*, is joined with the genitive, or the ablative with the preposition *de*; as, *Memini alicujus*, *vel de aliquo*. So *recordor*, when it signifies to *recollect*; as, *Velim scire ecquid de te recordere*, Cic.

#### 4. VERBS governing the Ablative.

XX. | Verbs of plenty and scarceness for the most part govern the ablative; | as,

*Abundat divitiis*,  
*Caret omni culpa*,

He abounds in riches.  
He has no fault.

Verbs of plenty are, *Abundo, affluo, exubero, redundo, suppedito, scateo*, &c.; of want, *Careo, egeo, indigeo, vaco, deficior, destituor*, &c.

Obs. 1. *Egeo* and *indigeo* frequently govern the genitive; as, *Eget ari*, He needs money, Hor. *Non tam artis indigent, quam laboris*, Cic.

Obs. 2. The ablative after these verbs is governed by some preposition understood: and sometimes we find it expressed; as, *Vacat a culpa*, he is free from fault, Liv.

XXI.



XXI. / *Utor, abutor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor*, govern the ablative ;/ as,

*Utitur fraude*, He uses deceit. *Abutitur libris*, He abuses books.

To these add, *gaudeo, creor, nascor, fido, vivo, visito, consto, labōro*, for *male me habeo*, to be ill ; *pascor, epūlor, mitor*, &c.

Obs. 1. *Potior* often governs the genitive ; as, *Potiri urbis*, Sall. And we always say *Potiri rerum*, to possess the chief command ; never *rebus, imperio* being understood.

Obs. 2. *Potior, fungor, vescor, epulor*, and *pascor*, sometimes have an accusative ; as, *Potiri urbem*, Cic. *Offic a fungi*, Ter. *Munera fungi*, Tacit. *Pascuntur silvas*, Virg. And in ancient writers *utor, abutor*, and *fruor* ; as, *Uti consilium*, Plaut. *Operam abutitur*, Ter. *Depasco* and *depascor* always take an accusative ; as, *Depascitur artus*, Virg.

## § 2. VERBS governing two Cases.

### 1. Verbs governing two Datives.

XXII. / *Sum* taken for *affero* (to bring) governs two datives, the one of a person, and the other of a thing ;/ as,

*Est mihi voluptati*, It is, or brings a pleasure to me.

Two datives are also put after *habeo, do, verto, relinquo, tribuo, fore, duco*, and some others ; as,

*Ducitur honori tibi*, It is reckoned an honour to you. *Id vertitur mihi vitio*, I am blamed for that. So, *Misit mihi muneri* ; *Dedit mihi dono* ; *Habet sibi laudi* ; *Venire, occurrere auxilio alicui*, Liv.

Obs. 1. Instead of the dative, we often use the nominative, or the accusative ; as, *Est exitium pecori*, for *exitio* ; *Dare aliquid alicui donum*, or *dono* ; *Dare filiam ei nuptum*, or *nuptui*. When *dare* and other active verbs have two datives after them, they likewise govern an accusative either expressed or understood ; as, *Dare crimini ei*, sc. *id*.

Obs. 2. The dative of the person is often to be supplied ; as, *Est exemplo, indicio, praesidio, usui*, &c. scil. *mihi, alicui, hominibus*, or some such word. So, *ponere, opponere pignori*, sc. *alicui*, to pledge. *Canere receptui*, sc. *suis militibus*, to sound a retreat ; *Habere curam, quassui, odio, voluptati, religioni, studio, ludibrio, despicitui*, &c. sc. *sibi*.

Obs. 3. To this rule belong forms of naming ; as, *Est mihi nomen Alexandro*, my name is Alexander ; or with the nominative, *Est mihi nomen Alexander* ; or more rarely with the genitive, *Est mihi nomen Alexandri*.

## 2. VERBS governing the Accusative and the Genitive.

XXIII. / Verbs of accusing, condemning, acquitting, and admonishing, govern the accusative of a person with the genitive of a thing ;) as,

*Arguit me furti,*

He accuses me of theft.

*Meipsum inertiae condemno,*

I condemn myself of laziness.

*Illum homicidii absolvunt,*

They acquit him of manslaughter.

*Monet me officii,*

He admonishes me of my duty.

Verbs of accusing are, *Accuso ago, appello, arcesso, anguro, arguo, defero. insimulo. postulo, alligo, astringo* ; of condemning, *Damno, condemno, infamo, noto* ; of acquitting, *Absolvo, libero, purgo* ; of admonishing, *Moneo, admono, commonefacio*.

Obs. 1. Verbs of accusing and admonishing, instead of the genitive, frequently have after them an ablative, with the preposition *de* ; as, *Movere aliquem officii*, or *de officio* ; *Accusare aliquem furti*, or *de furto*. *De vi condemnati sunt*, Cic.

Obs. 2. *Crimen* and *caput* are put either in the genitive or ablative ; but in the ablative usually without a preposition ; as, *Damnare, postulare, absolvere eum criminis, v. capitis* ; & *crimine, v. capite* ; also *Absolvere me peccato*, Liv. And we always say, *Plectere, punire aliquem capite*, and not *capitis*, to punish one capitally, or with death.

Obs. 3. Many verbs of accusing, &c. are not construed with the acc. of a person and the gen. of a thing, but the contrary ; thus we say, *Culpo, reprehendo, taxo, traduco, vitupero, calumnior, criminor, excuso*, &c. *avaritiam alicujus*, and not *aliquem avaritie*. We sometimes also find *accuso, incuso*, &c. construed in this manner ; as, *Accusare inortiam adolescentium*, for *adolescentes inertiae*, Cic. *Culpam arguo*, Liv. We say, *Agere cum aliquo furti*, rather than *aliquem*, to accuse one of theft, Cic.

Obs. 4. Verbs of accusing and admonishing sometimes govern two accusatives, when joined with *hoc, illud, istud, id, unum, multa, &c.* as *Moneo, accuso te illud*. We seldom however find, *Errorrem te moneo*, but *erroris*, or *de errore* ; except in old writers ; as, Plautus.

XXIV. / Verbs of valuing, with the accusative, govern such genitives as these, *magni, parvi, nihili* ;) as,

*Æstimo te magni,*

I value you much.

Verbs of valuing are, *Æstimo, existimo, duco, facio, habeo, pendo, puto, taxo*. They govern several other genitives ;

as,

as, tanti, quanti, pluris majoris, minoris, minimi, plurimi, maximi, nauci, pili, affis nibili teruncii, hujus.

Obs. 1. *Æstimo* sometimes governs the ablative; as, *Æstimo te magno, permagno, parvo*, scil. *pretio*: and also *nibilo*. We likewise say, *Pro nibilo habeo, puto, duco*.

Obs. 2. *Æqui* and *boni* are put in the genitive after *facio* and *consulo*, as, *Hoc consulo boni, æqui bonique facio*. I take this in good part.

Obs. 3. The genitive after all these verbs is governed by some substantive understood; as, *Arguere aliquem furti*, scil. *de crimine furti*; *Æstimo rem magni*, scil. *pretii*, or *pro re magni pretii*; *Consulo boni*, i. e. *statuo* or *censeo esse factum*, or *mihi boni viri*; or *animi*; *Monere aliquem officii*, i. e. *officii causâ*, or *de re* or *negotio officii*.

### 3. VERBS governing the Accusative and the Dative.

XXV. / Verbs of comparing, giving, declaring, and taking away, govern the accusative and dative; / as,

*Compāro Virgilium Homero,*  
*Sum cuique tributo,*  
*Narras fabulam surdo,*  
*Eripuit me morti,*

I compare Virgil to Homer.  
Give every one his own.  
You tell a story to a deaf man.  
He rescued me from death.

Or rather,—ANY ACTIVE VERB MAY GOVERN THE ACCUSATIVE AND THE DATIVE, (when together with the object of the action, we express the person or thing with relation to which it is exerted); as,

*Legam lectionem tibi*, I will read the lesson to you. *Emit librum mihi*, He bought a book for me. *Sic vos non vobis fertis aratra boves*, Virg. *Paupertas sæpe suadet mala hominibus*, advises men to do bad things, Plaut. *Imperare pecuniam, frumentum, naves, arma aliquibus*, to order them to furnish, Cæs.

Obs. 1. Verbs of comparing and taking away, together with some others, are often construed with a preposition; as, *Comparare unam rem cum alia*, & *ad aliam*, or *comparare res inter se*: *Eripuit me morti*, *morte*, or *ex morte*: *Mittere epistolam alicui*, or *ad aliquem*: *Intendere telum alicui*, or *in aliquem*: *Incidere ari*, *in as*, or *in are*: and so in many others.

Obs. 2. Several verbs governing the dative and accusative, are construed differently; as,

*Circumdare mania oppido*, or *oppidum manibus*, to surround a city with walls

*Intercludere comeatum alicui*, or *aliquem comeatu*, to intercept one's provisions.

*Donare, prohibere rem alicui*, or *aliquem re*, to give one a present, to hinder one from a thing.

*Mactare hostiam Deo*, or *Deum hostiâ*, to sacrifice.

*Impertire*

*Impertine salutem alicui*, or *aliquem salute*, to salute one.

*Interdixit Galliam Romanis*, or *Romanos Galliâ*, he debarred the Romans from Gaul.

*Induere, exuere vestem sibi*, or *se veste*, to put on, to put off one's cloaths.

*Levare dolorem alicui*; *dolorem alicujus*; *aliquem dolore*, to ease one's distress.

*Minari aliquid alicui*, or sometimes *alicui aliquo*, Cic. to threaten one with any thing; *Cæsari gladio*, Sall.

*Gratular tibi hanc rem, hac re*, in, pro, & de hac re, I congratulate you on this. *Mettus Tullo devictos hostes gratulatur*, Liv.

*Restituere alicui sanitatem*, or *aliquem sanitati*, to restore to health.

*Aspergere labem alicui* or *aliquem labe*, to put an affront on one; *aram sanguine*. *Litare Deum sacris*, & *sacra Deo*, to sacrifice.

*Excusare se alicui* & *apud aliquem, de re*; *valetudinem ei*.

*Exprobare vitium ei v. in eo*, to upbraid.

*Occupare pecuniam alicui*, & *apud aliquem*, i. e. *pecuniam sanari locare*, to place at interest. Cic.

*Opponere se morti*, & *ad mortem*. *Renunciare id ei*, & *ad eum*, to tell.

Obs. 3. Verbs signifying motion or tendency to a thing, instead of the dative, have an accusative after them, with the preposition *ad*; as,

*Porto, fero, lego, as, præcipito, tollo, traho, duco, verto, incito, suscito*; also *bortor*, and *invito, voco, provooco, animo, stimulo, consermo, laceſſo*; thus, *Ad laudem milites hortatur*; *Ad prætoris hominem trahit*, Cic. But after several of these verbs, we also find the dative; as, *Inferre Deos Latio*, for in *Latium*, Virg. *Invitare aliquem hospitio*, or in *hospitium*, Cic.

Obs. 4. The accusative is sometimes understood; as, *Nubere alicui*, scil. *se*; *Cedere alicui*, scil. *locum*; *Detrahere alicui*, scil. *laudem*; *Ignoscere alicui*, scil. *culpam*. And in English the particle *to* is often omitted; as, *Dedit mihi librum*, He gave me a book, for *to me*.

#### 4. VERBS governing two Accusatives.

XXVI. | Verbs of asking and teaching govern two accusatives, the one of a person, and the other of a thing; | as,

*Poscimus te pacem,*

*Docuit me Grammaticam,*

We beg peace of thee.

He taught me grammar.

1. Verbs of asking which govern two accusatives are, *Roro, oro, exoro, obsecro, precor, posco, reposco, flagito*, &c. Of teaching, *Doceo, edoceo, dedoceo, erudio*.

Obs. 1. *Celo* likewise governs two accusatives; as, *Cela-*  
vit

*vit me hanc rem*, He concealed this matter from me; or otherwise, *celavit hanc rem mihi*, or *celavit me de hac re*.

Obf. 2. Verbs of asking and teaching are often construed with a preposition; as, *Rogare rem ab aliquo*; *Docere aliquem de re*, to inform; but we do not say, *docere aliquem de grammatica*, but *grammaticam*, to teach. And we always say, with a preposition, *Peto, exigo a v. ab te*; *Percontor, scitor, sciscitor, ex or a te*, or *te* without the preposition; *Interrogo, consulto te de re*; *Ut facias te obsecro*; *Exorat pacem divum, for divos*, Virg. *Instruo, instituo, formo, informo aliquem artibus*, in the abl. without a prep. *Imbuo eum artibus*, in *v. ab artibus*. Also *instruo ad rem*, *v. in re*, *ignorantiam alicujus*. *Erudire aliquem artes*, de *v. in re*, *ad rem*. *Formare ad studium, mentem studii, studia ejus*.

Obf. 3. The accusative of the thing is not properly governed by the verb, but by *quod ad* or *secundum* understood.

### 5. VERBS governing the Accusative and the Ablative.

XXVII. / Verbs of loading, binding, cloathing, depriving, and some others, govern the accusative and the ablative; as,

*Onerat naves auro,*

He loads the ships with gold.

Verbs of loading are, *Onero, cumulo, premo, opprimo, obruo*: Of unloading, *levo, exonero*, &c. Of binding, *astringo, ligo, alligo, devincio, impedio, irretio, illaquo*, &c. Of loosing, *solvo, exsolvo, libero, laxo, expedio*, &c. Of depriving, *privo, nudo, orbo, spolio, fraudo, emungo*: Of cloathing, *vestio, amicio, induo, cingo, tego, velo, corono*, & *calceo*: Of uncloathing, *exuo, disingo*, &c.

Obf. 1. The preposition, by which the ablative is governed after these verbs, is sometimes expressed; as, *Solvere aliquem ex catenis*, Cic. Sometimes the ablative is to be supplied; as, *Complet naves*, sc. *viris*, mans the ships, Virg.

Obf. 2. Several of these verbs likewise govern the genitive; as, *Adolecentem sua temeritatis implet*, Liv. And also vary their construction; as, *Induit, exuit se vestibus*, or *vestes sibi*.

### The CONSTRUCTION of PASSIVE VERBS.

XXVIII. / When a verb in the active voice governs two cases, in the passive it retains the latter case/; as,

*Accusor furti,*

I am accused of theft.

*Virgilius comparatur Homero,*

Virgil is compared to Homer.

*Docor grammaticam,*

I am taught grammar.

*Navis oneratur auro,*

The ship is loaded with gold.

So *Scio homines accusatum iri furti*; — *Eos creptum iri morti, morte, a vel*



vel ex morte; — *pueros doctum iri grammaticam*; — *rem celatum iri mihi vel me*; *me celatum iri de re*, &c.

Sometimes the active has three cases, and then the passive has the two last cases; as, *Habetur ludibrio iis*.

Obs. 1. Passive verbs are commonly construed with the ablative and the preposition *a*; as,

*Tu laudaris a me*, which is equivalent to, *Ego laudo te*. *Virtus diligitur a nobis*; *Nos diligimus virtutem*. *Gaudeo meum factum probari a te*, or *te probare meum factum*: And so almost all active verbs. Neuter and deponent verbs also admit this preposition; as, *Mare a sole collucet*, Cic. *Phalaris non a paucis interiit*, Id. So *Cadere ab hoste*; *Cessare a præliis*; *Mori ab ense*; *Pati, furari, aliquid ab aliquo*, &c. Also *Venire ab hostibus*, to be sold; *Vapulare ab aliquo*, *Exulare ab urbe*. Thus likewise many active verbs; as, *Sumere, petere, tollere, pellere, expectare, emere*, &c. *ab aliquo*.

The prep. is sometimes understood after passive verbs; as, *Deseror conjuge*, Ovid. *Desertus suis*, sc. *a*, Tacit. *Tabulâ distinguitur undâ*; *qui navigat*, sc. *ab unda*, is kept from the water by a plank, *Juvenal*.

The preposition PER is also used in the same sense with A; as, *Per me defensa est respublica*, or *a me*; *Per me restitutus*; *Per me v. a me factum est*, Cic. But PER commonly marks the instrument, and A the principal efficient cause; as, *Res agitur per creditores a rege*, sc. *a rege vel a legato ejus*, Cic. Fam. i. 1.

Obs. 2. Passive verbs sometimes govern the dative, especially among the poets; as,

*Neque cernitur ulli*, for *ab ullo*, Virg. *Vix audior ulli*, Ovid. *Scriberis Vario*, for *a Vario*, Hor. *Honestâ bonis viris queruntur*, for *a viris*, Cic. VIDEO, to seem, always governs the dative; as, *Videris mihi*, You seem to me: But we commonly say, *Videris a me*, You are seen by me; although not always; as, *Nulla tuarum audita mihi, neque visa sororum*, for *a me*, Virg.

Obs. 3. *Induor, amicio, cingo, accingo*, also *exuor* and *discingo*, are often construed with the accusative, particularly among the poets, though we do not find them governing two accusatives in the active voice; as, *Induitur vestem*, or *veste*.

Obs. 4. Neuter verbs are for the most part only used impersonally in the passive voice; unless when they are joined with a noun of a similar signification to their own; as, *Pugna pugnata est*, Cic. *Bellum militabitur*, Horat. Passive impersonal verbs are most commonly applied either to a multitude, or to an individual taken indefinitely; as *Statueretur, curritur, vivitur, venit*, &c. *a nobis, ab illis, &c.* We are standing, weeping, &c. *Bene potest vivi a me, vel ab aliquo*; I or any person may live well. *Provisum est nobis optime a Deo*; *Reclamatum est ab omnibus*, all cried out against it, Cic.

They also govern the same cases, as when used personally; as, *Ut majoribus natu assurgatur, ut supplicum misereatur*, Cic. Except the accusative: For in these phrases, *Itur Athenas, pugnatum est biduum, dormitur totam noctem*, the accusative is not governed by the verb, but by the

the prepositions *ad* and *per* understood. We find, however, *Tota mihi dormitur hyems; Noctes vigilantur amarae; Oceanus raris ab orbe nostro navibus aditur, Tacit.*

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

XXIX. / An impersonal verb governs the dative; as,

*Expedit reipublicae,*

It is profitable for the state.

Verbs which in the active voice govern only the dative, are used impersonally in the passive, and likewise govern the dative; as,

*Favetur mihi,* I am favoured, and not *Ego favor.* So *Nocetur mihi, imperatur mihi, &c.* We find however, *Hæc ego procurare imperor; Ego cur invidior,* for *imperatur, invidetur mihi, Hor.*

Obs. 1. These verbs, *Potest, capit, incipit, desinit, debet,* and *solet,* are used impersonally, when joined with impersonal verbs; as,

*Non potest credi tibi,* You cannot be believed; *Mihi non potest noceri,* I cannot be hurt; *Negat jusundè posse vivi sine virtute, Cic. Per virtutem potest iri ad astra. Aliorum laudi & glorie invideri solet,* The praise and glory of others use to be envied, *Id. Neque a fortissimis infirmissimo generi resisti posse, Sallust.*

Obs. 2. Various verbs are used both personally and impersonally; as, *Venit in mentem mihi hæc res, vel de hac re, vel hujus rei,* scil. *memoria;* This thing came into my mind. *Est cura mihi hæc res, vel de hac re. Doleo vel dolet mihi, id factum esse.*

Obs. 3. The neuter pronoun *it* is always joined with impersonal verbs in English; as, *It rains, it shines, &c.* And in Latin an infinitive is commonly subjoined to Impersonal verbs, or the subjunctive with *ut,* forming a part of a sentence which may be supposed to supply the place of a nominative; as, *Nobis non licet peccare,* the same with *peccatum;* *Omnibus bonis expedit rempublicam esse salvam, i. e. Salus reipublicæ expedit omnibus bonis, Cic. Accidit, evenit, contigit, ut ibi effemus.* These nominatives, *hoc, illud, id, idem, quod, &c.* are sometimes joined to Impersonal verbs; as, *idem mihi licet, Cic. Eadem licent, Catull.*

Obs. 4. The dative is often understood; as, *Faciat quod libet, sc. sibi, Ter. Stat vafus renovare omnes, sc. mihi,* I am resolved, *Virg.*

EXC. I. / *REFERT* and *INTEREST* require the genitive; as,

*Refert patris,* It concerns my father. *Interest omnium,* It is the interest of all.

¶ But *mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra,* are put in the accusative plural neuter; as,

*Non mea refert,*

It does not concern me.

Obs.

Obs. 1. Some think *mea, tua, sua, &c.* to be in the ablat. sing. fem. We say either *cujus interest*, and *quorum interest*; or *cujus interest*, from *cujus, -a, -um*.

Obs. 2. *Refert* and *interest* are often joined with these nominatives, *Id, hoc, illud, quid, quod, nihil, &c.* also with common nouns; and with these genitives, *Tanti, quanti, magni, permagni, parvi, pluris*; as, *Hoc parvi refert*; *Illud mea magni interest*, Cic. *Usque adeo magni refert studium*, Lucret. *Incessus in gravida refert*, Plin.

They are frequently construed with these adverbs, *Tantum, quantum, multum, plus, plurimum, infinitum, parum, maximè, vehementer, minimè, &c.* as, *Faciam, quod maximè reipublica interesse judicabo*, Cic. Sometimes instead of the genit. they take the accusative with the prep. *ad*; as, *Quid id ad me, aut ad meam rem refert, Persa quid rerum gerant?* Of what importance is it, &c. Plaut. *Magni ad honorem nostrum interest*, Cic. rarely the dative; as, *Dic quid referat intra naturæ fines viventi*, &c. Hor. Sometimes they are placed absolutely; as, *Magnopere interest opprimi Dolobellam*, it is of great importance, Cic. *Permutum interest, qualis primus aditus sit*, Id. *Adeone est fundata leviter fides, ut ubi sim, quam qui sim, magis referat*, Liv. *Plurimum enim intererit, quibus artibus, aut quibus hunc tu moribus insituas*, Juv.

Obs. 3. The genitive after *refert* and *interest* is governed by some substantive understood, with which the possessives *mea, tua, sua, &c.* likewise agree; as, *Interest Ciceronis, i. e. est inter negotia Ciceronis*; *Refert patris, i. e. refert se hæc res ad negotia patris*: So *interest mea, est inter negotia mea*.

EXC. II. These five, *MISERET, POENITET, PUDET, TÆDET*, and *PIGET*, govern the accusative of a person, with the genitive of a thing; ) as,

*Miseret me tui*, I pity you.

*Tædet me vita*, I am weary of life.

*Pœnitet me peccati*, I repent of my sin.

*Pudet me culpa*, I am ashamed of my fault.

Obs. 1. The genitive here is properly governed either by *negotium* understood, or by some other substantive of a signification similar to that of the verb with which it is joined; as, *Miseret me tui*, that is, *negotium* or *miseratio tui miseret me*.

Obs. 2. An infinitive or some part of a sentence may supply the place of the genitive; as, *Pœnitet me peccasse*, or *quod peccaverim*. The accusative is frequently understood; as, *Scelerum si bene pœnitet*, scilicet *nos*, Horat.

Obs. 3. *Miseret, pœnitet, &c.* are sometimes used personally, especially when joined with these nominatives, *hoc, id, quod, &c.* as, *Ipsæ sui miseret*, Lucr.; *Nonne hæc te pudet*, Ter. *Nihil, quod pœnitere possit, facias*, for *cujus te pœnitere possit*, Cic.

We sometimes find *miseret* joined with two accusatives; as, *Menedemi vicem miseret me*, scilicet *secundum* or *quod ad*, Ter.

Obs. 4. The preterites of *miseret, pudet, tædet*, and *piget*, when used in

in the passive form, govern the same cases with the active; as, *Miseritum est me tuarum fortunarum*, Ter. We likewise find *miserescit* and *miseretur* used impersonally; as, *Miserescit me tui*, Ter.; *Miseretur te fratrum*; *Neque me tui, neque tuorum liberorum misereri potest*, Cic.

EXC. III. / *DECET, DELECTAT, JUVAT*, and *OPORTET*, govern the accusative of a person, with the infinitive; / as,

*Delectat me studere,*  
*Non decet te rixari,*

It delights me to study.  
It does not become you to scold.

Obs. 1. These verbs are sometimes used personally; as, *Parvum parva decet*, Hor. *Est aliquid, quod non oporteat, etiamsi liceat*, Cic. *Hec facta ab illo oportebant*, Ter.

Obs. 2. *Decet* is sometimes construed with the dative; as, *Ista nobis decet*, Ter.

Obs. 3. *Oportet* is elegantly joined with the subjunctive mode, *ut* being understood; as,

*Sibi quisque consulat oportet*, Cic. Or with the perfect participle, *esse* or *fuisse* being understood; as, *Communicatum oportuit*; *mansum oportuit*; *Adolescenti morem gestum oportuit*, The young man should have been humoured, Ter.

Obs. 4. *Fallit, fugit, præterit, latet*, when used impersonally, also govern the accusative with the infinitive; as, *In lege nullâ esse ejusmodi caput, non te fallit*; *De Dionysio fugit me ad te antea scribere*, Cic.

NOTE, *Attinet, pertinet, & spectat*, are construed with *ad*; *Ad rem publicam pertinet, me conservari*, Cic. And so personally, *Ille ad me attinet*, belongs, Ter. *Res ad arma spectat*, looks, points, Cic.

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF THE INFINITIVE.

XXX. / One verb governs another in the infinitive; / as,

*Cupio discere,*

I desire to learn.

Obs. 1. The infinitive is often governed by adjectives; as, *Horatius est dignus legi*, Quintil. And sometimes depends on a substantive; as, *Tempus equum fumantia solvere colla*, Virg.

Obs. 2. The word governing the infinitive is sometimes understood; as, *Mene incepto desistere victam*, scil. *decet*, or *par est*, Virg. *Videre est*, one may see. *Dicere non est*, scil. *copia*, or *facultas*, Horat. And sometimes the infinitive itself is to be supplied; as, *Socratem fidibus docuit*, scil. *canere*, Cic. So *Discere, scire fidibus*.

Obs. 3. The infinitive was not improperly called by the ancients *Nomen verbi*, The name or noun of the verb; because it is both joined with an adjective like a substantive; as, *Velle suum cuique est*, Every one has a will of his own; and likewise supplies the place of a noun,

not only in the nominative, but also in all the oblique cases; as, 1. In the nominative, *Latrocinari, fraudare, turpe est*, Cic. *Didicisse fideliter artes emollit mores*, Ovid. 2. In the genitive, *Peritus cantare*, for *cantandi*, or *cantus*, Virg. In the dative, *Paratus servire*, for *servituti*, Sall. 4. In the accusative, *Da mihi fallere*, for *artem fallendi*, Horat. *Quod faciam superest, præter amare, nihil*, Ovid. 5. In the vocative, *O vivere nostrum, ut non sentientibus effluis!* for *vita nostra*. 6. In the ablative, *Dignus amari*, for *amore*, or *qui ametur*, Virg.

Obs. 4. Instead of the infinitive, a different construction is often used after verbs of doubting, willing, ordering, fearing, hoping; in short, after any verb which has a relation to futurity; as, *Dubitata ita facere*, or more frequently, *an, num, or utrum ita facturus sit; Dubitavit an faceret necne; Non dubito quin fecerit. Vis me facere, or ut faciam. Metuit tangi, or ne tangatur. Spero te venturum esse, or fore ut venias. Nunquam putavi fore ut ad te supplex venirem*, Cic. *Existimabant futurum fuisse ut oppidum amitteretur*, Cæsar.

Obs. 5. *To*, which in English is the sign of the infinitive, is omitted after *bid, dare, need, make, see, hear, feel*, and some others; as, *I bid him do it*: and in Latin may often be rendered otherwise than by the infinitive; as, *I am sent to complain, Mittor questum, or ut querar, &c. Ready to hear, Promptus ad audiendum; Time to read, Tempus legendi; Fit to swim, Aptus natando; Easy to say, Facile dictu; I am to write, Scripturus sum; A house to let, or more properly, to be let, Domus locanda; He was left to guard the city, Relictus est ut tueretur urbem.*

*To* in English is often taken absolutely; as, *To confess the truth; To proceed; To conclude*; that is, *That I may confess the truth, &c.*

## The CONSTRUCTION of PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, and SUPINES.

XXXI. Participles, Gerunds, and Supines, govern the case of their own verbs; as,

*Amans virtutem*, Loving virtue. *Carens fraude*, Wanting guile.

Obs. 1. Passive participles often govern the dative, particularly when they are used as adjectives; as,

*Suspectus mihi*, Suspected by me; *Suspectiores regibus*, Sall. *Invisus mihi*; hated by me, or hateful to me: *Indies invisior*, Suet. *Occulta, et maribus non invisâ solum, sed etiam inaudita sacra*, unseen, Cic.

*EXOSUS, PEROSUS*, and often also *PERTÆSUS*, govern the accusative; as, *Tedas exosa jugales*, Ovid. *Plebs consulum nomen baud secus quam regum perosa erat*, Liv. *Pertasus ignaviam suam; semet ipse, displicens*, Suet. *vitam*, weary of, Justin. *levitatis*, Cic.

Verbals in *BUNDUS* govern the case of their own verbs; as, *Gratulabundus patriæ*, Just. *Vitabundus castra bestium*, Liv. So sometimes also nouns; as, *Justitia est obtemperatio scriptis legibus*, Cic. *Insidia consilij*



*consuli*, Sall. *Domum reditionis spe sublata*, Cæf. *Spectatio ludos*, Plaut.

Obf. 2. These verbs, *do*, *reddo*, *volo*, *curo*, *facio*, *babeo*, *comperio*, with the perfect participle, form a periphrasis similar to what we use in English; as *Comperitum habeo*, for *comperi*, I have found, Sall. *Efficitum dabo*, for *efficiam*; *Inventum tibi curabo*, et *adductum tuum Pamphilum*, i. e. *inveniam et adducam*, Ter. Sometimes the gerund is used with *ad*; as, *Tradere ei gentes diripiendas*, or *ad diripiendum*, Cic. *Rogo, accipio, do aliquid utendum*; or *ad utendum*; *Misit mihi librum legendum*, or *ad legendum*, &c.

Obf. 3. These verbs, *curo*, *babeo*, *mando*, *loco*, *conduco*, *do*, *tribuo*, *mitto*, &c. are elegantly construed with the participle in *du*s instead of the infinitive; as, *Funus faciendum curavi*, for *fieri*, or *ut fieret*: *Columnas edificandas locavi*, Cic.

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF GERUNDS.

XXXII. / Gerunds are construed like substantive nouns; / as,

*Studendum est mihi*, I must study. *Aptus studendo*, Fit for studying.  
*Tempus studendi*, Time of study. *Scio studendum esse mihi*, I know that  
 I must study.

But more particularly;

I. / The Gerund in DUM with the verb *est* governs the dative; / as,

*Legendum est mihi*, I must read. *Moriendum est omnibus*, All must die.

So *Scio legendum esse mihi*; *moriendum esse omnibus*, &c.

Obf. 1. This gerund always imports obligation or necessity; and may be resolved into *oportet*, *necesse est*, or the like, and the infinitive or the subjunctive, with the conjunction *ut*; as, *Omnibus est moriendum*, or *Omnibus necesse est mori*, or *ut moriantur*; or, *Necesse est ut omnes moriantur*. *Consultendum est tibi a me*, I must consult for your good; for *Oportet ut consulam tibi*, Cic.

Obf. 2. The dative is often understood; as, *Orandum est, ut sit mens sana in corpore sano*, sc. *tibi*, Juv. *Hic vincendum, aut moriendum, - lites, est*, sc. *vobis*, Liv. *Deliberandum est diu, quod statuendum est semel* sc. *tibi vel alicui*, P. Syr.

II. / The gerund in DI is governed by substantives or adjectives; / as,

*Tempus legendi*, Time of reading. *Cupidus discendi*, Desirous of learning.

Obf. This gerund is sometimes construed with the genitive plural; as, *Facultas agrorum condonandi*, for *agros*, Cic. *Copia spectandi comædiarum*, for *comædias*, Ter. But chiefly with pronouns; as, *In castra venerunt sui purgandi causâ*, Cæf. *Vestri adhortandi causa*, Liv. *Ejus videndi cupidus*, sc. *faminiæ*, Ter. The gerund here is supposed to govern the genitive like a substantive noun.

II | The gerund in *DO* of the dative case is governed by adjectives signifying usefulness or fitness ; as,

*Charta utilis scribendo,*

Paper useful for writing.

Obs. 1. Sometimes the adjective is understood ; as, *Non est solvendo*, scil. *par*, or *habilis*, He is not able to pay. *Is finis censendo factus est*. Liv.

Obs. 2. This gerund is sometimes governed also by verbs ; as, *Ad esse scribendo*, Cic. *Aptat habendo enses*, for wearing ; Virg.

IV. The gerund in *DUM* of the accusative case is governed by the prepositions *ad* or *inter* ; as,

*Promptus ad audiendum,*  
*Attentus inter docendum,*

Ready to hear.

Attentive in time of teaching.

Obs. This gerund is also governed by some other prepositions ; as, *Ante domandum*, Virg. *Ob absolvendum*, Cic. *Circa movendum*, Quintil. Or it depends on some verb going before, and then with the verb *esse* governs the dative case ; as, *Scio moriendum esse omnibus*, I know that all must die. *Esse* is often understood.

V. The gerund in *DO* of the ablative case is governed by the prepositions, *a*, *ab*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, or *in* ; as,

*Pena a peccando absterret,*

Punishment frightens from sinning.

\* Or without a preposition, as the ablative of manner or cause ; as,

*Memoria excolendo augetur,* The memory is improved by exercising it.  
*Dæfessus sum ambulando,* I am wearied with walking.

Obs. The gerund in its nature very much resembles the infinitive. Hence the one is frequently put for the other ; as, *Est tempus legendi*, or *legere* : only the gerund is never joined with an adjective, and is sometimes taken in a passive sense ; as, *Cum Tifidius vocaretur ad imperandum*, i. e. *ut ipsi imperaretur*, to receive orders, Sall. *Nunc ades ad imperandum, vel ad parendum potius*, *Sic enim antiqui loquebantur*, Cic. i. e. *ut tibi imperetur*. *Urit videndo*, i. e. *dum videtur*. Virg.

The gerund in English becomes a substantive, by prefixing the article to it, and then it is always to be construed with the preposition *at* ; as, *He is employed in writing letters*, or, *in the writing of letters* : but it is improper to say, *in the writing letters*, or *in writing of letters*.

Gerunds

*Gerunds turned into participles in dus.*

XXXVI. Gerunds governing the accusative are elegantly turned into participles in *dus*, which, like adjectives, agree with their substantives in gender, number, and case; as,

By the Gerund.

*Petendum est mihi pacem,*  
*Tempus petendi pacem,*  
*Ad petendum pacem,*  
*A petendo pacem,*

By the Participle or Gerundive.

or more frequently { *Pax est petenda mihi.*  
*Tempus petenda pacis.*  
*Ad petendam pacem.*  
*A petenda pace.*

Obs. 1. In changing gerunds into participles in *dus*, the participle and the substantive are always to be put in the same case in which the gerund was; as,

Genitive; *Inita sunt consilia urbis delendæ, civium trucidandorum, nominis Romani extinguendi*, Cic.

Dat. *Perpetiundo labori idoneus*, Colm. *Capessenda reipublica habilis*, Tac. *Area firma templis ac porticibus sustinendis*, Liv. *Oneri ferendo est*, sc. *aptus* v. *habilis*, Ovid. *Natus miseriis ferendis*, Ter. *Literis dandis vigilare*, Cic. *Locum oppido condendo capere*, Liv.

Acc. and abl. *Ad defendendam Romam ab oppugnanda Capuæ duces Romanos abstrahere*, Liv. *Orationem Latinam legendis nostris efficies plenorem*, Cic.

Obs. 2. The gerunds of verbs which do not govern the accusative, are never changed into the participle, except those of *medeor*, *utor*, *abutor*, *fruo*, *fungor*, and *potior*; as, *Spes potiundi urbe*, or *potiunda urbis*; but we always say, *Cupidus subveniendi tibi*, and never *tui*.

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF SUPINES.

1. *The Supine in um.*

XXXVII. The supine in *um* is put after a verb of motion; as,

*Abiit deambulatum,*

He hath gone to walk.

So, *Ducere cohortes prædatum*, Liv. *Nunc venis irrifum dominum?* *Quod in rem tuam optimum factu arbitrer, te id admonitum venio*, Plaut.

Obs. 1. The supine in *um* is elegantly joined with the verb *eo*, to express the signification of any verb more strongly; as, *It se perditum*, the same with *id agit*, or *operam dat, ut se perdat*, He is bent on his

own destruction, Ter. This supine with *iri* taken impersonally, supplies the place of the infinitive passive; as, *An credebas illam sine tua operâ iri deductum domum?* Which may be thus resolved, *An credebas iri* (a te, vel ab aliquo) *deductum* (i.e. ad deducendum) *illam domum*, Ter.

Obs. 2. The supine in *um* is put after other verbs besides verbs of motion; as, *Dedit filiam nuptum; Cantatum provocemus*, Ter. *Revocatus defensum patriam; Divisit copias biematum*, Nep.

Obs. 3. The meaning of this supine may be expressed by several other parts of the verb; as, *Venit oratum opem*: or, 1. *Venit opem orandi causâ*, or *opis orandâ*. 2. *Venit ad orandum opem*, or *ad orandam opem*. 3. *Venit opî orandâ*. 4. *Venit opem oraturus*. 5. *Venit qui*, or *ut opem oret*. 6. *Venit opem orare*. But the third and the last of these are seldom used.

## 2. The supine in *u*.

XXXVIII. The supine in *u* is put after an adjective noun; as,

*Facile dictu*,

Easy to tell, or to be told.

So *Nihil dictu factum, visuque hac limina tangat; intra quæ puer est*, Juv. *Difficilis res est inventu verus amicus; Fas v. nefas est dictu; Opus est scitu*, Cic.

Obs. 1. The supine in *u*, being used in a passive sense, hardly ever governs any case. It is sometimes, especially in old writers, put after verbs of motion; as, *Nunc obsecratu redeo*, from getting provisions, Plaut. *Primus cubitu surgat* (villicus), from bed, *postremus cubitum eat*, Cato.

Obs. 2. This supine may be rendered by the infinitive or gerund with the preposition *ad*; as, *Difficile cognitu, cognosci*, or *ad cognoscendum; Res facilis ad credendum*, Cic.

Obs. 3. The supines being nothing else but verbal nouns of the fourth declension, used only in the accusative and ablative singular, are governed in these cases by prepositions understood: the supine in *um* by the preposition *ad*, and the supine in *u* by the preposition *in*.

## The CONSTRUCTION OF INDECLINABLE WORDS.

### 1. The CONSTRUCTION OF ADVERBS.

XXXIX. Adverbs are joined to Verbs and Participles, to adjectives, and to other adverbs; as,

*Bene scribit*, He writes well.

*Fortiter pugnans*, Fighting bravely.

*Servus egregiè fidelis*, A slave re-

*Satis bene*, Well enough.

markably faithful.

Obs.

Obs. 1. Adverbs are sometimes likewise joined to substantives ; as,

*Homerus planè orator ; planè nosfer, verè Metellus, Cic. So, Hodie mane ; cras mane, heri mane ; hodie vespere, &c. tam mane, tam vespere.*

Obs. 2. The adverb for the most part in Latin, and always in English, is placed near to the word which it modifies or affects.

Obs. 3. Two negatives, both in Latin and English, are equivalent to an affirmative ; as,

*Nec non senserunt, Nor did they not perceive, i. e. Et senserunt, And they did perceive ; Non poteram non exanimari metu, Cic. Examples however of the contrary of this sometimes occur in good authors, both English and Latin. Thus two or three negative participles are placed before the subjunctive mode to express a stronger negation. Neque tu haud dicas tibi non prædictum, And do not say that you were not forewarned, Ter.*

But what chiefly deserves attention in Adverbs, is the degree of comparison and the mode with which they are joined. 1. *Apprimè admodum, vehementer, maximè, perquam, valdè, oppidè, &c.* and *per* in composition, are usually joined to the positive ; as, *Utrique nostrum gratum admodum feceris, You will do what is very agreeable to both of us, Cic. perquam puerile, very childish ; oppidè pauci, very few ; perfacile est, &c.* In like manner, *Parum, multum, nimium, tantum, quantum, aliquantum ;* as, *In rebus apertissimis nimium longi sumus ; parum firmus, multum bonus, Cic. Adverbs in um are sometimes also joined to comparatives ; as, Forma viri aliquantum amplior humanâ, Liv.*

*QUAM* is joined to the positive or superlative in different senses ; as, *Quam difficile est ! How difficult it is ! Quam crudelis, or Ut crudelis est ! How cruel he is ! Flenus quam familiariter, very familiarly, Ter. So quam severè, very severely, Cic. quam latè, very widely, Cæf. Tam multa, quam, &c. as many things as, &c. Quam maximas potest copias armat, as great as possible, Sall. Quam maximas gratias agit, quam primum, quam sapissime, Cic. Quam quisque pessime facit, tam maximè tutus est, Sall.*

*FACILE*, for *haud dubiè*, undoubtedly, clearly, is joined to superlatives or words of a similar meaning ; as, *Facilè delectissimus, facilè princeps, v. præcipuus. LONGE*, to comparatives or superlatives, rarely to the positive ; as, *Longè eloquentissimus Plato, Cic. Pedibus longè melior Lycus, Virg.*

2. *CUM*, when, is construed with the indicative or subjunctive, oftener with the latter ; *DUM*, whilst, or how long, with the indicative ; as, *Dum hæc aguntur ; Egrote, dum anima est, spes esse dicitur, Cic. Donec eris felix, multos numerabis amicos, Ovid. DUM and DONEC, for usquedum, until, sometimes with the indicative and sometimes with the subjunctive ; as, Operior, dum ista cognosco, Cic. Haud desinam, donec.*



*donec perfecero*, Ter. So QUOAD, for *quamdiu*, *quantum*, *quatenus*, as long, as much, as far as; thus, *Quoad Catilina fuit in urbe*; *Quoad tibi æquum videbitur*; *quoad possem & liceret*; *quoad progredi potuerit amenitia*, Cic. But QUOAD, until, oftener with the subjunctive; as, *Theſſalonica eſſe ſtatuera*, *quoad aliquid ad me ſcriberes*, Cic. but not always; *Non faciam finem regandi*, *quoad nunciatum erit te feciſſe*, Cic. The pronoun *ejus*, with *facere* or *fieri* is elegantly added to *quoad*; as, *Quoad ejus facere poteris*; *Quoad ejus fieri poſſit*, Cic. *Ejus* is thought to be here governed by *aliquid* or ſome ſuch word underſtood. *Quoad corpus*, *quoad animam*, for *ſecundum*, or *quod attinet ad corpus vel animam*, as to the body or ſoul, is eſteemed by the beſt grammarians not to be good Latin.

3. POSTQUAM or POSTEAQUAM, after, is uſually joined with the Indic. ANTEQUAM, PRIUSQUAM, before; SIMUL, SIMULAC, SIMUL ATQUE, SIMUL UT, as ſoon as; UBI, when, ſometimes with the Ind. and ſometimes with the Subj. as, *Antequam dico, or dicam*, Cic. *Simulac perſenſit*, Virg. *Simul ut videro Curienem*, Cic. *Hæc ubi diſſa dedit*, Liv. *Ubi ſemel quis pejeraverit, ei credi poſtea non oportet*, Cic. So NÆ, truly; as, *Næ ego homo ſum infelix*, Ter. *Næ tu, ſi id faciſſes, melius ſamæ conſuluiſſes*, Cic. But NE, not, with the Imperative, or more elegantly with the ſubjunctive; as, *Næ jura*, Plaut. *Næ poſt conſeras culpam in me*, Ter. *Næ tot annorum felicitatem in unius horæ dederis diſcrimen*, Liv.

4. QUASI, CEU, TANQUAM, PERINDE, when they denote reſemblance, are joined with the Indicative; *Fuit olim, quaſi ego ſum, ſenex*, Plaut. *Adverſi rupto ceu quondam turbine venti conſigunt*, Virg. *Hæc omnia perinde ſunt, ut aguntur*. But when uſed ironically, they have the ſubjunctive; as, *Quaſi de verbo, non de re laboretur*, Cic.

5. UTINAM, O SI, UT for *utinam*, I wiſh, take the Subjunctive; as, *Utinam ea res ei voluptati ſit*, Cic. *O mihi præteritos reſerat ſi Jupi- ter annos*, Virg. *Ut illud aii deæque perdant*, Ter.

6. UT, when or after, takes the indicative; as, *Ut diſceſſit, venit*, &c. ¶ Alſo for *quam* or *quomodo*, how! as, *Ut valet! Ut falſus ani- mi ſi!* *Ut ſape ſumma ingenia in occulto latent!* Plaut. ¶ Or when it ſimply denote reſemblance; as, *Ut tu te es, ita omnes cenſes eſſe*, Plaut. ¶ In this ſenſe it ſometimes has the ſubjunctive; as, *Ut ſementem fece- ris, ita metes*, Cic.

7. QUIN for CUR NON, takes the Indic. as, *Quin continetis vocem indicem juſtitie veſire?* Cic. ¶ For IMO, nay or but, the Indic. or Imperat. as, *Quin eſt paratum argentum*; *quin tu hoc audi*, Ter. ¶ For UT NON, QUI, QUÆ, QUOD NON, or QUO MINUS, the Subjunctive; as, *Nulla tam facilis res, quin diſſicilis fiet quum inuiſus facias*, Ter. *Nemo eſt, quin malit*; *Facere non poſſum, quin ad te mittam*, I cannot help ſending; *Nihil abeſt, quin ſim miſerrimus*, Cic.

The

## THE GOVERNMENT of ADVERBS.

XL. Some Adverbs of time, place, and quantity, govern the genitive; as,

*Pridie ejus diēi,*  
*Ubique gentium,*  
*Satis est verborum,*

The day before that day.  
 Every where.  
 There is enough of words.

1. Adverbs of time governing the genit. are, *Interea, postea, inde tunc*; as, *Interea loci*, in the mean time; *Postea loci*, afterwards; *inde loci*, then; *tunc temporis*, at that time. 2. Of place, *Ubi* and *quo*, with their compounds, *ubique, ubicunque, ubivis, ubiubi*, &c. Also *Eo, huc, buccine, unde, usquam, nusquam, longe, ibidem*: as, *Ubi, quo, quovis*, &c. also *usquam, nusquam, unde, terrarum, vel gentium; longe gentium; ibidem loci, eo audacia, vacordia, miseria, &c.* to that pitch of boldness, madness, misery, &c. 3. Of quantity, *Abunde, affatim, largiter, nimis, satis, parum, minime*; as, *Abunde gloria, affatim divitiarum, largiter auri, satis loquentia, sapientia parum est illi vel habet*, He has enough of glory, riches, &c. *Minime gentium*, by no means.

Some add *ergo* and *inftar*; as, *Ergo virtutis*, for the sake of virtue, Cic. *Inftar montis*, like a mountain, Virg.: But these are properly nouns.

Obs. 1. These adverbs are thought to govern the genitive, because they imply in themselves the force of a substantive; as, *Potentia gloriaque abunde adeptus*, the same with *abundantiam gloria*: or *res, locus, or negotium* and a preposition, may be understood; as, *Interea loci*, i. e. *inter ea negotia loci*; *Ubi terrarum*, for *in quo loco terrarum*.

Obs. 2. We usually say, *pridie, postridie ejus diēi, seldem diem*; but *pridie, postridie Kalendas, Nonas, Idus, ludos Apollinares, natalem ejus, absolutionem ejus*, &c. rarely *Kalendarum*, &c.

Obs. 3. *En* and *ecce* are construed either with the nominative or accusative; as,

*En hostis, or hostem; Ecce miserum hominem*, Cic. Sometimes a dative is added; as, *Ecce tibi Strato*, Ter. *Ecce duas* (scil. aras.) *tibi, Daphni*, Virg. In like manner is construed *hem* put for *ecce*; as, *Hem tibi Davum*, Ter. But in all these examples some verb must be understood.

XLI. Some derivative adverbs govern the case of their primitives; as,

*Omnium optime loquitur,*  
*Convenienter natura,*  
*Venit obviam ei,*  
*Proxime castris or castra,*

He speaks the best of all.  
 Agreeably to nature.  
 He came to meet him.  
 Next the camp.

## The CONSTRUCTION of PREPOSITIONS.

### 1. PREPOSITIONS governing the Accusative.

**AD** astra, *to the stars*; religari ad asserem, *to be bound to a plank*; ad diem veniam, solvam, &c. *at or on*; ad portam, ostium, fores, *at, before*; ad urbem, Tiberim, *near, at*; ad templi supplicatio, *in*; ad summum, *at most, or to the top*; ad summam, *on the whole*; Cic.; ad ultimum, *extremum, at last, finally*; ad *v.* in speciem, *to appearance*; mentis ad omnia capacitas; annus fatalis ad interitum; lenius ad severitatem, *for, with respect to, Cic.*; ad vivum, *sc. corpus, to the quick*; ad judicem agere, *before*; nihil ad Cæsarem, *in comparison of*; numero ad duodecim, *to the number of*; omnes ad unum, *to a man*; ad hoc, *besides*; ad vulgi opinionem, *according to*; homo ad unguem factus, *an accomplished man*; herbæ ad lunam messæ, *by the light of, Virg.* ad tempus venit, *at*; ira brevis est & ad tempus, *for*; ad tempus consilium capiam, *according to*; Cic.; ad decem annos, *after*; annos ad quinquaginta natus, *about*; Cic. nebula erat ad multum diei, *for a great part of the day*; Liv.; ad pedes jacere, provolvi, procumbere, & ad genua; ad manus esse, *at*; ad manus venire, *to come to a close engagement*; ad libellam deberi, *to a farthing, no more and no less*; ad amissum, *exactly*; ad hæc visa auditaque, *upon seeing and bearing these things, Liv.*

**AD** seems sometimes to be taken adverbially; as, Ad duo milia casa sunt; ad mille hominum amissum est; ad ducenti perierunt, *about, Liv.*

**APUD** forum, *at*; apud me cœnabis, *at my house*; apud senatum, judices *v.* aliquem dicere, *before*; apud majores nostros, *among*; apud Xenophontem, *in the book of*; Est mihi fides, *vel valeo, apud illum, I have credit with him*; facio te apud illum deum, Ter.

**ANTE** diem, focum, &c. *before.*

**ADVERSUS**, *v.* -um; **CONTRA** hostes, *against*; adversus infimos justitia est servanda, *towards*; adversum hunc loqui, *to, Ter.* Lerina adversum Antipolim, *over against, Plin.*

**CIS** *vel* **CITRA** flumen, *on this side*; citra necessitatem, *without*; Ede citra cruditatem, bibe citra ebrietatem, Senec.

**CIRCUM** & **CIRCA** regem, *about*; Varia circa hæc opinio, Plin.

**ERGA** amicos, *towards*. **EXTRA** muros; Extra jocum, periculum, noxiam, sortem, *without*; nemo extra te, *besides*; extra conjunctionem, *not concerned in, Sall.*

**INFRA** tectum, *below the roof.*

**INTER** fratres, *among*; inter & super cœnam, *during, in the time of*; inter hæc parata, *during these preparations*; Sall. Inter tot annos, *in*; Cic. Inter diem, *rubence, interdiu, in the day time*; inter se amant, *they love one another*; Quasi non norimus nos inter nos, Ter.

**INTRA** privatos parietes, intra paucos annos, *within*; intra famam est, *less than report, Quinct.*

**JUXTA** macellum, *near the shambles.*

**OB** lucrum, *for gain*; ob oculos, *before*; ob industriam *for de industria, on purpose, Plaut.*

**PENES** quem, *or* quem penes, *in*

in the power of; Penes te es?  
Are you in your senses? Hor.

PER agros, *through*; per vim, per  
scelus, *by*; per anni tempus, per  
statem licet, *for, by reason of*.

PONE caput, *behind*.

POST hoc tempus, *after*; post ter-  
gum, *behind*; post homines na-  
tos, post hominum memoriam,  
*since the world began*.

PRÆTER te nemo, *no body besides,*  
*or except*; præter casam fugere,  
*beyond*; præter legem, morem,  
æquum & bonum, spem, opi-  
nionem, &c. *contrary to, against,*  
*beyond*; præter cæteros excel-  
lere, lamentari, *above*; præter  
ripam ire, *along, near*; præter  
oculos, *before*, Cic.

PROPTER virtutem, *for, on account*  
*of*; propter aquæ rivum, *near,*  
*hard by*, Virg.

SECUNDUM facta & virtutes tuas,  
*according to*; Ter. secundum lit-  
tus, secundum aurem vulnera-

tus est, *near to*; in actione se-  
cundum vocem vultus pluri-  
mum valet; secundum patrem  
tu es proximus, *after, next to*;  
Prætor secundum me decrevit,  
sententiam dedit, *for, in my fa-*  
*vour*, Cic.

SECUS viam, *by, along*.

SUPRA terram, *above*.

TRANS mare, *over, beyond*.

ULTRA oceanum, *beyond*.

To prepositions governing the ac-  
cusative are commonly added  
CIRCITER, PROPE, USQUE &  
VERSUS; as, Circiter meridiem,  
*about mid-day*; prope muros,  
*near the walls*; usque Puteolos,  
Tharsum usque, *as far as*; Ori-  
entem versus, *towards the east*.  
But in these *ad* is understood;  
which we find sometimes ex-  
pressed; as, Prope ad annum,  
Nep. Ab ovo usque ad mala,  
Hor. Ad oceanum versus, Cas.  
In Italiam versus, Cic.

### PREPOSITIONS governing the Ablative.

A patre, ab omnibus, abs te, *by*  
*or from*; a puero, vel pueris, a  
pueritia, incunabulis, teneris  
unguibus, &c. *from a child, ever*  
*since childhood*; ab ovo usque ad  
mala, *from the beginning to the*  
*end of supper*; a manu, sc. ser-  
vus, *an amanuensis or clerk*; ad  
manum, *a waiting man*; a pe-  
dibus, *a footman*; a latere prin-  
cipis, *an attendant*. So a secre-  
tis, rationibus, consiliis, cya-  
this, &c. *a secretary, accountant,*  
*&c.*; fores a nobis, *for nostræ*.  
Injuria ab illo, *for illius*, Ter.  
a cæna, *after*; Secundus, tertius  
a Romulo; ictus ab latere, *on*  
*or in*; a senatu stare, *for, in de-*  
*fence of*; ab oculis doleo, Plaut.  
ab ingenio improbus, a pecunia  
& militibus imparatus, *as to,*

*with respect to*, Cic. Est calor  
a sole; omissiores ab re, *too*  
*careless about money*; a villa mer-  
cenarium vidi, Ter.

ABSQUE causa, *without*; absque te  
esset, recte ego mihi vidissem,  
*i. e. si tu non esses, nisi tu esses,*  
*but for you, had it not been for*  
*you*, Ter. Absque is chiefly used  
by comic writers; sine, by orators.

CLAM patre & patrem, *without*  
*the knowledge of*.

CORAM omnibus, *before, in presence*  
*of*.

CUM exercitu, *with*; testis me-  
cum est annulus, *in my posses-*  
*sion*, Ter. cum prima luce, *at*  
*break of day*; cum imperio esse,  
*in*; cum primis, *in primis, in the*  
*first place*; cum metu dicere, cum  
lætitia vivere, cum cura, &c.  
Cic.

Cic. *We say*, mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum; rarely cum me, cum te, &c. and quocum or cum quo, quibuscum or cum quibus.

De lana caprina rixantur, *about, concerning*; De tanto patrimonio nihil relictum est, *of*; de loco superiore, *from*; de die, *by day*; de nocte, *by night*; de integro, *anew, afresh*; de v. ex improvviso, *unexpectedly*; de v. ex industria, *on purpose*; de meo, *at my expence*; Id de lucro putato esse, *clear gain*, Ter. de v. ex pacto agere, *by agreement*; de transverso, *cross-wise, athwart*; de v. ex ejus sententia, consilio, *according to*; qua v. hac de causa, *for*; homo de plebe; templum de marmore, *of*; de scripto dicere, *to read a speech*; de Filio emit, *from*, Cic. De servis fidelissimus; de ipsius exercitu non amplius hominum mille cecidit, Nep. Robur de exercitu, Liv. Adolescens de summo loco, Plaut. De procul aspicere, Id.

E foro, Ex ædibus, *from, out of*; e contrario, v. contraria parte, *on the contrary*; e regione, *over against*; e republica, e re alicujus, *for the good of*; statim e somno, ex fuga, ex tanta properantia, aliud ex alio malum, *from, after*; e vestigio, *out of hand, immediately*; poculum ex auro; ex equo pugnare, *on horseback*; facere pugnam ex commodo, *on advantageous ground*, Sall. diem ex die expectare, *from day to day, day after day*; ex ordine, *in order*; magna ex parte, *for the most part*; ex supervacuo, *superfluously*; ex tua dignitate v. virtute, ex decreto senatus, e natura, *according to*; so vulgus ex veritate pauca, ex opinione multa æstimat; ex v. de me-

re, ad v. in morem alicujus: Ex animo, *from the heart*; Insolentia ex prosperis rebus, e via languere, ex doctrina nobilis, *on account of*; ex usu est tibi, *of advantage*; ex eo die, *since*; ex amicis certis certissimus, *of or among*; ex pedibus laborare, *to be ill of the gout*, Cic. E re nata, *as the matter stands*, Ter. Commenta mater est, esse ex alio viro, nescio quo, puerum natum, *by*, Id.

Pro gloria certare, *for*; Rati noctem pro se, *favourable to them*, Sall. Hoc est pro me, Cic. pro templo, tribunali, concione, rostris, castris, foribus, *before*; pro sua dignitate, sapientia, &c. pro potestate cogere, pro tempore, re, loco, suo jure, *according to*; est pro prætor, pro te molam, comes facundus pro vehiculo est, *for, instead of*; pro viribus, pro parte virili, pro sua quisque parte v. facultate, *to one's ability or power*; Parum tibi pro eo, quod a te habeo, reddidi, *in comparison of, considering*, Cic. pro ut, pro eo ac, pro eo ut mereor, *as I deserve*; pro se quisque, uterque, &c. *for his own part*; pro rata parte, pro portione, *in proportion*; pro cive se gerit; agere pro victoribus; pro suo uti; pro rupto fœdus habet, *for, as*; so pro certo, infecto, comperto, nihilo, concessio, &c. habeo, duco. Pro occiso, relictus est, Cic. Pax se pugionem tulit, *before*; speciem præ se boni viri fert, *pretends to be*, Ter. præ lacrymis non possum scribere, *for, because of*; illum præ me contempni, *in comparison of*; So the adv. præut; *as*, præut hujus rabies quæ dabit, Ter. PALAM populo, omnibus, *before, with the knowledge of*.



SINE labore, *without*; sine ulla causa, pompa, molestia, querela, impensa, &c.; homo finire, fide, spe, fortunis, fede, &c. Cic.

Capulo TENUS, *up to the bill*. Tenus is construed with the genitive plural, when the word wants the sing.; as, *Cumorum tenus*, as far as *Cuma*: or when we speak of things, of which we have by nature only two; as, *Oculorum, aurium, narium, la-*

*brorum, lumborum, crurum tenus, up to*. We also find *Coreyræ tenus*, & *ostiis tenus*, Liv. *Colchis tenus*, Flor. *Pectoribus tenus*, Ovid.

To prepositions governing the abl. is commonly added *PROCU*; as, *Procul domo*, far from home; but here *a* is understood, which is also often expressed; as, *Procul a patria*, Virg. *Procul ab ostentatione*. Quint. *Culpa est procul a me*, Ter.

### 3. PREPOSITIONS governing the Accus. and Abl.

XLIV. The prepositions *in*, *sub*, *super*, and *subter*, govern the accusative, when motion to a place is signified; but when motion or rest in a place is signified, *in* and *sub* govern the ablative; *super* and *subter* either the accusative or ablative.

*IN* when it signifies *into*, governs the accusative; when it signifies *in* or *among*, it governs the ablative; as,

*IN urbem ire*, into; *amur in patriam*, in te *benignus*, towards; in *lucem*, until day; in *eam sententiam*, to that purpose, on that head; in *rem tuam est*, for your advantage; in *utramque partem disputare*, on both sides, for and against; *litura in nomen*, on, Cic. *potestas in filium*, over; in *aliquem dicere*, against; *mirum in modum*, after; in *pedes stare*, in *aurem dormire*, on; in *os laudare*, to, before; in *v. inter patres lectus*, into the number of; in *vulgu probari*, spargere, &c. among; *crecit in dies*, in *singulos dies*, omnes in dies, every day; in *diem posterum*, proximum, decimum, against; in *diem vivere*, to live from hand to mouth, not to think of to-morrow; *Est in diem*, will

*happen some time after*, Ter. *Induciæ in duos menses datæ*, in hunc diem, annum, &c. for: *Ternis affibus in pedem*, v. In singulos pedes, transegit, He, or gained for three skillings agerum, for every foot; So *res*, &c. In militem, capita, H. S. quinos denos ædici, Cic.

*IN portu navigo*, in tempore, in; esse in potestate, v. in potestate, honore vel honorem, mente v. mentem: in manu v. manibus esse; habere, tenere, in one's power, on hand; in amicis, among; in oculis, before: *Occisus est in provinciam*, for in provincia, Sall. In pueritia, adolescentia, senectute, absentia, for puer or pueri, when a boy

boy or boys, &c. Hoc in tempore, Nep. In loco fratris diligere, for ut fratrem, Ter. Sub terras ibit imagno, sub aspectum cadit, under; sub ipsum funus, near, just before. Hor. sub lucem, ortum lucis, noctem, vesperam, brumam, i. e. incipiente luce, &c. at the dawn of day, &c.; sub idem tempus, about; sub eas literas recitatæ sunt tuæ, sub festis dies, after, Cic.

Sub muro, rege, pedibus, &c. un-

der; sub urbe, near, Ter. sub ea conditione, v. em, on or with. SUPER Nunudiam, above, beyond; super ripas, upon; super hæc; super morbum etiam fames affixit, besides, Liv. super arbore, fronde super viridi, upon; super hac re scribere, his accensa super, concerning; alii super alios trucidantur, Liv. Super cænam, super vinum & epulas, for inter, during, Curt. Nec super ipse suâ molitur laude laborem, for, Virg.

SUBTER terram vel terra, under.

Obs. 1. Prepositions in English have always after them the accusative or objective case. And when prepositions in English or Latin do not govern a case, they are reckoned adverbs.

Such are *Ante, circa, clam, coram, contra, infra, intra, juxta, palam, pene, post, propter, secus, subter, super, supra, ultra*. But in most of these the case seems to be implied in the sense; as, *Longo post tempore venit*, sc. *post id tempus*. *Adversus, juxta, propter, secus, secundum, & clam*, are by some thought to be always adverbs, having a preposition understood when they govern a case. So other adverbs also are construed with the acc. or abl. as, *Intus collam*, for *intra*, Liv. *Intus templo divum*, sc. *in*, Virg. *Simul his*, sc. *cum*, Hor.

Obs. 2. A and E are only put before consonants; AB and EX usually before vowels, and sometimes also before consonants; as,

*A pæne e regione: ab initio, ab rege; ex urbe, ex parte: abs desore q and t; abs te, abs quovis homine*, Ter. Some phrases are used only with *e*; as, *e longinquo, e regione, e vestigio, e re mea est*, &c. Some only with *ex*; as, *Ex compasso, ex tempore, magna ex parte*, &c.

Obs. 3. Prepositions are often understood; as, *Devenere locos*, scil. *ad*; *It portis*, sc. *ex*, Virg. *Nunc id prodeco*, scil. *ob vel propter*, Ter. *Maria aspera juro*, scil. *per*, Virg. *Ut se loco movere non possent*, scil. *e vel de*, Cæs. *Vina promens solio*, scil. *ex*, Hor. *Quid illo facias? Quid me fiet*, sc. *de*, Ter. And so in English, *Show me the book*; *Get me some paper*, that is, *to me, for me*. We sometimes find the word to which the preposition refers, suppressed; as, *Circum Concordia*, sc. *adem*, Sall. *Round St Paul's, namem, church*; *Campum Stellatam divisit extra sortem ad viginti millibus civium*, i. e. *civium millibus ad viginti millia*, Suet. But this is most frequently the case after prepositions in composition; thus, *Emittere servum*, scil. *manu*, Plaut. *Evomere virus*, scil. *ore*, Cic. *Educere copias*, scil. *castris*, Cæs.

XLV. A preposition in composition often governs the same case, as when it stands by itself; as,

*Adcamus scholam,*

Let us go to the school.

*Exeamus scholâ,*

Let us go out of the school.

Obs. 1. The preposition with which the verb is compounded, is often repeated; as, *Adire ad scholam*; *Exire e schola*; *Adgredi aliquil*, or *ad aliquid*; *ingredi orationem vel in orationem*; *inducere animum*, & *in animum*; *evadere undis & ex undis*; *dacedere de suo jure*, *desedere viâ vel de via*; *expellere, ejicere, exterminare, extrudere, exturbare urbe, & ex urbe*. Some do not repeat the preposition; as, *Affari, alloqui, al-latrare aliquem*, not *ad aliquem*. So *Alluere urbem*; *accolere flumen*; *circumvenire aliquem*; *praterire injuriam*; *abdicare se magistratu*, (also *abdi-care magistratum*); *transducere exercitum fluvium*, &c. Others are only construed with the preposition; as, *Accurrere ad aliquem*, *adlertari ad aliquid*, *incidere in morbum*, *avocare a studiis*, *avertere ab incepto*, &c.

Some admit other prepositions; as, *Abire, demigrare loco*; & *a, de, ex loco*; *abstrahere aliquem a, de, vele conspectu*; *Desistere sententiâ, a vel de sententia*, *Excidere manibus, de vel e manibus*, &c.

Obs. 2. Some verbs compounded with *e* or *ex* govern either the ablative or accusative; as,

*Egredi urbe or urbem*, sc. *extra*; *egredi extra vallum*, Nep. *Evadere insidiis or insidias*. *Patrios excedere muros*, Lucan. *Sceleratâ excedere terrâ*, Virg. *Elabi ex manibus*; *pugnam, vincula*, Tac.

Obs. 3. This rule does not take place, unless when the preposition may be disjoined from the verb, and put before the noun by itself; as, *Alloquor patrem*, or *loquor ad patrem*.

### 3. THE CONSTRUCTION OF INTERJECTIONS.

XLVI. The interjections *O*, *heu*, and *prob*, are construed with the nominative, accusative, or vocative; as,

*O vir bonus or bone*! *O good man*! *Heu me miserum*! *Ah wretched me*!

So, *O vir fortis atque amicus*! Ter. *Heu vanitas humana*! Plin. *Heu miserande puer*! Virg. *O præclarum custodem ovium* (ut aiunt) *lupum*! Cic.

XLVII. *Hei* and *væ* govern the dative; as,

*Hei mihi*! *Ah me*!

*Væ vobis*! *Wo to you*!

Obs. 1. *Heus* and *obe* are joined only with the vocative; as, *Heus Syre*, Ter. *Obe libelle*! Martial. *Prob* or *pro*, *ab*, *vab*, *hem*, have generally either the accusative or vocative; as, *Prob hominum fidem*! Ter. *Prob Sante Jupiter*! Cic. *Hem astutias*! Ter.

Obs. 2. Interjections cannot properly have either concord or government. They are only mere sounds excited by passion, and have no just connection with any other part of a sentence. Whatever case

therefore is joined with them, must depend on some other word understood, except the vocative, which is always placed absolutely: thus, *Heu me miserum!* stands for *Heu! quam me miserum sentio!* *Hei mihi!* for *Hei! malum est mihi!* *Proh dolor!* for *Proh! quantus est dolor!* and so in other examples.

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF CIRCUMSTANCES.

The circumstances, which in Latin are expressed in different cases, are, 1. The *Price of a thing*. 2. The *Cause, Manner, and Instrument*. 3. *Place*. 4. *Measure and Distance*. 5. *Time*.

### I. PRICE.

XLVIII. The price of a thing is put in the ablative; as,

*Emi librum duobus assibus,*  
*Constitit talento,*

I bought a book for two shillings.  
It cost a talent.

So *Asses carum est;* vile *viginti minis;* *auro venale,* &c. *Nocet empti dolore voluptas,* Hor. *Spem pretio non emam,* Ter. *Plurimi auro videntur horores,* Ovid.

¶ These genitives *tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris,* are excepted; as,

*Quanti constitit,* How much cost it? *Asses et pluris,* A shilling and more.

Obs. 1. When the substantive is added, they are put in the ablative; as, *parvo pretio, impenso pretio vendere,* Cic.

Obs. 2. *Magno, permagno, parvo, paululo, minimo, plurimo,* are often used without the substantive; as, *Permagno constitit,* scil. *pretio,* Cic. *Heu quanto regnis nox stetit una tuis?* Ovid. Fast. ii. 812. We also say, *Emi carè, carius, carissimè; bene, melius, optimè; malè, pejus, vilius, vilissimè; Valde carè æstimas: Emit domum prope dimidio carius, quam æstimabat,* Cic.

Obs. 3. The ablative of price is properly governed by the preposition *pro* understood, which is likewise sometimes expressed; as, *Dum pro argenteis decem aureus unus valeret,* Liv.

### 2. MANNER and CAUSE.

XLIX. The cause, manner, and instrument are put in the ablative; as,

*Palleo metu,*  
*Fecit suo more,*  
*Scribo calamo,*

I am pale for fear.  
He did it after his own way.  
I write with a pen.

So *Ardeat dolore; pallescere culpâ; astuare dubitatione; gestire voluptate vel secundis rebus: Confectus morbo; affectus beneficiis, gravissimo supplicio; insignis pietate; deterior licentiâ: Pietate filius, consiliis pater, amore frater; hence Rex Dei gratiâ. Paritur pax bello, Nep. Procedere lento gradu; Acceptus regio apparatu: Nullo sono convertitur annus, Juv. Jam venit tacito curvâ senectû pede, Ovid. Percutere securi, defendere jaxis, configere sagittis, &c.*

Obs. 1. The ablative is here governed by some preposition understood. Before the manner and cause, the preposition is sometimes expressed; as, *De more matrum locuta est, Virg. Magno cum metu; Hac de causa: Pra marore, formidine, &c.* But hardly ever before the instrument; as, *Vulnerare aliquem gladio, not cum gladio; unless among the poets, who sometimes add a or ab; as, Trajectus ab ense, Ovid.*

Obs. 2. When any thing is said to be in company with another, it is called the ablative of CONCOMITANCY, and has the preposition *cum* usually added; as, *Obsecit curiam cum gladiis: Ingressus est cum gladio, Cic.*

Obs. 3. Under this rule are comprehended several other circumstances, as the matter of which any thing is made, and what is called by grammarians the ADJUNCT, that is, a noun in the ablative joined to a verb or adjective, to express the character or quality of the person or thing spoken of; as, *Capitolium saxo quadrato constructum, Liv. Floruit acuminè ingenii, Cic. Pulset opibus, valet armis, viget memoriâ famâ nobilis, &c. Ager pedibus.* When we express the matter of which any thing is made, the preposition is usually added; as, *Tecuplum de marmore, seldom marmoris; Poculum ex auro factum, Cic.*

### 3. PLACE.

The circumstances of place may be reduced to four particulars. 1. The place *where*, or *in which*. 2. The place *whither*, or *to which*. 3. The place *whence*, or *from which*. 4. The place *by* or *through which*.

AT or IN a place is put in the genitive; unless the noun be of the third declension, or of the plural number, and then it is expressed in the ablative.

TO a place is put in the accusative; FROM or BY a place, in the ablative.

But these cases will be more exactly ascertained by reducing the circumstances of place to particular questions.

#### 1. The Place WHERE.

L. When the question is made by *Ubi?* Where? the name of a town is put in the genitive; as,



*Fixit Romæ,  
Mortuus est Londini,*

He lived at Rome.  
He died at London.

¶ [But if the name of a town be of the third declension or plural number, it is expressed in the ablative;] as,

*Habitat Carthagine,  
Studuit Parisiis,*

He dwells at Carthage.  
He studied at Paris.

Obf. 1. When a thing is said to be done, not in the place itself, but in its neighbourhood or near it, we always use the preposition *ad* or *apud*; as, *Ad* or *apud Trojam*, At or near Troy.

Obf. 2. The name of a town, when put in the ablative, is here governed by the preposition *in* understood; but if it be in the genitive, we must supply *in urbe*, or *in oppido*. Hence, when the name of a town is joined with an adjective or common noun, the preposition is generally expressed: thus, we do not say, *Natus est Romæ urbis celebris*: but either *Romæ in celebri urbe*, or *in Romæ celebri urbe*, or in *Roma celebri urbe*, or sometimes *Romæ celebri urbe*. In like manner, we usually say, *Habitat in urbe Carthagine*, with the preposition. We likewise find, *Habitat Carthagini*, which is sometimes the termination of the ablative, when the question is made by *ubi*?

## 2. The Place WHITHER.

LI. | When the question is made by *Quo*? Whither? the name of a town is put in the accusative;] as,

*Venit Romam,  
Profectus est Athenas,*

He came to Rome.  
He went to Athens.

Obf. 1. We find the dative also used among the poets, but more seldom; as, *Carthagini nuncios mittam*, Florac.

Obf. 2. Names of towns are sometimes put in the accusative, after verbs of telling and giving, where motion to a place is implied; as, *Romam erat nunciatum*, The report was carried to Rome, Liv. *Hæc nunciant domum Albani*, Id. *Messanam literas dedit*, Cic.

## 3. The Place WHENCE.

LII. | When the question is made by *Unde*? Whence? or *Qua*? By or through what place? the name of a town is put in the ablative;] as,

*Discessit*

*Discessit Corintho,*  
*Laodiceâ iter faciebat,*

He departed from Corinth.  
He went through Laodicea.

When motion *by* or *through* a place is signified, the preposition *per* is commonly used ; as, *Per Thebas iter fecit*, Nep.

### *Domus and Rus.*

LIII. | *Domus* and *rus* are construed the same way as names of towns ; | as,

*Manet domi,*  
*Domum reveritur,*  
*Domo arcessitus sum,*  
*Vivit rure,* or more frequently *ruri,*  
*Rediit rure,*  
*Abiit rus,*

He stays at home.  
He returns home.  
I am called from home.  
He lives in the country.  
He is returned from the country.  
He is gone to the country.

Obf. 1. *Humi*, *militiæ*, and *belli*, are likewise construed in the genitive, as names of towns ; thus,

*Domi et militiæ*, or *belli*, At home and abroad. *Yacet humi*, He lies on the ground.

Obf. 2. When *Domus* is joined with an adjective, we commonly use a preposition ; as, *In domo paterna*, not *domi paterna* ; So, *Ad domum paternam* : *Ex domo paterna*. Unless when it is joined with these possessives, *Meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, *vester*, *regius*, and *alicuius* ; as ; *Domi meæ vixit*, Cic. *Regiam domum comportant*, Sall.

Obf. 3. When *domus* has another substantive in the genitive after it, the preposition is sometimes used and sometimes not ; as, *Deprehensus est domi*, *domo*, or *in domo Cæsaris*.

LIV. | To names of countries, provinces, and all other places, except towns, the preposition is commonly added } as,

When the question is made by

*Ubi ? Natus in Italia, in Latio, in urbe, &c.*

*Quo ? Abiit in Italiam, in Latium, in, or ad urbem, &c.*

*Unde ? Rediit ex Italia, e Latio, ex urbe, &c.*

*Qua ? Transit per Italiam, per Latium, per urbem, &c.*

Obf. 1. A preposition is often added to names of towns ; as, *In Roma* for *Romæ* ; *ad Romam*, *ex Roma*, &c.

*Peto* always governs the accusative as an active verb,  
without

without a preposition; as, *Petivit Egyptum*, He went to Egypt.

Obs. 2. Names of countries, provinces, &c. are sometimes construed without the preposition like names of towns; as, *Pompeius Cypri visus est*, Cæf. *Cretæ jussit confidere Apollo*, Virg. *Non Lybia*, for in *Lybia*; non ante *Tyro*, for *Tyri*, Id. *Æn.* iv. 36. *Venit Sardiniam*, Cic. *Rome, Numidiaque facinora ejus memorat*, Sall.

#### 4. MEASURE and DISTANCE.

LV. Measure or distance is put in the accusative, and sometimes in the ablative; as,

*Murus est decem pedes altus,*  
*Urbs distat triginta millia, or tri-*  
*ginta millibus passuum,*  
*Iter, or itinere unius dici,*

The wall is ten feet high.  
The city is thirty miles distant;  
One day's journey.

Obs. 1. The accusative or ablative of measure is put after adjectives and verbs of dimension; as, *Longus, latus, crassus, profundus, and altus*: *Patet, porrigitur, eminet, &c.* The names of measure are *pes, cubitus, ulna, passus, digitus*, an inch; *palmus*, a span, an hand-breadth, &c. The accusative or ablative of distance is used only after verbs which express motion or distance; as, *Eo, curro, absum, disto, &c.* The accusative is governed by *ad* or *per* understood, and the ablative by *a* or *ab*.

Obs. 2. When we express the measure of more things than one, we commonly use the distributive number; as, *Muri sunt denos pedes alti*, and sometimes *denum pedum*, for *denorum*, in the genitive, *ad mensuram* being understood. But the genitive is only used to express the measure of things in the plural number.

Obs. 3. When we express the distance of a place where any thing is done, we commonly use the ablative; or the accusative with the preposition *ad*; as, *Sex millibus passuum ab urbe confedit*, or *ad sex millia passuum*, Cæf. *Ad quintum milliarium v. milliare confedit*, Cic. *Ad quintum lapidem*, Nep.

Obs. 4. The excess or difference of measure and distance is put in the ablative; as,

*Hoc lignum excedit illud digito. Toto vertice supra est*, Virg. *Britannia longitudo ejus latitudinem ducentis quadraginta milliariis superat.*

#### 5. TIME.

## 5. TIME.

LVI. /When the question is made by *Quando*?  
When? time is put in the ablative; as,

*Venit hora tertiâ,*

He came at three o'clock.

¶ When the question is made by *Quamdiu*? How long?  
time is put in the accusative or ablative, but oftener in the  
accusative; as,

*Manfit paucos dies,  
Sex mensibus absuit,*

He staid a few days.

He was away six months.

\* Or thus, Time *when* is put in the ablative, time *how  
long* is put in the accusative.

Obf. 1. When we speak of any precise time, it is put in  
the ablative; but when continuance of time is expressed,  
it is put for the most part in the accusative.

Obf. 2. All the circumstances of time are often expressed with a  
preposition; as, *In presentia*, or *in presentî*, scil. *tempore*; *in* vel *ad  
presens*; *Per decem annos*; *Surgunt de nocte*; *ad horam destinatam*; *Intra  
annum*; *Per idem tempus*, *ad Kalendas soluturas* ait, Suet. The preposi-  
tion *ad* or *circa* is sometimes suppressed, as in these expressions, *hoc*,  
*illud*, *id*, *isibuc*, *etatis*, *temporis*, *hora*, &c. for *hac etate*, *hoc tempore*,  
&c. And *ante* or some other word: as, *Annos natus unum & viginti*,  
sc. *ante*. *Siculi quotannis tributa conferunt*, sc. *tot annis*, *quot vel quotquot  
sunt*, Cic. *Prope diem*, sc. *ad*, soon; *Oppidum paucis diebus*, *quibus ed-  
ventum est*, *expugnatum*, sc. *post eos dies*, Cael. *Ante diem tertium Kalendas  
Maias accepi tuas literas*, for *die tertio ante*, Cic. *Qui dies futurus esset  
inante diem octavum Kalendas Novembris*, Id. *Exante diem quintum Kal.  
Octob.* Liv. *Lacedæmonii septingentos jam annos amplius unis moribus et  
nunquam mutatis legibus vivunt*, sc. *quam per*, Cic. We find, *Primum  
spendium meruit annorum decem septemque*, sc. *Atticus*; for *septemdecim  
annos natus*, seventeen years old, Nep.

Obf. 3. The adverb *ABHINC*, which is commonly used with re-  
spect to past time, is joined with the accusative or ablative without a  
preposition; as, *factum est abhinc biennio* or *biennium*, It was done two  
years ago. So likewise are *post* and *ante*; as, *Paucos post annos*: but  
here, *ea* or *id* may be understood.

## COMPOUND SENTENCES.

A compound sentence is that which has more than one  
nominative, or one finite verb.

A compound sentence is made up of two or more simple  
sentences or *phrases*, and is commonly called a *Period*.

The

The parts of which a compound sentence consists, are called *Members* or *Clauses*.

In every compound sentence there are either several subjects, and one attribute, or several attributes, and one subject, or both several subjects and several attributes: That is, there are either several nominatives applied to the same verb, or several verbs applied to the same nominative, or both.

Every verb marks a judgement or attribute, and every attribute must have a subject. There must therefore be in every sentence or period as many prepositions, as there are verbs of a finite mode.

Sentences are compounded by means of relatives and conjunctions; as,

*Happy is the man who loveth religion and practiseth virtue.*

### THE CONSTRUCTION OF RELATIVES.

LVII. | The relative *Qui*, *Quæ*, *Quod*, agrees with the antecedent in gender, number, and person; and is construed through all the cases, as the antecedent would be in its place; as,

|                                          | Singular.                   | Plural.                         |
|------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>Vir qui,</i>                          | The man who.                | <i>Viri qui.</i>                |
| <i>Femina quæ,</i>                       | The woman who.              | <i>Femina quæ.</i>              |
| <i>Negotium quod,</i>                    | The thing which.            | <i>Negotia quæ.</i>             |
| <i>Ego qui scribo,</i>                   | I who write.                | <i>Nos qui scribimus.</i>       |
| <i>Tu qui scribis,</i>                   | Thou who writest.           | <i>Vos qui scribitis.</i>       |
| <i>Vir qui scribit,</i>                  | The man who writes.         | <i>Viri qui scribunt.</i>       |
| <i>Mulier quæ scribit,</i>               | The woman who writes.       | <i>Mulieres quæ scribunt.</i>   |
| <i>Animal quod currit,</i>               | The animal which runs.      | <i>Animalia quæ currunt.</i>    |
| <i>Vir quem vidi,</i>                    | The man whom I saw.         | <i>Viri quos vidi.</i>          |
| <i>Mulier quam vidi,</i>                 | The woman whom I saw.       | <i>Mulieres quas vidi.</i>      |
| <i>Animal quod vidi,</i>                 | The animal which I saw.     | <i>Animalia quæ vidi.</i>       |
| <i>Vir cui paret,</i>                    | The man whom he obeys.      | <i>Viri quibus paret.</i>       |
| <i>Vir cui est similis,</i>              | The man to whom he is like. | <i>Viri quibus est similis.</i> |
| <i>Vir a quo,</i>                        | The man by whom.            | <i>Viri a quibus.</i>           |
| <i>Mulier ad quam,</i>                   | The woman to whom.          | <i>Mulieres ad quas.</i>        |
| <i>Vir cujus opus est,</i>               | The man whose work it is.   | <i>Viri quorum opus est.</i>    |
| <i>Vir quem misëror,</i>                 | } The man whom I pity.      |                                 |
| <i>cujus misëreo vel misëresco,</i>      |                             |                                 |
| <i>cujus me misëret,</i>                 |                             |                                 |
| <i>cujus vel cujus interest, &amp;c.</i> |                             | whose interest it is, &c.       |

If no nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative will be the nominative to the verb.

But



But if a nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative will be of that case, which the verb or noun following, or the preposition going before, use to govern.

Thus the construction of the relative requires an acquaintance with most of the foregoing rules of syntax, and may serve as an exercise on all of them.

Obs. 1. The relative must always have an antecedent expressed or understood, and therefore may be considered as an adjective placed between two cases of the same substantive, of which the one is always expressed, generally the former ; as,

*Vir qui (vir) legit ; vir, quem (virum) amo :* Sometimes the latter ; as, *Quam quisque nōrit artem, in hac (arte) se exerceat,* Cic. *Eunuchum, quem dedisti nobis, quas turbus dedit,* Ter. sc. *Eunuchus.* Sometimes both cases are expressed ; as, *Erant omnino duo itinera, quibus itineribus domo exire possent,* Cæf. Sometimes, though more rarely, both cases are omitted ; as, *Sunt, quos hoc genus minime jucat, for sunt homines, quos homines,* &c. Hor.

Obs. 2. When the relative is placed between two substantives of different genders, it may agree in gender with either of them, though most commonly with the former ; as,

*Vultus quem dixera chaos,* Ovid. *Est locus in carcere, quod Tullianum appellatur,* Sall. *Animal, quem vocamus hominem,* Cic. *Cogito id quod res est,* Ter. If a part of a sentence be the antecedent, the relative is always put in the neuter gender ; as, *Pompeius se afflixit, quod mihi est summo dolori,* scil. *Pompeium se affligere,* Cic. Sometimes the relative does not agree in gender with the antecedent, but with some synonymous word supplied ; as, *Scelus qui for scelestus,* Ter. *Abundantia earum rerum, quæ mortales prima putant,* scil. *negotia,* Sall. *Vel virtus tua me vel vicinitas, quod ego in aliqua parte amicitia puto, facit ut te moncam,* scil. *negotium,* Ter. *In omni Africa, qui agebant ; for in omnibus Afriis,* Sallust. Jug. 89. *Non dissidentia futuri, quæ imperavisset, for quod,* Ib. 100.

Obs. 3. When the relative comes after two words of different persons, it agrees with the first or second person rather than the third ; as, *Ego sum vir, qui facio,* scarcely *facit.* In English it sometimes agrees with either ; as, *I am the man, who make, or maketh.* But when once the person of the relative is fixed, it ought to be continued through the rest of the sentence ; thus it is proper to say,

"I am the man, who takes care of your interest," but if I add, "at the expence of my own," it would be improper. It ought either to be, "his own," or "who take." In like manner, we may say, "I thank you, who gave, who did love," &c. But it is improper to say, "I thank thee, who gave, who did love:" it should be, "who gavest, who didst love." In no part of English syntax are inaccuracies committed more frequently than in this. Beginners are particularly apt to fall into them, in turning Latin into English. The reason of it seems to be our applying *thou* or *you*, *thy* or *your*, promiscuously, to express the second person singular, whereas the Latins almost always expressed it by *tu* and *tuus*.

Obs. 4. The antecedent is often implied in a possessive adjective; as,

*Omnes laudare fortunas meas, qui haberem gnatum tali ingenio præditum*, Ter. Sometimes the antecedent must be drawn from the sense of the foregoing words; as, *Carne pluit, quem imbrem aves rapuisse feruntur*; i. e. *pluit imbrem carne, quem imbrem*, &c. Liv. *Si tempus est ullum jure hominis necandi, quæ multa sunt*, scil. *tempora*, Cic.

Obs. 5. The relative is sometimes entirely omitted; as, *Urbs anti-qua fuit: Tyrii tenuere coloni*, scil. *quam* or *eam*, Virg. Or if once expressed, is afterwards omitted, so that it must be supplied in a different case; as, *Bocchus cum peditibus, quos filius ejus adduxerat, neque in priore pugna adfuerant, Romanos invadunt*; for *quique in priore pugna non adfuerant*, Sall. In English the relative is often omitted, where in Latin it must be expressed; as, *The letter I wrote*, for *the letter which I wrote*; *The man I love*, to wit, *robom*. But this omission of the relative is generally improper, particularly in serious discourse.

Obs. 6. The case of the relative sometimes seems to depend on that of the antecedent; as, *Cum aliquid agas eorum, quorum consueſti*, for *quæ consueſti agere*, or *quorum aliquid agere consueſti*, Cic. *Restitue in quem me accepisti locum*, for *in locum, in quo*, Ter. And. iv. i. 58. But such examples rarely occur.

Obs. 7. The adjective pronouns *ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, and *idem*, in their construction, resemble that of the relative *qui*; as, *Liber ejus*, His or her book; *Vita eorum*, Their life, when applied to men; *Vita earum*, Their life, when applied to women. By the improper use of these pronouns in English, the meaning of sentences is often rendered obscure.

Obs. 8. The interrogative or indefinite adjectives, *qualis*, *quantus*, *quotus*, &c. are also sometimes construed like relatives; as, *Facies est, qualem decet esse sororum*, Ovid. But these have commonly other adjectives either expressed or understood, which answer to them; as, *Tanta est multitudo, quantam urbs capere potest*: and are often applied to different substantives; as, *Quales sunt cives, talis est civitas*, Cic.

Obs.

Obs. 9. The relative *who* in English is applied only to persons, and *which* to things and irrational animals; but formerly *which* was likewise applied to persons; as, *Our Father which art in heaven*: and *whose*, the genitive of *who*, is also used sometimes, though perhaps improperly, for *of which*. *That* is used indifferently for persons and things. *What*, when not joined with a substantive, is only applied to things, and includes both the antecedent and the relative, being the same with *that which*, or *the thing which*; as, *This is what he wanted*; that is, *the thing which he wanted*.

Obs. 10. The Latin relative often cannot be translated literally into English, on account of the different idioms of the two languages; as, *Quod cum ita esset*, When that was so; not, Which when it was so, because then there would be two nominatives to the verb *was*, which is improper. Sometimes the accusative of the relative in Latin must be rendered by the nominative in English; as, *Quem dicunt me esse*? Who do they say that I am? not whom. *Quem dicunt adventare*? Who do they say is coming?

Obs. 11. As the relative is always connected with a different verb from the antecedent, it is usually construed with the subjunctive mode, unless when the meaning of the verb is expressed positively; as, *Audire cupio, quæ legeris*, I want to hear, what you have read; that is, what perhaps or probably you may have read: *Audire cupio, quæ legisti*, I want to hear, what you (actually or in fact) have read.

To the construction of the Relative may be subjoined that of the ANSWER TO A QUESTION.

The answer is commonly put in the same case with the question; as,

*Qui vocare? Geta, sc. vocor. Quid queris? Librum, sc. quero. Quotâ horâ venisti? Sextâ.* Sometimes the construction is varied; as, *Cujus est liber? Meus*, not *mei*. *Quanti emptus est? Decem assibus. Damnatusne es furti? Imo alio crimine.* Often the answer is made by other parts of speech than nouns; as, *Quid agitur? Statur, sc. a me, a nobis. Quis fecit? Nescio: Aiunt Petrum fecisse. Quomodo vales? Bene, male. Ser pſistine? Scripsi, ita, etiam, immo, &c. An vidisti? Non vidi, non, minime, &c. Chærea tuam vestem detraxit tibi? Factum. Et eâ est indutus? Factum.* Ter. Most of the Rules of Syntax may thus be exemplified in the form of questions and answers.

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF CONJUNCTIONS.

LVIII. The conjunctions *et*, *ac*, *atque*, *nec*, *neque*, *aut*, *vel*, and some others, couple like cases and modes; as,

*Honora patrem et matrem,  
Nec legit nec scribit,*

Honour father and mother.  
He neither reads nor writes.

S

Obs.

Obs. 1. To this rule belong particularly the copulative and disjunctive conjunctions; as likewise, *quam*, *nisi*, *præterquam*, *an*; and also adverbs of likeness, as, *ceu*, *tantumquam*, *quasi*, *ut*, &c. as,

*Nullum præmium a vobis postulo, præterquam hujus diei memoriam*, Cic. *Gloria virtutem tanquam umbra sequitur*, Id.

Obs. 2. These conjunctions properly connect the different members of a sentence together, and are hardly ever applied to single words, unless when some other word is understood. Hence if the construction of the sentence be varied, different cases and modes may be coupled together; as,

*Interest mea et reipublica; Constitit asse et pluris; Sive es Roma, sive in Epiro; Decius cum se devoveret, et in mediam aciem irruerat*, Cic. *Vir magni ingenii summæque industriæ; Neque per vim, neque insidiis*, Sall. *Tecum habita, & nôris, quam sit tibi curta supellex*, Pers.

Obs. 3. When *et*, *aut*, *vel*, *sive*, or *nec*, are joined to different members of the same sentence, without connecting it particularly to any former sentence, the first *et* is rendered in English by *both* or *likewise*; *aut* or *vel*, by *either*; the first *sive*, by *whether*; and the first *nec*, by *neither*; as,

*Et legit, et scribit*: so *tum legit, tum scribit*; or *cum legit, tum scribit*, He both reads and writes; *Sive legit, sive scribit*, Whether he reads or writes: *Facere quæ vera, quæ falsa; Increpare quæ consules ipsos, quæ exercitum*, to upbraid both the consuls and the army, Liv.

LIX. Two or more substantives singular coupled by a conjunction, (as, *et*, *ac*, *atque*, &c.) have an adjective, verb, or relative plural; as,

*Petrus et Joannes, qui sunt docti*, Peter and John, who are learned.

Obs. 1. If the substantives be of different persons, the verb plural must agree with the first person rather than the second, and with the second rather than the third; as, *Si tu et Tullia valetis, ego et Cicero valemus*, If you and Tullia are well, I and Cicero are well, Cic. In English the person speaking usually puts himself last: thus, *You and I read; Cicero and I are well*: but in Latin the person who speaks is generally put first: thus, *Ego et tu legimus*.

Obs.

Obs. 2. If the substantives are of different genders, the adjective or relative plural must agree with the masculine rather than the feminine or neuter; as, *Pater et mater, qui sunt mortui*: but this is only applicable to beings which may have life. The person is sometimes implied; as, *Athenarum et Crasippi, ad quos, &c. Propter summam doctoris auctoritatem et urbis, quorum alter, &c. Cic.* Where *Athenæ* & *urbs* are put for the learned men of Athens. So in substantives; as, *Ad Ptolemæum Cleopatramque reges legati missi*, i. e. the king and queen, Liv.

Obs. 3. If the substantives signify things without life, the adjective or relative plural must be put in the neuter gender; as, *Divitiæ, decus, gloria, in oculis sita sunt*, Sall.

The same holds, if any of the substantives signify a thing without life; because when we apply a quality or join an adjective to several substantives of different genders, we must reduce the substantives to some certain class, under which they may all be comprehended, that is, to what is called their *Genus*. Now the *Genus* or class which comprehends under it both persons and things, is that of substances or beings in general, which are neither masculine nor feminine. To express this the Latin grammarians use the word *Negotia*.

Obs. 4. The adjective or verb frequently agrees with the nearest substantive or nominative, and is understood to the rest; as,

*Et ego et Cicero meus flagitabit*, Cic. *Sociis et rege recepto*, Virg. *Et ego in culpa sum, et tu*, Both I am in the fault, and you; or, *Et ego et tu es in culpa*, Both I and you are in the fault. *Nihil hic nisi carmina, defunt*; or *nihil hic deest nisi carmina*. *Omnia, quibus turbari solita eras civitas, domi discordia, foris bellum exortum*; *Duo millia et quadringenti cæsi*, Liv. This construction is most usual, when the different substantives resemble one another in sense; as, *Mens, ratio, et consilium, in senibus est*, Understanding, reason, and prudence is in old men. *Quibus ipse meique ante Larem proprium vescor*, for *vescimur*, Horat.

Obs. 5. The plural is sometimes used after the preposition *cum* put for *et*; as,

*Remo cum fratre Quirinus jura dabunt*, Virg. The conjunction is frequently understood; as, *Dum atus, metus, magister prohibebant*, Ter. *Frons, oculi, vultus sæpe mentiuntur*, Cic.

The different examples comprehended under this rule are commonly referred to the figure *Syllepsis*.

LX. | The conjunctions *ut, quo, licet, ne, utinam*, and *dummodo*, are for the most part joined to the subjunctive mode; as,



*Lego ut discam,  
Utinam sapias,*

I read that I may learn.  
I wish you were wise.

Obf. 1. All interrogatives, when placed indefinitely, have after them the subjunctive mode.

Whether they be adjectives; as, *Quantus, qualis, quotus, quotuplex, uter*; Pronouns, as, *quis & cujus*; Adverbs, as, *Ubi, quo, unde, quorsum, quamdiu, quamdudum, quampridem, quoties, cur, quare, quamobrem, num, utrum, quemodo, qui, ut, quam, quantopere*; or Conjunctions, as, *ne, an, anne, annon*; Thus, *Quis est?* Who is it? *Nescio quis sit*; I do not know who it is. *An venturus est?* *Nescio, dubite, an venturus sit. Viden' ut alta stet nive candidum Soracte?* Hor. But these words are sometimes joined with the indicative; as, *Scio quid ago, Plaut. Haud scio an amat, Ter. Vide avaritia quid facit, Id. Vides quam turpe est, Cic.*

¶ In like manner the Relative *QUI* in a continued discourse; as, *Nil est quod Deus efficere non possit. Quis est, qui utilia fugiat?* Cic. Or when joined with *QUIPPE* or *UTPOTE*; *Neque Antonius procul aberat, utpote qui sequeretur, &c.* Sall. But these are sometimes, although more rarely, joined with the Indicative. So *Est qui, sunt qui, est quando v. ubi, &c.* are joined with the indicative or subjunctive.

NOTE, *Haud scio an recte dixerim*, is the same with *dico, affirmo* Cic.

So in English, *if, though, unless, except, whatever, whether, or*; also *so, before, ere, till, &c.* have after them the subjunctive mode; as, *If thou let this man go; If thou be the Son of God; Although my house be not so; Though he slay me; Though he fall, &c. Unless he wash his feet; I will not let thee go except thou bless me; Except it were given from above; Whether it were I or they; Whosoever he be; Whatever be our fate, &c.* So likewise *that*, expressing the motive or end; *lest*, and *that* annexed to a command preceding; and *if* with *but* following it; as, *Let him that standeth take heed lest he fall; Beware that thou bring not my son thither; If he do but touch the hills, they shall smoke.*

The nominative case following the verb sometimes supplies the place of *if, or though*; as, "*Had he done this, he had escaped,*" i. e. if he had done this: "*Charm he never so wisely,*" or rather, ever so wisely, i. e. *how wisely soever, for, though he charm, &c.*

Obf. 2. When any thing doubtful or contingent is signified, conjunctions and indefinites are usually construed with the subjunctive; but when a more absolute or determinate

minate sense is expressed, with the indicative mode ; as, *If he is to do it ; Although he was rich, &c.*

Obf. 3. *ETSI*, *TAMETSI*, and *TAMENETSI*. *QUANQUAM*, in the beginning of a sentence, have the indicative ; but elsewhere, they also take the subjunctive : *ETIAMSI* and *QUAMVIS* commonly have the subjunctive, and *UT*, although, always has it : as, *Ut quæras. non reperies* Cic. *QUONIAM*, *QUANDO*, *QUANDOQUIDEM*, are usually construed with the indicative ; *SI*, *SIN*, *NE*, *NISI*, *SIQUIDEM* ; *QUOD*, and *QUIA*. sometimes with the indicative, and sometimes with the subjunctive *DUM*, for *dummodo*, provided, has always the subjunctive ; as, *Oderint dum metuant*, Cic. And *QUIPPE*, for *nam*, always the indic. ; as, *Quippe veteris satiss*

Obf. 4. Some conjunctions have their correspondent conjunctions belonging to them ; so that, in the following member of the sentence, the latter answers to the former : thus, when *etsi*, *tametsi*, or *quamvis*, although, are used in the former member of a sentence, *tamen*, yet, or nevertheless, generally answers to them in the latter. In like manner, *Tam—quam* ; *Adeo* or *ita*,—*ut* : in English, *As,—as* or *so* ; as, *Etsi sit liberalis, tamen non est profusus*, Although he be liberal, yet he is not profuse. So *prius* or *ante*,—*quam*. In some of these, however, we find the latter conjunction sometimes omitted, particularly in English.

Obf. 5. The conjunction *ut* is elegantly omitted after these verbs, *Volo*, *nolo*, *malo*, *rogo*, *precor*, *cenſeo*, *suaſdeo*, *licet*, *oportet*, *neceſſe eſt*, and the like ; and likewise after these imperatives, *Sine*, *fac*, or *facito* ; as, *Ducas volo hodie uxorem* ; *Nolo mentiare* ; *Fac cogites*, Ter. In like manner *ne* is commonly omitted after *cave* ; as, *Cave facias*, Cic. *Post* is also sometimes understood ; thus, *Die octavo, quam creatus erat*, Liv. iv. 47. scil. *post*. And so in English, *See you do it* ; *I beg you would come to me*, sc. *that*.

Obf. 6. *Ut* and *quod* are thus distinguished: *ut* denotes the final cause, and is commonly used with regard to something future ; *quod* marks the efficient or impulsive cause, and is generally used concerning the event or thing done ; as, *Lego ut discam*, I read that I may learn ; *Gaudeo quod legi*, I am glad that or because I have read. *Ut* is likewise used after these intensive words, as they are called, *Adco*, *ita*, *sic*, *tam*, *talis*, *tantus*, *tot*, &c.

Obf. 7. After the verbs *timeo*, *vereor*, and the like, *ut* is taken in a negative sense for *ne non*, and *ne* in an affirmative sense ; as,

*Timeo ne faciat*, I fear he will do it ; *Timeo ut faciat*, I fear he will

not do it. *Id paves ne ducas tu illam, tu autem ut ducas*, Ter. *Ut sis vitalis, metuo*, Hor. *Timeo ut frater vivat*, will not;—*ne frater moriatur*, will. But in some few examples they seem to have a contrary meaning.

## THE CONSTRUCTION OF COMPARATIVES.

LXI. The comparative degree governs the ablative; as,

*Dulcior melle* sweeter than honey. *Præstantior auro*, better than gold.

Obf. 1. The sign of the ablative in English is *than*. The positive with the adverb *magis*, likewise governs the ablative; as, *Magis dilecta luce*, Virg.

The ablative is here governed by the preposition *præ* understood, which is sometimes expressed; as, *Fortior præ cæteris*. We find the comparative also construed with other prepositions; as, *Immanior ante omnes*, Virg.

Obf. 2. The comparative degree may likewise be construed with the conjunction *quam*, and then instead of the ablative, the noun is to be put in whatever case the sense requires; as,

*Dulcior quam mel*, scil. *est*. *Amo te magis quam illum*, I love you more than him, that is, *quam amo illum*, than I love him. *Amo te magis quam ille*, I love you more than he, i. e. *quam ille amat*, than he loves. *Plus datur a me quam illo*, sc. *ab*.

Obf. 3. The conjunction *quam* is often elegantly suppressed after *amplius* and *plus*; as,

*Vulnerantur amplius sexcenti*, Cæs. scil. *quam*. *Plus quingentos colaphos infregit mihi*, He has laid on me more than five hundred blows, Ter. *Castra ab urbe haud plus quinque millia passuum locant*, sc. *quam*, Liv.

*Quam* is sometimes elegantly placed between two comparatives; as,

*Triumphus clarior quam gratior*, Liv. Or the prep. *pro* is added; as, *Prælium atrocius, quam pro numero pugnantium editur*, Liv.

The comparative is sometimes joined with these ablatives, *opinione*, *spe*, *æquo*, *justo*, *dicto*; as,

*Credibili, opinione major*, Cic. *Credibili fortior*, Ovid. Fast. iii. 618. *Gravius æquo*, Sall. *Dicto citius*, Virg. *Majora credibili tutius*, Liv. They are often understood; as, *Liberius vivebat*, sc. *justo*, too freely, Nepos.

*Nihil* is sometimes elegantly used for *nemo* or *nulli*; as,

*Nihil vidi quidquam latius*, for *neminem*, Ter. *Crasso nihil perfectius*, Cic. *Asperius nihil est humili, cum surgit in altum*. So *quid nobis labori-*  
*osius*,

*estus*, for *quis*, &c. Cic. We say, *inferior patre nulla re*, or *quam pater*. The comparative is sometimes repeated or joined with an adverb; as, *Magis magisque*, *plus plusque*, *minus minusque*, *carior cariorque*: *Quotidie plus*, *indies magis*, *semper candidior candidiorque*, &c.

Obs. 4. In English, the relative *who* after *than* is always put in the accusative case; as, He is a man, *than whom* there is none better: but here if we substitute a pronoun in place of the relative, the pronoun must be put in the nominative; as, there is none better than *he*, not, than *him*. In like manner, it is improper to say, He is better than *me*, than *us*, than *her*, than *them*, &c. It should be, He is better than *I*, than *we*, than *she*, than *they*, &c. the auxiliary verb being understood to each of them.

Obs. 5. The relation of equality or sameness is likewise expressed in English by conjunctions; as, *Est tam doctus quam ego*. He is as learned as I. *Animus erga te idem est ac fuit*. *Ac* and *atque* are sometimes, though more rarely, used after comparatives; as, *Nihil est magis verum atque hoc*, Ter.

Obs. 6. The excess or defect of measure is put in the ablative after comparatives; and the sign in English is *by*, expressed or understood; (or more shortly, the difference of measure is put in the ablative); as,

*Est decem digitis altior quam frater*, He is ten inches taller than his brother, or by ten inches. *Altero tanto major est fratre*, i. e. *duplo major*, He is as big again as his brother, or twice as big. *Sesquipede minor*, a foot and a half less; *Altero tanto*, aut *sesquimajor*, as big again, or a half bigger, Cic. *Ter tanto peior est*; *Bis tanto amici sunt inter se, quam prius*, Plaut. *Quingies tanto amplius, quam quantum licitum sit civitatibus imperavit*, five times more, Cic. To this may be added many other ablatives, which are joined with the comparative, to increase its force; as, *Tanto, quanto, quo, eo, hoc, multo, paulo, nimio*, &c.; thus, *Quo plus habent, eo plus cupiunt*, The more they have, the more they desire. *Quanto melior, tanto felicior*, The better, the happier. *Quoque minor spes est, hoc magis ille cupit*, Ovid. Fast. ii. 766. We frequently find *multo, tanto, quanto*, also joined with superlatives; *Multo pulcherrimam eam haberemus*, Sall. *Multoque id maximum fuit*, Liv.

### THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

LXII. A Substantive and a participle are put in the ablative, when their case depends on no other word; as,

*Soli*

*Sole oriente, fugiunt tenebræ,* { The sun rising, or while the sun riseth,  
darkness flies away.  
*Opere peracto, ludemus,* { Our work being finished, or when our  
work is finished, we will play.

So, *Dominante libidine, temperantiæ nullus est locus; Nihil amicitia præstabilius est, excepta virtute; Oppressa libertate patriæ, nihil est quod speremus amplius; Nobilium vitam victuque mutato, mores mutari civitatum puto,* Cic. *Parumper silentium et quies fuit, nec Etruscis, nisi cogerentur, pugnam inituris, et dictatore arcem Romanam respectante, ut ab auguribus, simul aves rite admisissent, ex composito tolleretur signum,* Liv. *Bellice, depositis clypeo paulisper et busta, Adars ades,* Ovid. *Fast. iii. 1.*

Obs. 1. This ablative is called *Absolute*, because it does not depend upon any other word in the sentence.

For if the substantive with which the participle is joined, be either the nominative to some following verb, or be governed by any word going before, then this rule does not take place: the ablative absolute is never used, unless when different persons or things are spoken of: as, *Milites, hostibus victis, redierunt,* The soldiers, having conquered the enemy, returned. *Hostibus victis*, may be rendered in English several different ways, according to the meaning of the sentence with which it is joined; thus, 1. *The enemy conquered, or being conquered;* 2. *When or after the enemy is or was conquered;* 3. *By conquering the enemy;* 4. *Upon the defeat of the enemy, &c.*

Obs. 2. The perfect participles of deponent verbs are not used in the ablative absolute; as, *Cicero locutus hæc confedit,* never *his locutis*. The participles of common verbs may either agree in case with the substantive before them, like the participles of deponent verbs, or may be put in the ablative absolute, like the participles of passive verbs; as, *Romani adepti libertatem floruerunt;* or *Romani, libertate adeptâ, floruerunt*. But as the participles of common verbs are seldom taken in a passive sense, we therefore find them rarely used in the ablative absolute.

Obs. 3. The participle *existente* or *existentibus* is frequently understood; as, *Cæsare duce,* scil. *existente*. *His consulibus,* scil. *existentibus*. *Invitâ Minervâ,* sc. *existente*, against the grain; *Crassâ Minervâ,* without learning, Hor. *Magistrâ ac duce naturâ;* *vivis fratribus;* *te hortatore;* *Cæsare impulsore* &c. Sometimes the substantive must be supplied; as, *Nondum comperto, quam regionem hostes petissent,* i. e. *cum nondum compertum esset,* Liv. *Tum de-*  
mum



*num palam facto*, sc. *negotio*, Id. *Excepto quod non simul esses, cetera latus*, Hor. *Parto quod avebas*, Id. In such examples *negotio* must be understood, or the rest of the sentence considered as the substantive, which perhaps is more proper. Thus we find a verb supply the place of a substantive ; as, *Vale dicto*, having said farewell, Ovid.

Obs. 4. We sometimes find a Substantive plural joined with a participle singular ; as, *Nobis prasente*, Plaut. *Absente nobis*, Ter. We also find the ablative absolute, when it refers to the same person with the nominative to the verb ; as, *Me duce ad hunc voti finem, me milite, veni*, Ovid. Amor. ii. 12. 12. *Laetos fecit se consule fastos*, Lucan. v. 384. *Populo spectante fieri credum, quicquid me conscio faciam*, Senec. de Vit. Beat. c. 20. But examples of this construction rarely occur.

Obs. 5. The ablative called absolute is governed by some preposition understood ; as, *a, ab, cum, sub*, or *in*. We find the preposition sometimes expressed ; as, *Cum diis juvantibus*, Liv. The nominative likewise seems sometimes to be used absolutely ; as, *Perniciosa libidine paulisper usus, infirmitas naturæ accusatur*, Sallust. Jug. 1.

Obs. 6. The ablative absolute may be rendered several different ways ; thus, *Superbo regnante*, is the same with *cum, dum, or quando Superbus regnabat*. *Opere peracto*, is the same with *Post opus peractum, or Cum opus est peractum*. The present participle when used in the ablative absolute, commonly ends in *e*.

Obs. 7. When a substantive is joined with a participle in English independently on the rest of the sentence, it is expressed in the nominative ; as, *Illo descendente*, He descending. But this manner of speech is seldom used except in poetry.

## APPENDIX to SYNTAX.

## I. Various Signification and Construction of VERBS.

[The verbs are here placed in the same order as in Etymology.]

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

**A** SPIRARE ad gloriam & laudem, *to aim at*; in curiam, *to desire to be admitted*, Cic.; equis Achillis, *to wish for*; labori ejus, *to favour*; amorem dictis, *sc. ei, to infuse*, Virg.

DESPERARE sibi, de se; salutem, salutis, de salute, *to despair of*.

LEGARE aliquem ad alium, *to send as an ambassador*; aliquem sibi, *to make his lieutenant*; pecuniam alicui, *i. e. testamento relinquere*. *N. B.* Publice legantur homines; qui inde legati dicuntur; privatim allegantur; unde allegati.

DELEGARE æs alienum fratri, *to leave him to pay*; laborem alteri, *to lay upon*; aliquid ad aliquem, *i. e. in eum transferre*, Cic.

LEVARE metum ejus & ei, cum metu, *to ease*.

MUTARE locum, solum, *to be banished*; aliquid aliqua re; bellum pro pace, *to exchange*; vestem, *i. e. fordiam togam induere*, Liv. vestem cum aliquo, Ter. fidem, *to break*.

OBNUNCIARE comitiis vel concilio, *i. e. comitia auspiciis impedire, to hinder, by telling bad omens, and repeating these words* ALIO DIE; Consuli v. magistratui; *i. e. prohibere ne cum populo agat*, Cic.

PRONUNCIARE pecuniam pro reo, *to promise*; aliquid edicto, *to order*; sententias, *to sum up the opinions of the senators*, Cic.

RENUNCIARE aliquid, de re, alicui, ad aliquem, *to tell*; consulem, *to declare, to name*; vitam, amicitiam ei, *to give up*; muneri, hospitio, *to refuse*; repudium ei, *to divorce*.

OCCUPARE aliquem, *to seize*; se in aliquo negotio, *to be employed*; se ad negotium, Plaut. pecuniam alicui v. apud aliquem grandi sœnore, *to give at interest*, Cic. occupat facere bellum, transire in agrum hostium, *begins first*, anticipates, Liv.

PRÆOCCUPARE saltum, portas Ciliciæ, *to seize before hand*, Nep.

PRÆJUDICARE aliquem, *to condemn one from the precedent of a former sentence or trial*, Cic.

ROGARE aliquem id, & de ea re; id ab eo; salutem, & pro salute, Cic. legem, *to propose*; hence, UTI ROGAS, dicere, *to pass it*; militem sacramento, *to administer the military oath*; Roget quis? *if any one should ask*. Comitia rogandis consulibus, *for electing*, Liv.

ABROGARE legem, *seldom legi, to disannul a law, to repeal, or to change in part*; multam, *to take off a fine*; imperium ei, *to take from*.

ADROGARE id sibi, *to claim*.

DEROGARE aliquid legi, v. de lege, *to repeal or take away some clause of a law*; lex derogatur, Cic. fidem ei, v. de fide ejus, *to hurt one's credit*; ex aequitate; sibi, alicui, *to derogate or take from*.

ERO-

EROGARE pecuniam in classem, in vestes, *to lay out money on.*

IRROGARE multam ei, *to impose.*

OBROGARE legi, *to enact a new law contrary to an old.*

PROROGARE imperium, provinciam alicui, *to prolong*; diem ei ad solvendum, *to put off.*

SUBROGARE aliquem in locum alterius, *to substitute*; legi, *to add a new clause*, or *to put one in place of another.*

SPECTARE orientem, ad orientem, *to look towards*; aliquem ex censu, animum alicujus ex suo, *to judge of.*

SUPERARE hostes, *to overcome*; montes, *to pass*; superat pars capti, *sc. operis, remains*; Captæ superavimus urbi, *survived*, Virg.

TEMPERARE iras, ventos, *to moderate*; orbem, *to rule*; mihi, sibi, *to restrain, to forbear*; alicui, *to spare*; cædibus, a lacrymis, *to abstain from.*

VACARE curâ, culpâ, morbo, munere militiæ, &c. a labore, *to be free from*; animo, *sc. in, to be at ease*; philosophiæ, in v. ad rem, *to apply to*; vacat locus, *is empty*; si vacas, v. vacat tibi, *if you are at leisure.*

VINDICARE mortem ejus, *to revenge*; ab interitu, exercitum fame, *to free*; id sibi, & ad se, *to claim*; libertatem ejus, *to defend*; se in libertatem, *to set at liberty.*

DARE animam, *to die*; animos, *to encourage*; manus, *to yield*; manum ei, *to shake hands*, Plaut. jura, *to prescribe laws*; literas alicui ad aliquem, *to give one a letter to carry to another*; terga, fugam, v. se in fugam, in pedes, *to fly*; hostes in fugam, *to put to flight*; operam, *to endeavour*; operam philosophiæ, literis, palæstræ, *to apply to*; operam honoribus, *to seek*, Nep. veniam ei, *to grant his request*, Ter.

gemitus, lacrymas, amplexus, cantus, ruinam, fidem, juramentum, &c. *to groan, weep, embrace, sing, fall, &c. cognitores honestas, to give good vouchers for one's character*, Cic. aliquid mutuum v. utendum, *to lend*; pecuniam senori, & collocare, *to place at interest*; se alicui ad docendum, Cic. multum suo ingenio, *to think much of*; se ad aliquid, *to apply to*; se auctoritati senatus, *to yield*; fabulam, scripta foras, *to publish*; Cic. effectum, *to perform*; senatum, *to give a bearing of the senate*; actionem, *to grant leave to prosecute*; præcipientem, *to tumble headlong*; aliquid paternum, *to act like one's father*; lectos faciendos, *to bespeak*, Ter. litem secundum aliquem, *to determine a law-suit in favour of one*; aliquem exitio, morti, neci, letho, *rarely lethum alicui, to kill*; aliquid alicui dono v. muneri, *to make a present*; crimini, vitio, laudi, *to accuse, blame, praise*; pœnas, *to suffer*; nomen militiæ, v. in militiam, *to list one's self to be a soldier*; se alicui, *to be familiar with*, Ter. Da te mihi hodie, *be directed by me*, Id. aures, *to listen*; oblivioni, *to forget*; civitatem ei, *to make one free of the city*; dicta, *to speak*, verba alicui, *to impose on, to cheat*; se in viam, *to enter on a journey*; viam ei, *to give place*; jus gratiæ, *to sacrifice justice to interest*; se turpiter, *to make a shabby appearance*; fundum, vel domum alicui, mancipio, *to convey the property of, to warrant the title to*; Vitæque mancipio nulli datur, omnibus usu, Lucr. servos in quæstionem, *to give up slaves to be tortured*; primas, secundas, &c. (*sc. partes*) actioni, *to ascribe every thing to delivery*, Cic. Dat ei bibere, Ter. comas diffundere ventis, *to let them blow loose*, Virg. Da mihi v. nobis,

*tell*

tell us, Cic. Ut res dant se, as matters go; solertem dabo, I'll warrant him expert, Ter.

SATISDARE judicatum solvi, to give security that what the judge has determined shall be paid, Cic.

STARE contra aliquem; ab, cum, v. pro aliquo, to side with, to be of the same party; judicio ejus, to follow; in sententia: pacto, conditionibus, conventis, to stand to, to make good an agreement; re judicatâ, to keep to what has been determined; stare v. constare animo, to be in his senses: Non stat per me quo minus pecunia solvatur, It is not owing to me that, &c. multorum sanguine ea Pænis victoria stetit, cost, Liv. Mihi stat alere morbum desinere, I am resolved, Nep.

ADSTARE mensæ, to stand by; ad mensam, in conspectu.

CONSTARE ex multis rebus, animo et corpore, to consist of; secum, to be consistent with, Cic. liber constitit v. stetit mihi duobus assibus, cost me; non constat ei color, his colour comes and goes; auri ratio constat, the sum is right. Constat, imperf. It is evident, certain, or agreed on; mihi, inter omnes, de hac re.

EXTARE aquis, to be above, Ovid. ad memoriam posteritatis, to remain, Cic. sepulchra extant, Liv.

INSTARE viâis, to press on the vanquished; rectam viam, to be in

the right way; currum Marti, to make speedily, Virg.; instat factum, insists that it was done, Ter.

OBSTARE ei, to binder.

PRÆSTARE multa, to perform; alicui, v. aliquem virtute, to excel; silentium ei, to give; auxilium, to grant. Juv. impensas, to defray; iter tutum, to procure; se incolumem, to preserve; se virum, i. e. præbere, exhibere; amorem, v. benevolentiam alicui, to show; culpam v. damnum, i. e. in se transferre, to take on one's self; præstabo de me; eum facturum, I will be answerable. In iis rebus repetendis, quæ mancipi sunt, is periculum judicii præstare debet, qui se nexu obligavit, In recovering, or in an action to recover those things which are transferable, the seller ought to take upon himself the hazard of a trial, Cic. N. B. Those things were called, Res mancipi, (contracted for mancipij, i. e. quas emptor manu caperet,) the property of which might be transferred from one Roman citizen to another; as, houses, lands, slaves, &c.

Præstat, imperf. i. e. it is better: Præsto esse alicui, adv. to be present, to assist; Libri prostant venales, the books are exposed to sale.

ACCUBARE alicui in convivio, to recline near; apud aliquem. Incubare ovis & ova, to sit upon; stratis & super strata.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

### Verbs in BEO.

HABERE spem, febrim, finem, bonum exitum, tempus, consuetudinem, voluntatem nocendi, opus in manibus, v. inter manus, to have; gratiam & gratum, to have a grateful sense of a favour; judicium, to hold a trial; honorem ei, to honour; in oculis, to be fond of, Ter.: fidem alicui, to trust or be-

lieve; curam de v. pro eo; rationem alicujus, to pay regard to, to allow one to stand candidate for an office; rationem v. rem cum aliquo, to have business with; satis, to be satisfied; orationem, concionem ad populum, to make a speech; aliquem odio, in odium, to hate; ludibrio, to mock; id religioni, to

bare

have a scruple about it: So, habere aliquid quæstui, honori, prædæ, voluptati, &c. *sc. sibi*; se bene v. graviter, *to be well or ill*; se parcè & duriter, *to live*, Ter. aliquid compertum, cognitum, perspectum, exploratum, certum v. pro certo, *to know for certain*; aliquem contemptui, despiciatui, -um, v. in despiciatui, *to despise*; excusatum, *to excuse*; fusque deque, *to scorn, to slight*; Ut res se habet, *stands, is*; rebus ita se habentibus, *in this state of affairs*; Hæc habeo, v. habui dicere de, &c. Non habeo necesse scribere, quid sim facturus, Cic. Habe tibi tuas res, *a form of divorce*.

ADHIBERE diligentiam; celeritatem, vim, severitatem in aliquem, *to use*; in convivium v. consilium, *to admit*; remedium vulneri, curationem morbo, *to apply*; vinum ægrotis, *to give*; aures verbis, *to bear with taste*; cultum & preces diis, *to offer*; Cic. Exhibere molestiam alicui, *to cause trouble*.

JUBERE legem, *to vote for, to pass*; regem, *to abuse*; aliquem salvere, *to wish one health*; esse bono animo, &c. Uxorem suas res sibi habere jussit, *divorced*, Cic.

DOCEO te hanc rem, & de hac re. Doctus, *adj.* utriusque linguæ; Latinis & Græcis literis; Latinè & Græcè; ad militiam.

MISCERE aliquid alicui, cum aliquo, ad aliquid; vinum aquâ, Plin. cuncta sanguine, Tacit. sacra profanis, Hor. humana divinis, Liv.

VIDERE rem v. de re; sibi, de isthoc, *to take care of*, Ter. plus, *to be more wise*, Cic. De hoc tu videris, *consider, be answerable for*, Cic. Videor videre, *methinks I see*; visus sum audire, *methought I heard*; mihi visus est dicere, *he seemed*; Quid tibi videtur? *What*

*think you?* Si tibi videtur, *if you please*; videtur fecisse, *guilty, &c.*

INVIDERE honorem ei, v. honori ejus; ei vel eum, *to envy*.

PROVIDERE & prospicere id, *to foresee*; ei, *to provide for*; in posterum; rei frumentariæ, rem v. dere.

SEDERE ad dextram ejus; in equo, *to ride*; toga bene sedet, *sits*; Sedet hoc animo, *is fixed*, Virg.

ASSIDERE ei; Adherbalem, *to sit by*, Sal. Assidet infano, *is near or like to*, Hor.

DISSIDERE cum aliquo, *to disagree*.

INSIDERE equo, & in equo, *to sit upon*; locum, Liv. in animo, memoriâ, *to be fixed*.

PRÆSIDERE urbi, imperio, *to command*, Cic. exercitum, Italiam, Tacit.

SUPERSEDERE labore, litibus; pugna, loqui, *to forbear, to give over*.

PENDERE promissis, ab v. ex aliquo, *to depend*; de, ex, ab & in arbore; Opera pendent interrupta, Virg.

IMPENDET malum nobis, nos, v. in nos, *threatens*.

SPONDERE & despondere fidem alicui, *to betroth*.

DESPONDERE domum alicujus sibi, *to be sure of*, Cic. animo & -is, *to promise, to hope*; animum & -os, *to despair*; Liv.

RESPONDERE ei, literis ejus, his, ad hæc, ad nomen, *to answer*; votis ejus, *to satisfy his wishes*; ad spem.

SUADERE ei pacem, v. de pace; legem, *to speak in favour of*.

DOLERE casum ejus; de, ab, ex, in, pro re; dolet mihi cor, v. hoc dolet cordi meo; caput dolet a sole.

VALERE gratiâ apud aliquem, *to be in favour with one*, lex valet, *is in force*; quid verbum valeat,

T non



non video, *signifies*; valet decem talenta, *or oftener talentis, is worth*; vale vel valeas, *farewell*; or ironically, *away with you*.

EMINERE aliqua re vel in aliqua re, *inter omnes*; super cætera, Liv. super utrumque. Hor. *to be eminent, to excel*; ex aqua, v. aquam, super undas, *to be above*. Imminere alicui, *to hang over, to threaten*; in occasione, exitio alicujus, *to seek, to watch for*.

TENERE promissum; se domi, oppido, castris, *sc. in, to keep*; modum, ordinem, *to observe*; rem, dicta, lectionem, *to understand, to remember*; linguam, *but not suam*, silentium, *se in silentio, to be silent*; ora, *to keep the countenance fixed*; secundum locum imperii, *to hold*, Nep. jura civium, *to enjoy*, Cic. causam, *to gain*; mare, *to be in the open sea, to hold, to be master of*; terram, portum, metam, montes, *to reach*; risum, lachrymas, *to restrain*; se ab accusando, quin accuset, Cic. Ventus tenet, *blows*; teneri legibus, jurejurando, &c. *to be bound by*; leges tenent eum, *bind*; teneri in manifesto furto, *to be seized*; tenet fama, *prevails*.

ASTINERE maledictis, v. a, *to abstain*; publico, *to live retired*, Tacit. animum a scelere, ægrum a cibo, *to keep from*; jus belli ab aliquo, *not to treat rigorously*, Liv. Id ad me, ad religionem, &c. pertinet, *concerns me*; crimen ad te pertinet, Cic. But it is not proper to say, Liber ad me, ad fratrem pertinet, *for meus, fratris est, belongs to*; venæ ad vel in omnes corporis partes pertinent, *reach*.

SUSTINERE personam judicis, nomen consularis, *to bear the character*; assensionem, v. se ab assensu, *to withhold assent*; rem in noctem, *to defer*.

MANERE apud aliquem; in castris; ad urbem; in urbe; proposito, sententiâ, in sententiâ, statu suo, &c. adventum hostium, *to expect*, Liv. promissis, *to stand to, to keep*, Virg. Omnes una manet nox, *awaits*, Horat. Manent ingenia senibus, modo permaneat studium & industria, Cic. Munera vobis certa manent, Virg.

MERERE laudem; bene, male de aliquo; stipendia, equo, pedibus, *to serve as a soldier*; fustuarium, *to be beaten to death*.

HÆRERE lateri; tergis v. in terga hostium, Liv. curru, Virg. alicui in visceribus, Cic. Hæret mihi aqua, *I am in doubt*; Vide, ne hæreas, *lest you be at a loss*, Cic.

ADHÆRERE & adhærescere justitiæ; ad turrim; in me. Inhærere rei, & in re.

MOVERE castra, *to decamp*; bella, *to raise*; aliquem tribu, *to remove a Roman citizen from a more honourable to a less honourable tribe*; e senatu, *to degrade a senator*; risum vel jocum alicui, *to cause laughter*; stomachum ei, *to trouble*, Cic.

FAVETE ore, vel linguis, *sc. mihi, attend in silence, or abstain from words of a bad omen*.

CAVERE aliquid, aliquem, vel ab aliquo, *to guard against, to avoid*; alicui, *to provide for, to advise as a lawyer does his client*; aliquid alicui, Cic. sibi ab aliquo vel per aliquem de re aliqua, *to get security on*; mihi prædibus & chirographo cautum est, *I have got security by bail and bond*; veteranis cautum esse volumus, Cic. Cave facias, *sc. ne, see you don't do it*; mihi cavendum, vel mea cautio est, *I must take care*.

CONNIVERE ad fulgura, Suet. *to wink*; in hominum sceleribus, *to take no notice of*, Cic.

THIRD

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Verbs in IO.*

**FACERE** initium, finem, pausam, finem vitæ; pacem, amicitiam; testamentum, nomen, fossam, pontem in flumine, in Tiberiæ, *to make*; divortium cum uxore, Cic. bellum regi, Nep. se hilarem, *to shew*, Ter. se divitem, miserum, pauperem, *to pretend*, Cic. res alienum, *v. contrahere*, conflare, *to contract debt*; animos, *to encourage*; damnum, detrimentum, jacturam, *to lose*; naufragium, *to suffer*; sumptum, *to spend*; gratum alicui, *to oblige*; gratiam delicti, *to pardon a fault*; gratiam legis, *to dispense with*; iusta vel funus alicui, *to perform one's funeral rites*; rem, *to make an estate*; pecuniam, divitias ex metallis; foras, *v. inire, icere, ferire, percutere, jungere, sancire, firmare, &c. to make a league*; moram alicui, *to delay*: verba, *to speak*; audientiam sibi, Cic. negotium, et facessere, *to trouble*; aliquid missum, *to pass over*: aliquem missum, *to dismiss or excuse*; ad aliquid, *rarely alicui, to be fit or useful*; ratum, *to ratify*; planum, *to explain*; palam suis, *to make known*; Nep. stipendium pedibus, *v. equo, & merere, to serve in the army*; sacra, sacrificium, *v. rem divinam, to sacrifice*; reum, *to impeach*; fabulam, carmen, versus, &c. *to write a play, &c. copiam consilii ei, to offer advice; copiam vel potestatem dicendi legatis, to grant leave; fident, to procure or give credit; periculum, to make trial; potestatem sui, to expose himself, Nep. aliquem loquentem, v. loqui, to suppose or represent, Cic. piraticam, sc. rem, to be a pirate; argentariam, medicinam, mercaturam, &c. to be an*

*usurer, a physician, &c. versuram, to contract a new debt to discharge an old one, to borrow money at great interest, Cic. cum v. ab aliquo, to sula with; contra v. adversus, to oppose; nomen v. nomina, to borrow money, and also, to settle accounts, i. e. rationes acceptarum, sc. pecuniarum & expensarum inter se conferre; nomen in litura, to write it where something was before, Cic. pedem, v. pedes, to trim the sails, Virg. Fac ita esse, suppose it is so; obvius fieri alicui, to meet; ne longum, v. longa faciam, ut breve faciam, not to be tedious; equus non facit, will not move, Cic. Fac velle, sc. me, suppose me to be willing, Virg. Æn. iv. 540.*

**AFFICERE** aliquem laude, honore, præmio, & ignominia, penâ, morte, leto, &c. *to praise, honour, &c. to disgrace, punish, &c. Affectus* ætate, morbo, *weakened.*

**CONFICERE** bellum, *to finish*; orationes, *to compose*, Nep. cibum, *to cheer*; argentum, *to raise, to get*; also *to spend*, Cic.; cum aliquo de re, *to conclude a bargain*; exercitus hostium, *to destroy*; alterum Curiatium, *to kill*, Liv. Qui stipendiis confectis erant, i. e. emeriti, *had served out their time, Cic.*

**DEFICERE** animo, *to faint*; ab aliquo, *to revolt*; tempus deficit mihi vel me, *fails*: Defici viribus, ratione, &c. *to be deprived of.*

**INFICERE** se vitro, *to stain*. Infectus, part. *stained*; infectus, adj. *not true*. Inficior, -atus, -ari, *to deny.*

**OFFICERE** alicui, *to hinder or hurt*; Diogeni apricanti, *to stand betwixt him and the sun*; auribus, visui, *to stop or obstruct*; Umbra terræ soli officiens noctem efficit, Cic.

**PRÆFICERE** aliquem exercitui, *to set over*. Proficere alicui, *to profit, to do good*; in philosophia, & progressus facere, *to make progress*.

**REFICEREMUROS**, templa, ædes, rates, res, *to repair*; animum, vires, faucios, se, jumenta, *to refresh, to recover*.

**SUFFICERE** laboribus, ictibus, *to be able to bear*; arma v. vires alicui, *to afford*; Valerius in locum Collatini suffectus est, *was substituted*, Liv. Filius patri suffectus, Tacit. Oculos suffecti sanguine & igne, *sc. secundum, having their eyes red and inflamed*, Virg.

**SATISFACERE** alicui, in v. de aliqua re, *to satisfy*; fidei, promisso, *to perform*.

**JACERE** aliquem in præceps; contumelias in eum, *to throw*; fundamenta, & ponere, *to lay*; talos, *to play at dice*; anchoram, *to cast*.

**ADJICERE**, *to add*; oculos alicui rei, *to covet*; animum studiis, *to apply*; facer dotibus creandis, Liv.

**CONJICERE** se in pedes, v. fugam, *to fly*; cætera, *to conjecture*.

**INJICERE** manus ei, *to lay on*: spem, ardorem, suspicionem, pavorem, alicui, *to inspire*; admirationem sui cuivis ipso aspectu, Nep.

**OCJICERE** se hostibus, in v. ad omnes casus, *to oppose or expose*: crimen ei, *to lay to one's charge*.

**REJICERE** tela in hostes, *to throw back*; iudices, mala, *to reject*; rem ad senatum, Romam, *to refer*; rem ad Idus Febr. *to delay*, Cic.

**SUBJICERE** ova gallinæ, *to set an hen*; se imperio alicujus, *to submit*; testamenta, *to forge*; testes, *to suborn*; partes v. species generibus, ex quibus emanant, *to put or class under*; aliquid ei, *to suggest*: libellum ei, i. e. in manus

dare: odio civium, *to expose*: bona Pomperii v. fortunas hastæ, vel voci & sub voce præconis, *to expose to public sale*, Cic. sub hasta venire, *to be sold*, Liv.

**TRAJICERE** copias v. exercitum, fluvium, Hellespontum, vel trans fluvium, *to transport*: Marius cum parva navicula in Africam traiecit, *passed or sailed over*. Traiectus ferro, *pierced*.

**CAPERE** conjecturam, consilium, dolorem, fugam, specimen, spem, sedem, &c. *to guess, consult, grieve, fly, essay, hope, sit, &c.* augurium, v. auspicium, & agere, *to take an omen*: exemplum de aliquo: locum castris: terram, *to alight*: insulam, summam, *sc. loca, to reach*: spolia ex nobilitate, *to gain*, Sall. de republica nihil præter gloriam, Nep. magistratum, *to receive or enjoy*: virginem Vestalem, *to abuse*: amentiam, spiritus, superbiam alicujus, *to bear, to contain*: aliquem, consilio, perfidia, *to catch*: nec te Troja capit, Virg. Ædes vix nos capiunt, *the house hardly contains us*: Altero oculo capitur, *blind of one eye*: capitur locis, *he is delighted with*, Virg.

**ACCIPERE** pecuniam, vulnus, cladem, injuriam ab aliquo, *to receive*: Orbis terrarum divitiis accipere nolo pro patriæ caritate, Nep. binas literas eodem exemplo, *two copies of the same letter*, Cic. clamorem, de Socrate, *to bear*: id in bonam partem, *to take in good part, to understand in a good sense*: omnia ad contumeliam, aliter, aliorum ac, atque, Ter. rudem, v. rude donari, *to be discharged as a gladiator*; aliquem bene v. male, *to treat*: eum male acceptum in Mediam hiematum coegit redire, *roughly handled*, Nep. rogationem, *to approve the bill*:

*bill*; nomen, i. e. ad petendum admittere, *to allow to stand candidate*; omen, *to esteem good*; satisfactio- nem v. excusationem, Cæf. Accep- tus plebi, apud plebem, *popular*.

CONCIPERE verba juramenti, *to prescribe the form of an oath*; concepit verbis jurare: inimicitias cum aliquo, *to bear enmity to one*; aquam, *to gather, to form the head of an aqueduct*, Frontinus.

EXCIPERE eum hospitio, *to enter- tain*; fugientes, *to catch*; extremum spiritum cognatorum; sanguinem paterâ, *to keep or gather*; notis, & scribere, *to write in short hand*; motus futuros, *to perceive*; Hos homi- nes excipio, *I except*; virtutem ex- cipit immortalitas; turbulentior annus excepit, *succeeded*; sic excep- pit regia Juno, *replied*, Virg.

INCIPERE, occipere, *to begin*. Percipere fructus, *to reap*.

PRÆCIPERE futura, *to foresee*; gaudia, spem victoriæ, *to anticipate*; pecuniam mutuam, *to take before the time*, Cæf. lac, *to dry up*, Virg. alicui id, v. de ea re, *to order*; artem ei, *to teach*.

RECIPERE aliquid, *to receive*; urbem, *to recover*; eum teclis, *to entertain*; se v. pedem, *to retreat*; se domum, *to return*; se, mentem, animum, *to come to one's self again*, *to recover spirits*; in se, *to take charge*; alicui, *to promise*; se ad frugem, *to amend*; senem solum, *to give a seat to*, Cic.

RAPERE vel trahere in pejo- rem partem, *to take a thing in the worst sense*; in jus, *to bring before a judge*; partes inter se, *to share*, Liv. Sub divum, *to reveal*, Horat.

U O.

EXUERE vestes sibi, se vesti- bus; jugum sibi, se jugo, *to cast off*; fidem, sacramentum, *to break*; mentem, *to change*, Virg. hostem castris, *to beat from*.

RUERE ad interitum, in fer- rum; cæteros, Ter, spumias, *to drive or test*, Virg.

LUERE pœnas capitis, *to suffer*; æs alienum, *to pay*, Curt. culpam suam vel alterius, morte, sanguine, *to expiate, to atone or suffer for*.

ELUERE amicitias remissione usûs, *to drop gradually*, Cic.

STATUERE stipendium iis de publico, *to appoint*; exemplum in hominem, vel -ne, *to make one a public example*; aliquem capite in terram, *to set or place*, Ter.

CONSTITUERE coloniam, *to set- tle*; agmen paulisper, *to make to stop or halt*, Sall. in digitis, *to count on one's fingers*, Cic. urbem, *to build*, Ovid. Is hodie venturum ad me constituit domum, *appointed, resolv- ed*, Ter. Si utilitas amicitiam constituit, tollet eadem, *makes, con- stitutes*, Cic. Corpus bene consti- tutum, *a good constitution*, Id.

DESTITUERE aliquem, *to for- sake*; spem, *to deceive*; propositum, *to give over*, Ovid. deos pactâ mer- cede, *to defraud*, Hor.

INSTITUERE aliquem secun- dum hæredem filio, *to appoint*, Cic. collegium fabrorum, sacra, *to insti- tute, to found*, Plin. aliquem doctrinâ, Græcis literis, *to instruct*; naves, *to build*, Cæf. sermonem, *to enter upon*, Id. animum ad cogitandum, *to settle*; antequam pro Muræna dicere instituo, *I begin*, Cic.

PRÆSTITUERE petitori, qua actione illi uti oporteat, *to pre- scribe to the prosecutor what form of process he should use*, Cic. tempus ei, *to determine*.

RESTITUERE exules; virginem suis, *to restore*; oppida vicofque, *to repair*; aciem inclinatam, *to rally*; prælium, *to renew*, Liv.

SUBSTITUERE aliquem in locum ejus, pro altero, *to substitute or put in the place of*, Cic.

T 3

STRUERE

**STRUERE** epulas, *to prepare*; insidias, mendacium, *to contrive*; odium, crimen alicui, *vel in aliquem, to raise against*.

## B O.

**SCRIBERE** sua manu, bene, velociter, epistolam alicui, *v. ad aliquem*; bellum, *v. de bello*; milites, *to enlist*; supplementum militibus, *to recruit them*; hæredem, *to make one his heir*; dicam ei, *to raise an action against one*; nummos, *to give a bill of exchange*; de rebus suis scribi cupivit, Cic. Decemvir legibus scribendis, Liv.

**ASCRIBERE** aliquem civitati, in civitatem, *v. -e, to make free*.

**DESCRIBERE** aliquem, *to describe and not to name*; partes Italiæ, pecuniam, populum ordinibus, *to distribute, to divide*; vestigal civitatibus, *i. e. imperare*; jura, *i. e. dare v. constituere*; censores binos in singulas civitates, *i. e. facere*, Cic.

**INSCRIBERE** literas alicui, *to direct a letter*; librum, *to entitle or name*; ædes mercede, *to put a ticket on one's house to let*, Ter.

**PROSCRIBERE** bona alicujus, ædes suas, auctionem, *to publish to be sold, to set to sale*; aliquem, *to banish, to outlaw*.

**RESCRIBERE** alicujus literis *v. ad literas*, alicui ad aliquid, *to write an answer*; pecuniam, *to pay money by bill*; legionem ad equum, *to set foot soldiers on horseback*, Cæs.

**SUBSCRIBERE** exemplum literarum, *to write below*; causæ, *to join or take part in an accusation*; Cælaris iræ, *to favour*, Ovid.

## C O.

**DICERE** aliquid, *v. de aliqua re*, ex aliquo loco, alicui, *ad v. apud aliquem*; in aliquem, *against*; ad aliquid, *in answer to*; sententiam, *to give an opinion*; jus, *to ad-*

*minister justice, to pronounce sentence*; mulctam ei, *to amerce or fine*; diem ei, *to appoint a day for his trial before the people*; prodicere, *to put it off*; causam, *to plead*; testimonium, *to give evidence*; non idem loqui est ac dicere, *to harangue*, Cic. sacramento, *seldom sacramentum, to take the military oath*.

**ADDICERE** aliquid ei, *to call out at an auction, to sell*; servituti, *v. in servitutem, to sentence or adjudge to bondage*; bona, *to give up the goods of the debtor to the creditor*; se alicui, *to devote himself to one's service*: aves non addixerunt, *v. abdixerunt, the birds did not give a favourable omen*; pretio addictam habere fidem, *to be corrupt*, Cic.

**CONDICERE** operam alicui, *to promise assistance*; cœnam alicui, *v. ad cœnam, to propose supping with one without invitation*.

**EDICERE** alicui, *to order*; delectum, *to appoint a levy*; prædam militibus, *to promise by an edict*; iustitium, diem comitiis, *vel comitia consulis creandis, to appoint*.

**INDICERE** bellum, iustitium, *to proclaim war*; legem sibi, *to appoint*, Cic. cœtus in domos tribunorum, *to summon*, Liv. indicare, *to strew*; Indictus, an adj. *not sold*; causâ indictâ, *v. non cognitâ condemnari, to be condemned without being heard*; me indicente, hæc non sunt, *not telling*, Ter.

**INTERDICERE** alicui aliquid, *v. aliqua re*; scemibus usum purpuræ, *to forbid or deter from*; ti aquâ & igne, *v. aquam et ignem, to banish*; malè rem gerentibus bonis paternis interdicti solet, Cic. interdicti non poterat socero gener, *discharged the company of*, Nep.

**PRÆDICERE** alicui aliquid, *de aliqua re, id in hac re, to foretell, to forewarn*.

## DUCERE



**DUCERE** in carcerem v. vincula, to lead; exercitum, to command; spiritum, animam, vitam, to breathe, to live; fossam, murum, sulcum, to make or draw; bellum, to prolong, also to carry on, Virg. ætatem, diem, to spend; uxorem, to take a wife; in jus, to summon before a judge; aliquem, & vultum alicujus, ære, ex ære, de auro, marmore, &c. to make a statue; genus, nomen ab v. ex aliquo, to derive; omnia pro nihilo, infra se; id ei laudi, laudem, v. in laudem, oftener the first, to reckon it a praise to him; in conscientiam, to impute to a consciousness of guilt; in gloria, Plin. in crimen, Tacit. centesimas, sc. usuras, vel scenus centesimis, to compute interest at one for the hundred a month; or at 12 per cent. per annum; binis centesimis scenerari, to take 24 per cent. per annum, Cic. ducere longas voces in fletum, to draw out, Virg. ordines, to be a centurion, Liv. ilia, to pant like a broken winded horse, Hor.

**ADDUCERE** aliquem in judicium, ad arbitrium meum, to bring to a trial; in suspicionem regi, Nep. arcum, to draw in; habenas, to straiten the reins.

**CONDUcere** aliquem ex loco, to convey; navem, domum, coquos, to hire; columnam faciendam, to engage to make at a certain price: Conducit hoc tuæ laudi, in v. ad rem, is of advantage.

**DEDUCERE** naves, to launch; classem in prælium, to bring, Nep. equites, to make to alight, Liv. cum domum, to accompany, to carry home; de sententia, Cic. coloniam, to transplant; lacum, to drain.

**EDUCERE** gladium e vagina, to draw; florem Italiæ, to lead out; copias in aciem, Cic. filium, to educate, oftener educate; in astra, to extol, Hor. cælo, Virg.

**INDUCERE** tenebras clarissimis rebus, to bring on, Cic. animum, v. in animum, to persuade himself; scuta pellibus, to cover, Cæf. soleas pedibus, v. in pedes, to put on; colorem picturæ, to varnish, Plin. nomina, to cancel or raise, to rub out.

**OBducERE** exercitum, to lead against; callum dolori, to blunt it; sepulchrum sentibus, to cover.

**REDUCERE** aliquem in memoriam alicujus, vel alicui aliquid in memoriam, to bring back to one's remembrance; in gratiam cum aliquo, to reconcile; Vallis reducta, retired or low.

**PRODUCERE** testes, to bring out; funus, to attend; sermonem in noctem, to prolong, to continue; rem in hiemem, to defer; servos vendendos, to bring to market.

**SUBducERE** se a custodibus, to steal away; naves, to draw up, on shore; cibum ei & deducere, to take from; summam, rationes, to reckon, to cast up accounts.

**PARCERE** sibi, labore, to spare, &c. a cædibus, to forbear; aurum natis, Virg.

**ASSUESCERE** rei alicui, v. re aliqua, in ~~ad~~ ad hoc, to be accustomed; mentem pluribus & assuefacere, Hor. Animis bella, Virg. to accustom. So insuesco rei v. re; insuevit hoc me pater, Hor.

**SCISCERE** legem, to vote, to decree: hence plebiscitum.

**ASCISCERE** regium nomen, to assume; locios sibi, ad societatem sceleris, to associate; ritus peregrinos, to adopt.

**CONSCISCERE** mortem v. necem sibi, to kill one's self; fugam sibi, to flee, Liv.

**DISCERE** aliquid ab aliquo, v. apud aliquem, ex aliqua re, or without ex: Deducere, to forget what he hath learned; Ediscere, to get by heart.

**DESCENDERE**

DESCENDERE de palatio, præsidio, ædibus; in forum, curiam, campum; ad accusandum, ad omnia, ad extrema, *to have recourse to*, Cic.

## D O.

LUDERE aleâ, *v. -am, to play at dice*; par impar, *at even and odd*; operam, *to lose one's labour*.

ALLUDERE alicui, ad aliquem: Colludere ei, cum eo; illudere ei, eum, in eum, in eo; id, *to mock*.

EVADERE insidias, -iis, vel ex, *to escape*; in muro, *to mount*: Hæc quorū evadant, nescio, *to what they will turn out*: Clarus evasit, *became*.

CEDERE multa multis de suo jure, Cic. Bona creditoribus, *to yield, whence cessio bonorum*; alicui loco, de, a, ex loco, *v. locum, to give place*; vitâ, e vita decedere, *to die*; foro, *to turn bankrupt*; Hæreditas cedit mihi, *falls to*; Cedit in proverbium, *becomes*.

ACCEDERE oppidum, -do, ad *v. in oppidum, to approach*; ad conditiones, *to agree to*; Ciceroni, sententiæ, *v. ad sententiam ejus, to agree with*; ad Ciceronem, *to go to*; ad rempublicam, *to bear the questorship, or the first public office*; ad amicitiam Philippi, *to gain the friendship of*, Nep. Ad hæc mala hoc mihi accedit etiam, *added*, Ter. Robur accessit ætati, Cic. Animi accessere hosti, Liv. Ad corporis firmitatem plura animi bona accesserant, Nep. Accedit plurimum pretio; huc, eò, *accedit quod, is added*.

ANTECEDERE alicui rei; aliquem, *rarely alicui, to excel*.

CONCEDERE ei aliquid & de aliquo; paulum de suo jure; tempus ad rem, *to grant*; ab oculis, ad dextram, in exilium, in hiberna, *to retire, to go*; fato, naturæ, vitâ, *to die*; in sententiam ejus, *to come*

*into one's measures*; in conditiones, *to agree to*, Liv.

DISCEDERE transversum, & latum unguem, *v. digitum a re, to depart in the least*.

INTERCEDERE legi, *to give a negative against, to oppose a law*; pecuniam pro aliquo, *to become surety*: Intercedit mihi tecum amicitia vel inter nos, *there is, &c.*

SUCCEEDERE ei, in locum ejus, *to succeed*; muro, *v. murum*; ad urbem; sub primam aciem; in pugnam, *to come up to*.

CADERE altè, ab alto, in terram, *to fall*; causâ, formulâ, in judicio, & litem perdere, *to lose one's cause, to be cast*; in *v. sub sensum, oculos, potestatem, &c. in morbum, & incidere*, Cic. Non cadit in virum bonum mentiri, *is incapable of*, Cic. Homini lachrymæ cadunt, quasi puero, gaudio, Ter.

ACCIDERE genibus, *v. ad genua, to fall at*; auribus *v. ad aures, to come to*; alicui, casu, præter opinionem, *to happen*; accidit in te istud verbum, *applies*, Ter.

TENDERE vela, *to stretch*; insidias, retia, plagas, &c. *to lay snares*; arcum, *to bend*; iter, cursum, *to direct*; ad altiora, in cælum, *to aim at*; extra vallum, *sc. tabernaculum, to pitch a tent*: Manibus tendit divellere nodos, *tries*, Virg.

ATTENDO te, Cic. tibi, Plin. de hac re, ad hanc rem, *to take heed*; animum ad rem; res hostium, Sall.

CONTENDERE nervo, omnibus nervis, *to exert one's self*; aliquid ab aliquo, *to ask earnestly*; inter se: amor, poet. *for cum amore, to strive*: causas, *sc. inter se, to compare*, Cic. Aliquid ad aliquid, cum aliquo, & alicui.

COMPREHENDERE naturam rerum, *to understand*: rem pluribus &

& luculentioribus verbis, *to express*; aliquem, humanitate, amicitia, *to gain*; rem fictam, *to discover*.

INTENDERE animum rei, *ad v. in rem, to apply*: Intendi animo in rem, Liv. Vocem, nervos, *to exert*; arcum, *to bend*; actionem v. litem alicui vel in aliquem, also impingere, *to raise a law-suit against one*; telum ei, v. in eum, *to shoot at*; manum v. digitum in aliquid, *to point at*: aliquo, sc. ire, *to go to*; officia, *to overdo, to do more than is required*, Sall.

OBTENDERE velum rei, v. rem velo, *to cover, to veil*.

PENDERE pecuniam, *to pay*: poenas, *to suffer*; id parvi, *to value it little*.

SUSPENDERE aliquem arbori, de, in, v. ex arbore, *to hang*; expectatione, vel suspensum detinere, *to keep in suspense*; ædificium, *to arch a house*; naso aduncó, *to sneer at*, Horat.

ABDERE se literis, in literas, *to hide or shut up one's self among books*, se domum, rus, &c. domo, Virg. in silvas, tenebras, &c.

CONDERE urbem, *to build*; fructus, *to lay up*; in carcerem, *to imprison*; carmen, *to compose*; lumina, *to close*, Ovid. Jura, *to establish*; terrâ, sepulchro, in sepulchro, *to bury*.

DEDERE se alicui, in ditionem alicujus, *ad aliquem, to surrender*; Deditus præceptor, & studii, *fond of*; vino epulisque, *engaged in*, Nep. dedita opera, *on purpose*.

EDERE librum, & in lucem, *to publish*; ovum, *to lay*; sonos, cantus, risus, gemitus, questus, hinnitum, pugnam, stragem, *to sound, sing, &c. munus gladiatorum, to exhibit a show of gladiators*; nomen, *to mention*; scetus, *to bring forth*; extremum spiritum, *to die*; exempla cruciatû in aliquem, *to inflict exemplary torture*.

ORDERE pessulum foribus, *to bolt the door*.

PRODERE arcem hostibus, *to betray*; aliquid posteris, v. memoriz, *to hand down*; genus ab aliquo, *to derive*; flaminem, interregem, *to appoint*; aliquot dies nuptiis, *to put off*, Ter. exemplum, *to give to posterity*, Liv.

REDDERE animum, se sibi, *to revive*; animam v. vitam, *to die*; Latinè, verbum verbo, *to translate*; matrem, i. e. referre, *to resemble*; epistolam alicui, *to deliver*.

SUBDERE calcar equo, *to spur*; spiritus alicui, *to encourage*.

CREDERE rem; homini, *to believe*; aliquid alicui, *to trust*; pecuniam ei per syngrapham, *to lend on bond or bill*; rumoribus credi non oportet: Itaque credo si, &c. *I suppose*, Cic.

FUNDERE aquam, *to pour out*; hostes, *to rout*.

EFFUNDERE fruges, copiam oratorum, *to produce*; ærarium, *to spend*; odium, i. e. dimittere, *to drop*, gratiam collectam, i. e. perdere: omnia, quæ tacuerat, *to tell*.

## G O.

JUNGERE se cum aliquo, alicui, & ad aliquem, dextram dextræ: equos currui: amnem ponte, *to make a bridge*.

ADJUNGERE accessionem ædibus, *to build an addition to one's house*: animum ad studia, *to apply*.

STRINGERE cultrum, gladium, ensen, *to draw*: frondes, *to lap off*: glandes, baccas, *to beat down*: rem, *to waste one's fortune*, Hor. litus, *to touch*, *to brush or graze upon*, Virg.

TANGERE rem acu, *to hit the nail on the head*.

ATINGERE Britanniam navibus, *to reach*: reges, res summas, *to mention*, Nep. Aliquem cognatione,

cognatione, affinitate, *to be related to* : forum, *to reach manhood*, Cic. Res non te attingit, *concerns*.

FINGERE orationem, *to polish* : oratorem, *to form* : se ad arbitrium alterius, *to adapt* : Vultus a mente, fingitur, lingua fingit vocem, Cic. Sui cuique mores fingunt fortunam, Nep.

FRANGERE nucem, *to break* : navem, *to suffer shipwreck* : foedus, fidem, *to violate* : sententiam ejus, *to refute*, Cic. hostem, *to subdue*.

AGERE gratias, *to give thanks* : vitam, *to live* : prædas, *to plunder* : fabulam, *to act a play* : triumphum de aliquo, ex aliqua re, *to triumph* : nugas, *to trifle* : ambages, *to beat about the bush* : stationem, custodiam urbis, *to be on guard* : rimas, *to chink, to leak, to be rent* : causam, *to plead* : de re, *to speak* : radices, *to take root* : cuniculos, *to undermine* : undam, *to raise a steam* : animam, *to be at the last gasp* : alias res, *to be inattentive* : lessum diem, natalem, ferias, &c. *to keep, to observe* : actum, v. rem actam, *to labour in vain* : censum, & habere, *to make a review of the people, their estates, &c.* forum, *to hold a court to try causes* : lege in aliquem, & cum aliquo, *to go to law with one* : hence actor, a plaintiff : in hereditatem, *to claim* : cum populo, *to treat with, to lay before* : decimum agit annum, *he is ten years old* : id agitur, *that is the question* : libertas agitur, v. de libertate, *is at stake* : actum est de libertate, *is lost* : actum est, illicet, *all is over* : actum est de pace, *was treated about* : cum illo bene actum est, *he has been lucky or well used* : hoc age, *mind what you are about*. Civitas lata agere, *for erat*, Sallust.

ADIGERE milites sacramento, ad v. in iusjurandum, in sua verba, per iusjurandum, *to perse to*

enlist : arbitrum, i. e. agere v. cogere aliquem ad arbitrum, *to force to submit to an arbitration*, Cic.

COGERE copias, *to bring together* : ad militiam, *to force to enlist* : senatum, *to assemble* : in senatum, sc. minis, pignoribus capitis, &c. *to force to attend* : agmen, *to rally, to bring up* : lac, *to curdle* : jus civile diffusum & dissipatum, in certa genera cogere, *to digest, to arrange*.

EXIGERE foras, *to drive out, to divorce* : aliquid ab aliquo, *to require* : facta testata, sc. et, i. e. facta et testata, ut sint bene reparata, *to require that the public works be kept in good reparation*, Cic. supplicium, de aliquo, *to insist* : sua nomina, *to demand or call in one's debts* : ævum, vitam, annos, *to spend* : aliquid ad normam, *to try or examine* : columnam ad perpendicularum, *to apply the plummet, to see if it be straight* : monumentum, *to finish*, Hor. tempus & modum, *to settle*, Virg. comœdiam, *to disapprove, to hiss off*, Ter.

REDIGERE aliquid in memoriam alicujus, *to bring back* : pecuniam ex bonis venditis, *to raise money* : hostes sub imperium, *to reduce*.

LEGERE oram, littus, *to coast along* : vela, *to furl the sails* : haliturn, *to catch one's breath* : milites, *to enlist* : aliquem in senatum, in Patres, *to choose* : sacra, *to steal, to commit sacrilege* : Hor.

II O.

TRAHERE obfessionem, bellum, *to prolong* : purpuras, *to spin* : aliquid in religionem, *to scruple* : navem remulco, *to tow*.

DETRAHERE aliquem, *to draw down* : alicui, v. de aliquo, de fama, *to detract from, to lessen one's fame* : aliquid alicui, *to take by force* : laudem, v. de laudibus : novem

novem partes multæ, *to take from the fine*, Nep.

EXTRAHERE diem, *to spin out, to spend*; certamen, bellum, iudicium, *to prolong*.

VEHERE, vehens, invehens, invehctus curru, quadrigis, &c. *riding in a chariot*; invehi in portum ex alto, *to enter*; in aliquem, *to inveigh against*; provehi longius, *to proceed too far*.

LO.

CONSULERE rem v. de re, *to consult about*; eum, *to ask his advice*; ei, *to consult for his good*; de salute sua; gravius in aliquem, *to pass a severe sentence against*; in commune, publicum, medium, *to provide for the common good*; verba boni, *to take in good part*; ego consulor, *my advice is asked*; mihi consultitur, *my good is consulted*; mihi consultum ac provisum est, *for a me, I have taken care*, Cic.

APPELLERE classe in Italianam, vel classem, *to land on*; se aliquo, Ter. *ad villam nostram navis appelletur*, Cic. *animum ad philosophiam, to apply*.

ANTECELLERE ei, *rarely eum: excellere aliis, super, inter, præter alios aliqua re, v. in re, to excel*.

TOLLERE animos suos, *to take courage*; animos alicui, *to encourage*; aliquem laudibus, & laudes ejus in astra, *to extol*; inducias, *to break a truce*; clamores, *to cry*; filium, *to educate*; de vel e medio, *to kill*.

MO.

ADIMERE claves uxori, *to divorce*; anulum v. equum equiti, *to take away from a knight the ring or horse given him by the public, to degrade*.

DIRIMERE litem, *controverfiam, to determine*.

EXIMERE aliquem servitio, noxæ, e vinculis, a culpa, de nu-

mero proscriptorum, *obsidione, to free*; de dolio, *to draw out*; diem dicendo, *to waste in speaking*.

INTERIMERE se, *to kill*.

REDIMERE captivos, *to ransom*; pecuaria de censoribus, *to take or farm the public pastures*.

SUMERE in manus; diem, tempus ad deliberandum; exemplum ex v. de eo, *to take*; pœnas, supplicium de aliquo, *to punish*; pecunias mutuas, *to borrow*; togam virilem, *to put on the dress of a man*; sibi inimicitias, *to get ill will*; operam in re, vel in rem infumere, *to bestow pains*; sumo tantum, vel hoc mihi, *I take this upon me*.

PREMERE caseum, *to make cheese*; vocem, *to be silent*; dolorem corde, *to conceal*; vestigia ejus, *to follow*; littus, *to come near*; pollicem, *to save a gladiator*; librum in norum annum, *to delay publishing*, Hor.

EXPRIMERE succum, *to press out*; risum alicui, *pecuniam ab aliquo, to force from*; effugiem, *to draw to the life*; verbum verbo, de verbo, e verbo, ad verbum, de Græcis, &c. *to translate word for word*.

IMPRIMERE aliquid animo, in animo, v. in animum, *to imprint*.

REPRIMERE se, & reprehendere v. retinere, *to check*.

NO.

PONERE spem in homine v. re, & habere; castra, *to pitch*; vitem, *to plant*; vitam, *to die*; ova, *to lay*; insidias alicui; panem convivis, *not ante*; personam amici, *to lay aside the character of a friend*; præmia, *to propose*; pocula, *to shake or lay*; studium, tempus, multum operæ in aliqua re, *to employ, to bestow*; aliquid in laude, in vitiis, in loco beneficii, *to reckon*; ferocia corda, *to lay aside*; aliquem



aliquem in gratiam v. gratia, i. e. efficere gratiosum apud alterum, Cic. : ventos, *to calm* : hominem coloribus, *to paint, engrave*, Hor. pecuniam in sœnore, *to lay out at interest* : templa, *to build*, Virg. Venti posuere, *are bust'd*, Virg. Pone esse victum eum, Ter. Positum sit, *suppose, grant*, Cic.

COMPONERE carmen, literas, &c. *to compose* : lites, *to settle* : bellum, *to finish by treaty* : parva magnis, dicta cum factis, *to compare* : manus manibus, *to join*, Virg.

DEPONERE v. ponere togam prætextam, *to lay aside the dress of a boy* : imperium & demittere, *to lay down a command*.

EXPONERE rem, *to set forth or explain* : frumentum, *to expose to sale*, Cic. pueros, sætus, *to leave to perish*, Liv. exercitum, *sc. in terram, to land*.

IMPONERE onus alicui v. in aliquem : aliquem in equum, *to set upon* : personam v. partes duriores ei, *to lay a task or duty on one* : alicui, *to impose on, to deceive*, Nep. honorem ei, *to confer* : vadimonium ei, *to force to give bail*, Nep. manum summam v. extremam rei alicui, *in aliqua re, to finish* : pontem flumini, *to make a bridge*, Curt. Hoc loco libet interponere, *to insert*, Nep.

OPPONERE se periculis & ad pericula, *to expose* : pignori, *to pledge* : manum fronti, ante oculos, *to put*, Ovid.

PROPONERE aliquid sibi facere, exempla ei ad imitandum, *to propose, to set before* : edicta, legem in publicum, i. e. publicè legenda affigere : congiarium, *to promise a largess, a gift of corn or money*.

SUPPONERE ova gallinæ, *to set a hen* : testamentum, v. subjicere, *to forge*.

CANERE aliquem, *to praise* :

signa, classicum, bellicum, i. e. ad arma conclamare, *to sound an alarm, to give the signal for battle* : receptui, rarely -um, *to sound a retreat* : tibiā, *to play on the pipe* : ad tibiam, *to sing to it* : palinodiam, *to utter a recantation*.

STERNERE lectos, *to spread or cover the couches* : equos, *to harness* : viam, *to pave* : æquora, *to calm*, Virg.

PO.

CARPERE agmen, *to cut off the rear* : somnos, quietem, *to sleep* : viam, iter, *to go*, Virg. opera alterius, *to censure* : labores, virtutes, *to diminish or obscure*, Hor.

RUMPERE fidem, sædus, amicitiam, *to violate* : vocem v. silentium, *to speak*, Virg.

ERUMPERE ex tenebris, castris, &c. se portis, *to break out* : stomachum in aliquem, *to vent passion* : nubem, *to break*, Virg.

RO.

QUÆRERE bonam gratiam sibi, *to seek or gain*, Cic. sermonem, *to beat about for conversation*, Ter. rem mercaturis faciendis, *to make a fortune by merchandize* : ex aliquo : & in aliquem, *de re aliqua per tormenta, to put to the rack* : in dominum de servo quæri noluerunt Romani, Cic.

ANQUIRERE aliquid, *to search after* : aliquem capitis, v. -te, *to accuse or try for a capital crime*.

GERERE res, *to perform* : negotium malè, *to manage* : consulum, *to bear, to manage* : se bene vel malè, *to behave* : exercitum *to conduct*, Sallust. morem ei, vel morigerari, *to humour* : civem, se pro cive, personam alicujus, *to pass for, to bear the character of* : inimicitias vel similitatem cum aliquo, *to be at enmity or variance with*.

INGERERE

INGERERE convicia ei, in eum, *to inveigh against.*

SUGGERERE aliquid ei, *to suggest, to hint; sumptus his rebus, to supply or afford: Horatium Bruto, to chuse in place of, to put after, Liv.*

SERERE crimina in eum, *to raise, to spread accusations.*

CONSERERE manus, manu, certamen, pugnam, cum hostibus, inter se, *to engage.*

ASSERERE aliquid, *to affirm; aliquem manu, ab injuria, in libertatem, to free; in servitutem, to reduce; divinam majestatem, to claim.*

T O.

PETERE aliquid alicui; id ab eo, *rarely eum; in beneficii gratiæque loco, Cic. to ask; urbem Romam, murum, montes, to go to, to make for; aliquem sagittâ, lapide, to aim at; consulatum, pœnas ab aliquo, & repetere, to punish.*

COMPETERE animo, *to be in one's senses; in eum competit actio, an action lies against him; Cic.*

REPETERE res, *to demand restitution; bona lege, v. prosequi lite, to recover by law; castra, oppidum, huc, to return to; aliquid memoriâ, to call to mind; ultè, to trace from the beginning. Mihi nihil suppetit, multa suppetunt, I have; si vita suppetet, if life shall remain, Cic.*

MITTERE alicui, v. ad aliquem; in suffragia, *to send the people to vote; aulæum, mappam, to drop the curtain; talos, to throw the dice; senatum, to dismiss; timorem, to lay aside; in acta, to register, to record; sanguinem, vel mittere, to let blood; noxam, to forgive; signa timoris, to strew; vocem, to utter, to speak; habenas, v. remittere, to slacken; manu et emittere, to free a slave; filium emancipare, to free a son from the power of his father; sub jugum, to make to pass under the yoke; inferias*

manibus diis, *to sacrifice to the infernal gods; rem, v. de re, to omit; mitto rem, I say nothing of fortune, Ter. in possessionem bonorum, to give the possession of the debtor's effects; milit orare, ut venirem; i. e. aliquem ad orandum, Ter.*

AMITTERE litem, v. causam; vitam, fidem, lumina, aspectam, *to lose, Cic.*

ADMITTERE in cubiculum, *to admit; equum immittere, & permittere, to gallop; delictum in se, to commit a fault; aves non admisserunt, have not given a favourable omen, Liv.*

COMMITTERE facinus, *to commit; se alicui, v. in fidem alicujus, to entrust; prælium, to engage; exercitum pugnae, rem in casum anticipis eventus prælii, to risk a battle, Liv. iv. 27. aliquem cum aliquo, homines inter se, to set at variance, or by the ears; rem eò, to bring to that pass; gladiatores, pugiles, Græcos cum Latinis, to match or pair; committere, ut, to cause; incommoda sua legibus & judiciis, to seek redress by law.*

COMPROMITTERE. Candidati compromiserunt, -H. S. quingenis in singulos apud M. Catonem depositis, petere ejus arbitrato, ut qui contra fecisset, ab eo condemnaretur, *made a compromise or agreement, &c.*

DIMITTERE exercitum, *to disband; uxorem, & repudiare, nuntium v. repudium ad eam remittere, to divorce.*

PROMITTERE id ei, *to promise; capillum, barbam, to let grow, Liv.*

PERMITTERE alicui, *to allow; divi cætera, to leave, Horat. se in fidem v. fidei ejus; vela ventis; equum in hostem; rem suffragia populi, to let the people decide; tribunatum vexandis consulibus, to give up, to employ, Liv.*

U REMITTERE

REMITTERE animum, *to ease*; calces, tela, *to throw back*; ex pecunia, de supplicio, tributo, &c. *to abate*; debitum, iras alicui, *to give up, to forgive*; iusticiam, *to discontinue*; pugnam, *to slacken*; remittit explorare, *neglects*, Sallust.

SUBMITTERE falces populo, *to lower*; se v. animum, *to submit, to humble*; percussores alicui, *to suborn assassins*.

TRANSMITTERE in Africam, neut. *to pass over*.

VERTERE in fugam, *to put to flight*; terga, *to fly*; ab imo, *to overturn*; solum, *to go into banishment*; id ei vitio, v. crimini, & in crimen, *to blame*; in superbiam, *to impute*; Platonem, Latinè Græca, Græca vel ex Græcis in Latinum, *to translate*; pollicem, *to doom a gladiator to death by turning up the thumb*; terram, *to plough*; crateram, *to empty*, Virg. Stilum, *to correct*, Horat. Salus vel causa in eo vertitur, *depends*; fortuna verterat, Liv. Annus vertens, *a whole year*, Nep. Res bene vertat, Di bene verant, *prosper*.

ANIMADVERTERE id, *to observe*; in eum verberibus, morte, &c. *to punish*.

ADVERTERE agmen urbi, *to bring up to*, Virg. oras, *to arrive at*; aures, mentes, animum v. animo ad aliquid, monitis, *to attend to*; in aliquem, ostener animadvertere, *to punish*.

ANTEVERTERE ei, *to come before*; damnationem veneno, *to prevent*; rem rei, *to prefer*, Plaut.

INTERVERTERE pecuniam aliqujus, & aliquem pecuniâ, *to embattle, to cheat*; candelabrum, *to steal, to pilfer*; promissum & receptum, sc. Dolobellæ consulatum, intervertit, ad seque transtulit *treacherously withheld*, Cic.

PRÆVERTERE, & -ti, dep. ventos cursu, *to outstrip*; desiderium plebis, *to prevent*; metum supplicii morte voluntariâ, Liv. Aliquid alicui rei, *to put before*, Id.

SISTERE vadimonium; se in iudicio, *to appear in court at one's trial*; nec fisci posse, *nor could the state be saved*, Liv.

ASSISTERE ei, *to stand by*; ad fores; contra, super eum.

CONSISTERE in digitos, *to stand on tiptoe*; in anchoris, ad anchoram, *to ride at anchor*; frigore, *to be frozen*; Ovid. Spes in velis consistebat, *depended on*; virtus in actione consistit, Cic.

INSISTERE jacentibus, *to stand upon*; vestigiis ejus; viam, v. viâ; in re aliqua, in rem, v. rei; in dolos, negotium, Plaut. *to insist upon, to urge*.

OBSSISTERE ei, *to stop, to oppose*.

RESISTERE ei, *to resist*.

SUBSISTERE, *to stand still*; sumptui, *to bear*.

#### VO.

SOLVERE pecuniam ei, *to pay*; versurâ, *to pay debt by borrowing from another*, Ter. Fidem, *to break a promise, or according to others, to perform*, Ter. And. IV. I. 19. litem æstimatâ, *to pay the fine imposed on him*, Nep. Votum, *to discharge*; obsidionem urbis, v. urbem obsidione, *to raise a siege*; navem, e portu, *to set sail*; epistolam, v. resignare, *to break open*; aliquem legibus, legum vinculis, *to free from*; solvitur in somnos, Virg. Oratio soluta, i. e. libera, numeris non astricta & devincta; *prose*; solve metus, *dismiss*, Virg.

DISSOLVERE societatem, *to break*.

RESOLVERE vocem, v. ora, *to break silence*, Virg. jura, *to violate*; vectigal, *to take off taxes*, Tacit. In pulverem, *to reduce to*.

# FOURTH CONJUGATION.

AUDIRE aliquem, aliquid ex v. ab aliquo, *to hear from one*; de aliquo, *about one*, also *from one*, at, sæpe hoc audiui de patre, *for ex patre*, Cic. Audire bene v. malè apud socios, ab omnibus, *to be well spoken of*, *to have a good character*; rexque paterque audisti, *have been called*, Hor. Antigonus credit de suo adventu esse auditum, Nep.

VENIRE ad finem, aures, pac-tionem, certamen, manus, nihilum, &c. in suspicionem, odium, gratiam, &c. in jus, *to go to law*, Liv. in circulum, *into a company*, Nep. Hæreditas ei venit, *he has succeeded to an estate*; ei usu venit, *happened*, Nep. Quod in buccam venerit, scribito, occurs, Cic.

ADVENIRE & adventare ei, urbem, ad urbem, *to come to*.

ANTEVENIRE aliquem, & antevertere, Sall. rei, Plaut. tempus, consilia & itinera.

CONVENIRE in colloquium; fratrem, *to meet with*, *to speak to*; ego et frater conveniemus, copix convenient, *will meet together*; con-

venit mihi cum fratre de hac re, inter me et fratrem, inter nos; hæc fratri mecum conveniunt, I and my brother are agreed; sævis inter se convenit urfis, Juv. Ipsi secum non convenit, vel ipse, *he is inconsistent*; pax convenit, vel conventa est, *is agreed upon*; rem conventuram putamus, Cic. conditiones non convenerunt; mores conveniunt, agree; calcei pedibus v. ad pedes conveniunt, fit, fuit; hoc in illum convenit: Catilinam interfectum esse convenit, *sought to have been slain*, Cic. Convenire in manum, the usual form of marriage, named Coempto, whereby women were called matresfamilias.

SENTIRE sonorem, colorem, &c. *to perceive*; cum aliquo, *to be of one's opinion*; bene vel malè de eo, *to think well or ill of him*.

CONSENTIRE tibi, tecum, inter se; alicui rei, de v. in aliqua re; ad aliquid peragendum, *to agree*; S. dissentire; et ab aliquo, *to disagree*; ne vita orationi dissentiat, Senec.

## DEPONENT VERBS.

PROFITERI philosophiam, *to profess*, *to teach publicly*; se candidatum, *to declare himself a candidate for an office*; pecunias, agros, nomina, &c. apud censorem, *to give an account of*, *to declare how much one has*; iudicium, *to promise to make a discovery*.

LOQUI cum aliquo, inter se; sometimes alicui, ad v. apud aliquem; aliquid, de aliqua re.

SEQUI teras; sectam Caesaris, *to be of his party*, Cic. Assequi, consequi, *to overtake*; gloriam, *to*

attain. Consequi hereditatem, *to get*, Cic.

PROSEQUI aliquem amore, laudibus, &c. *to love*, *praise*, &c.

NIHI hantâ; in cubitum, *to lean*; ejus consilio, in eo, *to depend on*; ad gloriam, ad, v. in somma, *to aim at*; in vitium, in adversum, contra aliquem, pro aliquo, *to strive*; gradibus, *to ascend*.

UTI eo familiariter, *to be familiar with one*; ventis adversis, *to have cross winds*; honore usus, *one who has enjoyed a post of honour*.

## IRREGULAR VERBS.

ESSE magni roboris, *v. -no, -re*; ejus opinionis, *v. ea opinione*; in maxima spe; in timore, luctu, opinione, itinere, &c. cum telo; in *vel* cum imperio; magno periculo, *v. in periculo*; in tuto; apud se, *in his sensus*; sui juris, *v. mancipii*, sui potens, *v. in sua potestate*; *to be at his own disposal*: Res est in vado, *is safe*, Ter. Est animus, *sc. mihi, I have a mind*, Virg. Est ut, cur, quamobrem, quod, quin, &c. *There is cause*; bene, male est mihi, *with me*; nihil est mihi tecum, *I have nothing to do with you*: Quid est tibi, *sc. rei, What is the matter with you?* Ter. Cernere erat, *one might see*; religio est mihi id facere, *I scruple to do it*; si est, ut facere velit, ut facturus sit, ut admiserit, &c. *for si velit, &c.* Ter. Est ut viro vir latius ordinet arbuta fulcis, *it happens*, Hor. Certum est facere, *sc. mihi, I am resolved*, Ter. Non certum est, quid faciam, *I am uncertain*, Id. Cassius querere solebat, Cui BONO FUERIT: Omnibus bono fuit, *it was of advantage*, Cic.

ADFESSE pugnae, in pugna, ad exercitum, ad tempus, in tempore, cum aliquo, *to be present*; alicui, *to favour, to assist*; scribendo, *v. esse ad scribendum, to subscribe one's name to a decree of the senate*, Cic. consilio utrique, *to be a counsellor to*, Nep.

ABESSE domo, urbe, a domo, ab signis, *to be absent*; alicui, *v. deesse, to be wanting, not to assist*; a sole, *to stand out of the sun*; sumptus funeri defuit, *he had not money to bury him*, Liv. abesse a persona principis, *to be inconsistent with the character*, Nep. Paulum *v. parum* absuit quin urbem caperent, quin occideretur,

&c. *they were near taking, &c.* Tantum abest ne enervetur oratio, ut, &c. *is so far from being, &c.* Cic. Tantum abuit a cupiditate pecuniae a societate sceleris, &c. Nep.

INTERESSE convivio, *v. in convivio, to be at a feast*; anni decem interfuerunt, *intervened*; stulto in, telligens quid interest, Ter. Hoc dominus & pater interest, Id. lalter hominem & belluam hoc interest, Cic. *differ in this, this is the difference*; multum interest, utrum, *it is of great importance*. Pons inter eos interest, *is between*, Cic.

PRÆESSE exercitui, *to command*; comitiis, judicio, quaestioni, *to preside in or at*.

OBESSE ei, *to hurt, to binder*.

SUPERESSE, *to be over and above*; alicui, *to survive*; modo vita superfit, *sc. mihi, if I live*; superest, ut, *it remains, that*.

IRE ad arma, ad saga, *to go to war*; in jus, *to go to law*; pedibus in sententiam alicujus, *to agree with*; viam *v. viâ*; res bene eunt, Cic. Tempus, dies, mensis *h, passes*.

ABIRE magistratu, *to lay down an office*; a conspectu, *to retire from company*; in ora hominum, *to be in every body's mouth*; ab emptione, *to retract his bargain*; decem menses abierunt, *have past*, Ter. Non hoc tibi sic abibit, *i. e. non leres hoc impune*, Ter. Abi in malam rem, *a form of imprecation*.

ADIRE periculum capitis, *to run the hazard of one's life*.

EXIRE vitâ, *e, v. de vita, to die*; ære alieno, Cic. Verbum exit ex ore, Id. tela, *to avoid*, Virg. Tempus induciarum cum Vejent populo exierat, *had expired*, Liv.

INIRE magistratum; *substitu-*



gium, rationem, consilium, pugnam, viam, &c. *to enter upon, to begin*; gratiam ejus, apud eum, cum vel ab eo, *to gain his favour*: Incunte astate, vere, anno, &c. *in the beginning of*; but we seldom say, Incunte die, nocte, &c. Ab incunte aetate, *from our early years*.

OBIRE diem edicti, vel auctionis, judicium, vadimonium, *to be present at*; provinciam, domos nostras, *to visit, to go through*, Cic. negotia, res, munus, officium, legationem, sacra, *to perform*; pugnas, Virg. mortem, vel morte; diem supremum, v. diem, *to die*.

PRÆIRE alicui, *to go before*; verba, carmen, vel sacramentum alicui, *to repeat or read over before*; alicui voce, quid judicet, *to prescribe or direct by crying*, Cic.

PRODIRE in publicum, *to go abroad*; non præterit te, *you are not ignorant*, Cic. Dies induciarum præterit, *is past*, Nep.

REDIRE in gratiam cum aliquo, *to become friends again*; ad se, *to come to himself, to recover his senses*.

SUBIRE murum, vel -o, ad montes, *to come up to*; laborem vel -i, onus, pœnam, periculum, crimen, *to undergo*; spes, timor subiit animum, *came into*.

VELLE aliquem, sc. alloqui vel conventum, *to desire to speak with*; alicui, ejus causâ, *to wish one's good*; tibi consultum volo; nihil tibi negatum volo, *I wish to deny*, Liv. Quid sibi vult? *What does he mean?* Volo te hoc facere, hoc a te fieri; si quid recte curatum velis; illos monitos etiam atque etiam volo, sc. esse, *I will admonish them again and again*, Cic. nollem factum, *I am sorry it was done*; nollem huc exitum, sc. esse a me, *I wish I had not come out here*, Ter.

FERRE legem, *to propose or*

*make*; privilegium de aliquo, *to propose or pass an act of impeachment against one*, Cic. rogationem ad populum, *to bring in a bill*; conditiones ei, *to offer terms*; suffragium, *to vote*; sententiam, *to give an opinion*; centuriam, tribum, *to gain the vote of*; perdere, *to lose it*; victoriam ex eo; omne punctum, omnia suffragia, *to gain all the votes*; repulsam, *to be rejected*; fructum hoc fructi, *to reap*, Ter. lætitiâ de re, *to rejoice*; præ se, *to pretend or declare openly*; alienam personam, *to disguise one's self*; in oculis, *to be fond of*, Ter. manus in prælia, *to engage*, Virg. acceptum et expensum, *to mark down as received and spent or lent, as Dr and Cr*, Cic. animus, opinio fert, *inclines*; tempus, res, causa fert, *allows, requires*.

CONFERRE benevolentiam alicui, in vel erga aliquem, *to shew*; beneficia, culpam in eum, *to confer, to lay*; operam, tempus, studium ad vel in rem, & impendere, *to apply*; capita inter se, consilia sua, *to lay their heads together, to consult*; signa, arma, manus, *to engage*; omne bellum circa Corinthum, Nep. pedem, *to set foot to foot*; rationes, *to cast up accounts*; castra castris, *to encamp over against one another*; se in, vel ad urbem, *to go to*; tributa, *to pay*; se alicui, vel cum aliquo, *to compare*; neminem cum illo conferendum pietate puto, Cic. Hæc conferunt ad aliquid; oratori futuro, serve, *are useful to*, Quinct.

DEFERRE situlam vel sitellam, *to bring the ballot-box*; aliquid ad aliquem, *to carry word, to tell*; rarely alicui; causam ad patronos; honores ei; gubernacula reipublicæ in eum; summam rerum ad eum, *to confer*: in beneficiis ad ærarium, *to recommend for a public service*, Cic. aliquem ambitus, de ambitu,

ambitu, nomen alicujus ad præ-  
torem, apud magistratum, *to ac-*  
*cuse of bribery*; primas, *sc. partes*  
*ei, to give him the preference*, Cic.

DIFFERRE vel transferre rem in  
annum; post bellum, diem so-  
lutionis, *to put off*; rumores, *to*  
*spread*; ab aliquo, alicui, inter se,  
moribus, *to differ in character*; a-  
more, cupiditate, doloribus, dif-  
ferri, *to be distracted or torn asunder*,  
Cic. & Ter.

EFFERRE fruges, *to produce*; ver-  
ba, *to utter*; verbum de verbo ex-  
pressum, *to translate*, Ter. pedem  
domo, *to go out*; corpus amplo su-  
nere, & cum funere, *to bury*; ad  
honorem, ad cælum laudibus, *to*  
*raise, to extol*; foras peccatum, *to*  
*divulge*.

INFERRE bellum patriæ; vim,  
manus, necem alicui, *to bring upon*;  
signa, se, pedem, *to advance*; litem,  
vel periculum capitis alicui, vel in  
aliquem, *to bring one to a trial for*  
*his life*.

OFFERRE se morti, ad mortem,  
in discrimen, *to expose, to present*.

PERFERRE legem, *to carry*  
*through, to pass it*.

PRÆFERRE faciem ei, *to carry*  
*before*; salutem reipublicæ suis  
commodis, & anteferre, antepo-  
nere, *to prefer*. Prælatum equum,  
*riding before*.

PROFERRE imperium, pomæri-

um, terminos, *to enlarge*; in me-  
dium, in apertum, in lucem, *to pub-*  
*lish*; nuptias, diem, *to delay*; diem  
lilio, *to defer the destruction of*, Her.

REFERRE alicui, *to answer*; se,  
gradum v. pedem, *to retreat*; gra-  
tiam alicui, *to make a requital*; par  
pari, Ter. victoriam ab, vel ex ali-  
quo, et reportare, *to gain*; insti-  
tutum, *to renew*; judicia ad eque-  
strem ordinem, *to restore to the E-*  
*quites the right of judging*; aliquid,  
de aliqua re, ad senatum, ad con-  
siliium, ad sapientes, ad populum,  
*to lay before*; aliquid in tabulam,  
codicem, album, commentarium,  
&c. *to mark down*; aliquid accep-  
tum alicui, & in acceptum, *to ac-*  
*knowledge one's self indebted*; pecu-  
nias acceptas & expensas, nomina  
vel summas in codicem accepti et  
expensi, *to mark down accounts*;  
alienos mores ad suos, *to judge of*  
*by*; in v. inter ærarios, *to reduce*  
*to the lowest class*; in numerum  
deorum, in vel inter deos, & re-  
ponere, *to rank among*; pugnas,  
res gestas, *to relate*; patrem ore,  
*to resemble*; amissos colores, *to re-*  
*gain*, Horat.

TRANSFERRE rationes in tabu-  
las, *to post one's books, to state accounts*;  
in Latinam linguam, *to translate*;  
verba, *to use metaphorically*; cul-  
pam in eum & rejicere, *to lay the*  
*blame on him*.

## II. FIGURES of SYNTAX.

A *Figure* is a manner of speaking different from the ordinary and plain way, used for the sake of beauty or force.

The figures of *Syntax* or *Construction* may be reduced to these three, *Ellipsis*, *Pleonasm*, and *Hyperbāton*.

The two first respect the constituent parts of a sentence; the last respects only the arrangement of the words.

### I. ELLIPSIS.

ELLIPSIS is when one or more words are wanting to complete the sense, as, *Aiunt, ferunt, dicunt, perhibent*, scil. *homines*: *Dic mihi, Damata, cujus pecus*; that is, *Dic (tu) mihi, Damata, (eum hominem) cujus pecus (est hoc pecus)*. *Aberant bidui*, sc. *iter vel itinere*. *Decies sequestrium*, sc. *centena millia*. *Quid multa?* sc. *dicam*. *Antiquum obtines*, sc. *morem*, v. *institutum*, Plaut. *Hodie in ludum occupi ire literarium, ternas jam scio*, sc. *litteras*, i. e. *AMO*, Id. *Triduo abs te nullas acceperam*, sc. *litteras*, i. e. *epistolam*, Cic. *Brevi dicam*, sc. *sermone*: So *Complecti, respondere*, &c. *brevi*. *Dū meliora*, sc. *faciant*: *Rhodium volo, inde Athenas*, sc. *ire*, Id. *Bellicum*, v. *classicum canere* sc. *signum*, Liv. *Civicā donatus*, sc. *Chronā*; So *obsidionalem, muralem adeptus*, &c. Id. *Epistola librarii manu est*, sc. *scripta*, Cic. So in English, "The twelve," i. e. apostles; "the elect," i. e. persons.

When a conjunction is to be supplied, it is called *ASYNDĒTON*; as, *Deus optimus maximus*, sc. *et*; *Sartum tecum conservare*, i. e. *sartum et tecum*; So *Abiit, excessit, evasit, erupit*, Cic. *Fertē citi flammias, date vela, impellite remos*, Virg. *Velis nolis*, sc. *seu*.

To this figure may be reduced most of those irregularities in Syntax, as they are called, which are variously classed by grammarians, under the names of *ENALLAGE*, i. e. the changing of words and their accidents, or the putting of one word for another; *ANTIPTŌSIS* i. e. the putting of one case for another; *HELLENISM* or *GRÆCISM*, i. e. imitating the construction of the Greeks; *SYNĒSIS*, i. e. referring the construction, not to the gender or number of the word, but to the sense, &c. thus, *Samnitium duo millia caesi*, is, *Duo millia (hominum) Samnitium (fuerunt homines)*

homines) *casti*, Liv. So *Servitia immemores*, Liv. *Monstrum qua*, scil. mulier, Hor. *Scelus qui*, sc. *homo*, Ter. *Omnia Mercurio similis*, scil. secundum, Virg. *Missi magnis de rebus uterque, legati*; i. e. *Missi legati* (et) *uterque* (legatus missus) *de magnis rebus*, Horat. *Servitia repudiabat, cujus*, scil. *servitii*, Sall. Cat. 51. *Familia nostra, quorum*, &c. sc. *hominum*, Sall. *Concursus populi, mirantium*, Liv. *Illum ut vivat optant*, for *ut ille vivat*, Ter. *Populum late regem*, for *regnantem*, Virg. *Expediti militum*, for *milites*; *Classis stabat Rhegii* for *ad Rhegium*. Liv. *Latium Capuaque agro multati*, sc. *homines*, Id. *Utraque formosa*, sc. *mulieres*, Ovid. *Aperite aliquis ostium*, Ter. *Sensit delapsus*, for *delapsus*, sc. *se esse*, Virg.

When a writer frequently uses the Ellipsis, his style is said to be elliptical or concise.

## 2. PLEONASM.

PLEONASM is when a word more is added than is absolutely necessary to express the sense; as, *Video oculis*, I see with my eyes; *Sic ore locuta est*; *adeſt præſens*; *Nusquam gentium*; *vivere vitam*; *ſervire ſervitutem*; *Quid mihi Celfus agit? Fac me ut ſciam*, &c. *Suo ſibi gladio hunc jugulo*, Ter. *Suo ſibi ſucco vivunt*, Plaut.

When a conjunction is used apparently redundant, it is called POLYSYNDETON; as, *Una Eurusque Notusque ruunt*, Virg.

When that which is in reality one, is so expressed as if there were two, it is called HENDIADYS; as, *Pateris libamus et auro*, for *aureis pateris*, Virg.

When several words are used to express one thing, it is called PERIPHRAſIS; as, *Urbs Troja*, for *Troja*, Virg. *Res voluptatum*, for *voluptates*, Plaut. *Uſus purpurarum*, for *purpura*; *Genus piſcium*, for *piſces*; *Flores roſarum*, for *roſa*, Hor.

## 3. HYPERBATON.

HYPERBATON is the transgression of that order or arrangement of words which is commonly used in any language. It is chiefly to be met with among the poets. The various sorts into which it is divided, are, *Anaſtröphe*,

*ströphe*, *Hystéron protéron*, *Hypalläge*, *Synchēsis*, *Tmesis*, and *Parenthēsis*.

1. ANASTRÖPHE is the inversion of words, or the placing of that word last which should be first; as, *Italiam contra; His accensa super; Spemque metumque inter dubii*; for *contra Italiam, super his, inter spem*, &c. Virg. *Terram sol facit are*, for *arefacit*, Lucret.

2. HYSTÉRON PROTÉRON is when that is put in the former part of the sentence, which, according to the sense, should be in the latter; as, *Valet atque vivit*, for *vivit atque valet*, Ter.

3. HYPALLÄGE is the exchanging of cases; as, *Dare classibus austros*, for *dare classes austris*, Virg.

4. SYNCHĒSIS is a confused and intricate arrangement of words; as, *Saxa vocant Itali mediis quæ in fluctibus aras*; for *Quæ saxa in mediis fluctibus Itali vocant aras*, Virg. This occurs particularly in violent passion; as, *Per tibi ego hunc juro fortem castumque cruorem*, Ovid. Fast. ii. 841. *Per vos liberos atque parentes*, sc. *oro vos per liberos*, &c. Sallust. Jug. 14.

5. TMESIS is the division of a compound word and the interposing of other words betwixt its parts; as, *Septem subjecta trioni gens*, for *Septentrioni*, Virg. *Quæ meo cunque animo libitum est facere*, for *quæcunque*, Ter. *Quem fors dierum cunque dabit, lucro Appone*, Horat.

6. PARENTHĒSIS is the inserting of a member into the body of a sentence, which is neither necessary to the sense, nor at all affects the construction; as, *Tityre, dum redeo*, (*brevis est via*), *pasce capellas*, Virg.

### III. ANALYSIS and TRANSLATION.

The difficulty of translating either from English into Latin; or from Latin into English, arises in a great measure from the different arrangement of words which takes place in the two languages.

In Latin the various terminations of nouns, and the inflection of adjectives and verbs, point out the relation of one word to another, in whatever order they are placed. But in English the agreement and government of words  
can



can only be determined from the particular part of the sentence in which they stand. Thus, in Latin, we can either say, *Alexander vicit Darium*, or *Darium vicit Alexander*, or *Alexander Darium vicit*, or *Darium Alexander vicit*; and in each of these the sense is equally obvious: but in English we can only say, *Alexander conquered Darius*. This variety of arrangement in Latin gives it a great advantage over the English, not only in point of energy and vivacity of expression, but also in point of harmony. We sometimes indeed, for the sake of variety and force, imitate in English the inversion of words which takes place in Latin; as, *Him the Eternal hurl'd*, Milton. *Whom ye ignorantly worship, him declare I unto you*. But this is chiefly to be used in poetry.

With regard to the proper order of words to be observed in translating from English into Latin, the only certain rule which can be given, is to imitate the CLASSICS.

The order of words in sentences is said to be either *simple* or *artificial*; or, as it is otherwise expressed, either *natural* or *oratorical*.

The *Simple* or *Natural* order is, when the words of a sentence are placed one after another according to the natural order of syntax.

*Artificial* or *Oratorical* order is, when words are so arranged, as to render them most striking, or most agreeable to the ear.

All Latin writers use an arrangement of words, which appears to us more or less artificial, because different from our own, although to them it was as natural as ours is to us. In order therefore to render any Latin author into English, we must first reduce the words in Latin to the order of English, which is called the *Analysis* or *Resolution* of sentences. It is only practice that can teach one to do this with readiness. However, to a beginner, the observation of the following rule may be of advantage.

Take *first* the words which serve to introduce the sentence, or show its dependence on what went before; *next*, the nominative, together with the words which it agrees with or governs; *then*, the verb and adverbs joined with it;

it; and *lastly*, the *cases* which the verb governs, together with the circumstances subjoined, to the end of the sentence: supplying through the whole the words which are understood.

If the sentence is compound, it must be resolved into the several sentences of which it is made up; as,

*Vale igitur, mi Cicero, tibi que persuade esse te quidem mihi carissimum; sed multo fore cariorum, si talibus monumentis præceptisque lætabere, Cic. Off. lib. 3. fin.*

Farewell then, my Cicero, and assure yourself that you are indeed very dear to me; but shall be much dearer, if you shall take delight in such writings and instructions.

This compound sentence may be resolved into these five simple sentences; 1. *Igitur, mi (filii) Cicero, (tu) vale, 2. et (tu) persuade tibi (ipsi) te esse quidem (filium) carissimum mihi: 3. sed (tu) persuade tibi (ipsi) te fore (filium) cariorum (mihi in) multo (negotio), 4. si (tu) lætabere talibus monumentis, 5. et (si tu) lætabere talibus) præceptis.*

1. Fare (you) well then, my (son) Cicero, 2. and assure (you) yourself that you are indeed (a son) very dear to me; 3. but (assure you yourself that you) shall be (a son) much dearer (to me), 4. if you shall take delight in such writings, 5. and (if you shall take delight in such) instructions.

It may not be improper here to exemplify *Analogical Analysis* as it is called, or the analysis of words, from the foregoing sentence, *Vale igitur, &c.* thus,

*Vale*, scil. *tu*; Fare (thou) well: Second person singular of the imperative mode, active voice, from the neuter verb, *Valeo, valui, valitum, valere*, to be in health, of the second conjugation, not used in the passive. *Vale* agrees in the second person singular with the nominative *tu*, by the third rule of syntax.

*Igitur*, then, therefore, a conjunction, importing some inference drawn from what went before.

*Mi*, Voc. sing. masc. of the adjective pronoun, *meus, -a, -um*, my; derived from the substantive pronoun *Ego*, agreeing with *Cicero*, by Rule 2. *Cicero*, voc. sing. from the nominative *Cicero, -onis*, a proper noun of the third declension.

*Et*, and, a copulative conjunction, which connects the verb *persuade* with the verb *vale*, by Rule 60. We turn *que* into *et*, because *que* never stands by itself.

*Persuade*, scil. *tu*, persuade thou, second person singular of the imperative active, from the verb *persua-deo, -si, -sum, -dere*, to persuade; compounded of the preposition *per*, and *sua-deo, -si, -sum*, to advise: used impersonally in the passive; thus, *Persuadetur mihi*, I am persuaded; seldom or never *Ego persuadeor*. We say however in the third person, *Hoc persuadetur mihi*, I am persuaded of this.

*Tibi*

*Tibi*, dat. sing. of the personal pronoun *tu*, thou; governed by *persuade*, according to Rule 17. *Te*, accusative sing. of *tu*, put before *esse*, according to Rule 4.

*Esse*, present of the infinitive, from the substantive verb *sum*, *fui*, *esse*, to be.

*Quidem*, Indeed, an adverb, joined with *carissimum* or *esse*.

*Carissimum*, accusative sing. masc. from *carissimus*, -a, -um, very dear, dearest, superlative degree of the adjective *carus*, -a, -um, dear: Comparative degree *carior*, *carior*, *carius*, dearer, more dear: agreeing with *te* or *filium* understood, by Rule 2. and put in the accusative by Rule 5.

*Mibi*, to me, dat. sing. of the substantive pronoun *Ego*, I: governed by *carissimum*, by Rule 12.

*Sed*, but, an adversative conjunction, joining *esse* and *fore*.

*Fore*, the same with *esse futurum*, to be, or, to be about to be, infinitive of the defective verb *forem*, -res, -ret, &c. governed in the same manner with the foregoing *esse*, thus, *te fore*, Rule 4. or thus, *esse sed fore*. See Rule 60.

*Multo* scil. *negotio*, ablat. sing. neut. of the adjective *multus*, -a, -um, much, put in the ablative, according to observation 6. Rule 61. But *multo* here may be taken adverbially in the same manner with *much* in English.

*Cariorem*, accus. sing. masc. from *carior*, -or, -us, the comparative of *carus*, as before: agreeing with *te* or *filium* understood. Rule 2. or Rule 5.

*Si*, If, a conditional conjunction, joined either with the indicative mode, or with the subjunctive, according to the sense, but oftener with the latter. See Rule 60. obs. 2.

*Lætabère*, Thou shalt rejoice, second person singular of the future of the indicative, from the deponent verb *lator*, *lætatus*, *lætari*, to rejoice: Future, *lat-abor*, -abëris or -abëre, abitur, &c.

*Talibus*, ablat. plur. neut. of the adjective *talis*, *talis*, *tale*, such; agreeing with *monumentis*, the ablat. plur. of the substantive noun *monumentum*, -i, neut. a monument or writing; of the second declension; derived from *monco*, -ui, -itum, -ère, to admonish; here put in the ablative, according to Rule 49. *Et*, a copulative conjunction, as before.

*Præceptis*, a substantive noun in the ablative plural, from the nominative *præceptum*, -i, neut. a precept, an instruction; derived from *præcipio*, -cëpi, -ceptum, -cipëre, to instruct, to order, compounded of the preposition *præ*, before, and the verb *cipio*, *cëpi*, *captum*, *capëre*, to take. The *a* of the simple is changed into *i* short; thus, *præcipio*, *præcipis*, &c.

The learner may in like manner be taught to analyze the words in English, and in doing so, to mark the different idioms of the two languages.

To this may be subjoined a *Praxis*, or Exercise on all the different parts of grammar, particularly with regard to the inflexion of nouns and verbs, in the form of questions, such as these, Of Cicero? *Ciceronis*. With Cicero? *Cicerone*. A dear son? *Carus filius*. Of a dear son?

son? *Cari filii*. O my dear son? *Mi* or *meus care fili*. Of dearer sons? *Cariörum filiorum*, &c.

Of thee? or of you? *Tui*. With thee or you, *te*: Of you? *Vestrum* or *vestri*. With you? *Vobis*.

They shall persuade? *Persuadebunt*. I can persuade? *Persuadeam*, or much more frequently *possum persuadere*. They are persuaded? *Persuadetur*, or *persuasum est illis*, according to the time expressed. He is to persuade? *Est persuasurus*. He will be persuaded? *Persuadebitur*, or *persuasum erit illi*. He cannot be persuaded? *Non potest persuaderi illi*. I know that he cannot be persuaded? *Scio non posse persuaderi illi*;—that he will be persuaded? *Si persuasum iri*, &c.

When a learner first begins to translate from the Latin, he should keep as strictly to the literal meaning of the words as the different idioms of the two languages will permit. But after he has made farther progress, something more will be requisite. He should then be accustomed, as much as possible, to transfuse the beauties of an author from the one language into the other. For this purpose it will be necessary that he be acquainted, not only with the idioms of the two languages, but also with the different kinds of style adapted to different sorts of composition, and to different subjects; together with the various turns of thought and expression which writers employ, or what are called the figures of words and of thought; or the *Figures of Rhetoric*.

#### IV. Different Kinds of STYLE.

The kinds of Style (*genera dicendi*) are commonly reckoned three; the low, (*humile, submissum, tenue*); the middle, (*medium, temperatum, ornatum, floridum*); and the sublime, (*sublime, grande*).

But besides these, there are various other characters of style; as, the *diffuse* and *concise*; the *feeble* and *nervous*; the *simple* and *affected*, &c.

There are different kinds of style adapted to different subjects and to different kinds of composition; the style of the Pulpit, of the Bar, and of Popular assemblies; the style of History, and of its various branches, Annals, Memoirs or Commentaries, and Lives; the style of Philosophy, of Dialogue or Colloquial discourse, of Epistles, and Romance, &c.

There is also a style peculiar to certain writers, called their *Manner*; as, the *style* of Cicero, of Livy, of Sallust, &c.

But what deserves particular attention is the difference between the style of poetry and of prose. As the poets in a manner paint what they describe, they employ various epithets, repetitions, and turns of expression, which are not admitted in prose.

The first virtue of style (*virtus orationis*) is perspicuity, or that it be easily understood. This requires, in the choice of the words, 1. *Purity*, in opposition to barbarous, obsolete, or new coined words, and to errors in Syntax: 2. *Propriety*, or the selection of the best expressions, in opposition to vulgarisms or low expressions: 3. *Precision*, in opposition to superfluity of words or a loose style.

The things chiefly to be attended to in the structure of a sentence, or in the disposition of its parts, are, 1. *Clearness*, in opposition to ambiguity and obscurity: 2. *Unity* and *Strength*, in opposition to an unconnected, intricate, and feeble sentence: 3. *Harmony*, or a musical arrangement, in opposition to harshness of sound.

The most common defects of style (*vitia orationis*) are distinguished by various names;

1. A BARBARISM is when a foreign or strange word is made use of; as, *crostus*, for *agellus*; *rigorosus*, for *rigidus* or *severus*; *alterare*, for *mutare*, &c. Or when the rules of Orthography, Etymology, or Prosody are transgressed; as, *charus*, for *carus*; *flavi*, for *fleti*; *tibicen*, for *tibicen*.

2. A SOLECISM is when the rules of Syntax are transgressed; as, *Dicit libros lectos iri*, for *lectum iri*: *We was walking*, for *we were*. A barbarism may consist in one word, but a solecism requires several words.

3. An IDIOTISM is when the manner of expression peculiar to one language is used in another; as an *Anglicism* in Latin, thus, I am to write, *Ego sum scribere*, for *ego sum scripturus*; It is I, *Est ego*, for *Ego sum*: Or a *Latinism*, in English, thus, *Est sapientior me*, He is wiser than me, for *than I*; *Quem dicunt me esse*? Whom do they say that I am? for *who*, &c.

4. TAU.



4. **TAUTOLOGY** is when we either uselessly repeat the same words, or repeat the same sense in different words.

5. **BOMBAST** is when high sounding words are used without meaning, or upon a trifling occasion.

6. **AMPHIBOLOGY** is when by the ambiguity of the construction, the meaning may be taken in two different senses; as in the answer of the oracle to Pyrrhus, *Aio te, Æacide, Romanos vincere posse*. But the English is not so liable to this as the Latin.

## V. FIGURES of RHETORIC.

Certain modes of speech are termed *Figurative*, because they convey our meaning under a borrowed form, or in a particular dress.

Figures (*figura* or *schemata*) are of two kinds; figures of words, (*figura verborum*), and figures of thought, (*figura sententiarum*). The former are properly called *Tropes*; and if the word be changed the figure is lost.

### I. TROPES OR FIGURES OF WORDS.

A *Trope* (*conversio*), is an elegant turning of a word from its proper signification.

Tropes take their rise partly from the barrenness of language, but more from the influence of the imagination and passions. They are founded on the relation which one object bears to another, chiefly that of resemblance or similitude.

The principal tropes are the *Metaphor*, *Metonymy*, *Synecdöche*, and *Irony*.

1. **METAPHOR** (*translatio*) is when a word is transferred from that to which it properly belongs, to express something to which it is only applied from similitude or resemblance; as, a *hard* heart; a *soft* temper; he *bridles* his anger; a *joyful* crop; *ridet* ager, the field *smiles*, &c. A metaphor is nothing else but a short comparison.

We likewise call that a metaphor, when we substitute one object in the place of another, on account of the close resemblance between them; as when, instead of *youth*, we

say, *the morning* or *spring-time of life*; or when, in speaking of a family connected with a common parent, we use the expressions which properly belong to a tree, whose trunk and branches are connected with a common root. When this allusion is carried on through several sentences, or through a whole discourse, and the principal subject kept out of view, so that it can only be discovered by its resemblance to the subject described, it is called an ALLEGORY. An example of this we have in Horace, book I. ode 14. where the republic is described under the allusion of a ship.

AN ALLEGORY is only a continued metaphor. This figure is much the same with the *Parable*, which so often occurs in the sacred scriptures; and with the *Fable*, such as those of *Æsop*. The *Ænigma* or *Riddle* is also considered as a species of the Allegory; as likewise are many *Proverbs* (*Proverbia* v. *Adagia*); thus, *In sylvam ligna ferre*, Horat.

Metaphors are improper, when they are taken from low objects; when they are forced or far fetched; when they are mixed or too far pursued; and when they have not a natural and sensible resemblance; or are not adapted to the subject of discourse, or to the kind of composition, whether poetry or prose.

When a word is very much turned from its proper signification, it is called *Catachresis* (*abusio*); as, *a leaf of paper*, of *gold*, &c. *the empire* flourishing; *parricida*, for any murderer; *Vir gregis ipse caper*, Virg. *Altum ædificant caput*, Juv. *Hunc vobis deridendum propino*, for *trado*, Ter. *Eurus per Siculas equitavit undas*, Hor.

When a word is taken in two senses in the same phrase, the one proper and the other metaphorical, it is called *Syllepsis* (*Comprehensio*); as, *Galathæa thymo mihi dulcior Hyblæ*, Virg. *Ego Sardois videar tibi amarior herbis*, Id.

2. METONYMY (*mutatio nominis*) is the putting of one name for another. In which sense it includes all other tropes; but it is commonly restricted to the following particulars;—1. When the cause is put for the effect; or the inventor, for the thing invented; or the author, for

for his works; as, *Bonum labores*, for corn; *Mars*, for war; thus, *Æquo Marte pugnatum est*, with equal advantage, Liv. *Ceres*, for grain or bread; *Bacchus*, for wine; *Venus*, for love; *Vulcanus*, for fire; thus, *Sine Cerere & Baccho friget Venus*; Ter. *Furit Vulcanus*, Virg. So a general is put for his army; *Cicero*, *Virgil*, and *Horace*, for their works: *Moses* and the *Prophets*, for their books; a beautiful *Raphael*, *Titian*, *Guido Rheni*, *Rembrant*, *Rubens*, *Vandyke*, &c. for their pictures.—2. When the effect is put for the cause; as, *Pallida mors*, Pale death, because it makes pale; *atra cura*, &c.—3. The container, for what is contained, and sometimes the contrary; as, *Hausit paterani*, for *vinum*, Virg. He loves his bottle, for drink: *Secundam mensam servis dispersit*, i. e. *fercula in mensa*, Nep. So *Roma*, for *Romani*; *Europe*, for the *Europeans*; *Heaven*, for the Supreme Being; *Secernit Europen ab Afro*, for *Africa*; *In arduos tollor Sabinos*, for *in agrum Sabinorum*; *Incoluni Jove*, for *Capitolio*; *Janus*, for the temple of *Janus*, Hor. *Proximus ardet Ucalagon*, for *domus Ucalagontis*, Virg. So *Sergestus*, for his ship, Id. *Æn.* v. 272.—4. The sign, for the thing signified; as, The crown, for royal authority; *palma* or *laurus*, for victory; *cedant arma toga*, that is, as *Cicero* himself explains it, *bellum concedat paci*. *Ferri togæque consilia*, consultations about war and peace; *Stat. Sylv.* v. 1. 82.—5. An abstract, for the concrete; as, *Scelus* for *sceleratus*, Ter. *Audacia*, for *audax*, Cic. *Custodia*, for *custodes*, Virg. *Servitus*, for *servi*; *nobilitas*, for *nobiles*; *juventus*, for *juvenes*; *vicinia*, for *vicini*; *vires* for *strong men*, Hor. *Furta*, for *stolen oxen*, Ovid. *Fast.* i. 360.—6. The parts of the body, for certain passions or sentiments, which were supposed to reside in them; thus, *cor*, for *wisdom* or *address*; as, *habet cor*, *vir cordatus*, a man of sense, *Plaut.* But with us the heart is put for courage or affection, and the head for wisdom; thus, a stout heart; a warm heart; a sound head, &c. So, to have a well hung tongue, for to speak with ease, &c.

When we put what follows, to express what goes before, or the contrary, it is called *Metalepsis*, (*transmutatio*); thus, *desiderari*, to be desired or regretted, for to be dead,

lost, or absent: So *Fuinus Troes*, & *ingens gloria Dardania*, i. e. are no more. *Virg. Æn. ii. 325.*

3. SYNECDOCHE (*Comprehensio* or *conceptio*) is a trope by which a word is made to signify more or less than in its proper sense; as,—1. When a *genus* is put for a *species*, or a whole for a part, and the contrary; thus, *Mortales*, for *homines*; *summa arbor*, for *summa pars arboris*; *priusquam pabula gustassent Trojæ*, *Xanthumque bibissent*, for *partem pabuli*, & *fluminis Xanthi*, *Virg. Nat. unctâ carina*, for *navis*; *centum puppes*, a hundred sail, or a hundred ships; *tectum*, the roof, for the whole house; *capita* or *anima*, for *homines*; *ungula*, for *equus* or *equi*, *Horat. Sat. i. 1. 114.*; the door or even the threshold, for the house or temple, *tum foribus divæ*, for *in templo divæ*, *Virg. Tempe*, for any beautiful vale, &c.—2. When a singular is put for a plural, and the contrary; thus, *Hostis*, *miles*, *pedes*, *eques*, for *hostes*, &c. *It is written in the prophets*, for in a book of some one of the prophets; *millies*, a thousand times, for many times.—3. When the materials are put for the things made of them; as, *Æs* or *argentum*, for money; *ara*, for vases of brass trumpets, arms, &c. *ferrum*, for a sword; *taurus*, for a bull's hide, *Virg. Dust thou art*, i. e. made of dust, &c.

When a common name is put for a proper name, or the contrary, it is called *Antonomasia* (*pronominalio*); as, the *Philosopher*, for *Aristotle*; the *Orator*, for *Demosthenes* or *Cicero*; the *Poet*, for *Homer* or *Virgil*; the *Wise man*, for *Solomon*; *Astus*, for *Athens*; *Urbs*, the city or town, for the capital of any country; *Pænus*, for *Hannibal*; a *Nero*, for a cruel prince; *Mæcenas*, for a patron of learning; as, *Sint Mæcenates*, *non deerunt*, *Flacce*, *Marones*, i. e. *sint munifici patroni*, *non deerunt boni poete*, *Martial. viii. 56. 5.*

An *Antonomasia* is often made by a *Periphrasis*; as, *Pelopis parens*, for *Tantalus*; *Aniti reus*, for *Socrates*; *Trojanæ belli scriptor*, for *Homer*; *Chironis alumnus*, for *Achilles*; *Potor Rhodani*, for *Gallus*; *Juba tellus*, for *Mauritania*, *Horat. &c.* or by a patronymic noun; as *Antichifædes*, for *Æneas*; *Tyndæris*, *idis*, for *Helena*, &c. or by an epithet; as, *Impius reliquit*, for *Æneas*, *Virg. some-times*

## FIGURES of RHETORIC.

times with the noun added ; as, *Fatālis et inoestus iudex, sumofus hospes*, for *Paris*, Hor.

4. IRONY is when one means the contrary of what is said ; as, when we say of a bad poet, *he is a Virgil* ; or of a profligate person, *Tertius e culo cecidit Cato*.

When any thing is said by way of bitter railery, or in an insulting manner, it is called a SARCASM ; as, *Satia te sanguine, Cyre*, Justin. *Italiam metire jacens*, Virg.

When an affirmation is expressed in a negative form, it is called LITOTES ; as, *He is no fool*, for *he is a man of sense* ; *Non humilis mulier*, for *nobilis*, or *superba* ; *non indecoro pulvere*, for *decoro*, Horat. When a word has a meaning contrary to its original sense, it is called Antiphrasis ; as, *auri sacra fames*, for *execrabilis*, Virg. *Pontus Euxini falso nomine dictus*, i. e. *hospitalis*, Ovid.

When any thing sad or offensive is expressed in more gentle terms, it is called EUPHEMISMUS ; as, *Vitā functus*, for *mortuus* ; *conclamare suos*, to give up for lost, Liv. *Valeant*, for *abeant* ; *maclare* or *ferire*, for *occidere* ; *Fecerunt id ferri Milonis, quod suos quisque servos in tali re facere voluisset*, i. e. *Clodium interfecerunt*, Cic. This figure is often the same with the Periphrasis.

The PERIPHRAISIS, or Circumlocution, is when several words are employed to express what might be expressed in fewer. This is done either from necessity, as in translating from one language into another ; or to explain what is obscure, as in definitions ; or for the sake of ornament, particularly in poetry, as in the descriptions of evening and morning, &c.

When after explaining an obscure word or sentence by a periphrasis, one enlarges on the thought of the author, it is called a Paraphrase.

When a word imitates the sound of the thing signified, it is called Onomatopœia, (*nominis fīctio*) ; as, the *whiffling* of winds, *purling* of streams, *buzz* and *hum* of insects, *hiss* of serpents, &c. But this figure is not properly a trope.

It is sometimes difficult to ascertain to which of the above-mentioned tropes certain expressions ought to be referred. But in such cases minute exactness is needless. It is sufficient to know in general that the expression is figurative.

There



There are a great many tropes peculiar to every language, which cannot be literally expressed in any other. These therefore, if possible, must be rendered by other figurative expressions equivalent: and if this cannot be done, their meaning should be conveyed in simple language; thus, *Interiore notâ Falerni*, with a glass of old Falernian wine: *Ad umbilicum ducere*, to bring to a conclusion, Horat. These and other such figurative expressions, cannot be properly explained without understanding the particular customs to which they refer.

## 2. REPETITION of WORDS.

Various repetitions of words are employed for the sake of elegance or force, and are therefore also called *Figures of Words*. Rhetoricians have distinguished them by different names according to the part of the sentence in which they take place.

When the same word is repeated in the beginning of any member of a sentence, it is called *ANAPHŒRA*; as, *Nihilne te nocturnum presidium palatii, nihil urbis vigilie, &c.* Cic. *Te dulcis conjux, te solo in littore secum.* *Te veniente die, te decedente canebat,* Virg.

When the repetition is made in the end of the member, it is called *EPISTRŒPHE* or *conversio*; as, *Panos Populus Romanus justitiâ vicit, armis vicit, liberalitate vicit,* Cic. Sometimes both the former occur in the same sentence, and then it is called *SYMPLOCE* or *Complexio*; as, *Quis legem tulit? Rullus. Quis, &c. Rullus,* Cic.

When the same word is repeated in the beginning of the first clause of a sentence, and in the end of the latter, it is called *EPANAPŒPSIS*; as, *Vidimus victoriam tuam præliorum exitu terminatam; gladium vagant vacuum in urbe non vidimus,* Cic. pro Marcello.

The reverse of the former is called *ANADIPLŒSIS* or *Reduplicatio*; as, *Hic tamen vivit: vivit. l. imo in senatum venit,* Cic.

When that which is placed first in the foregoing member, is repeated last in the following, and the contrary, it is called *EPANŒDOS* or *Regressio*; as, *Crudelis tu quoque mater; Crudelis mater magis an puer improbus ille? Improbus ille puer, crudelis tu quoque mater,* Virg.

The passionate repetition of the same word in any part of a sentence is called *EPIZEUXIS*; as, *Excitate, excitate eum ab inferis,* Cic. *Fuit, fuit ista virtus, &c.* Id. *Me, vie: adsum qui feci, in me convertite ferrum,* Virg. *Bella, horrida bella,* Id. *Ibimus, ibimus,* Hor.

When we proceed from one thing to another, so as to connect by the same word the subsequent part of a sentence with the preceding, it is called *CLIMAX* or *Gradatio*; as, *Africano virtutem industria, virtus gloriam, gloria amulos comparavit,* Cic.

When

When the same word is repeated in various cases, moods, genders, numbers, &c. it is called POLYPTOTON; as, *Pleni sunt omnes libri, plena sapientum voces, plena exemplorum vetustas*, Cic. *Littora litteribus contraria, fluctibus undas imprecor, arma armis*, Virg. To this is usually referred what is called SYNONYMIA, or the using of words of the same import, to express a thing more strongly; as, *Non feram, non patiar, non sinam*, Cic. *Promitto, recipio, spondeo*, Id. And also EXPOSITIO, which repeats the same thought in different lights.

When a word is repeated the same in sound, but not in sense, it is called ANTANACLASIS; as, *Amari jucundum est, si curetur ne quid inest amari*, Cic. But this is reckoned a defect in style, rather than a beauty. Nearly allied to this figure is the PARONOMASIA or Agnomination, when the words only resemble one another in sound; as, *Civem bonarum artium, bonarum partium; Consul pravo animo & parvo; De oratore orator scellus*, Cic. *Amantes sunt amentes*, Ter. This is also called a PUN.

When two or more words are joined in any part of a sentence in the same cases or tenses, it is called HOMIOPTOTON, i. e. *similiter cadens*; as, *Pellet auctoritate, circumfluit opibus, abundat amicis*, Cic. If the words have only a similar termination, it is called HOMIOTELTON, i. e. *similiter desinens*; as, *Non ejusdem est facere fortiter, & vivere turpiter*, Cic.

### 3. FIGURES of THOUGHT.

It is not easy to reduce figures of thought to distinct classes, because the same figure is employed for several different purposes. The principal are the *Hyperbole*, *Prosopopeia*, *Apostrophe*, *Simile*, *Antithesis*, &c.

1. HYPERBOLE is when a thing is magnified above the truth; as, when Virgil speaking of *Polyphēmus* says, *Ipse arduus, atque pulsat sidera*. So, *Contracta pisces aquora sentiunt*, Hor. When an object is diminished below the truth, it is called *Tapeinōsis*. The use of extravagant Hyperboles forms what is called *Bombast*.

2. PROSOPOPEIA, or *Personification*, is when we ascribe life, sentiments, or actions, to inanimate beings, or to abstract qualities; as, *Quæ (patria) tecum, Catilina, sic agit*, &c. Cic. *Virtus sumit aut ponit secures*, Hor. *Arbore nunc aquas culpante*, Id.

3. APOSTROPHE, or *Address*, is when the speaker breaks off from the series of his discourse, and addresses himself to some person present or absent, living or dead, or to inanimate nature, as if endowed with sense and reason. This figure is nearly allied to the former, and therefore

therefore often joined with it ; as, *Trojaque nunc flares, Priamique arx alta maneres*, Virg.

4. SIMILE, or *Comparison*, is when one thing is illustrated or heightened by comparing it to another ; as, *Alexander was as bold as a lion*.

5. ANTITHESIS, or *Opposition*, is when things contrary or different are contrasted, to make them appear in the more striking light ; as, *Hannibal was cunning, but Fabius was cautious*. *Cæsar beneficiis ac munificentia magnus habebatur, integritate vitæ Cato*, &c. Sall. Cat. 54. *Ex hac parte pudor pugnat, illinc petulantia*, &c. Cic. Similar to this figure is the *Oxumoron*, i. e. *acute dictum* ; as, *Amici absentes adsunt*, &c. Cic. *Impietate pia est*, Ovid. *Num capti potuere capi*, Virg.

6. INTERROGATION, (Græc. *Erotēsis*), is a figure whereby we do not simply ask a question, but express some strong feeling or affection of the mind in that form ; as, *Quousque tandem*, &c. Cic. *Creditis avectos hostes ?* Virg. *Heu ! quæ me æquora possunt accipere*, Id. Sometimes an answer is returned, in which case it is called *Subiectio* ; as, *Quid ergo ? audacissimus ego ex omnibus ? minime*, Cic. Nearly allied to this is *Exposition*, when a person pleads with offenders to return to their duty.

7. EXCLAMATION ; (Ecphonēsis) as, *O nomen dulce libertatis !* &c. Cic. *O tempora, O mores !* Id. *O patria ! O Divum domus Ilium !* &c. Virg.

8. DESCRIPTION, or *Imagery*, (*Hypotypōsis*), when any thing is painted in a lively manner, as if done before our eyes. Hence it is also called *Vision* ; as, *Videor mihi hanc urbem videre*, &c. Cic. in Cat. iv. 6. *Videre magnos jam videor duces, Non indecoro pulvere sordidos*, Hor. Here a change of tense is often used, as the present for the past, and conjunctions omitted, &c. Virg. xi. 637. &c.

9. EMPHASIS is when a particular stress is laid on some word in a sentence ; as, *Hannibal peto pacem*, Liv. *Proh ! Jupiter, ibi hic !* Virg.

10. EPANARTHOSIS, or *Correction*, is when the speaker either recalls or corrects what he had last said ; as, *Filium habui, ah ! quid dixi habere me ? imò habui*, Ter.

11. PARALEPSIS, or *Omission*, is when one pretends to omit or pass by, what he at the same time declares.

12. APA-

12. APARITHMĒSIS, or *Enumeration*, is when what might be expressed in a few words, is branched out into several parts.

13. SYNATHROISMUS, or *Coacervatio*, is the crowding of many particulars together; as,

Facies in castra tulissem,  
Impleissemque foros flammis, natumque, patremque  
Cum genere extinxem, memet super ipsa dedissem. Virg.

14. *Incrementum*, or CLIMAX in sense, is when one number rises above another to the highest; as, *Facinus est vincire civem Romanum, scelus verberare, parricidium necare*, Cic. When all the circumstances of an object or action are artfully exaggerated, it is called AUXĒSIS, or *Amplification*. But this is properly not one figure, but the skilful employment of several, chiefly of the Simile and the Climax.

15. TRANSITION (*metabasis*) is when a speech is abruptly introduced; or when a writer suddenly passes from one subject to another; as, Horat. Od. ii. 13. 13. In strong passion, a *change of person* is sometimes used; as, Virg. Æn. iv. 365. &c. xi. 406. &c.

16. SUSPENSIO, or *Susentatio*, is when the mind of the hearer is long kept in suspense; to which the Latin inversion of words is often made subservient.

17. CONCESSIO is the yielding of one thing to obtain another; as, *Sit fur, sit sacrilegus*, &c. *at est bonus imperator*, Cic. in Verrem, v. 1. PROLEPSIS, *Prevention* or *Anticipation*, is when an objection is started and answered. ANACOINŌSIS, or *Communication*, is when the speaker deliberates with the judges or hearers; which is also called *Diaporēsis* or *Addubitatio*. LICENTIA, or the pretending to assume more freedom than is proper, is used for the sake of admonishing, rebuking, and also flattering; as, *Vide quam non reformidem*, &c. Cic. pro Ligario. APOSIOPĒSIS, or *Concealment*, leaves the sense incomplete; as, *Quos ego — sed praealat motos componere fluctus*, Virg.

18. SENTENTIA, (*gnome*), a sentiment, is a general maxim concerning life or manners, which is expressed in various forms; as, *Otium sine literis mors est*, Seneca. *Adco in teneris assuescere multum est*, Virg. *Probitas laudatur*

*Et alget; Misera est magni custodia censûs; Nobilitas sola est atque unica virtus,* Juv.

As most of these figures are used by orators, and some of them only in certain parts of their speeches, it will be proper that the learner know the parts into which a regular formal oration is commonly divided. These are,  
 1. The *Introduction*, the *Exordium* or *Proæmium*, to gain the good will and attention of the hearers: 2. The *Narration* or *Explication*: 3. The argumentative part, which includes *Confirmation* or proof, and *Confutation* or refuting the objections and arguments of an adversary. The sources from which arguments are drawn, are called *Loci*, topics; and are either intrinsic or extrinsic; common or peculiar.  
 4. The *Peroration*, *Epilogue*, or *Conclusion*.

## The QUANTITY of SYLLABLES.

The quantity of a syllable is the space of time taken up in pronouncing it.

That part of grammar which treats of the quantity and accent of Syllables, and of the measures of Verse, is called *PROSODY*.

Syllables, with respect to their quality, are either *long* or *short*.

A long syllable in pronouncing requires double the time of a short; as, *tēdērē*.

Some syllables are *common*; that is, sometimes long, and sometimes short; as the second syllable in *volutris*.

A vowel is said to be long or short by nature, which is always so by custom, or by the use of the poets.

In polysyllables or long words, the last syllable except one is called the *Penultima*, or, by contraction, the *Penult*, and the last syllable except two, the *Antepenultima*.

When the quantity of a syllable is not fixed by some particular rule, it is said to be long or short by *authority*, that is, according to the usage of the poets. Thus *le* in *lægo* is said to be short by authority, because it is always made short by the Latin poets.

In most Latin words of one or two syllables, according to our manner of pronouncing, we can hardly distinguish  
 by



by the ear a long syllable from a short. Thus *le* in *lēgo* and *lēgi* seem to be sounded equally long; but when we pronounce them in composition, the difference is obvious; thus, *perlēgo*, *perlēgi*; *relēgo*, *-ēre*; *relēgo*, *āre*, &c.

The rules of quantity are either *General* or *Special*. The former apply to all syllables, the latter only to some certain syllables.

## GENERAL RULES.

I. A vowel before another vowel is short; as, *Mēus*, *alius*: so *nihil*; *b* in verse being considered only as a breathing. In like manner in English, *create*, *behave*.

Exc. 1. *I* is long in *fīo*, *fīebam*, &c. unless when followed by *r*; as, *fīeri*, *fīerem*; thus,

*Omnia jam fient, fīeri quæ posse negabam*, *Ovid*.

Exc. 2. *E* having an *i* before and after it, in the fifth declension, is long; as, *speciēi*. So is the first syllable in *āer*, *dīus*, *zheu*, and the penultima in *aulāi*, *terrāi*, &c. in *Pompēi*, *Cāi*, and such like words; but we sometimes find *Pompēi* in two syllables, *Horat. Od. II. 7*.

Exc. 3. The first syllable in *ohe* and *Diana* is common; so likewise is the penult of genitives in *ius*; as, *illius*, *unius*, &c. to be read long in prose. *Alius*, in the genit. is always long, as being contracted for *alius*; *alterius*, short.

In Greek words, when a vowel comes before another, no certain rule concerning its quantity can be given.

Sometimes it is short; as, *Danæ*, *Idæa*, *Sophia*, *Symphonia*, *Simois*, *Hyaides*, *Phaon*, *Deucalion*, *Pygmalion*, *Thebais*, &c.

Often it is long; as, *Lycæon*, *Machæon*, *Didymæon*; *Amphion*, *Arion*, *Ixion*, *Pandion*; *Nais*, *Lais*, *Achais*; *Briseis*, *Cadmeis*; *Latous*, & *Latōis*, *Myrtōus*, *Nerēus*, *Priamēus*; *Achelōus*, *Minnōus*; *Archelāus*, *Menelāus*, *Amphiarāus*; *Agæus*, *Peneus*, *Epæus*, *Acrisioeus*, *Adamanteus*, *Phœbeus*, *Giganteus*; *Darius*, *Basilus*, *Eugenius*, *Bacchius*; *Calliopæa*, *Cæsaræa*, *Charonæa*, *Cytheræa*, *Gallatæa*, *Laodicæa*, *Medæa*, *Panthæa*, *Penelopæa*; *Clio*, *Euryo*, *Elegia*, *Iphigenia*, *Alexandria*, *Thalia*, *Antiochia*, *Idololatria*, *litania*, *politia*, &c. *Læertes*, *Dæiphobus*, *Dæjanira*, *Trões*, *herões*, &c.

Sometimes it is common; as, *Chorea*, *platea*, *Malea*, *Nereides*, *canopeum*, *Orion*, *Geryon*, *Eos*, *cōus*, &c. So in foreign words, *Michael*, *Israel*, *Raphael*, *Abraham*, &c.

The accusative of nouns in *eus* is usually short; as, *Orphæa*, *Salmoneæ*, *Capharæa*, &c. but sometimes long; as, *Idomeneæ*, *Ilioneæ*, *Virg*.

Instead of *Elegia*, *Cythera*, we find *Elegia*, *Cytheria*, Ovid. But the quantity of Greek words cannot be properly understood without the knowledge of Greek.

In English a vowel before another is also sometimes lengthened; as, *science*, *idea*.

II. A vowel before two consonants, or before a double consonant, is long (*by position, as it is called*); as,

*arma*, *fallo*, *axis*, *gaza*, *major*; the compounds of *jugum* excepted; as, *bijugus*, *quadrijugus*, &c.

When the foregoing word ends in a short vowel, and the following begins with two consonants or a double one, that vowel is sometimes lengthened by position; as,

*Ferte citi flammas, date vela, scandite muros*, Virg.

But this rarely occurs.

I ¶ A vowel before a mute and a liquid is common; /

as the middle syllable in *volucris*, *tenebrae*, thus,

Et primò similis volūcri, mox vera volūcris, Ovid.

Nox tenēbras profert, Phœbus fugat inde tenēbras, Id.

But in prose these words are pronounced short. So *peragro*, *pharetra*, *podagra*, *chiragra*, *celebris*, *latebrae*, &c.

To make this rule hold, three things are requisite. The vowel must be naturally short, the mute must go before the liquid, and be in the same syllable with it. Thus, *a* in *patris* is made common in verse, because *a* in *pater* is naturally short, or always so by custom: but *a* in *matris*, *acris*, is always long, because long by nature or custom in *mater* and *acer*. In like manner the penult in *salūbris*, *ambulacrum*, is always long; because they are derived from *salus*, *salūtis*, and *ambulatum*. So *a* in *arte*, *abluo*, &c. is long by position, because the mute and the liquid are in different syllables.

*L* and *r* only are considered as liquids in Latin words; *m* and *n* do not take place except in Greek words.

III. A contracted syllable is long; / as,

*Nil*, for *nihil*; *mī*, for *mibi*; *cōgo*, for *coāgo*; *alius*, for *alius*; *tibicen*, for *tibiicen*; *ūt*, for *ūt*; *sōdes*, for *si audes*; *nōlo*, for *non volo*; *bīgæ*, for *bijūga*, *scīlicet*, for *scire licet*, &c.

IV. A diphthong is always long; / as,

*Aurum*, *Cesar*, *Eubœa*, &c. Only *præ* in composition before a vowel is commonly short; as, *præire*, *præstus*; thus,

Nec

Nec totâ tamen ille prior præeunte carinâ. *Virg.*

Scipitibus duris agitur sudibusque præustis. *Id.*

But it is sometimes lengthened ; as,

—————cum vacuus doming præiret Arion. *Statius.*

In English we pronounce several of the diphthongs short, by sinking the sound of one vowel ; but then there is properly no diphthong.

## SPECIAL RULES.

### I. Concerning the FIRST and MIDDLE SYLLABLES.

*Preterites and Supines of two Syllables.*

V. Preterites of two syllables lengthen the former syllable ; as, *Vēni, vīdi, vīci.*

Except *bibi, scīdi* from *scindo*, *fīdi* from *findo*, *tūli, dēdi*, and *stīti*, which are shortened.

VI. Supines of two syllables lengthen the former syllable ; as, *Vīsum, cāsum, mōtum.*

Except *sātum*, from *sēro* ; *cītum*, from *cīeo* ; *lītum*, from *līno* ; *sītum*, from *sīno* ; *stātum*, from *stīlo* ; *ītum*, from *eo* ; *dātum*, from *do* ; *rūtum*, from the compounds of *ruo* ; *quītum*, from *queo* ; *rātus*, from *reor*.

*Preterites which double the first syllable.*

VII. Preterites which double the first syllable, have both the first syllables short ; as,

*Cēcīdi, tētīgi, pēpūli, pēpēri, didīci, tūtūdi* : except *cēcūdi*, from *cado* ; *pēpēdi*, from *pēdo* ; and when two consonants intervene ; as *fēfelli, tētēdi*, &c.

## INCREASE of NOUNS.

A noun is said to increase, when it has more syllables in any of the oblique cases than in the nominative ; as, *rex, regis*. Here *re* is called the *increase* or *crement*, and so through all the other cases. The last syllable is never esteemed a ccrement.

Some nouns have a double increase, that is, increase by more syllables than one ; as, *iter, itinēris*.

A noun in the plural is said to increase, when in any case it has more syllables than the genitive singular ; as, *gener, genēri, genērōrum*.

Nouns of the first, fourth, and fifth declensions, do not increase in the singular number, unless where one vowel comes before another; as, *fructus*, *fructū*; *rēs*, *rēi*; which fall under Rule I.

### Third Declension.

VIII. Nouns of the third declension which increase, make *a* and *o* long; *e*, *i*, and *u* short; /as,

*Pietātis*, *honōris*; *mulieris*, *lapīdis*, *murmūris*.

The chief exceptions from this rule are marked under the formation of the genitive in the third declension. But here perhaps it may be proper to be more particular.

#### A.

A noun in A shortens *atis* in the genitive; as, *dogma*, *ātis*; *poema*, *-ātis*.

#### O.

O shortens *inis*, but lengthens *ēnis* and *ōnis*; as, *Carde*, *-inis*; *Virgo*, *-inis*; *Anio*, *-ēnis*; *Cicero*, *-ōnis*. Gentile or patril nouns vary their quantity. Most of them shorten the genitive; as, *Macēdo*, *-ōnis*; *Saxo*, *-ōnis*: Some are long; as, *Suessōnes*, *Vettōnes*. *Brittones* is common.

#### I. C. D.

I shortens *-itis*; as, *Hydromēli*, *itis*. *Ec* lengthens *-ecis*; as, *Halce*, *-ēcis*.

A noun in D shortens the crement; as, *David*, *-idis*.

#### L.

Masculines in AL shorten *ālis*, as, *Sal*, *-ālis*; *Hannibal*, *-ālis*; *Hastribal*, *-ālis*; but neuters lengthen it; as *animal*, *-ālis*.

*Sōlis* from *sol* is long; also Hebrew words in *el*; as, *Michael*, *-ēlis*. Other nouns in L shorten the crement; as, *Vigil*, *-ilis*; *consul*, *-ūlis*.

#### N.

Nouns in ON vary the crement. Some lengthen it; as, *Helicon*, *-ōnis*; *Chiron*, *ōnis*. Some shorten it; as, *Memnon*, *-ōnis*; *Athæen*, *-ēnis*.

EN shortens *inis*; as, *flumen*, *inis*; *ribicen*, *-inis*. Other Nouns in N lengthen the penult. AN *ānis*; as, *Titan*, *-ānis*: EN *ēnis*; as, *Siren*, *-ēnis*: IN *inis*; as, *delphin*, *inis*: YN *īnis*; as, *Phorcyon*, *-īnis*.

#### R.

1. Neuters in AR lengthen *aris*; as, *calcar*, *-āris*. Except the following, *baccar*, *-āris*; *jubar*, *-āris*; *nectar*, *-āris*: Also the adjective *par*, *paris*, and its compounds, *impar*, *āris*, *dispar*, *āris*, &c.

2. The following nouns in R lengthen the genitive, *Nar*, *nāris*, the name of a river; *fur*, *fūris*; *ver*, *vēris*: Also *Reimer*, *-ēris*; *Byzer*, *-ēris*; *Ser*, *Sēris*; *Iber*, *-ēris*, proper names.

3. Greek nouns in TER lengthen *teris*; as, *crater*, *-ēris*; *charactēr*, *-ēris*. Except *ather*, *-ēris*.

4. OR lengthens *oris*; as, *amor*, *-ōris*. Except neuter nouns; as, *marmor*, *ōris*; *agror*, *-ōris*: Greek nouns in *ter*; as, *Hæctor*, *-ōris*; *Atter*, *-ōris*; *ibeter*, *-ōris*, Also *arber*, *-ōris*, and *memor*, *-ōris*.

5. Other

5. Other nouns in R shorten the genitive; AR *aris*, masc.; as, *Cesar*, -*āris*; *Hamilear*, -*āris*; *Iar*, *Iāris*. ER *eris* of any gender; as, *aer*, *aēris*; *mulier*, -*ēris*, *cadāver*, -*ēris*; *iter*, anciently *itiner*, *itinēris*; *verbēris*, from the obsolete *verber*. UR *uris*; as, *vultur*, -*ūris*; *murmur*, -*ūris*. YR *yris*; as, *Martyr*, -*ŷris*.

AS.

1. Nouns in AS, which have *atis*, lengthen the crement; as, *pietas*, -*ātis*; *Mecēnas*, -*ātis*. Except *anas*, -*ātis*.

2. Other nouns in AS shorten the crement; as, Greek nouns having the genitive in *ātis*, *ātis*, and *ānis*; thus, *Pallas*, -*ādīs*; *artocreas*, -*ētis*; *Melas*, -*ānis*, the name of a river. So *var*, *vādīs*; *mas*, *māris*; But *vas*, *vāsīs*, is long.

ES.

ES shortens the crement; as, *miles*, -*itis*; *Ceres*, -*ēris*, *pes*, *pēdis*.

Except *locuples*, -*ētis*; *quies*, -*ētis*; *mansues*, -*ētis*; *haves*, -*ēdis*; *merces*, -*ēdis*.

IS.

Nouns in IS shorten the crement; as, *lapis*, -*idis*; *Sanguis*, -*inis*; *Phyllis*, -*idis*.

Except *Glis*, *gliris*; and Latin nouns which have *itis*; as, *lis*, *litis*; *dis*, *ditis*; *Quiris*, -*itis*; *Samnis*, -*itis*; But *Cbaris*, a Greek noun, has *Cbaritis*.

The following also lengthen the crement; *Crenis*, -*idis*; *Psopbis*, -*idis*; *Nefis*, -*idis*, proper names. And Greek nouns in *is*, which have also *in*; as, *Salāmis*, or *-in*, *Salaminis*.

OS.

Nouns in OS lengthen the crement; as, *nepos*, -*ōtis*; *flor*, *flōris*.

Except *Bos*, *bōvis*; *compos*, -*ōtis*; and *impos*, -*ōtis*.

US.

US shortens the crement; as, *tempus*, -*ūris*; *tripus*, -*ūdis*.

Except nouns which have *ūdis*, *ūris*, and *-ūtis*; as, *incus*, *ūdis*; *jur*, *jūris*; *salas*, -*ūtis*. But *Ligus* has *Ligūris*; the obsolete *pecus*, *pecūdis*; and *intercus*, -*ūtis*.

The neuter of the comparative has *ōris*; as, *melius*, -*ōris*.

YS.

YS shortens *ydīs* or *ydos*; as, *ablamys*, -*ŷdis*, or *-ŷdos*; and lengthens *ynīs*; as, *Trachys*, -*ŷnis*.

BS. PS. MS.

Nouns in S, with a consonant going before, shorten the penult of the genitive; as, *calcebs*, -*ibis*; *inops*, *ōpis*, *biems*, *hūcimis*.

Except *Cyclops*, *ōpis*; *seps*, *sepsis*; *gryps*, *grŷp̄bis*; *Cercops*, *ōpis*; *glebs*, *plēbis*; *hydrops*, -*ōpis*.

T.

T shortens the crement; as, *caput*, -*itis*.

X.

1. Nouns in X, which have the genitive in *gis*, shorten the crement;



ment ; as, *conjux*, -ūgis ; *remex*, -īgis ; *Allobrox*, -ōgis ; *Phryx*, *Phrygis*. But *lex*, *lēgis* ; and *rex*, *rēgis*, are long ; and likewise *frūgis*.

2. EX shortens *icis* ; as, *vertex*, -īcis : except *vibex*, -īcis.

3. Other nouns in X lengthen the crement ; as, *pax*, *pācis* ; *radix*, -īcis ; *vox*, *vōcis* ; *lux*, *lūcis* ; *Pollux*, *ūcis*, &c.

Except *fācis*, *nēcis*, *vīcis*, *prēcis*, *calicis*, *cilicis*, *pācis*, *forācis*, *nīvis*, *Cappadōcis*, *dūcis*, *nūcis*, *crūcis*, *trūcis*, *onychis*, *Erjēis*, *maſtyx*, -ychis, the roſin of the *lentiscus*, or *maſtich tree*, and many others, whoſe quantity can only be aſcertained by authority.

4. Some nouns vary the crement ; as, *Syphax*, -ācis, or -ācis ; *Sandyx*, -īcis, or -īcis, *Pebryx*, -ychis, or -ychis.

### Increase of the Plural Number.

IX. Nouns of the plural number which increaſe, make *A*, *E*, and *O*, long ; but ſhorten *I*, and *U* ; as,

*musārum*, *rērum*, *dominōrum* ; *rēgibus*, *portūbus* : except *bōbus* or *lūbus*, contracted for *bōvibus*.

### INCREASE of VERBS.

A verb is ſaid to increaſe, when any part has more ſyllables than the ſecond perſon ſingular of the preſent of the indicative active ; as, *amas*, *amāmus*, where the ſecond ſyllable *ma* is the increaſe or crement ; for the laſt ſyllable is never called by that name.

A verb often increaſes by ſeveral ſyllables ; as, *amas*, *amābāmini* ; in which caſe it is ſaid to have a *firſt*, *ſecond*, or *third increaſe*.

10. In the increaſe of verbs, *a*, *e*, and *o*, are long, *i* and *u*, ſhort ; as,

*Amāre*, *docere*, *amātōte* ; *legimus*, *sūmus*, *volūmus*.

The poets ſometimes ſhorten *dēderunt* and *pēderunt* ; and lengthen *vīmus*, and *vītis*, in the future of the ſubjunctive ; as — *transferētis aquas*. Ovid. All the other exceptions from this rule are marked in the formation of the verb.

The firſt or middle ſyllables of words which do not come under any of the foregoing rules, are ſaid to be long or ſhort by *authority* ; and their quantity can only be diſcovered from the uſage of the poets, which is the moſt certain of all rules.

REMARKS on the Quantity of the PENULT of Words.

1. Patronymics in *IDES* or *ADES* usually shorten the penult ; as, *Priamides*, *Atlantiades*, &c. Unless they come from nouns in *eus* ; as, *Pelides*, *Tydidēs*, &c.

2. Patronymics, and similar words, in *AIS*, *EIS*, *ITIS*, *OIS*, *OTIS*, *INE*, and *ONE*, commonly lengthen the penult ; as, *Achais*, *Ptolemais*, *Chryseis*, *Æneis*, *Memphitis*, *Latōis*, *Icariōtis*, *Nerine*, *Arisiōne*. Except *Thebais*, and *Phocais* ; and *Nereis*, which is common.

3. Adjectives in *ACUS*, *ICUS*, *IDUS*, and *IMUS*, for the most part shorten the penult ; as, *Ægyptiācus*, *academicus*, *lepidus*, *legitimus* ; also superlatives ; as, *fortissimus*, &c. Except *opācus*, *amicus*, *apricus*, *puḍicus*, *mendicus*, *posticus*, *fidus*, *infidus*, (but *perfidus*, of *per* and *fides*, is short), *bimius*, *quadrimus*, *patrimus*, *matrimus*, *optimus* ; and two superlatives, *imius*, *primus*.

4. Adjectives in *ALIS*, *ANUS*, *ARUS*, *IVUS*, *ORUS*, *OSUS*, lengthen the penult ; as, *dotālis*, *urbānus*, *avārus*, *astivus*, *decōrus*, *arenōsus*. Except *barbārus*, *opipārus*.

5. Verbal adjectives in *ILIS* shorten the penult ; as, *agilis*, *facilis* &c. But derivatives from nouns usually lengthen it ; as, *anilis*, *civilis*, *berilis*, &c. To these add, *exilis*, *subtilis* ; and names of months, *Aprilis*, *Quintilis*, *Sextilis* : Except *humilis*, *parilis* ; and also *similis*. But all adjectives in *atilis* are short ; as, *versātilis*, *volatilis*, *umbratilis*, &c.

6. Adjectives in *INUS* derived from inanimate things, as plants, stones, &c. ; also from adverbs of time, commonly shorten the penult ; as, *amaracinus*, *crocinus*, *cedrinus*, *saginus*, *oleaginus* ; *adamantinus*, *cristallinus*, *crastinus*, *pristinus*, *perendinus*, &c.

Other adjectives in *INUS* are long ; as, *agninus*, *austrius*, *bimius*, *clandestinus*, *Latinus*, *marinus*, *supinus*, *vespertinus*, &c.

7. Diminutives in *OLUS*, *OLA*, *OLUM* ; and *ULUS*, *ULA*, *ULUM*, always shorten the penult ; as, *urceolus*, *filicula*, *musculum* ; *lecululus*, *ratiuncula*, *corculum*, &c.

8. dverbs in *TIM* lengthen the penult ; as, *oppidatim*, *virutim*, *tributum*. Except *assatim*, *perpetim*, and *statim*.

9. Desideratives in *URIO* shorten the antepenultima, which

which in the second and third person is the penult; as, *esūrio, esūris esūrit*. But other verbs in *urio* lengthen that syllable; as, *ligūrio, ligūris; scatūrio, scatūris, &c.*

### PENULT OF PROPER NAMES.

*The following proper names lengthen the penult.* Abdēra, Abūdus, Adōnis, Æsōpus, Ætōlus, Ahāla, Alaricus, Alcides, Anycia, Andronicus, Anūbis, Archimēdes, Ariarāthes, Ariobarzānes, Aristides, Aristobūlus, Aristogiton, Arpinum, Artabānus; Brachmānes, Busiris, Buthrōtus; Cethēgus, Chalcedon, Cleobūlus, Cyrēne, Cythēra, Curētes; Darici, Demonicus, Diomēdes, Diōres, Dioscūri; Ebūdes, Eriphyle, Eubūlus, Euclides, Euphrātes, Eumēdes, Euripus, Euxinus; Gaigānus, Gætūlus, Granicus; Heliogabālus, Henricus, Heraclides, Heraclitus, Hippōnax, Hispānus; Irēne; Lacūdas, Latōna, Leucāta, Lugdūnum, Lycōras; Mandāne, Mausōlus, Maximinus, Meleāger, Mēssāla, Mēssāna, Milētus; Na-ica, Nicānor, Nicētas; Pāchynus, Pandōra, Pelōris, & -us, Pharsālus, Phœnice, Polites, Polycētus, Polynices, Priāpus; Sarpēdon, Serāpis, Sinōpe, Stratonice, Suffetes; Tigrānes, Thessalonica, Verōna, Veronica.

*The following are short.* Amāthus, Amphipōlis, Anabasis, Anticyra, Antigonus, & -ne, Antilochus, Antiōchus, Antiōpa, Antipas, Antipater, Antiphānes, Antiphates, Antiphila, Antiphon, Anytus, Apūlus, Areopāgus, Ariminum, Armēnus, Athēsis, Attālus, Attica; Būrix, Bructeri; Calāber, Callierates, Callistratus, Candace, Cantāber, Carneādes, Cherilus, Chrysostōmus, Cleombrōtus, Cleomēnes, Corycos, Constantinopōlis, Craterus, Cratylus, Cremēra, Crustumēri, Cybēle, Cyclādes, Cyzicus; Dalmāta, Damocles, Dardānus, Dejóces, Dejótarus, Democrītus, Demīpho, Didymus, Diogēnes, Drepanum, Duminōrix; Empedocles, Ephēsus, Evergētes, Eumēnes, Eurymedon, Euripylus; Fucinus; Geryōnes, Gyārus; Hecyra, Heliopōlis, Heronione, Herodōtus, Hesiodus, Hesione, Hippocrates, Hippotāmos, Hypāta, Hypānis; Icārus, Icētas, Illyris, Iphitus, Ithārus, Ithāca; Laodice, Laomedon, Lampsacus, Lamyrus, Lapithae, Leucetilis, Libānus, Lipāre, v. -a, Lyfinaehus, Longimanus; Mārathon, Mēnālus, Marmarica, Massagēta, Matrona, Megāra, Melitus, & -ta, Metropōlis, Mutina, Myconus; Neocles, Neritos, Noricum; Omphale; Patāra, Pegāsus, Pharnaces, Pisistratus, Polydāmas, Polyxēna, Porsēna, or Porsenna, Praxiteles, Puteoli, Pylades, Pythagoras; Sarmāta, Sarsina, Semēle, Semiramis, Sequani, & -a, Seriphos, Sicoris, Socrates, Sodoma, Sorades, Spartacus, Sporrades, Strongyle, Stymphalus, Sybāris; Taygetus, Telegonus, Telenachus, Tenēdos, Tarraco, Theophaenes, Theophrastus, Tomyris; Urbicus; Veneti, Vologesus, Volusus; Xenocrates; Zoilus, Zopyrus.

The penult of several words is doubtful; thus, *Batavi*, Lucan. *Batavi*, Juv. & Mart. *Fortuitus*, Horat. *Fortuitus*, Mart. Some make *fortuitus* of three syllables; but it may be shortened like *gratuitus*, Stat. *Patrimus*, *matrimus*, *praefator*, &c. are by some lengthened, and by some shortened; but for their quantity, there is no certain authority.

## II. FINAL SYLLABLES.

## A.

XI. | *A* in the end of a word declined by cases is short; as, *Musă, templă, Tydeă, lampădă*.

Exc. The ablative of the first declension is long; as, *Musă, Ānăă*; and the vocative of Greek nouns in *as*, as, *O Ānăă, O Pallă*.

| *A* in the end of a word not declined by cases is long; as, *Amă, frustră, prătereă, ergă, intră*.

Exc. *Ită, quiă, ejă, poșteă, pută*, (adv.) are short; and sometimes, though more rarely, the prepositions *contră, ultră*, and the compounds of *ginta*; as, *trigintă, &c.* *Contra* and *ultra*, when adverbs, are always long.

## E.

XII. | *E* in the end of a word is short; as,

*Natě, sedilě, patrě, currě, nempě, antě*.

Exc. 1. Monosyllables are long; as, *mě, tě, sě*; except these enclitic conjunctions, *quě, vě, ně*; and these syllabical adjections, *ptě, cě, tě*; as, *suaptě, hujuscě, tutě*; but these may be comprehended under the general rule, as they never stand by themselves.

Exc. 2. | Nouns of the first and fifth declension are long; as, *Calliopě, Anchisě, fidě*. So *rě-*, and *diě*, with their compounds, *quarě, hodie, pridie, postridie, quotidie*: Also Greek nouns which want the singular, *Getě, melě, Tempě*; and the second person singular of the imperative of the second conjugation; as, *Docě, maně*; but *cave, vale*, and *vide*, are sometimes short.

Exc. 3. Adverbs derived from adjectives of the first and second declension are long; as, *placidě, pulchrě, valdě*, contracted for *validě*: To these add *fermě, ferě, and ohě*; also all adverbs of the superlative degree; as *doctissimě, fortissimě*: But *beně* and *malě* are short.

## I.

XIII. | *I* final is long; as, *Dominī, patrī, docerī*.

Exc. 1. Greek vocatives are short; as, *Alexī, Amaryllī*.

Exc. 2. The dative of Greek nouns of the third declension which increase, is common; as, *Pallădi, Minoidi*.

*Mili,*

*Mihi, tibi, sibi*, are also common : So likewise are *ibi, nisi, ubi, quasi* ; and *cui*, when a dissyllable, which in poetry is seldom the case. *Sicubi* and *necubi* are always short.

O.

XIV. O final is common ; as, *Virgo, Amo, quando*.

Exc. 1. Monosyllables in o are long ; as, *ō, dō, flō, prō* : The dative and ablative sing. of the second declension is long : as, *librō, dominō* : Also Greek nouns, as, *Didō*, and *Athō* the genit. of *Athos*, and adverbs derived from nouns ; as, *certō, falsō, paulō*. To these add *quō, eō*, and their compounds, *quōvis, quōcunque, adeō, ideō* ; likewise *illō, idcirco, citrō, intrō, retrō, ultrō*.

Exc. 2 The following words are short ; *Egō, sciō, cedō*, a defective verb, *homō, citō, illicō, immō, duō, ambō, modō*, with its compounds, *quomodō, dummodō, postmodō* : but some of these are also found long.

Exc. 3. The gerund in DO in Virgil is long ; in other poets it is short. *Ergō*, on account of, is long ; *ergo*, therefore, is doubtful.

U and Y.

XV. U final is long ; Y final is short ; as,

*Vultū : Molū.*

B, D, L, M, R, T.

XVI. B, D, L, R, and T, in the end of a word, are short ; as,

*Ab, apūd, semel, precor, caput.*

The following words are long, *sāl, sōl, nīl* ; *pūr* and its compounds, *impar, dispar, &c.* ; *fār, lār, Nār, cūr, fūr* ; also nouns in *er* which have *ēris* in the genitive ; as, *Cratēr, vēr, Ibēr* ; likewise *aēr, athēr* : to which add Hebrew names ; as, *Jōb, Daniēl, Davīd*.

M final anciently made the foregoing vowel short : as, *Militūm otto*, Ennius. But by later poets, *m* in the end of a word is always cut off, when the next word begins with a vowel ; thus, *milit' otto* ; except in compound words ; as, *circūmāgo, circūmeo*.

C, N.

XVII. C and N, in the end of a word, are long ; as,

*Ac,*



*Ac, sic, nōn.* So Greek nouns in *n* ; as, *Titān, Sirēn, Salamīn* ; *Æneān, Anchisēn, Circēn* ; *Lacedamon*, &c.

The following words are short, *nēc* and *donēc* ; *forſitān, in, forſān, tamēn, ān, vidēn* ; likewise nouns in *en* which have *iis* in the genitive ; as *carmēn, crimēn* ; together with ſeveral Greek nouns ; as, *Ilīōn, Pylōn, Alexīn*.

The pronoun *hic* and the verb *fac* are common.

*AS, ES, OS.*

XVIII. *AS, ES, and OS*, in the end of a word, are long ; as, *Mās, quiēs, bonōs*.

The following words are ſhort, *anās, ēs*, from *ſum*, and *penēs* ; *ōs*, having *offis* in the genitive, *compōs*, and *impōs* ; alſo a great many Greek nouns of all theſe three terminations ; as, *Arcās* and *Arcādās, herōās, Phrygēs, Arcadōs, Tenēdōs, Mēlōs, &c.* and Latin nouns in *es*, having the penult of the genitive increaſing ſhort ; as, *Allōs, hebēs, obsēs*. But *Cerēs, pariēs, ariēs, abiēs*, and *pēs* with its compounds, are long.

*IS, US, ſS.*

XIX. *IS, US, and ſS*, in the end of a word, are ſhort ; as,

*Turrīs, legīs, legimūs, annūs, Capjys.*

Exc. 1. Plural caſes in *is* and *us* are long ; as, *Pennīs, librīs, nobīs, omnīs*, for *omnes*, *fructūs, manūs* : alſo the genitive ſingular of the fourth declenſion ; as, *portūs*. But *bus* in the dat. and abl. plur. is ſhort ; as, *floribūs, fructibūs, rebūs*.

Exc. 2. Nouns in *is* are long, which have the genitive in *itis, inis*, or *entis* ; as, *lis, Samnīs, Salamīs, Simōīs* : To theſe add the adverbs *gratīs* and *forīs* ; the noun *glīs*, and *vīs*, whether it be a noun or a verb ; alſo *is* in the ſecond perſon ſingular, when the plural has *itis* ; as, *audis, abis, poſſis*. *Ris* in the future of the ſubjunctive is common.

Exc. 3. Monosyllables in *us* are long ; as, *grus, ſūs* : alſo nouns which in the genitive have *ūris, ūdis, ūtis, untis*, or *ōdis* ; as, *tellūs, incūs, virtūs, amātībūs, tripūs*. To theſe add the genitive of Greek nouns of the third declenſion ;

declension ; as, *Clîus, Sapphûs, Mantûs* ; also nouns which have *u* in the vocative ; as, *Panthûs*.

Exc. 4. *Tethys* is sometimes long, and nouns in *ys*, which have likewise *yn* in the nominative ; as, *Phorcÿs, Trachÿs*.

¶ The last syllable of every verse is common ; )

Or, as some think, necessarily long on account of the pause or suspension of the voice, which usually follows it in pronunciation.

## The QUANTITY of DERIVATIVE and COMPOUND Words.

### I. DERIVATIVES.

XX. Derivatives follow the quantity of their primitives ; as,

|                     |                |                     |                |
|---------------------|----------------|---------------------|----------------|
| Amicus, <i>from</i> | âmo.           | Decôro, <i>from</i> | decus, -ôris.  |
| Auctionor,          | auctio, -ônîs. | Exûlo,              | exul, -ûlis.   |
| Auctôro,            | auctôr, -ôris. | Pâvidus,            | pâveo.         |
| Auditor,            | auditum.       | Quirîto,            | Quiris, -îtis. |
| Auspîcor,           | auspex, -îcis. | Radîcîtus,          | radix, -îcis.  |
| Caupônor,           | caupo, -ônîs.  | Sospîto,            | sospes, -îtis. |
| Compêtîtor,         | compêtîtum,    | Nâtura,             | nâtus.         |
| Cornîcor,           | cornix, -îcis. | Mâternus,           | mâter.         |
| Custôdio,           | custos, -ôdis. | Lêgebam, &c.        | lêgo.          |
| Decôrus,            | decor, -ôris.  | Lêgeram, &c.        | legi.          |

### EXCEPTIONS.

#### 1. Long from short.

|                          |                                 |                             |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Dēni, <i>from</i> dēcem. | Suspîcio, <i>from</i> suspîcor. | Môbîlis, <i>from</i> mōveo. |
| Fômes, fôveo.            | Sēdes, sēdeo.                   | Hūmor, hūmus.               |
| Hūmanus, hōmo.           | Sēcîus, sēcus.                  | Jūmentum, jūvo.             |
| Rēgula, rēgo.            | Pēnuria, pēnus.                 | Vox, vōcis, vōco, &c.       |

#### 2. Short from long.

|                               |        |                      |             |
|-------------------------------|--------|----------------------|-------------|
| Arena and ârista, <i>from</i> | âreo.  | Lūcerna, <i>from</i> | lūceo.      |
| Nōta, and nōto,               | nōtus. | Dux, -ûcis,          | dūco.       |
| Vādum,                        | vādo.  | Stābîlis,            | stābam.     |
| Fîdes,                        | fîdo.  | Dîtio,               | dis, dîtis. |
| Sôpor,                        | sôpio. | Quâsîllus,           | quâlus, &c. |

### 2. COMPOUNDS.

XXI. Compounds follow the quantity of the simple words which compose them ; as,

*Dēdūco,*

*Dēdūco*, of *dē* and *dūco*. So, *prōfēro*, *amēfēro*, *consōlor*, *dēnōto*, *dēpecūlor*, *deprāvo*, *despēro*, *despūmo*, *desquāmo*, *enōdo*, *ērūdio*, *exūdo*, *exāro*, *expāveo*, *incēro*, *inhūmo*, *inveſtigo*, *prāgrāvo*, *prēnāto*, *rēgelo*, *appāro*, *appāreo*, *concāvus*, *prāgrāvis*, *dēsōlo*, *suffōco* & *suffōco*, *diffidit* from *diffindo*, and *diffidit* from *diffido*, *indico* and *indico*, *permānet* from *permāneo*, and *permānet* from *permāno*, *effōdit* in the present, and *effōdit* in the perfect; so *exēdit* and *exēdit*; *devēnit* and *devēnit*; *devēnimus* and *devēnimus*; *reperimus* and *reperimus*; *effūgit* and *effūgit*, &c.

The change of a vowel or diphthong in the compound does not alter the quantity; as, *incido* from *in* and *cādo*; *incido*, from *in* and *cado*, *suffōco*, from *sub* and *faux*, *faucis*. Unless the letter following make it fall under some general rule; as, *ādmitto*, *pērcello*, *dēofculor*, *prōhibeo*.

Ex. 1. *Agnitum*, *cognitum*, *dējēro*, *pējēro*, *innūba*, *pronūba*, *maledicus*, *veridicus*, *nihilum*, *semisōpitus*; from *nōtus*, *jūro*, *nūbo*, *dico*, *hilum*, and *sōpio*: *ambitus*, a participle from *ambio*, is long; but the substantives *ambitus* and *ambitio* are short. *Connubium* has the second syllable common.

Exc. 2. The preposition *PRO* is short in the following words: *prōfundus*, *prōfugio*, *prōfūgus*, *prōnēpos*, *prōneptis*, *prōfessus*, *prōfari*, *prōfiteor*, *prōfanus*, *prōfeto*, *prōcella*, *prōtervus*, and *prōpāgo*, a lineage; *pro* in *prōpāgo*, a vine-stock or shoot, is long. *Pro* in the following words is doubtful: *propāgo*, to propagate; *propino*, *profundo*, *propello*, *propulso*, *procūro*, and *Proserpina*.

Exc. 3. The inseparable prepositions *SE* and *DI* are long; as, *sēpāro*, *dīvello*: except *dīrimo*, *dīsertus*. *Re* is short; as, *rēmīto*, *rēfēro*: except in the impersonal verb *rēfert*, compounded of *res* and *fero*.

Exc. 4. *E*, *I*, *O*, in the end of the former compounding word are usually shortened; as, *trēcēnti*, *nēfas*, *nēque*, *patēfacio*, &c. *Capricornus*, *omnipotens*, *agricōla*, *significo*, *biformis*, *aliger*, *Trīvia*, *tubicen*, &c. *duōdēcim*, *hūdie*, *sacrōsanctus*, &c. But from each of these there are many exceptions. Thus *i* is long when it is varied by cases; as, *quīdam*, *quīvis*, *tantīdem*, *eīdem*, &c. And when the compounding words may be taken separately;

rately; as, *ludimagister*, *lucrificio*, *siquis*, &c. *Idem* in the masc. is long, in the neuter short; also *ubique*, *ibidem*. But in *ubivis* and *ubicunque*, the *i* is doubtful.

## A C C E N T.

*Accent* is the tone of the voice with which a syllable is pronounced.

In every word of two or more syllables, one syllable is sounded higher than the rest, to prevent monotony, or an uniformity of sound, which is disagreeable to the ear.

When accent is considered with respect to the sense, or when a particular stress is laid upon any word, on account of the meaning, it is called *Emphasis*.

There are three accents, distinguished by their different sounds; *acute*, *grave*, and *circumflex*.

1. The *acute* or *sharp* accent raises the voice in pronunciation, and is thus marked [ ' ]; as, *prófero*, *prófer*.

2. The *grave* or *base* accent depresses the voice, or keeps it in its natural tone; and is thus marked [ ` ]; as, *doctè*. This accent properly belongs to all syllables which have no other.

3. The *circumflex* accent first raises, and then sinks the voice in some degree on the same syllable; and is therefore placed only upon long syllables. When written, it has this mark, made up of the two former [ ^ ]; as, *amâre*.

The accents are hardly ever marked in English books, except in dictionaries, grammars, spelling-books, or the like, where the acute accent only is used.

The accents are likewise seldom marked in Latin books, unless for the sake of distinction; as in these adverbs, *aliquò*, *continuò*, *doctè*, *unà*, &c. to distinguish them from certain cases of adjectives, which are spelt in the same way. So *poetâ*, *gloriâ*, in the ablative: *fructûs*, *tumultûs*, in the genitive: *nostrûm*, *vestrûm*, the genitive of *nos* and *vos*: *ergâ*, on account of; *occidit*, he slew; *Pompili*, for *Pompilii*; *amâris*, for *amaveris*, &c.

VERSE.

# V E R S E.

A **VERSE** is a certain number of long and short syllables disposed according to rule.

It is so called, because when the number of syllables requisite is completed, we always *turn back* to the beginning of a new line.

The parts into which we divide a verse, to see if it have its just number of syllables, are called *Feet*.

A verse is divided into different feet, rather to ascertain its measure or number of syllables, than to regulate its pronunciation.

## F E E T.

Poetic feet are either of two, three, or four syllables. When a single syllable is taken by itself, it is called a *Cæsura*, which is commonly a long syllable.

### 1. Feet of two syllables.

*Spondæus*, consists of two long ; as, *ōmnēs*.

*Pyrrhichius*, two short ; as, *dēus*.

*Iambus*, a short and a long ; as, *āmāns*.

*Trocheus*, a long and a short ; as, *servūs*.

### 2. Feet of three syllables.

*Dactylus*, a long and two short ; as, *scribēre*.

*Anapaestus*, two short and a long ; as, *piētās*.

*Amphimacer*, a long, a short, and a long ; as, *chāritās*.

*Tribrachys*, three short ; as, *dōminūs*.

The following are not so much used.

*Molossus*, *dēlēctānt*.

*Amphibrachys*, *bēnōrē*.

*Eacchius*, *dōlōrēs*.

*Antibacchius*, *pēllūtūr*.

### 3. Feet of four syllables.

*Proceleusmaticus*, *lōminībūs*.

*Dispondeus*, *orātōrēs*.

*Dijambus*, *āmānitās*.

*Choriambus*, *pōntificēs*.

*Ditrocheus*, *Cāntilēnā*.

*Antispastus*, *Alēxānēr*.

*Ionicus minor*, *prōpēriatānt*.

*Ionicus major*, *calāritōūs*.

*Pæon primus*, *tēmpōribūs*.

*Pæon secundus*, *pōtēntiā*.

*Pæon tertius*, *animātūs*.

*Pæon quartus*, *cōcōrāt*.

*Epitritus primus*, *vōluptātēs*.

*Epitritus secundus*, *pānitētēs*.

*Epitritus tertius*, *dīscōrdiās*.

*Epitritus quartus*, *fōrtūnatūs*.



## S C A N N I N G.

The measuring of verse, or the resolving of it into the several feet of which it is composed, is called *Scanning*.

When a verse has just the number of feet requisite, it is called *Versus Acatalectic* or *Acatalectic*, an *Acatalectic* verse: If a syllable be wanting, it is called *Catalectic*; if there be a syllable too much, *Hypercatalectic*, or *Hypermetre*.

The ascertaining whether the verse be complete, defective, or redundant, is called *Deposito* or *Clausula*.

## D I F F E R E N T K I N D S O F V E R S E.

## 1. HEXAMETER.

The Hexameter or heroic verse consists of six feet. Of these the fifth is a dactyle, and the sixth a spondee; all the rest may be either dactyles or spondees; as,

Lūdēre | quæ vël- | lēm cālā- | mō pēr- | mīst ā- | grēssī. *Virg.*  
 Infān- | dūm Rē- | gīnā, jū- | bēs rēnō- | vārē dō- | lōrēm. *Id.*

A regular Hexameter line cannot have more than seventeen syllables, or fewer than thirteen.

Sometimes a spondee is found in the fifth place, whence the verse is called *Spondaic*; as,

Cārā Dē- | ūm sōbō- | lēs mā- | gnūm Jōvīs | īncrē- | mētūm. *Virg.*

This verse is used, when any thing grave, slow, large, sad, or the like, is expressed. It commonly has a dactyle in the fourth place, and a word of four syllables in the end.

Sometimes there remains a superfluous syllable at the end. But this syllable must either terminate in a vowel, or in the consonant *x*, with a vowel before it; so as to be joined with the following verse, which in the present case must always begin with a vowel; as,

Omnīā | Mērcūrī- | ō sīmī- | līs vō- | cēmquē cō- | lōrēmque  
 Et flavos crines ————— *Virg.*

Those Hexameter verses sound best, which have dactyles and spondees alternately; as,

Lūdere quæ vellem calamo permisit agresti. *Virg.*

Pinguis et ingrata premeretur caseus urbi. *Id.*

Or which have more dactyles than spondees; as,

Tityre tu patula recubans sub tegmine fagi.

It

It is esteemed a great beauty in an Hexameter verse, when by the use of dactyles and spondees, the sound is adapted to the sense ; as,

Quadropedante putrem sonitu quatit ungula campum. *Virg.*

Illi inter sese magna vi brachia tollunt. *Id.*

Monstrum horrendum, informe, ingens, cui lumen ademptum.  
Accipiant inimicum imbrem, rimisque fatiscunt. *Id.*

But what deserves particular attention in scanning Hexameter verse is the CÆSURA.

*Cæsura* is, when after a foot is completed, there remains a syllable at the end of a word to begin a new foot ; as,

At rē-gīnā grā-vī jā-m-dudum, &c.

The *Cæsura* is variously named according to the different parts of the hexameter verse in which it is found. When it comes after the first foot, or falls on the third half-foot, it is called by a Greek name, *Triemimēris* : When on the fifth half foot, or the syllable after the second foot, it is called *Penthemimēris* : When it happens on the first syllable of the fourth foot, or the seventh half-foot, it is called *Hepthemimēris* : and when on the ninth half-foot, or the first syllable of the fifth foot, it is called *Ennēmimēris*.

All these different species of the *Cæsura* sometimes occur in the same verse ; as,

Illē lā-tūs nīvē-ūm mol-lī fūl-tūs hŷā-cīnthō. *Virg.*

But the most common and beautiful *Cæsura* is the penthemim ; on which some lay a particular accent or stress of the voice in reading an hexameter verse thus composed whence they call it the *Cæsural pause* ; as,

Tityre dum rede-O, brevis est via, pasce capellas. *Virg.*

When the *Cæsura* falls on a syllable naturally short, it renders it long ; as, the last syllable of *fultus* in the foregoing example.

The chief melody of an hexameter verse in a great measure depends on the proper disposition of the *Cæsura*. Without this a line consisting of the number of feet requisite will be little else than mere prose ; as,

Rōmæ mōniā terrūit impīgēr Hännibāl armīs. *Ennius.*

The ancient Romans in pronouncing verse paid a particular attention to its melody. They not only observed the quantity and accent of the several syllables, but also the different stops and pauses which the particular turn of the verse required. In modern times we do not fully perceive the melody of Latin verse, because we have now lost the just pronunciation of that language, the people of every country pronouncing it in a manner similar to their own. In reading Latin verse, therefore, we are directed by the same rules which take place with respect to English verse.

The tone of the voice ought to be chiefly regulated by the sense. All the words should be pronounced fully; and the cadence of the verse ought only to be observed, so far as it corresponds with the natural expression of the words. At the end of each line there should be no fall of the voice, unless the sense requires it; but a small pause, half of that which we usually make at a comma.

## 2. PENTAMETER.

The Pentameter verse consists of five feet. Of these the two first are either dactyles or spondees; the third always a spondee; and the fourth and fifth, an anapæstus; as,

Nātū- | ræ sēquī- | tūr sē- | mīnā quī- | quē sūa. *Propert.*  
Cārminī- | būs vī- | vēs tēm- | pūs in ōm- | nē mēis. *Ovid.*

But this verse is more properly divided into two hemi-flicks or halves; the former of which consists of two feet, either dactyles or spondees, and a Cæsura; the latter, always of two dactyles and another Cæsura: thus,

Nātū- | ræ sēquī- | tūr | sēmīnā | quīquē sū- | æ.  
Cārminī- | būs vī- | vēs | tēmpūs in | ōmnē mē- | is.

The Pentameter usually ends with a disyllable, but sometimes also with a polysyllable.

## 3. ASCLEPIADEAN.

The Asclepiadæan verse consists of four feet; namely, a spondee, twice a choriambus, and a pyrrhichius; as,

Mæcē- | nās acāvis | edītē rē- | gibūs. *Hor.*

But this verse may be more properly measured thus: In the first place, a spondee; in the second, a dactyle; then a cæsura; and after that two dactyles; thus,

Mæcē- | nas ata- | vis | edite | regibus.

## 4. GLY-

## 4. GLYCONIAN.

The Glyconian verse has three feet, a spondee, choriambus, and pyrrhichius; as,

Nāvis | quæ tibi crē- | dītūm. *Horat.*

Or it may be divided into a spondee and two dactyles; thus,

Navis | quæ tibi | creditum.

## 5. SAPPHIC and ADONIAN.

The Sapphic verse has five feet, viz. a trochee, spondee, dactyle, and two trochees; thus,

Intē- | gēr vī- | tæ, scēlē- | rīsqūē | pūrūs. *Horat.*

An Adonian verse consists only of a dactyle and spondee; as,

Jūpītēr | ūrgēt. *Horat.*

## 6. PHERECRATIAN.

The Pherecratian verse consists of three feet, a spondee, dactyle, and spondee; thus,

Nīgrīs | æquōrā | vētis. *Horat.*

## 7. PHALEUCIAN.

The Phaleucian verse consists of five feet, namely, a spondee, a dactyle, and three trochees; as,

Sūnimām | nēc mētū- | ās dī- | ēm, nēc | ōptēs. *Martial.*

## 8. The GREATER ALCAIC.

The greater Alcaic, called likewise *Dactylic*, consists of four feet, a spondee or iambus, iambus and cæsure, then two dactyles; as,

Virtūs | rēpūl- | fæ | nēscīā | sōrdīdæ. *Horat.*

## 9. ARCHILOCHIAN.

The Archilochian iambic verse consists of four feet. In the first and third place, it has either a spondee or iambus; in the second and fourth, always an iambus; and in the end, a Cæsure; as,

Nēc tū- | mīt, aūt | pōnīt | sēcū- | rēs. *Horat.*

10. *The LESSER ALCAIC.*

The lesser Dactylic Alcaic consists of four feet, namely, two dactyles and two trochees ; as,

Arbītrī- | ō pōpū- | lāris | aūrae, *Horat.*

Of the above kinds of verse, the first two take their names from the number of feet of which they consist. All the rest derive their names from those by whom they were either first invented, or frequently used.

There are several other kinds of verse, which are named from the feet by which they are most commonly measured ; such as the dactylic, trochaic, anapestic, and iambic. The last of these is most frequently used.

## 11. IAMBIC.

Of Iambic verse there are two kinds. The one consists of four feet, and is called by a Greek name *Dimēter* ; the other consists of six feet, and is called *Trimēter*. The reason of these names is, that among the Greeks two feet were considered only as one measure in iambic verse ; whereas the Latins measured it by single feet, and therefore called the dimeter *quaternarius*, and the trimeter *senarius*. Originally this kind of verse was purely iambic, *i. e.* admitted of no other feet but the iambus ; thus,

*Dimeter*, Inār- | sūt æ- | tūo- | sūis. *Horat.*

*Trimeter*, Sūis | ēt ī- | psā Rō- | mā vī- | rībūs | rūit. *Id.*

But afterwards, both for the sake of ease and variety, different feet were admitted into the uneven or odd places ; that is, in the first, third, and fifth places, instead of an iambus, they used a spondee, a dactyle, or an anapæstus, and sometimes a tribrachys. We also find a tribrachys in the even places, *i. e.* in the second place, and in the fourth ; for the last foot must always be an iambus ; thus,

*Dimeter*, Cāidī- | ā trā- | ēāvit | dāpēs. *Horat.*

Vide- | rē prōpē | rāntēs | dōmūm. *Id.*

*Trimeter*, Quōquō | scēlē- | sū rūī- | tīs aūt | cūr dēx- | tēris. *Id.*

Pāvīdūm- | quē lēpō- | r' aūt ad | vēnām | iāquēō | grūēm. *Id.*

Alīū | būsāt- | quē cānī- | būs hōmī- | cīd' Hō- | & ōrēm.

In comic writers we sometimes find an iambic verse consisting of eight feet, therefore called *Tetrameter* or *Odonarius*.



# FIGURES in SCANNING.

The several changes made upon words to adapt them to the verse, are called *Figures in Scanning*. The chief of these are the *Synalapha*, *Ecthlipsis*, *Synæresis*, *Diæresis*; *Synstole*, and *Diastole*.

1. *SYNALOPHA* is the cutting off of a vowel or diphthong, when the next word begins with a vowel; as,

Conticuere omnes, intentique ora tenebant. *Virg.*

to be scanned thus,

Cōtrīcū- | ēr' ōm- | nēs īn- | tēntī- | qu' ōrā tē- | nēbānt.

The *Synalapha*, is sometimes neglected; and seldom takes place in the interjections, *ō*, *heu*, *ah*, *proh*, *va*, *vah*, *hei*; as,

O pater, ō hominum, Divūmque æterna potestas. *Virg.*

Long vowels and diphthongs, when not cut off, are sometimes shortened; as,

Insulæ Ionio in magno, quas dira Celæno. *Virg.*

Credimus? an, qui amant, ipsi sibi somnia fingunt. *Id.*

Victor apud rapidum Simœnta sub Illo alto.

Ter sunt conati imponere Pelio Ossam.

Glauco et Panopææ, et Inoo Melicertæ.

2. *ECTHLIPSIS* is, when *m* is cut off, with the vowel before it in the end of a word, because the following word begins with a vowel; as,

O curas hominum! O quantum est in rebus inane! *Perf.*

thus,

O cū- | rās hōmī- | n', ō quān- | t' æſt īn | rēbūs īn- | ānē.

Sometimes the *Synalapha* and *Ecthlipsis* are found at the end of the verse; as,

Siernitur infelix alieno vulnere, cælumque

Adspicit, et dulces moriens reminiscitur Argos. *Virg.*

Jamque iter emensi, turres ac tecta Latinorum

Ardua cernebant juvenes, murosque subibant. *Id.*

These verses are called *Hypermetri*, because a syllable remains to be carried to the beginning of the next line; thus, *qu' Adspicit*; *r' Ardua*.

3. *SYNÆRESIS* is the contraction of two syllables into one, which is likewise called *Crasis*; as *Phathon* for *Phæthon*.

*thon.* So *ëi* in *Thesæi*, *Orphei*, *deinde*, *Pompei*; *iii* in *huic*, *cui*; *öi*, in *proinde*; *ëä*, in *aureä*; thus,

Notus amor Phædræ, nota est injuria Thesæi. *Ovid.*

Proinde tona eloquio, solitum tibi. *Virg.*

Filius huic contrâ, torquet qui sidera mundi. *Id.*

Aureâ percussum virgâ, versumque venenis. *Id.*

So in *antehac*, *eadem*, *alvearia*, *deest*, *deerit*, *vehemens*, *anteit*, *codem*, *alveo*, *graveolentis*, *omnia*, *semianimis*, *semihomo*, *fluviorum*, *totius*, *promontorium*, &c. as,

Unâ eâdemque viâ sanguisque animusque ferentur. *Virg.*

Seu lento fuerint alvearia vimine texta. *Id.*

Vilis amicorum est annona, bonis ubi quid deest. *Hor.*

Divitis uber agri, Troiæque opulencia deerit. *Virg.*

Vehemens et liquidus puroque simillimus amni. *Hor.*

Te semper anteit dira necessitas. *Alcaic. Hor.*

Uno eodemque igni, sic nostro Daphnis amore. *Virg.*

Cum refluit campis, & jam se condidit alveo. *Id.*

Inde ubi venêre ad fauces graveolentis Averni. *Id.*

Bis patriæ cecidere manus: quin protinus omnia. *Id.*

Cædit semianimis Rutulorum calcibus arva. *Id.*

Semihominis Caci facies quam dira tenebat. *Id.*

Fluviorum rex Eridanus, camposque per omnes. *Id.*

Magnanimosque duces, totiusque ex ordine gentis. *Id.*

Inde legit Capreas, promontoriumque Minervæ. *Ovid.*

To this figure may be referred the changing of *i* and *u* into *j* and *v*, or pronouncing them in the same syllable with the following vowel; as in *genva*, *tennis*; *arjetat*, *tenvia*, *abjete*, *pitvita*; *parjetibus*, *Nasidjenus*; for *genua*, *tenuis*, &c. as,

Propterea qui corpus aquæ naturaque tennis. *Luer.*

Genva labant, gelido concrevit frigore sanguis. *Virg.*

Arjetat in portas & duros objice postes. *Id.*

Velleraque ut foliis depectant tenvia Seres. *Id.*

Ædificant, sectâque intexunt abjete costas. *Id.*

Præcipue sanus, nisi cum pitvita molesta est. *Hor.*

Parjetibusque premunt arctis, & quatuor addunt. *Virg.*

Ut Nasidjeni juvit te cæna beati. *Hor.*

4. DIÆRESIS divides one syllable into two; as, *aulai*, for *aula*; *Troïæ*, for *Troje*; *Persæus*, for *Perseus*; *milîus*, for *milvus*; *solûit*, for *solvit*; *volûit*, for *volvit*; *aquâ*, *sûetus*, *sûasit*, *Sûevos*, *relangûit*, *reliquâs*, for *aquæ*, *suetus*, &c. as,

Aulai

Aulai in medio libabant pocula Bacchi. *Virg.*  
 Stamina non ulli dissoluenda Deo. *Pentam. Tibullus.*  
 Debuerant fufos evolūiffe fuos. *Id. Ovid.*  
 Quæ calidum faciunt aquæ tactum atque vaporem. *Lucr.*  
 Cum mihi non tantum furesque feræque fûctæ. *Horat.*  
 Atque alios alii inrident, Veneremque suadent. *Lucr.*  
 Fundat ab extremo flavos Aquilone Sûevos. *Lucan.*  
 Imposito fratri moribunda relangûit ore. *Ovid.*  
 Reliquas tamen esse vias in mente patenteis. *Lucr.*

5. SYSTÖLE is when a long syllable is made short ; as the penult in *tulerunt* ; thus,

Matri longa decem tulerunt fastidia menses. *Virg.*

6. DIASTÖLE is when a syllable usually short is made long ; as the last syllable in *amor*, in the following verse ;

Confidant, si tantus amor, et mœnia condant. *Virg.*

To these may be subjoined the *Figures of diction*, as they are called, which are chiefly used by the poets, though some of them likewise frequently occur in prose.

1. When a letter or syllable is added to the beginning of a word, it is called PROSTHESIS ; as *gnavus*, for *navus* ; *tetuli*, for *tuli*. When a letter or syllable is interposed in the middle of a word, it is called EPENTHESIS ; as, *relligio*, for *religio* ; *induperator*, for *imperator*. When a letter or syllable is added to the end, it is called PARAGÖGE ; as, *dicier* for *dici*.

2. If a letter or syllable be taken from the beginning of a word, it is called APHERESIS ; as, *natus*, for *gnatus* ; *tenderant*, for *tetenderant*. If from the middle of a word, it is called SYNCÖPE ; as, *dixti*, for *dixisti* ; *deum*, for *deorum* : If from the end, APOCÖPE ; as, *viden'*, for *videsne* ; *Antoni*, for *Antonii*.

3. When a letter or syllable is transposed, it is called METATHESIS ; as, *pistris*, for *pristis* ; *Lybia*, for *Libya*. When one letter is put for another, it is called ANTITHESIS ; as, *faciundum*, for *faciendum* ; *olli*, for *illi*, *voltis*, for *vultis*.

### Different kinds of POEMS.

Any work composed in verse is called a *Poem*. (*Poema* or *Carmen*). Poems are called by various names, from their subject, their form, the manner of treating the subject, and their style.

1. A poem on the celebration of a marriage is called an EPITHALAMUM ; on a mournful subject, an ELEGY or LAMENTATION ; in praise

praise of the Supreme Being, a HYMN; in praise of any person or thing, a PANEGRIC or ENCOMIUM; on the vices of any one, a SATIRE or INVECTIVE; a poem to be inscribed on a tomb, an EPI-TAPH, &c.

2. A short poem adapted to the lyre or harp, is called an ODE, whence such compositions are called *Lyric poems*: A poem in the form of a letter is called an EPISTLE; a short witty poem, playing on the fancies or conceits which arise from any subject, is called an EPIGRAM; as those of Catullus and Martial. A sharp, unexpected, lively turn of wit in the end of an epigram, is called its *Point*. A poem expressing the moral of any device or picture, is called an EMBLEM. A poem containing an obscure question to be explained, is called an ÆNIGMA or RIDDLE.

When a character is described so that the first letters of each verse, and sometimes the middle and final letters express the name of the person or thing described, it is called an ACROSTIC; as the following on our Saviour:

I nter cuncta micans I gniti sidera cal I,  
E xpellit tenebras E toto Phabus ut orb E;  
S ic cacas removet JESVS caliginis umbra S,  
V ivificansque simul V ero praeordia met V  
S olem justitiae S epe probat esse beati S.

3. From the manner of treating a subject, a poem is either *Exegetic*, *Dramatic*, or *Mixt*.

The *Exegetic*, where the poet always speaks himself, is of three kinds, Historical, Didactic, or Instructive, (as the Satire or Epistle); and Descriptive.

Of the *Dramatic*, the chief kinds are COMEDY, representing the actions of ordinary life, generally with a happy issue; and TRAGEDY, representing the actions and distresses of illustrious personages, commonly with an unhappy issue. To which may be added *Pastoral poems* or Bucolics, representing the actions and conversations of shepherds; as most of the eclogues of Virgil.

The *Mixt* kind is where the poet sometimes speaks in his own person, and sometimes makes other characters to speak. Of this kind is chiefly the EPIC or HEROIC poem, which treats of some one great transaction of some great illustrious person, with its various circumstances; as the wrath of Achilles in the *Iliad* of Homer; the settlement of Æneas in Italy in the *Æneid* of Virgil; the fall of man in the *Paradise Lost* of Milton, &c.

4. The style of poetry, as of prose, is of three kinds, the simple, ornate, and sublime.

## COMBINATION of VERSES in Poems.

In long poems there is commonly but one kind of verse used. Thus Virgil, Lucretius, Horace in his Satires and Epistles, Ovid in his Metamorphoses, Lucan, Silius Italicus,

lius, Valerius Flaccus, Juvenal, &c. always use Hexameter verse: Plautus, Terence, and other writers of Comedy, generally use the Iambic, and sometimes the Trochaic. It is chiefly in shorter poems, particularly those which are called Lyric poems, as the odes of Horace and the Psalms of Buchanan, that various kinds of verse are combined.

A poem which has only one kind of verse, is called by a Greek name, MONOCOLON, sc. *poema v. carmen*; or MONOCŌLOS, sc. *ode*; that which has two kinds, DICOLON; and that which has three kinds of verse TRICOLON.

If the same sort of verse return after the second line, it is called DICOLON DISTROPHON; as when a single Pentameter is alternately placed after an HEXAMETER, which is named *Elegiac verse*, (*carmen Elegiacum*), because it was first applied to mournful subjects; thus,

Flebilis indignos, Elegia, solve capillos;

Ah! nimis ex verbo nunc tibi nomen erit. *Ovid.*

This kind of verse is used by Ovid in all his other works except the Metamorphoses; and also for the most part by Tibullus, Propertius, &c.

When a poem consists of two kinds of verse, and after three lines returns to the first, it is called *Dicolon Tristrophon*; when after four lines, *Dicolon Tetastrophon*; as,

Auream quisquis mediocritatem

Diligit, tutus caret obsoleti

Sordibus tecti; caret invidendâ

Sobrius aulâ.

*Horat.*

When a poem consists of three kinds of verse, and after three lines always returns to the first, it is called *Tricolon Tristrophon*; but if it returns after four lines, it is called *Tricolon Tetastrophon*; as when after two greater dactylic alcaic verses are subjoined an archilochian iambic and a lesser dactylic alcaic, which is named *Carmen Horatianum*, or Horatian verse, because it is frequently used by Horace; thus,

Virtus recludens immeritis mori

Cælum, negatâ tentat iter viâ;

Cætusque vulgares, et udam

Spernit humum fugiente pennâ.

A a

Any



Any one of these parts of a poem, in which the different kinds of verse are comprehended, when taken by itself, is called a *Strophe*, *Stanza*, or *Staff*.

## DIFFERENT Kinds of VERSE in HORACE and BUCHANAN.

1. ODES and PSALMS of one kind of Verse.

1. *Asclepiadæan*, See N° 3. page 270. Hor. I. 1. IV. 8. III. 30.—Buch. Pf. 28, 40, 80.

2. *Choriambic Alcaic Pentameter*, consisting of a spondee, three choriambuses, and a pyrrhichius or iambus : Hor. I. 11, 18. IV. 10.

3. *Iambic trimeter*, N° 11.—Hor. Epod. 17.—Buch. Pf. 25, 94, 106.

4. *Hexameter*, N° 1. Hor. Satires and Epistles.—Buch. Pf. 1, 18, 45, 78, 85, 89, 104, 107, 132, 135.

5. *Iambic Dimeter*, N° 12. — Buch. Pf. 13, 31, 37, 47, 52, 54, 59, 86, 96, 98, 117, 148, 149, 150.

6. The *Greater Dactylic Alcaic*, N° 8.—Buch. Pf. 26, 29, 32, 49, 61, 71, 73, 143.

7. *Trochaic*, consisting of seven trochees and a syllable ; admitting also a tribrachys in the uneven places, i. e. in the first, third, fifth, and seventh foot ; and in the even places, a tribrachys, spondee, dactyl, and anapestus.—Buch. Pf. 105, 119, 124, 129.

8. *Anapestic*, consisting of four anapestuses, admitting also a spondee or dactyl ; and in the last place, sometimes a tribrachys, amphimacer, or trochee.—Pf. 113.

9. *Anacreontic Iambic*, consisting of three iambuses and a syllable ; in the first foot it has sometimes a spondee or anapestus, and also a tribrachys.—Pf. 131.

II. ODES and PSALMS of two kinds of verse following one another alternately.

1. *Glyconian* and *Asclepiadæan*, N° 4. and 3.—Hor. I. 3. 33, 19, 36. III. 9, 15, 19, 24, 25, 28. IV. 1, 3.—Buch. Pf. 14, 35, 43.

2. Every first line, (*Dactylico-Trochaic*), consisting of the first four feet of an hexameter verse, then three trochees or a spondee for the last ; every second verse (*Iambic Archilochian*) consisting of an iambus or spondaus, an iambus, a caesura, and then three trochees.—Hor. I. 4.

3. The

3. The first line, *Hexameter*; and the second, *Alcmanian Dactylic*, consisting of the four last feet of an hexameter. Hor. I. 7, 28. Epod. 12.—Buch. Pf. 4. 111.

4. Every first line, *Aristophanic*, consisting of a choriambus, and bacchius or amphimacer: Every second line, *Choriambic Alcaic*, consisting of epitritus secundus, two choriambuses, and a bacchius. Hor. I. 8.

5. The first line, (*Trochaic*), consisting of three trochees and a cæsura; or of an amphimacer and two iambuses. The second line, *Archilochian Iambic*, N° 9. Hor. II. 18.

6. The first line, *Hexameter*; the second (*Dactylic Archilochian*), two dactyls and a cæsura. Hor. IV. 7.—Buch. Pf. 12.

7. The first line, *Iambic Trimeter*; and the second, *Iambic Dimeter*, N° 11.—Hor. Epod. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10.—Buch. Pf. 3, 6, 10, 21, 22, 27, 34, 38, 39, 41, 44, 48, 53, 62, 74, 76, 79, 87, 92, 110, 112, 115, 120, 127, 133, 134, 139, 141.

8. The first line, *Iambic Dimeter*; the second (*Sapphic*) consists of two dactyls, a cæsura, and four iambuses, admitting also a spondeus, &c. But this verse is commonly divided into two parts; the first, the latter part of a pentameter, N° 2. and the second, iambic dimeter, N° 11. Hor. Epod. 11.

9. The first line, *Hexameter*; the second, *Iambic Dimeter*. Hor. Epod. 14, 15. —Buch. Pf. 81.

10. *Hexameter*, and *Iambic Trimeter*. Hor. Epod. 16. Buch. Pf. 2, 20, 24, 57, 60, 69, 83, 93, 95, 97, 108, 109, 118, 126, 136, 147.

11. The first line, *Sapphic*, N° 5. and the second, *Iambic Dimeter*, N° 11. Buch. Pf. 8.

12. *Sapphic* and *Glyconian*. Buch. Pf. 33, 70, 121, 142.

13. *Iambic Trimeter* and *Pentameter*. Buch. Pf. 36, 63.

14. The first line, *Hexameter*; and the second line, the three last feet of an hexameter, with a long syllable or two short syllables before. Buch. Pf. 68.

15. *Hexameter* and *Pentameter*, or *Elegiac verse*. Buch. Pf. 88, 114, 137.

16. The first line, (*Trochaic*), three trochees and a syllable, admitting sometimes a spondee, tribrachys, &c. The second line, *Iambic Dimeter*, N° 11. Buch. Pf. 100.

III. ODES and PSALMS of two kinds of verse, and three or four lines in each stanza.

1. The three first lines, *Sapphic*, and the fourth, *Adonian*, N° 5. Horat. Carm. I. 2, 10, 12, 20, 22, 25, 30, 32, 38. II. 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 16. III. 8, 11, 14, 18, 20, 22, 27. IV. 2, 6, 11. *Carmen Secul.*—Buch. Pf. 5, 17, 51, 55, 65, 67, 72, 90, 101, 103.

2. The three first lines, *Asclepiadæan*, and the fourth, *Glyconian*. Hor. Carm. I. 6, 15, 24, 33. II. 22. III. 10, 16. IV. 5, 12.—Buch. Pf. 23, 42, 75, 99, 102, 144.

3. The two first lines, *Ionic Trimeter*, consisting of three *Ionici minores*; the third line, *Ionic Tetrameter*, having one *Ionicus minor* more. Hor. III. 12.

4. The two first lines have four trochees, admitting, in the second foot, a spondee, dactyl, &c. The third line, the same; only wanting a syllable at the end. Buch. Pf. 66.

5. The three first lines, *Glyconian*, N° 4. admitting also a spondee, or iambus in the first foot; the fourth line, *Pherecratian*, N° 6. Buch. Pf. 116, 122, 128.

IV. ODES and PSALMS of three kinds of verse, and three or four lines in each stanza.

1. The two first lines, *Asclepiadæan*, N° 3. the third line, *Pherecratian*, N° 6. and the fourth, *Glyconian*, N° 4. Hor. Carm. I. 5, 14, 21, 23. III. 7, 13. IV. 13.—Buch. Pf. 9, 64, 84, 130.

2. The first two lines, *the Greater Dactylic Alcaic*, N° 8. The third, *Archilochian Iambic*, N° 9. The fourth, *the Lesser Alcaic*, N° 10. Hor. Carm. I. 9, 16, 17, 26, 27, 29; 31, 34, 35, 37. II. 1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 19, 20. III. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 17, 21, 23, 26, 29. IV. 4, 9, 14, 15.—Buch. Pf. 7, 11, 15, 19, 30, 46, 50, 56, 58, 77, 82, 91, 123, 125, 140, 146.

3. The first line, *Glyconian*; the second, *Asclepiadæan*; the third a spondee, three choriambuses, and an iambus or pyrrhichius. Buch. Pf. 16.

4. The first line, *Hexameter*; the second, *Iambic Dimeter*; and the third, two dactyls and a syllable; Hor. Epod. 13.—Buch. Pf. 138. Sometimes the two last verses are joined in one or inverted; as, Buch. Pf. 145.

## ENGLISH VERSE.

The quantity of syllables in English verse is not precisely ascertained. With regard to this we are chiefly directed by the ear. Our monosyllables are generally either long or short, as occasion requires. And in words of two or more syllables, the accented syllable is always long.

Of English verse there are two kinds, one named *Rhyme*, and the other *Blank verse*.

In rhyme the lines are usually connected two and two, sometimes three and three in the final syllables. Two lines following one another thus connected, are called a *Couplet*, three lines, a *Triplet*.

In blank verse similarity of sound in the final syllables is carefully avoided.

In measuring most kinds of English verse we find long and short syllables succeeding one another alternately; and therefore the accents should rest on every second syllable.

The feet by which English verse is commonly measured, are either *Iambic*, i. e. consisting of a short and a long syllable; as, *ălôst, crēate*: or *Trochaic*, i. e. consisting of a long and a short syllable; as, *bôly, lôfjy*. In verses of the former kind the accents are to be placed on the even syllables; in the latter, on the odd syllables. But the measure of a verse in English is most frequently determined by its number of syllables only, without dividing them into particular feet.

## I. IAMBIC MEASURE comprises verses,

1. Of *four syllables*, or of *two feet*; as,  
     With ravish'd ears,  
     The monarch hears. *Dryden.*
2. Of *six syllables*, or of *three feet*; as,  
     Aloft in awful state,  
     The godlike hero sat. *Dryden.*
3. Of *eight syllables*, or of *four feet*; as,  
     While dangers hourly round us rise,  
     No caution guards us from surprise. *Francis' Horace.*
4. Of *ten syllables*, or of *five feet*, which is the common  
 measure of heroic and tragic poetry; as,

Poetic fields encompass me around,  
And still I seem to tread on Classic ground;  
For here the Muse so oft her harp has strung,  
That not a mountain rears its head unsung. *Addison.*

Obs. 1. In measures of this last sort, we sometimes find the last line of a couplet or triplet stretched out to twelve syllables, or six feet, which is termed an *Alexandrine* verse: thus,

A needless Alexandrine ends the song,  
Which, like a wounded snake, drags its slow length along. *Pope.*

Waller was smooth; but Dryden taught to join }  
The varying verse, the full resounding line, }  
The long majestic march, and energy divine. *Pope.*

We also find the last verse of a triplet stretched out to fourteen syllables, or seven feet, but then it has commonly an Alexandrine verse before it; thus,

For thee the land in fragrant flow'rs is drest;  
For thee the ocean smiles, and smooths her wavy breast, }  
And heav'n itself with more serene and purer light is blest. *Dryden.*

Sometimes also when there is no Alexandrine before it; thus,

At length by fate to power divine restor'd,  
His thunder taught the world to know its lord, }  
The god grew terrible again, and was again ador'd. *Rowe.*

Obs. 2. The more strictly iambic these verses are, the more harmonious. In several of them, however, particularly in those of ten syllables, we often meet with a trochee, and likewise a spondee, instead of an iambus. Verses of heroic measure sometimes also admit a dactyle, or an anapestus, in place of the iambus; in which case a verse of five feet may comprehend eleven, twelve, thirteen, and even fourteen syllables; thus,

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14  
And many an humorous, many an amorous lay  
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12  
Was sung by many a Bard on many a day.

This manner of writing every syllable fully is now generally used by the best poets, and seems much more proper than the ancient custom of cutting off vowels by an apostrophe. Our language abounds too much in consonants of itself: the elision of vowels therefore should be avoided as much as possible, and ought only to be admitted where it is absolutely necessary; as, *e'er* for *ever*; *e'er* for *ever*, &c. The same observation may be applied to every kind of measure.

## II. TROCHAIC MEASURE comprises verses,

### 1. Of three syllables; as,

Dreadful screams,  
Dismal screams, &c. *Pope.*

### 2. Of



2. Of *five syllables* ; as,

In the days of old,  
Stories plainly told,  
Lovers felt annoy.

3. Of *seven syllables* ; as,

Fairest piece of well form'd earth,  
Urge not thus your haughty birth. *Waller.*

These are the measures which are most commonly used in English poetry, especially those of seven, eight, and ten syllables.

We have another measure very quick and lively, and therefore much used in songs, which may be called *Anapestic* measure, *i. e.* a verse consisting of feet of three syllables, two short, and one long, in which the accent rests upon every third syllable. Verses of anapestic measure consist of two, three, or four feet ; that is, of six, nine, or twelve syllables ; thus,

Let the loud trumpets sound,  
Till the roofs all around,  
The shrill echoes rebound. *Pope.*

From the plains, from the woodlands, and groves,  
How the nightingales warble their loves! *Shenstone.*

May I govern my passions with absolute sway,  
And grow wiser and better, as life wears away. *Id.*

In this measure, a syllable is often retrenched from the first foot ; as,

The sword or the dart  
Shall pierce my sad heart. *Addison.*

Ye shepherds so cheerful and gay,  
Whose flocks never carelessly roam, &c.

I vow'd to the muses my time and my care,  
Since neither could win me the smiles of the fair. *Shenstone.*

These measures are variously combined together in *Stanzas*, particularly in short poems ; for generally in longer works the same measure is always observed.

Stanzas are composed of more or fewer verses, and these variously diversified, according to the nature of the subject, and the taste of the poet. But when they are stretched out to a great length, and consist of verses of many different measures, they are seldom agreeable.

Such poems as consist of Stanzas, which are not confined to a certain number of verses, nor the verses to a certain number

number of syllables, nor the rhymes to a certain distance, are called *Irregular*, or *Pindaric odes*. Of this kind are several of the poems of Cowley. But in the odes of later authors, the numbers are exact, and the strophes regular.

Stanzas of four lines are the most frequent, in which the first verse answers to the third, and the second to the fourth. There is a stanza of this kind, consisting of verses of eight and of six syllables alternately, which is very often used, particularly in sacred poetry. Here for the most part the second and fourth lines only rhyme together; as,

When all thy mercies, O my God,  
My rising soul surveys:  
Transported with the view, I'm lost,  
In wonder, love, and praise. . . *Addison.*

Sometimes also the first and third lines answer to one another; as,

Keep silence, all created things,  
And wait your Maker's nod:  
The muse stands trembling while she sings  
The honours of her God. *Watts.*

This stanza is used in place of what anciently was comprehended in two verses, each consisting of fourteen syllables, having a pause after the eighth syllable.

Several of these measures are often varied by double endings, that is, by putting an additional short syllable at the end of the verse; as,

1. *In heroic measure, or verses of ten syllables, both in blank verse and rhyme.*

*In Blank verse.*

'Tis heav'n itself that points out an hereafter. *Addison.*

*In Rhyme, where it is called Double Rhyme.*

The piece, you think, is incorrect? Why, take it,  
I'm all submission; what you'd have it, make it. *Pope.*

2. *In verses of eight syllables.*

They neither added nor confounded,  
They neither wanted nor abounded.

3. *In verses of six syllables.*

'Twas when the seas were roaring,  
With hollow blasts of wind,  
A damsel lay deplo'ring,  
All on a rock reclin'd, *Gay.*

4. *In*

4. *In verses of seven syllables.*

As Palemon, unsuspecting,  
Prais'd the sly musician's art;  
Love, his light disguise rejecting,  
Lodg'd an arrow in his heart. *Shenstone.*

5. *In verses of three syllables.*

Glooms inviting,  
Birds delighting. *Addison*

6. *In the Anapestic measure.*

Ah! friend, 'tis but idle to make such a pother.  
Fate, fate has ordain'd us to plague one another. *Shenstone.*  
Now with furies furrounded,  
Despairing, confounded. *Pope.*

Double rhyme is used chiefly in poems of wit and humour, or in burlesque compositions.

Verses with double endings, in blank verse, most frequently occur in tragic poetry, where they often have a fine effect; thus,

I here devote thee for my prince and country;  
Let them be safe, and let me nobly perish. *Thomson.*  
The dropping dews fell cold upon my head,  
Darkness inclos'd, and the winds whistled round me. *Otway.*

## A P P E N D I X I.

## Of Punctuation, Capitals, Abbreviations, Numerical Characters, and the Division of the Roman Month.

The different divisions of discourse are marked by certain characters called *Points*.

The points employed for this purpose are the *Comma* (,), *Semicolon* (;), *Colon* (:), *Period*, *Punctum*, or full stop (.)

Their names are taken from the different parts of the sentence which they are employed to distinguish.

The *Period* is a whole sentence complete by itself. The *Colon*, or member, is a chief constructive part, or greater division of a sentence. The *Semicolon*, or half member, is a less constructive part, or subdivision, of a sentence or member. The *comma*, or segment, is the least constructive part of a sentence in this way of considering it. For the next subdivision of a sentence would be the resolution of it into *Phrases* and *Words*.

To these points may be added the *Semiperiod* or less point, followed by a small letter. But this is of much the same use with the *Colon*, and occurs only in Latin books.

A simple sentence admits only of a full point at the end; because its general meaning cannot be distinguished into parts. It is only in compound sentences that all the different points are to be found.

Points likewise express the different pauses which should be observed in a just pronunciation of discourse. The precise duration of each pause, or note, cannot be defined. It varies according to the different subjects of discourse, and the different turns of human passion and thought. The period requires a pause in duration double of the colon, the colon double of the semicolon; and the semicolon, double of the comma.

There are other points which, together with a certain pause, also denote a different modulation of the voice, in correspondence with the sense. These are the *Interrogation* point (?) the *Exclamation* or *Admiration* point (!) and the *Parenthesis* (). The first two generally mark an elevation of the voice, and a pause equal to that of a semicolon,

colon, a colon, or a period, as the sense requires. The *Parenthesis* usually requires a moderate depression of the voice, with a pause somewhat greater than a comma. But these rules are liable to many exceptions. The modulation of the voice in reading, and the various pauses, must always be regulated by the sense.

Besides the points, there are several other marks made use of in books, to denote references and different distinctions, or to point out something remarkable or defective, &c. These are, the *Apostrophe* ( ' ); *Asterisk* ( \* ); *Hyphen* ( - ); *Obelisk* ( † ); *Double Obelisk* ( ‡ ); *Parallel Lines* ( || ); *Paragraph* ( ¶ ); *Section* ( § ); *Quotation* ( " " ); *Crotchets* [ ] ; *Brace* ( { } ); *Ellipsis* ( ... or — ); *Caret* ( ^ ); which last is only used in writing.

References are often marked by letters and figures.

Capitals, or large letters, are used at the beginning of sentences, of verses, and of proper names. Some use them at the beginning of every substantive noun. Adjectives, verbs, and other parts of speech, unless they be emphatical, commonly begin with a small letter.

Capitals, with a point after them, are often put for whole words; thus, A. marks *Aulus*, C. *Caius*, D. *Decimus*, L. *Lucius*, M. *Marcus*, P. *Publius*, Q. *Quinctius*, T. *Titus*. So F. stands for *Filius*, and N. for *Nepos*; as, M. F. *Marci Filius*, M. N. *Marci Nepos*. In like manner, P. C. marks *Patres Conscripti*; S. C. *Senatus Consultum*; P. R. *Populus Romanus*; S. P. Q. R. *Senatus Populusque Romanus*; U. C. *Urbs Condita*; S. P. D. *Salutem plurimam dicit*; D. D. D. *Dat, dicat, dedicat*; D. D. C. Q. *Dat, dicat, consecratque*; H. S. written corruptly for L. L. S. *Sestertius*, equal in value to two pounds of brass and a half; the two pounds being marked by L. L. *Libra, Libra*, and the half by S. *Semis*. So in modern books, A. D. marks *Anno Domini*, A. M. *Artium Magister*, Master of Arts; M. D. *Medicinæ Doctor*; LL. D. *Legum Doctor*; N. B. *Nota Bene*, &c.

Sometimes a small letter or two is added to the capital; as, Etc. *Et cetera*; Ap. *Appius*; Cn. *Cneius*; Op. *Opiter*; Sp. *Spurius*; Ti. *Tiberius*; Sex. *Sextus*; Cos. *Consul*; Cofs. *Consules*; Imp. *Imperator*; Impp. *Imperatores*.



In like manner, in English, Esq; *Esquire*; Dr *Debtor* or *Doctor*; Acct. *Account*; MS. *Manuscript*; MSS. *Manuscripts*; Do. *Ditto*; Rt Hon. *Right Honourable*, &c.

Small letters are likewise often put as abbreviations of a word; as, i. e. *id est*; h. e. *hoc est*; e. g. *exempli gratia*; v. g. *verbi gratia*.

Capitals were used by the ancient Romans, to mark numbers. The letters employed for this purpose were C. I. L. V. X. which are therefore called *Numerical Letters*. I. denotes *one*, V. *five*, X. *ten*, L. *fifty*, and C. *a hundred*. By the various combination of these five letters, all the different numbers are expressed.

The repetition of a numerical letter repeats its value. Thus, II. signifies *two*; III. *three*; XX. *twenty*; XXX. *thirty*; CC. *two hundred*, &c. But V. and L. are never repeated.

When a letter of a less value is placed before a letter of a greater, the less takes away what it stands for from the greater; but being placed after, adds what it stands for to the greater; thus,

|             |               |                        |
|-------------|---------------|------------------------|
| IV. Four.   | V. Five.      | VI. Six.               |
| IX. Nine.   | X. Ten        | XI. Eleven.            |
| XL. Forty.  | L. Fifty.     | LX. Sixty.             |
| XC. Ninety. | C. A hundred. | CX. A hundred and ten. |

*A thousand* is marked thus, *CIƆ*, which in later times was contracted into *M*. *Five hundred* is marked thus, *D*, or, by contraction, *D*.

The annexing of *Ɔ* to *D*, makes its value ten times greater; thus, *DCƆ*, marks *five thousand*; and *DCƆƆ*, *fifty thousand*.

The prefixing of *C*, together with the annexing of *Ɔ* to the number of *CIƆ*, makes its value ten times greater; thus, *CCCIƆ*, denotes *ten thousand*; and *CCCCIƆ*, *a hundred thousand*. The ancient Romans, according to Pliny, proceeded no farther in this method of notation. If they had occasion to express a larger number, they did it by repetition; thus, *CCCCIƆƆ*, *CCCCIƆƆ*, signified *two hundred thousand*, &c.

We sometimes find *thousands* expressed by a straight line drawn

drawn over the top of the numerical letters. Thus,  $\overline{\text{III}}$ . denotes *three thousand*;  $\overline{\text{x}}$ . *ten thousand*.

But the modern manner of marking numbers is much more simple, by these ten characters or *figures*, which, from the ten fingers of the hands, were called *Digits*; 1 *one*, 2 *two*, 3 *three*, 4 *four*, 5 *five*, 6 *six*, 7 *seven*, 8 *eight*, 9 *nine*, 0 *nought*, *nothing*. The first nine are called *Significant Figures*. The last is called a *Cypher*.

Significant figures placed after one another increase their value ten times at every remove from the right hand to the left; thus,

8 *Eight*. 85 *Eighty-five*. 856 *Eight hundred and fifty-six*. 8566 *Eight thousand five hundred and sixty-six*.

When cyphers are placed at the right hand of a significant figure, each cypher increases the value of the figure ten times; thus,

1 *One*. 10 *Ten*. 100 *A hundred*. 1000 *A thousand*.  
2 *Two*. 20 *Twenty*. 200 *Two hundred*. 2000 *Two thousand*.

Cyphers are often intermixed with significant figures, thus, 20202, *Twenty thousand two hundred and two*.

The superiority of the present method of marking numbers over that of the Romans, will appear by expressing the present year both in letters and figures, and comparing them together;  $\text{CIC, DCCXCVIII}$ . or  $\text{M, DCCXCVIII}$ . 1798.

As the Roman manner of marking the days of their months was quite different from ours, it may perhaps be of use here to give a short account of it.

#### *Division of the Roman Months.*

The Romans divided their months into three parts, by *Kalends*, *Nones*, and *Ides*. The first day of every month was called the *Kalends*; the fifth day was called the *Nones*; and thirteenth day was called the *Ides*; except in the months of March, May, July, and October, in which the *nones* fell upon the seventh day, and the *ides* on the fifteenth.

In reckoning the days of their months, they counted backwards. Thus, the first day of January was marked

B b

*Kalendis*

*Kalendis Januariis* or *Januarii*, or by contraction, *Kal. Jan.* The last day of December, *Pridie Kalendas Januarias* or *Januarii*, scil. *ante*. The day before that, or the 30th day of December, *Tertio Kal. Jan.* scil. *die ante*; or, *Ante diem tertium Kal. Jan.* The twenty-ninth day of December, *Quarto Kal. Jan.* And so on, till they came back to the thirteenth day of December, or to the ides, which were marked *Idibus Decembribus*, or *Decembris*: The day before the ides, *Pridie Idus Dec.* scil. *ante*: The day before that, *Tertio Id. Dec.* and so back to the nones, or the fifth day of the month, which was marked, *Nonis Decembribus* or *Decembris*: The day before the nones, *Pridie Non. Dec.* &c. and thus through all the months of the year.

In *Leap-year*, that is, when February has twenty-nine days, which happens every fourth year, both the 24th and the 25th days of that month were marked, *Sexto Kalendas Martii* or *Martias*; and hence this year is called *Bissextilis*.

JUNIUS, APRILIS, SEPTEMQUE, NOVEMQUE tricenos;  
 Unum plus reliqui; FEBRUUS tenet octo viginti;  
 At si bissextus fuerit, superadditor unus.  
 Tu primam mensis lucem die esse kalendas.  
 Sex MAIUS, nonas OCTOBER, JULIUS, et MARS,  
 Quatuor at reliqui; dabit idus quilibet octo.  
 Omnes post idus luces die esse kalendas,  
 Nomen sortiri debent a mense sequenti.

Thus, the 14th day of *April*, *June*, *September*, and *October*, was marked XVIII. Kal. of the following month; the 15th, XVII. Kal. &c. The 14th day of *January*, *August*, and *December*, XIX. Kal. &c. So the 16th day of *March*, *May*, *July*, and *October*, was marked XVII. Kal. &c. And the 14th day of February, XVI. Kal. Martii or Martias. The names of all the months are used as Substantives or Adjectives, except *Aprilis*, which is used only as a Substantive.

## APPENDIX II.

Containing RULES from RUDDIMAN'S Grammar, which will be found explained in the Pages of this Book that are marked before each Rule.

## I. Concerning the GENDER of NOUNS.

*Names of Trees.* See page 12.

1. Arbor femineis dabitur : sed mas *oleaster*,  
Et *rhamnus* : petit hic potius *cytisus*que *rubus*que :  
Hic quandoque *larix*, *lotus* volet, atque *eupressus* :  
Hoc quod in *um*, *suder*que, *siler* dant, *robur* acerque.

*Nouns in A of the first declension.* p. 13. and 18.

3. Hæc dat A quod primæ est : sed neutrum *Pascha* requirit.  
*Hadria* mas æquor, pariterque *cometa*, *planeta* :  
Mascula & interdum *talpam* *damam*que videbis.

*Nouns in US and OS.* p. 27. 39. and 48.

4. Hæc *domus* & *vannus*, pro fructu-*ficus* & *alvus* ;  
Sic *humus* atque *manus*, poscunt : *acus* addito quartæ,  
*Porticus* atque *tribus*. Capit hoc *virus pelagus*que.

Nomen in OS Græcum, quod in US mutare Latini  
Sæpè solent, normam sequitur plerumque virilem :

Femineum sed multa petunt : ut *abyssus*, *eremus*,  
*Antidotus*que. *pharus*, *dialectus*, *carbassus* : adde  
Ex *odas* & *phthongos* genitum, quæque à generali  
Voce genus plantæ & gemmæ capiunt muliebre.

Hic aut hæc donat *balanus*, *specus*, atque *phaselus*,  
*Barbitus*, atque *penus*, *grossus* : sed *grus*, *atomus*que  
Femineum potius cupiunt ; *colus* adde, virile

Quod rarò invenies : muliebre at contra *camelus*

Est ubi nonnunquam videas. Vult hic dare *vulgus*,

Sed magis hoc. Ternæ *specus* & *penus* addito neutris.

*Nouns of the Third Declension in O. p. 30. and 31.*

7. Hic dat O : femineis *halo* cum *caro* dantur & *echo* ;  
 Quæque in IO, seu sint verbo, seu nomine nata,  
 Rem (numeris demptis) aliquam sine corpore signant.  
 Adjice femineis DO, GO : sed mascula *cudo*,  
*Harpago*, sic *ordo*, simul *udo*, *tendo*, *ligoque*.  
 Rarius hæc *margo* vati est, hic sæpe *cupido*,  
*Arrhabo* cum *cardo*, muliebria vix imitanda.

*C and L. p. 32. rule 3.*

9. Quod fit in L, vel T, C, vel M, neutralibus adde :  
 Masculæ *sol*, *mugil*, seu *sal*, quod rarius hoc vult.

*N. p. 32. rule 4.*

10. Masculæum capit N. Finita in MEN dato neutris,  
 Quæque secunda creat, cum *gluten* & *inguen* & *unguen* :  
 Addideris *pollen*. *Sindon* petit hæc, & *aedon* ;  
*Alcyonem* junges, data postea queis comes *icon*.

*AR and UR. p. 33. rule 5.*

11. Postulat AR neutrum : sed masculæum *salar* optat.  
 Hoc dat UR. Hic *furfur* capiet, cum *vulture* *turtur*.

*ER and OR. p. 33. rule 6.*

13. ER capit hic. Neutrum plantæ fructusve requirunt :  
 At *tuber* hic fructus ; *tuber* quemcunque tumorem  
 Significans neutrale petit ; cumque *ubere spinther*,  
*Verque*, *cadaver*, *iter*. Dabit hic aut hæc tibi *linter*.  
 Hic dat OR. Hæc *arbor* : *cor*, *adorque* hoc, *marmor*  
 & *æquor*.

*AS. p. 34. rule 7.*

15. AS petit hæc. Neutrum est *vas*, *vasis*, queisque Pelasgi  
 Dant *atis* in patrio : quibus *antis* masculo sunt.

*ES. p. 35. rule 8.*

16. Hæc dabit ES. Capient *ales* hic hæcve, *palumbes*,  
 Atque *dies* ; sed mas proles : mas *poples* & *ames*,  
*Fomes*,



*Fomes, pes, paries, palmes, cum limite stipēs,  
 Queis addes trames, termes, cum gurgite cespēs;  
 Et quæ fonte fluunt Graio; sed neutra capeſſunt  
 Hippomanes, panaces, nepenthes, ſic cacoethes.*

IS. p. 36. rule 9.

17. IS dabo femineis. Sunt mascula *piscis & axis,  
 Glis, callis, vermis, vectis, mensis, cucumisque,  
 Mugilis & postis cum sanguine fascis & orbis,  
 Fuſſis item collis, caulisque, & follis & enſis,  
 Serpentemque notans cenchris, cum vomere, torris,  
 In NIS finitum Latium, lapis, unguis, aqualis.  
 Hic aut hæc finis, clunis, cum torque canalis,  
 Dant ſcrobis, ac anguis: corbis muliebæ præoptat;  
 Masculæo potiùs gaudent pulvis, cinis, amnis.*

OS. p. 38. rule 10.

19. Os maribus detur. Sunt neutra *chaos, melos, os, oz,  
 Postulat hæc arbos, eos, dos, & origine Græcâ  
 Orta eos, arctos, perimetros cum diametro.*

US, p. 38. rule 11.

20. Postulat US neutrum, quoties id tertia flectit.  
*Femineum voluere palus, subſcuſque, ſaluſque,  
 Quæque ſenex, juvenis, cum ſervio, nomina formant,  
 Et Virtus, incus. At mascula ſunt lepus & mus,  
 Et pus compositum: petit at muliebæ lagopus.*

ÆS and AUS. p. 39. rule 13.

21. Æs neutrale petit: *laus, frauſ, muliebria ſunto.*

S with a conſonant before it. p. 40. rule 14.

22. S dato femineis, ſi conſona ponitur ante.  
*Mascula ſed pons, ſons, mons, ſeps, dum denatat an-  
 guem;  
 Et queis P præit S polyſyllaba, forcipe dempto,  
 Denſque, chalybs, cum gryphe, rudens, quod rariùs  
 hæc vult.*

Hic aut hæc *serpens* dat, *serobs*, *stirps* truncus, *adeps*-  
que.

Dans *animans* genus omne, tamen muliebre præoptat.

X. p. 41. rule 16.

23. Hæc petit X. *Ax*, ex maribus polysyllaba junge :  
Dic tamen hæc *fornax*, *smilax*, *carex*, velut *halex*,  
Et cum prole *panax*, & *forsex* atque *supellex*.

Mascula sunt *calix*, *phœnix*, pro *verme*que *bombyx*,

Et *coccyx*, *fornix*, & *onyx* vas, aut lapis unde

Vas sit ; *oryx*, *tradux*, *grex* his adjuget *calyx*que.

Femineo interdum data *tradux* cum grege cernes.

Hæc modò femineis, maribus modò juncta videbis ;

*Calx* pro parte pedis metâve laboris & *hystrix*,

*Imbrex* ; *sardonychem* jungas, *rumicem*, *filicem*que :

Hic magè vult *cortex* & *obex*, cum *pumice*, *varix* :

Hæc potiùs *limax*, *lynx*, & cum *sandice* *perdix* :

*Atriplici* neutrum meliùs dabo quam muliebre.

## II. RULES concerning the OBLIQUE CASES.

*The Accusative Singular of the Third Declension*, p. 43.

Finit in EM quartus. Petit *im* sibi *ravis*, *amussis*,

*Vis cucumis*que simul, *tussis*, *fitis* atque *sinapis*,

*Cannabis* & *gummis*, *buris*, conjunge *mephitim*.

Adde urbes, aliosque locos, amnesque, deosque,

IS quibus est recto : sed & hæc dant *in* quoque quarto.

Sæpiùs *im*, *turris*, *puppis*, cum *reste securis* :

*Em*, sed & *im* quandoque, volunt sibi *febris aqualis*,

Et *navis*, *pelvis*, *clavis* ; sic *lens*, *strigilis*que,

*Sementis*que, *cutis*. Cumulant his plura vetusti.

Impurè in patrio casu crescentia Græca,

Sæpe & *Tros*, *Minos*, *heros*, quartum per *a* formant :

EUS ea vult. Vix *em* dato *Pan*, cumque *athere delphin*.

*Ablative Singular*. p. 44.

Sextus *e* vult : quibus at rectus per E clauditur *i* dant,

(*Propria* ni fuerint :) AL & AR neutralia junge.

Deme *jubar*, *sal*, *far*, *par* fixum, *nectar* & *hepar*,

Sed solet has leges migrare licentia vatum.

*I* quoque dant *in* & *im* tantum facientia quarto.  
*Cannabis* at *Batis*, *Tigris*, voluistis utrumque.  
*Im* quibus in quarto est, *ye* dant, aut *m* modo demunt,  
 Dant *e* vel *i* sexto, quæ quartus in *em* vel in *im* fit.  
 Excipe sed *ressis*, quod *e* semper, cum *cute*, donat.  
 I magè *sementis*, *strigilis* petit atque *securis*.  
 Quod simul *im* vel *idem* format, capit *i* sibi rarò.  
 Hæc quoque dant *e* vel *i*: *finis*, cum *rure supellex*,  
*Occiput* & *vedis*: per *UBI* cum quæritur, *urbes*,  
 Et *pugil* & *mugil*, jungas. Per *e* sæpiùs effer,  
 I raro, *civis*, *classis*, *sors*, *anguis*, & *imber*,  
*Unguis*, *avis*, *postis*, *fustis*, simul *amnis* & *ignis*.  
 Ufus plura tulit priscus, quæ respuit ætas  
 Cultior. *I* tantum sexto retineto *canalis*.

## Genitive Plural. p. 45.

Præbet *ium* patrius, si sextus in *i* fuit antè.  
 Tolle *vigil*, *vetus*, *uber*, *inops*, *supplex*que *memor*que,  
*Mugilis* & *confors*, quibus & *pugil* & *celer*-adde;  
 Atque gradus medios; (sed *ium* plus poscit.) Adhæ-  
 rent  
 His composita *genus*, *cipio*, *facio*que *caput*que.

Sextus *e* si tantum dederit, capit *um* genitivus.  
 AS sed *ium* Latiale petit: polysyllaba deme,  
 Quæ magis *um* placuit. Sed *ium* quærentibus adde  
 Nomen in IS vel in ES non crescens: jungito & NS:  
 Tolle *parens*, *vates*, *panis*, *juvenis*que, *canis*que.

Donat *ium* *Samnis*, *linter*, *caro*, *dos*, & *os ossis*,  
*Glis*, *nix*, *nox*que *cohors*, *mus*, *faux*; *uter*: adde *Qui-*  
*ritem*,  
 Atque *larem*, *liem*, *cotem*, *cor*; compositumque  
*Uncia*, quod simul *as* genuit: monosyllaba junge  
 Consona quæ duplex claudit. *Bos* ritè *boum* dat.

## Dative Plural of the Fourth Declension, p. 48.

*Partus* ūBUS, *specus*, *artus*, *acus*, dant & *lacus*, *arcus*,  
 Atque *tribus*: sed utrumque *genū*, *portus*que, *veru*que,

## III. RULES.

## III. RULES concerning ADJECTIVES.

*Adjectives wanting the POSITIVE. p. 71.*

Hæc viduata gradu sunt pauca sequentia primo ;  
*Ultimus, ulterior ; prior, & primus ; propiorque,*  
*Proximus ; ocyor atque ocyssimus* adjiciantur ;  
*Deterior* jungi quibus & *deterrimus* ambit.

*Adjectives wanting the COMPARATIVE. p. 71.*

*Nuperus, orba* gradu medio, *novus ac meritis* sunt ;  
*Par, sacer, invidus, persuasus, & inclutus* adde.

*Adjectives wanting the SUPERLATIVE. p. 71.*

Hæc superante carent : *satur, & diuturnus, & ingens,*  
*Atque senex, juvenis, adolescens, pronus, opimus ;*  
 Et finita *BILIS* propè cuncta, vel *ILIS, & ALIS :*  
 Cum multis aliis quæ nunc perscribere longum est.

*Adjectives wanting the POSITIVE and SUPERLATIVE. p. 71.*

*Anterior* solum, *sequior, satiorque* leguntur.

## IV. RULES concerning VERBS.

VERBS of the FIRST CONJUGATION wanting both PRE-  
 TERITE and SUPINE. p. 108.

———— *Labo, nexo, cum plico* nil dant.

VERBS of the SECOND CONJUGATION wanting the SU-  
 PINE. p. 108.

*Quod dat UI* neutrum, *timeo, fileoque, supina*  
*Nulla* dabunt. *Valeo, placeo, caret & licet* aufer,  
*Paret.* item *jaceo, caleo, noceo, doleoque ;*  
*Queis coales, latet atque meret* sociabis, *oletque.*  
*Arceo* quod simplex nescit, dant nata supinum :  
*Quod retinent taceo, lateo, fobolique* recusant.

————— *Viduata* supinis

*Si capiunt urget, cum fulget, surget, & alget.*

VERBS of the SECOND CONJUGATION wanting both PRE-  
 TERITE and SUPINE. p. 111.

*Nil* formant *laſſet, livet, ſcateoque renidet,*  
*Maret, avet, pollet, flavet, cum denſeo glabret.*

VERBS

VERBS of the THIRD CONJUGATION wanting the SUPINE ;  
and some also the PRÆTERITE. p. 113.

SCO. p. 114.

*Disco*

Vult didici primam geminans : sic posco, poposci ;  
Discescit, comescit UI dant : cuncta supinis  
Orba. Nihil glisco, nihil Inceptiva crearunt.

UO. p. 113.

Nulla supina dabunt metuo, pluo, congruo, sicut  
Annuo, cum sociis ; quibus ingruo, respuo junges.

DO. p. 116.

Tundo facit tutudi, tunsu, compositaque tusu.  
Et cado vult cecidi casu ; sed nata supinum  
(Incido si demas, recido, simul occido,) spernunt.  
Præterito DI strido, rudo, dant, absque supinis,  
Sidoque, sed soboli sedeo dat mutuo sedi.

GO. p. 118.

Nil vergo capeffit.

XI clango, ningo, dat et angō, supinaque nulla.

VERBS of the FOURTH CONJUGATION wanting the SUPINE. p. 124.

Cacutit, gestit, glocit, & dementit, ineptit,  
Nulla supina dabunt, cum profilit atque ferocit.

DEPONENT VERBS wanting the PARTICIPLE PERFECT. p. 128.

Nil formant vescor, liquor, medeor, reminiscor,  
Irascor, ringor, prævertor, diffiteorque :  
Quis demum adjungas divortor, dequefescor,

Verbs wanting the first person singular. p. 134.

Dor, furo, sor, der, fer, vix unquam suscipit usus.

V. RULES



## V. RULES concerning the QUANTITY of SYLLABLES, &amp;c.

## I. Concerning FIRST and MIDDLE SYLLABLES.

*A vowel before another.* p. 253.

Vocalem breviant aliâ fubeunte Latini.

Ni capit *r*, *fio* produc : & nomina quintæ*E* servant longum, si præsit *i*, ceu *speciei*.Anceps *ius* erit patrio : sed protrahe *alius*,*Alterius* brevia tantum ; commune sit *obe*,*Pompei. Cai*, produc, conformia jungens.*Dianam* varia : longa *aër*, *dius*, & *eheu*,Et patrius primæ cum sese solvit in *ai*.

Hic Græci variant, nec certâ lege tenentur.

*A vowel before a mute and a liquid.* p. 254.

Si mutæ liquida est subjuncta in syllaba eâdem,

Quæ brevis antevenit vocalis, redditur anceps.

Hanc tamen in prosa semper breviare memento.

Sunt *l*, *r*, liquidæ, queis raro jungimus *m*, *n*.*Contracted Syllables and Diphthongs.* p. 254.

Vocalem efficiet semper contractio longam.

Diphthongum produc in Græcis atque Latinis ;

In Græcis semper : at PRÆ composita sequente

Vocali brevia ; veluti præit atque præstus.

*Preterites and Supines.* p. 255.

Præterita assument primam dissyllaba longam.

Tolle bibit, scidit, & fidit, ac tulit, ortaque *do*, *flo*.

Præteritum geminans primam, breviabit utramque,

Ut pario, peperit ; vetet id nisi consona bina.

At quod cado creat tardat, ceu pedit, secundam.

Cuncta Supina tenent primam dissyllaba longam :

Præter nata fero, cieo, lino, cum fino, sisto,

Quæ breviant ; eo, doque, ruo, quo jungo, reorque.

Cætera præsentis mensuram verba reseruant.

Excipe sed posui positum, genui genitumque,

Et potui ; quæ dant quoque solvo &amp; volvo supina.

Præ tum vocalem polysyllaba cuncta supina.  
 Producunt, *atum*, quibus, *etum* finis, & *utum* :  
*Ivi* præterito veniens sociabis & *itum*.  
 Cætera corripies in *itum* quæcunque residunt.

## II. FINAL SYLLABLES.

*A in the end of a word.* p. 261.

Casibus A flexum brevia. Sed protrahe sextum,  
 Et quintum, Græco quando hic de nomine in *As* fit.  
 Casibus haud flexum produc. *Ita*, cum *quia*, & *esa*,  
 Et *putà* non verbum subduxeris, *hallelueluja*.  
 Curta quoque interdum, *contra*, *ultra*, & *ginta* creata.

*E in the end of a word.* p. 261.

E brevia. Primæ produc, et nomina quintæ  
 Cum natis. Adde pluralia cuncta : secundæ  
 Induperativum socians. Monosyllaba, demptis  
 Encliticis ac syllabicis, quoque longa repones.  
 Adde à mobilibus flexûs quæcunque secundi  
 Manârunt, summique gradûs adverbia quævis.  
 Sed *benè* cum *malè* corripies, *infernè*, *supernè*,  
 Productis *ferme* atque *ferè* jungantur, & *obe*.

*I in the end of a word.* p. 261.

I longum pono. Vocitantem corripe Græcis.  
 His tamen at ternus dabitur crescentibus anceps.  
 Sic variato *mibi*, *tibi* cum *sibi* : sed magè curtis  
 Vult *ibi*, vultque *cui*, *nisi*, mox *ubi*, cum *quasi*, jungi.  
*Sicuti* sed breviant, cum *necubi*, *sicubi*, vates.

*O in the end of a word.* p. 262.

O commune loces. Dabis at monosyllaba longis,  
 Græcaque ceu *Dido*, ternum sextumque secundæ,  
 Et patrium Græcum, atque adverbia nomine nata,  
*Quò* jungens & *edò*. Variant at *denuò*, *ferò*,  
*Mutuò*, *postremò*, *verò* ; *modò* sed breve pones,  
 Sæpius *ambo*, *duo*, *scio* corripe, & *illicò* & *imò*,  
 Et *cedo* da signans, *ego* queis *bomo*, cum *ciò* junge.  
 Sunt aliis variata Gerundia, longa Maroni.  
*Ergò* pro causa produc : secus editur anceps.

U and Y in the end of a word. p. 262.

U semper longis, sed Y raptis jungere oportet.

B, D, L, M, R, and T, in the end of a word. p. 262.

Corripe B Latium : peregrinum at tendere malim.

D breve ponatur. Variare at Barbara possis.

L breve sit. Cum *sol, fal, nil*, tolluntur Hebræa.

M nunc vocalis perimit : rapuere vetusti.

R brevies. Produc cujus dat patrius *eris* ;

Addito *Iber, aër, æther*. Sit *Celtiber* anceps.

At *par, far, lar, Nar*, quoque *cur, fur*, adjice longis.

T breve semper erit nisi quondam syncopa tardet.

C and N in the end of a word. p. 262.

C produc, præter *nec, donec* : sed variabis

*Hic* benè pronomen : *fac* verbum jungimus isti.

N produc. Demas *EN inis* dans, quæque priore

Græca per *ON* casus numero tenuere secundæ ;

Et quartum casum, si sit brevis ultima recti.

*Sin* quoque pluralis ternæ conjunge *Pelasgum* :

*Forſitan, in, forſan, tamen, an viden'* insuper addens.

AS, ES, and OS, in the end of a word. p. 263.

AS produc. Patrio sed *adis* quod flectit, *anasque*,

Sit breve : plurales ternæ quibus addito quartos.

Ponitur *ES* longum. Pluralia corripe Græca

Quæ crescunt ; velut *es de sum ; penes* additur illi ;

Cum neutris ; & queis patrii penultima curta est

Ternæ. Tolle *Ceres, paries, aries, abies, pes*.

OS produc. Patrius brevis est, & *compos & impos*,

*Osque ossis* præbens. Rectos breviato secundæ

(*O* nisi det patrius :) neutra his dein addito *Graiûm*.

IS, US, and YS, in the end of a word. p. 263.

IS brevio. Verùm plurales protraho casus ;

ISque quod in patrio mutatur in *itis & inis*,

Aut *entis* ; *gratisque foris, glis, vis* quoque, nomen

Seu verbum fuerit : sicut & persona secunda

Protrahit IS, quoties *itis* plurale reponit.

In subjunctivi *ris* est commune futuro.

US correpta datur. Monosyllaba cum genitivis  
 Ternæ vel quartæ produc : numerique secundi  
 In quarta primum, quartum, quintumque ; & in *uris*,  
 Dumve in *utis* patrius, vel in *udis*, & *untis*, *odisve* est ;  
 Aut quintus fit in *u*, longus tum rectus habetur.  
 Ergo produces venerabile nomen IESUS.  
 YS junges brevibus. *Tethys* reperitur at anceps.  
 Longaque sunt rectis aliter quæ casibus RŃ dant.

*The last Syllable of a verse.* p. 264.

Ultima cujusque est communis syllaba versûs.

### III. The QUANTITY of DERIVATIVES and COMPOUNDS.

#### 1. *The Quantity of Derivatives.* p. 264.

Derivata tenent mensuram primigenorum :  
 Orta tamen brevibus, *suspicio*, *regula*, *sedes*,  
*Seciûs*, *humanus*, *penuria*, *mobilis*, *humor*,  
*Jumentum*, *fomes*, primam producere gaudent.  
 Corripiunt sed *arista*, *vadum*, *sopor* atque *lucerna*,  
*Duxque ducis*, *stabilisque*, *fides*, *ditioque*, *quasillus*,  
 Nata licet longis ; quæ pluraque suggeret usus.

#### 2. *The Quantity of Compounds.* p. 264.

Simplicium servant legem composita suorum,  
 Quamvis diphthongus vel vocalis varietur.  
 At breviant *nihilum* cum *pejero*, *degero*, nec non  
*Veridicus*, *fociis* junctis, & *semisopitus*.  
*Cognitus* his addes, velut *agnitus*, *innubus*, atque  
*Pronubus* : at longis *ambitus* mobile junges,  
*Imbecillus* item : sed *connubium* variabis.  
 Quam disjuncta dabat mensuram præpositura,  
 Juncta tenet : subiens illam nisi litera mutet.  
 Est PRO breve in Græcis, PRO longum ritè Latinis.  
 At rape quæ *fundus*, *fugio*, *neptisque neposque*,  
 Est *festum*, *sari*, *fateor*, *fanumque* creâtunt.  
 Hisce *profecto* addes, pariterque *procella*, *protervus*.  
 Atque *propago* genus, *propago* protrahe vitis.  
*Propino* varia, verbum *propago*, *profundo* :  
 Cum *pello*, *curo* genitis, *Proserpina* junges.

SE produc & DI, præter *dirimo* atque *disertus*.  
 Est RE breve : at viduum personis protrahere *refert*.  
 Pars si componens fini prior *i* vel *o* donat,  
 Sit breve : *vaticinor* monstraverit, *Arctophylax*que.  
*I* quibus est flexu mutabile jungito longis,  
 Quæque queunt sensu salvo divellier, addens  
 De quibus aut Crasis aliquid vel Syncopa tollit.  
*Idem* masculæum produc, & *ubique* & *ibidem* ;  
 Huic dein agglomerans turbæ composita *dici*.  
 His *intro*, *retro*, *contra*que & *quando* creata  
 (*Quandoquidem* excepto,) bene junxeris, atque *aliquin*,  
 Quæque per *o* magnum scribuntur nomina Graiis.

## FIGURES of PROSODY.

*Synalæpha* and *Eæblipsis*. p. 275.

Vocalem *Synalæpha*, *Eæblipsis* & *m* quoque tollit,  
 Altera cùm voci est vocalis prima sequenti.

*Synæresis* and *Diæresis*. p. 276.

Syllaba de binis conflata *Synæresis* esto.  
 Distrabit in geminas resoluta *Diæresis* unam.

*Systolè* and *Diastolè*. p. 277.

*Systola* præcipitat vocales ritè trahendas.  
 Protrahit huic adversa *Diastola* corripiendas.

*Figures of Diction*. p. 277.

PROSTHESIS apponit capiti, sed APHÆRESIS aufert.  
 SYNCOPA de medio tollit, sed EPENTHESIS addit.  
 Abstrahit APOCOPE fini, sed dat PARAGOGÈ.  
 Constringit CRASIS, distracta DIÆRESIS effert.  
 Littera si legitur transposita, METATHESIS exit.  
 ANTITHESISIN dices, tibi littera si varietur.

F I N I S.



